

وتعرفنا بتأخر اللغة الشيخ المتقدم لأنه ترواجيم مشكلة كبيرة جدا من أين
 ترواجيم و نحن أو الخوا ترواجيم الامتصاصات و عملها على الحاسب الالى
 الترواجيم منهم سترافيس الامتصاصات - لاتيم اما اءرف اللغة كاملة مع علامات
 الترواجيم و الاشارات الاخرى .
 1 - اما والتدنية الى المتكلم فما عليه الا ان يجمع الشبكة الموجودة عنده من
 الترواجيم المختلفة - يتلخها على الرماللة القياسية وبن سلفي الحجم وبعيدا
 الترواجيم من الجدول مستخدما من الترواجيم واهم واحد انما يتبع الاعتقاد الترواجيم
 الترواجيم عند حروف التي و ترواجيم الكلمات
 واما
 يمكن تصور هذا الجدول بعدة الاستخدامات يمكن ان يكون
 شكله كالتالي

62	34	68	5	16	83	25	20	56	33
76	9	73	28	67	16	45	100	71	49
9	42	22	31	61	12	26	32	27	21
23	22	47	37	4	67	27	76	14	47
42	54	15	27	2	46	73	31	20	26
19	77	55	25	62	39	38	7	29	30
82	30	13	96	91	47	21	55	50	75
6	52	65	26	43	18	72	91	16	65
25	74	10	17	71	82	43	70	94	72
71	3	64	73	52	3	65	17	27	52

AFGP-2002
000031-1097

معرفة مقدار العمل الذي انجزه الموظفون في يوم واحد من اجل
مهمتهم في العمل او في اوقات غير الاعمال و تعطى على الحساب الذي
يتميز به في سجلات الموظفين . و يتم اعداد هذه اللوحة كاملة مع بيانات
الوقت و التواريخ .

انما يتم اعداد هذه اللوحة في اوقات العمل او في اوقات التفرقة من
الوقت المتفرقة . و يتم اعداد هذه اللوحة في اوقات العمل او في اوقات
التفرقة من العمل . و يتم اعداد هذه اللوحة في اوقات العمل او في اوقات
التفرقة من العمل .

البيانات في هذه اللوحة هي و يتم اعداد هذه اللوحة في اوقات العمل او في اوقات
التفرقة من العمل . و يتم اعداد هذه اللوحة في اوقات العمل او في اوقات
التفرقة من العمل .

تتم اعداد هذه اللوحة في اوقات العمل او في اوقات التفرقة من العمل . و يتم اعداد هذه اللوحة في اوقات العمل او في اوقات
التفرقة من العمل .

تتم اعداد هذه اللوحة في اوقات العمل او في اوقات التفرقة من العمل . و يتم اعداد هذه اللوحة في اوقات العمل او في اوقات
التفرقة من العمل .

61	54	89	9	42	89	45	30	50	25
75	9	42	30	84	68	45	50	16	45
9	42	89	9	42	89	45	30	50	25
74	22	42	30	84	68	45	50	16	45
48	54	15	30	2	86	73	20	20	20
10	72	55	20	62	39	38	7	20	30
82	30	13	36	91	47	21	55	50	25
6	52	46	36	65	18	29	31	10	60
76	74	80	20	151	40	32	20	91	72
71	8	44	25	52	3	65	12	23	50

AFGP-2002
000031-1097

التفصيل	
١	مقدمة
٢	مدخل
٣	الامن و المقاييرات :
٣	الامن في الاسلام
١٢	اختتام الاسلام في المقاييرات
١٣	الصفات اللازمة لرجل المقاييرات
١٧	عقوبة الجاسوس المسلم
١٨	عقوبة الجاسوس الذمي
١٩	عقوبة الجاسوس الممتنع
٢٠	عقوبة الجاسوس الحربي
٢٤	كتم قتل رجل المقاييرات لنفسه
٢٥	تحريك جهاز الامن
٢٥	تحريك الاستخبارات
٢٦	الفراعد الاساسية في الامن
٢٨	سلاح رجال المقاييرات
٢٩	اقسام الامن :
٢٩	١٠ الامن الوقائي
٣٠	مكافحة التخريب
٣٤	مكافحة الجاسوسية
٣٩	مشيخ الاسلام في مقاومة الجاسوسية
٤١	الاعتقال
٥٢	المطهرات التي يبني الجاسوس للمخبر عليها
٥٦	بطاقات مكافحة الجاسوسية (المحقق)
٥٧	وسائل الاستجواب
٦٣	الاهداف الرئيسية التي ترمي الاعمال فدها
٦٦	١١ الاستخبارات الايجابية
٦٨	تدريب التجسس
٦٩	الاصيرة المستخدمة في التجسس
٧٥	الاستخبارات العسكرية
٧٧	تنظيم الاستخبارات في الميدان
٨٠	اقسام الاستخبارات العسكرية
٨٣	امن المعلومات العسكرية
٨٨	تحليل المعلومات العسكرية
٩٣	مثال للتخطيط
٩٦	مناقش الي رجل الامن والاستخبارات

AFGP-2002
000031-1088

التقرير	
١	مقدمة
٢	مدخل
٣	الإمن و المخابرات :
٣	الإمن في الإسلام
١٢	احتياج الإسلام في المخابرات
١٣	المفاهيم اللازمة لرجال المخابرات
١٧	عقوبة الجاسوس المسلم
١٨	عقوبة الجاسوس الكافر
١٩	عقوبة الجاسوس المستأجر
٢٠	عقوبة الجاسوس الجريبي
٢٤	حكم قتل رجل المخابرات لنفسه
٢٥	تدريب جهاز الأمن
٢٥	تدريب الاستخبارات
٢٦	القواعد الأساسية في الأمن
٢٨	سلاح رجال المخابرات
٢٩	أقسام الأمن :
٢٩	١. الأمن الوقائي
٣٠	مكافحة التخريب
٣٤	مكافحة التجسس
٣٩	مضيق الإسلام في مقاومة التجسس
٤١	الإعتقال
٥٢	المخبريات التي يبنى الجاسوس للحدود عليها
٥٦	بنيات مكافحة التجسس (المحقق)
٥٧	وسائل الإستجواب
٦٢	الأهداف الرئيسية التي توجه الأعمال عندما
٦٦	٢. الاستخبارات الأجنبية
٦٨	تشخيص التصيب
٦٩	الأجهزة المستخدمة في التجسس
٧٥	الاستخبارات العسكرية
٧٧	تنظيم الاستخبارات في الميدان
٨٠	أقسام الاستخبارات العسكرية
٨٣	أمن المعلومات العسكرية
٨٨	تطبيق المعلومات العسكرية
٩٢	مثال للتطبيق
٩٦	نماذج إلى رجال الأمن والاستخبارات

AFGP-2002
000031-1098

١٠٠	السواقر
١٠٤	المعاينة
١٠٨	نموذج عملي لمعاينة محسك
١١١	نموذج عملي لمعاينة بيت داخل مدينة
١٨٠	التخريب :
١٨٣	تنظيم منظمات التخريب
١٨٧	** أمن الأفراد
١٩١	** أمن المنشآت
١٩٧	** أمن التجمعات
١٩٩	** أمن المعسكرات
٢١٠	** أمن المعلومات
٢١٥	حفظ المعلومات
٢٢٦	السر
٢٢٧	الماوسية والمخابرات
٢٣٢	** أمن الاتصالات
٢٤٣	أدوات الإتصال
٢٥٠	التحت السمي والنخري
٢٥٣	أجهزة الحماية والإنذار
٢٥٨	ذرع القوات استراق السمع وتزويرها
٢٦٥	** التنظيم
٣٠٦	** أمن التنظيم للجهاد والعمل المسلح
٣١٤	الشكل التنظيمي لجهاز أمن الجماعة المسلمة التابع للتنظيم الجهادي
٣٢٢	النخري
٣٢٥	الجنيد
٣٣٠	تدريب الماوس :
٣٣٧	** التفتيش
٣٤٠	** التفتيش السري
٣٤٢	** المراقبة
٣٤٤	التملص من المراقبة
٣٤٩	التمويد والإخفاء السري
٣٥٥	** الاعتقالات
٣٥٧	الخطف
٣٦١	أمنيات عملية الإغتيال
٣٦٧	جهاز التفتيش من بعد الاستيلاء
٣٧٢	حرب الرماطل و الرماطل المطرمة

AFGP-2002
000031-1099

٣٧٨	الحرب النفسية :
٣٨١	١٠٠ مميزات الحرب النفسية في الإسلام
	وساكن الحرب النفسية من قريتين ضد
٣٨٢	التيبي من اللد عليه وسلم
	طريقة النبي من اللد عليه وسلم في حربه ضد
٣٨٩	اعدائه
٣٩٤	١٠١ مهام الحرب النفسية وطريق الرقابة منها
٣٩٨	دور الصحابة في الحرب النفسية
٤٠٨	١٠٢ الدعاء
٤١٦	انواع الدعاء
٤١٩	١٠٣ الاشاعة
٤٢٥	شرح مقاومة الاشاعة
٤٢٠	١٠٤ غسيل الدماغ
٤٣٤	١٠٥ مصطلحات الحرب النفسية
٤٣٨	١٠٦ اهداف الحرب النفسية
٤٤٦	حتى لا تفقد عزاما اكثر ... لحماية الميزول :
٤٤٦	١٠٧ دور المراقبة والحماية
٤٥٥	١٠٨ حماية الأماكن التي تتواجد فيها الشخصية
٤٦٥	اساليب التفتيش
٤٦٧	لائحة تأكيد مركز الحماية
٤٦٦	١٠٩ حماية الشخصية أثناء التحرك بواسطة العربات
٤٧٢	١١٠ الحواكب
٤٨٠	امن سيارة الشخصية
٤٨٢	تلكميس دراسة الطريق
٤٨٤	لائحة فحص السيارة
٤٨٦	امن حقايب الشخصية
٤٨٨	١١١ التهديد بالقتال *
٤٨٩	١١٢ الخداع في عملية حماية الشخصية
٥٠١	دورة كيف نقتل :
٥٠٨	١١٣ صناعة السموم
٥١٠	التجارات السامة
٥١١	المسحرات السامة
٥١٣	دورة الإخبار السرية :
٥١٧	صناعة الإخبار السرية
٥١٩	الإخبار السرية الخفية
٥٢٥	تواصين التعريب الأولية :

AFGP-2002
000031-1100

HADI-1-017846

Appellate Exhibit 040 (al Hadi)
Page 3252 of 6104

Filed with TJ
22 April 2015

٥٢٥	المباني الخشبية
٥٢٠	قلع الإشجار
٥٢١	المفاتيح والقضبان والحصان المعدنية
٥٢٦	تخريب المباني
٥٤٠	تخريب وقطع الشوارع
٥٤٢	وسائل وسائط التفجير :
٥٤٢	سلاسل التفجير
٥٥٥	المواعق *
٥٥٠	الفتائل المتفجرة (كروتكس) *
٥٥٢	تجهيز خزانات متفجرة بمواعق لا كهربائية *
٥٥٧	تتقاد التفجير للمواعق الكهربائية *
٥٦٠	توصيل الفتائل
٥٦٥	تجهيز قوالب التفجير
٥٧٢	دوائر التفجير الكهربائية
٥٨١	انظمة التفجير المزدوجة
٥٨٤	الشريك
٦٠٢	مجذا اشجار الدائرة الكهربائية
٦١٨	التصنيع *
٦١٩	المتفجرات الباردة
٦٢٦	المتفجرات المشطبة
٦٤٩	المتفجرات القاسمة
٦٧٤	المتفجرات الدافعة
٦٨٥	الخلاطة المتفجرة
٧٠١	زخات المولوتوف و القنابل الحارقة
٧٠٩	القنابل الدخانية
٧١١	دورة المهندسات *
٧١٨	الحركة الميكانيكية
٧٢٤	امسك المسدس الألى
٧٣٠	امسك مسدس الطاحونة
٧٣٢	التصويب (التشقين) والتخيل على الزناد
٧٣٦	طرق اوضاع الرماية
٧٥٥	الرمى من غير تحويب (قتال قلوب)
٧٧٣	الرماية باستخدام المصباح اليدوي (الرماية في الظلام)
٧٧٩	قواتم الصوت *
٧٨٣	المساحة *
٧٨٣	طرق تحديد الاتجاه

AFGP-2002
000031-1101

٧١٥٠
٥٥٥٧٠٢

٧٨٦	تحديد المسافات
٧٨٩	التوجيه الصناعي
٨٠٢	الاتجاه
٨٠٥	الخارطة والميدان
٨١٢	الافتحاف بالهاون
٨١٥	برامج الكمبيوتر لتسهيل الاعطاء
٨١٩	البيودوليت
٨٢٥	الناظم العسكري
٨٢٧	برنامج شامل لاعمال الرامي و الراسد على الكمبيوتر
٨٣٥	الرموز والمفطلحات الطبوغرافية في الممسك الخريبي
٨٤٠	فح الاطفال
٨٧٢	ثقافة امنية
٨٧٢	واجب المخابرات في مكافحة الارهاب
٨٧٩	التدريب على التعرف اثناء تفتيش المنازل
٨٩٣	المخابرات الامرائية (المافك)
٩٠٢	الاستخبارات
٩٠٥	الاستخبارات الامرائيلية
٩٢٠	دراسة للمواد من كتاب "عن طويق الخداع"
٩٤٥	مخططات استخبارية
٩٥٤	التخريب
٩٥٦	التصني
٩٦٢	الانتفاضة المسلحة
٩٦٩	دورة القنص
٩٩٥	التجويد على الطريقة الامريكية
١٠٠٧	عملية الافتحاف على الدراجة الخارية
١٠٢١	عملية الافتحاف بالسيارة
١٠٢٤	كيفية الهجوم و الرماية على سيارة ممتلحة ضد الرصاص
١٠٤٧	انواع الرششات و كيفية استخدامها
١٠٥٤	الانتمالات السرية

AFGP-2002
000031-1102

ملحق التمشيح

الموضوع	الصفحة	الموضوع	الصفحة
الإحتياجات التي يحجم شم زعامات الكماين مقاومة التخريب مقاومة التجسس محاربة بيئية معالجة كهربائي عبر الجلد إلقاء القبض عليه التحكيل الانفاص عبارة عن معلومات للمؤولين بشؤونها ينبغي أن تعرض يزودونك الجبهة لا تخفى بالإمكان الذي يستخدمه الميارة الثانية لا تكون هناك نقاط الدين من المعلومات من التنظيم	٢ ١٢ ٢١ ٢٢ ١٣ ٢١ ٢١ ٢٨ ١٤ ٢٧ ٥ ١١ ٥ ٣٠ ٢٥ ١٩ ٢٩ ٢ ٦ ٢٠ ١٥ ١٦ ٩ ٧	إحتياجات الذي يحجم قم زعامات الكماين مقاومة التخريب مقاومة التجسس محاربة بيئية معالجة كهربائي الجلد إلقاء عليه التحكيل الانفاص عبارة عن معلومات للمؤولين بشؤونها ينبغي تتعرض يزودونك الجبهة تخفى بالإمكان التي يستخدمها الميارة الأولى لا تكون نقاط الذي من المعلومات والقائمين على	٤ ٤ ١٤ ٢٠ ٢٧ ٣٠ ٣١ ٣١ ٣٤ ٣٧ ٤٢ ٤٣ ٤٨ ٥٢ ٥٧ ٦٤ ٧١ ٩١ ٩٢ ٩٦ ١٠٣ ١٠٦ ١٣٨ ١٤٢ ١٩٦
والقائمين عليه عائلاتهم لرجال أمن الإستخبارات إنطباعاته مرؤوسيه فيما بينها لا يستطيع إختراقها عليه وقلم الخؤون القلم القسم القسم وعيلية الفرق تتم عند القسم شبكة الإضاءة هل هو ينتقل الإضاءة الذي للحصول على المعلومات إما عن طريق طبيعة العمل الممتدات يحتوى فوجودها المهمة	١١ ٨ ١٩ ٢٢ ٣ ٢٣ ٢٥ ٢٨ ٢٩ ١٠ ٣١ ٤ ٣٤ ١ ٢٢ ٢٩ ٢٦ ١٠ ٢٣ ٣٠ ١٧ ٢٣	عائلاتهم لرجال الأمن الإستخبارات إنطباعاته مرؤوسيه فيما بينها لا يستطيع عليه أن يجند وقلم الخؤون القلم القسم القسم وطريق الفرق تتم مند القسم شبكة الإضاءة هل هو كل الإضاءة التي للحصول أما عن طريق طبيعية العمل الممتدات يحتوى فوجودها المهمة	٣٠٧ ٣٠٨ ٣٠٩ ٣١٠ ٣١٣ ٣١٤ ٣١٧ ٣١٧ ٣١٧ ٣١٧ ٣١٧ ٣١٨ ٣١٩ ٣٢٠ ٣٢٠ ٣٢١ ٣٢١ ٣٢١ ٣٢٤ ٣٢٤ ٣٣٠ ٣٣٣ ٣٣٤ ٣٥٠

AFGP-2002
00031-1103

ملحق التتميم

الموضوع	الصفحة	الموضوع	الصفحة
طبيعة	٩	طبيعة	٣٥١
إتصال المعلومات	٣٢	الإتصال بالمعلومات	٣٥١
مليخرات	٥	مليخرات	٣٥٣
المختلفين	٢٧	الموظفين	٣٦١
مفيدة	٣٢	مفيدة	٣٧٨
أعطيك	١	أعطيك	٣٨٢
سأستيد	٥	سأستيد	٣٨٦
سويتبوا	٣٢	سويتبوا	٣٨٧
لاقتل خطورة عن المعتاد بل طفوته	٣٩	لاقتل خطورتها العنيف بل طفوته	٤٠٣
محاولة	١٠	محاولة	٤٠٥
المخاضات	٢٠	المخاضات	٤١٢
الإرادة	١٨	الإدارة	٤١٣
مادرة	٢١	مادرة	٤١٦
إعطيات	٢٩	لاميطاد	٤٢٣
يستغلوا	٢١	يستغلوا	٤٢٥
مقاومة الإشاعة	١٦	مقومات الإشاعة	٤٢٦
فما كان من رسول الله	٢١	فما كان رسول الله	٤٢٧
بالإهانة	١٧	بإهانة	٤٣٠
إنفعالية	٣١	إنفعالية	٤٣٣
السواقة	٢٢	السواقة	٤٧٤

AFGP-2002
000031-1104

المصواب	الخطأ	العدد	الصفحة
هذا الفتيل مثل فتيل	هذا الفتيل فتيل	٧	٥٤٧
(١٠٠) صاعق على التمليل	١٠٠ صاعق تمليل	-	٥٧٨
مفيدة	مفيدة	١٦	٥٨٩
الذي يؤدي الى إنتاج	الذي يؤدي إنتاج	١٢	٦٠٤
إنتاج	إنتاج	٤	٦٦٩
مفيدة	مفيدة	٦	٦٧١
السبابة	الإيهام	٢	٧٤٥
يكون الجيب واسما وكبيراً	تكون الجيب واسعة وكبيرة	٤	٧٦٣
يكون الجيب خالينا	تكون الجيب خالية	٥	٧٦٤
الضئية	الضئية	٧	٨٢١
المعاقبة بين الراصدين	المعاقبين الراصدين	٣١	٨٢٩
Ball Pick	kip liab	١٥	٨٤٧
الالاب	الالوب	١٨	٨٥٦
الإهاب	الإهاب	١٣	٨٧٧
إستخدموا موقفى الشرطة	إستخدموا الشرطة	١١	٨٧٩
بصادقة	بصادقة	٣٠	٨٨٦
الإفرادى	الإفرادى	٣٥	٨٨٦
القناومة	القناومة	٨	٨٨٩
النخطات	النخطات	٢٨	٨٨٩
مؤعج	مؤعج	٢٦	٨٩١

AFGP-2002
000031-1105

Serial	Grade	Position	Name
474	1	...	...
475	1	...	...
476	1	...	...
477	1	...	...
478	1	...	...
479	1	...	...
480	1	...	...
481	1	...	...
482	1	...	...
483	1	...	...
484	1	...	...
485	1	...	...
486	1	...	...
487	1	...	...
488	1	...	...
489	1	...	...
490	1	...	...
491	1	...	...
492	1	...	...
493	1	...	...
494	1	...	...
495	1	...	...
496	1	...	...
497	1	...	...
498	1	...	...
499	1	...	...
500	1	...	...

AFGP-2002
00031-1106





ATTACHMENT B20A

Filed with TJ
22 April 2015

Appellate Exhibit 040 (al Hadi)
Page 3261 of 6104

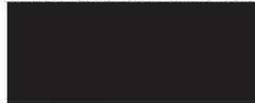
**MILITARY COMMISSIONS TRIAL JUDICIARY
GUANTANAMO BAY, CUBA**

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

V.

ABD AL HADI AL-IRAQI

DECLARATION OF



-
1. I am fluent in written and spoken English as well as written and spoken Arabic.
 2. I have taken the ALTA Language Services Translation Assessment and scored at skill level three or higher, which corresponds to professional performance.
 3. I am familiar with the Arabic document bearing bates numbers AFGP-2002-000031-0001 to AFGP-2002-000031-0105, which is the Afghan Jihad encyclopedia.
 4. To the best of my knowledge and belief, the English translation attached to this Declaration is a true and accurate translation from Arabic into English of the Arabic document described in paragraph 2 of this Declaration.

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed on: 07/30/2014

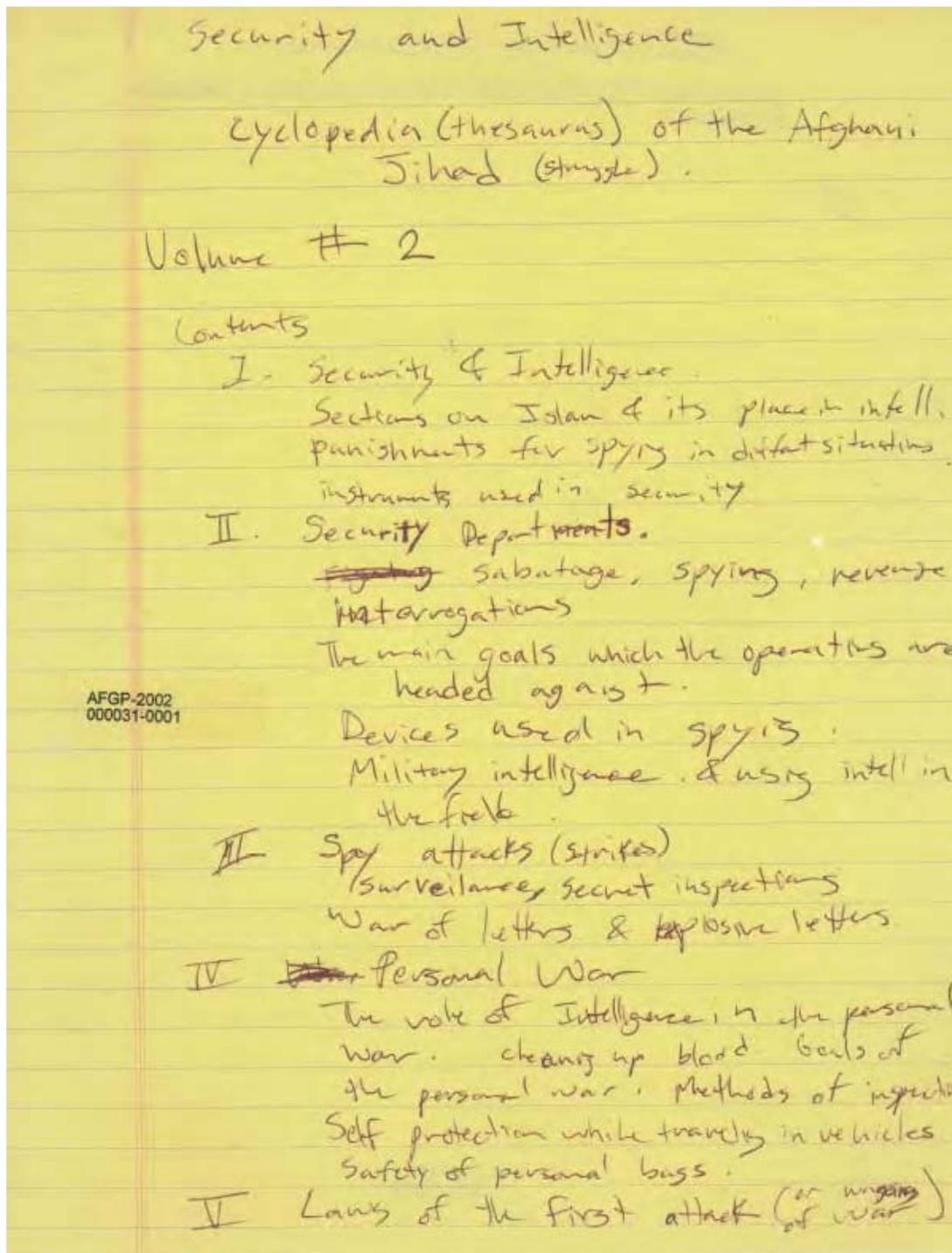
McLean, Virginia



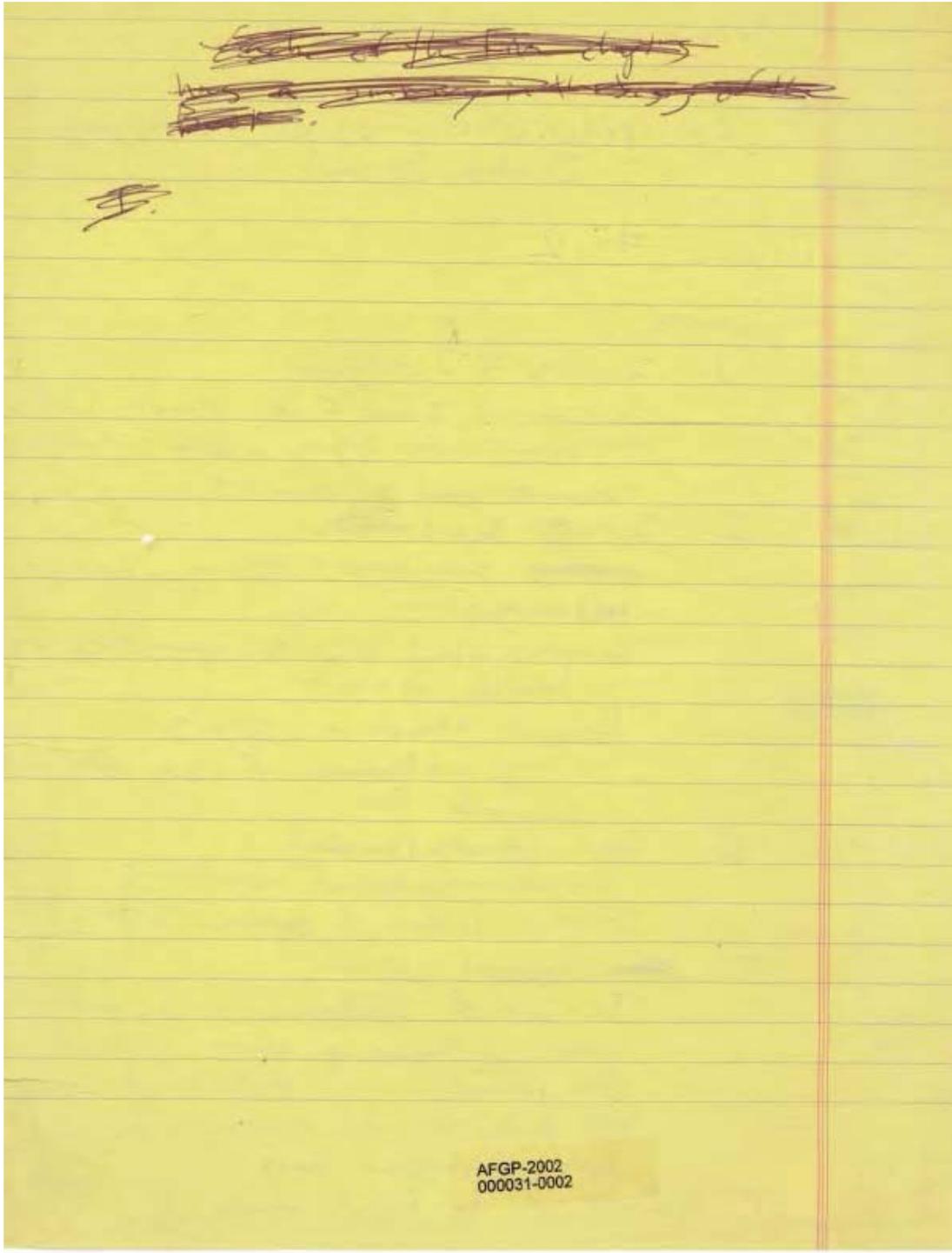
HADI-1-015821

AFGP-2002-000031-0001

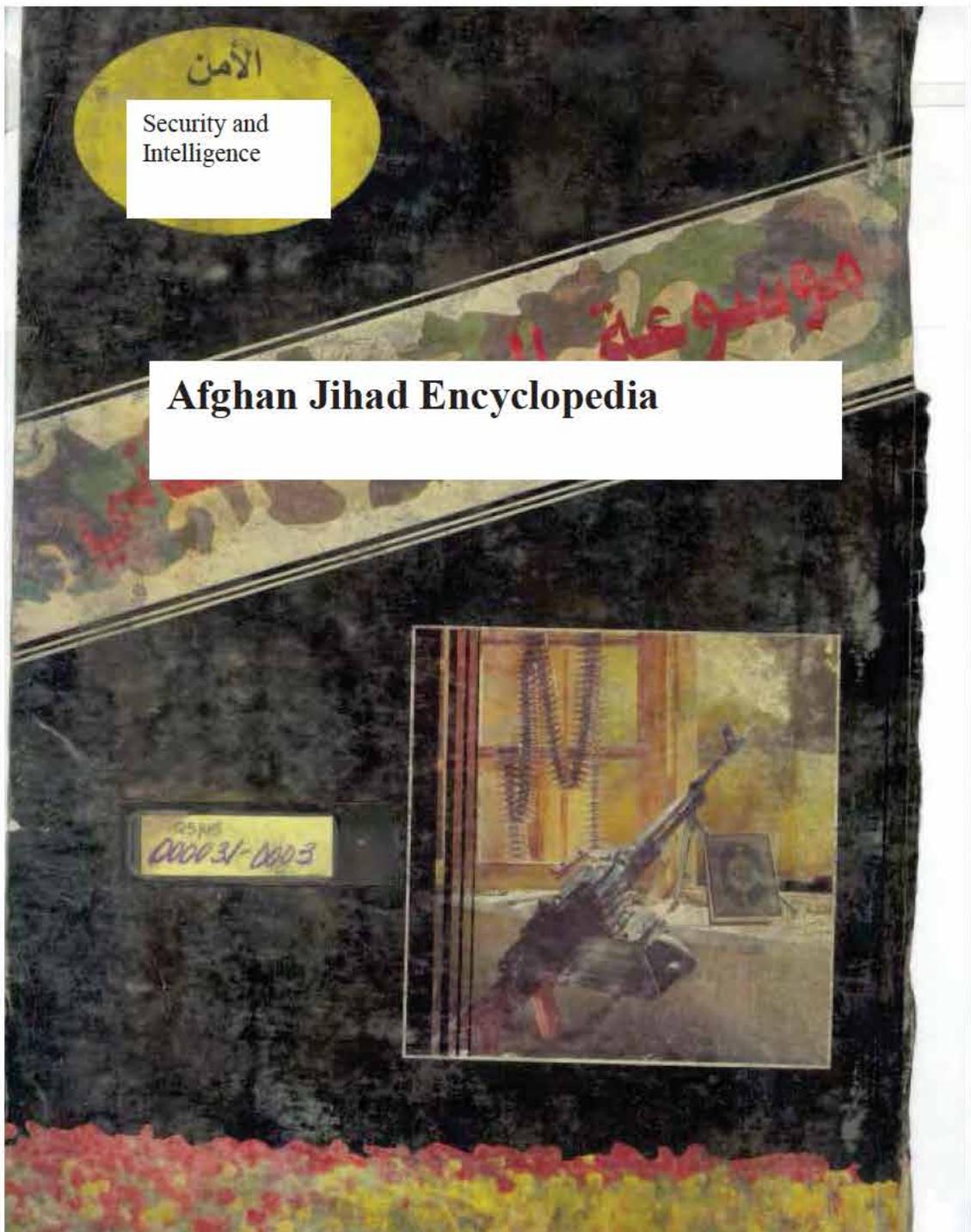
[TC: Initial coarse summary in English, evidently done abroad by U.S./allied elements]



AFGP-2002-000031-0002



AFGP-2002-000031-0003



AFGP-2002-000031-0004

[TC: Blank page]

AFGP-2002-000031-0005

[TC: Blank page]

AFGP-2002-000031-0006

[TC: Blank page]

AFGP-2002-000031-0007

[TC: Blank page]

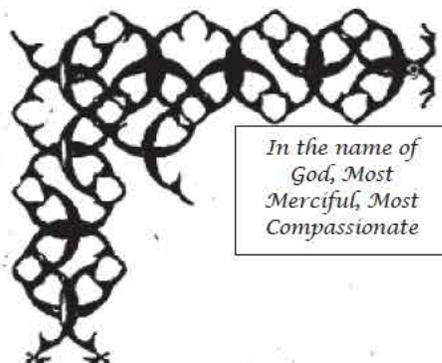
AFGP-2002-000031-0008

In the name of Allah, most merciful, most compassionate

Security and Intelligence

AFGP-2002-000031-0010

[TC: Pagination of English translation reordered to accurately convey Arabic text]



*In the name of
God, Most
Merciful, Most
Compassionate*

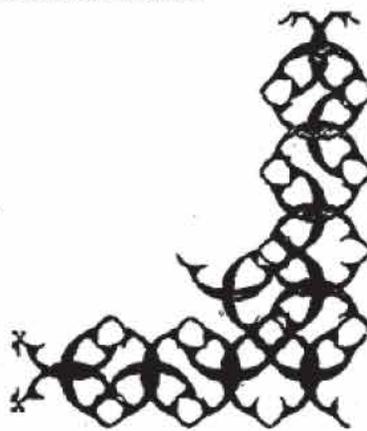
First dedication:

A word of truth and a tear of devotion

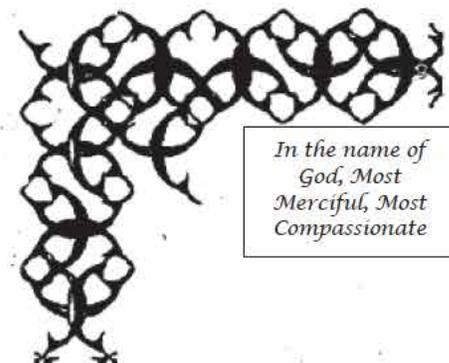
To our dear brother and honorable sheikh ‘Abdallah ‘Azzam (may God Almighty have mercy on him), who made alive the spirit of jihad among the souls of our young people with his speeches and writings; who reared those souls for jihad with his honesty and devotion; who offered what no other group was able to give; who presented the Afghan Islamic jihad to the world; who was patient and held his ground despite excuses, pressures and harm from most people except his parents (God have mercy on their souls); and who offered up his life and the lives of two of his beloved offspring for jihad.

This work is dedicated to God and then to you. I beseech the Lord that He shall cause it to be unto the scale of your good deeds, unto whoever benefits from it until judgment day, and unto the souls of Muslim martyrs in Afghanistan and elsewhere.

Services Office
Camps and Fronts Command



AFGP-2002-000031-0009



*In the name of
God, Most
Merciful, Most
Compassionate*

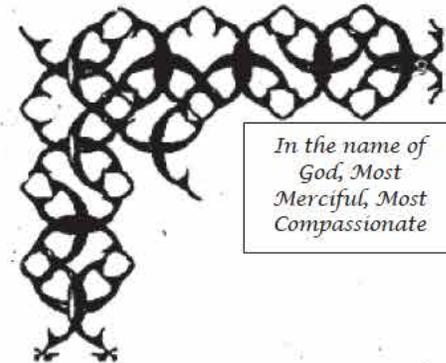
Second dedication:

To beloved brother Abu-'Abdallah -- Usama Bin-Ladin -- who joined martyr 'Abdallah 'Azzam in his jihad; and in establishing the Services Office; who strove in Afghanistan with his own soul and whatever he owned; who yet fights and promotes jihad at this time, and whose jihad was unjustly judged by most of the committed Muslims individually and collectively. I do beseech the Lord that he shall strengthen and reward you with all good things on behalf of Islam, the Muslims, jihad and the mujahidin.

Services Office
Camps and Fronts Command



AFGP-2002-000031-0011

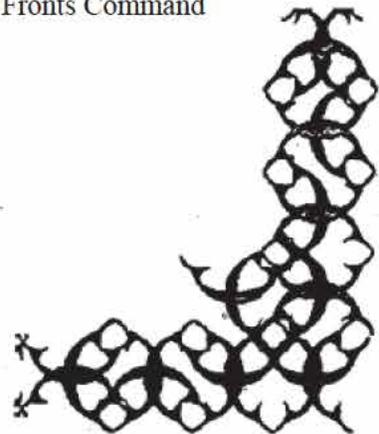


*In the name of
God, Most
Merciful, Most
Compassionate*

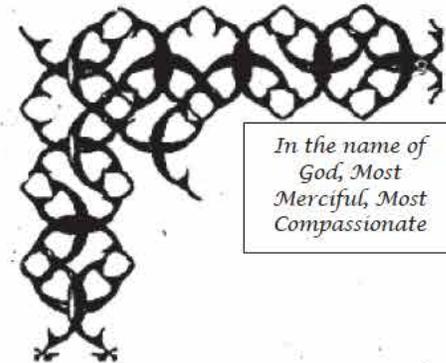
Third dedication:

To the leaders of the Afghan Islamic Jihad
Who restored Muslims' spirit of jihad after it was suppressed; who gave their full efforts-- of which this encyclopedia is considered one-- to the Muslim mujahidin, and who by their jihad laid the first brick in building a just Islamic Caliphate.
I beseech the Lord that He shall give you credit for all who benefited from this jihad in erecting the structure of the Muslims' caliphate, that He shall unite your ranks, and that He shall join your voices together unto righteousness in His ear, as God said in the Qur'an: "God by His Grace guided the believers to the Truth; concerning that wherein they differed. For God guides whom He will to a path that is straight"

Services Office
Camps and Fronts Command



AFGP-2002-000031-0012

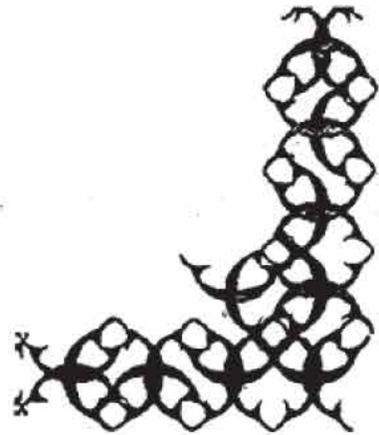


*In the name of
God, Most
Merciful, Most
Compassionate*

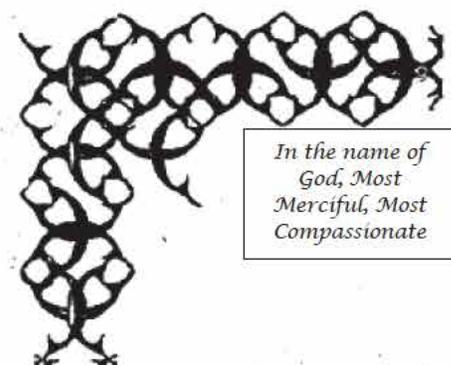
Fourth dedication:

To the unknown brothers who participated in producing this encyclopedia, may God add to their good deeds on the judgment day; reward all those who participated in translating, drawing, printing, writing, reviewing, preparing and collecting the material – or those participated with information from experience or photography or those who sent computers or supplied us with a book or a note or other things we forgot to mention, and to add to your good deeds on the judgment day.

Services Office
Camps and Fronts Command



AFGP-2002-000031-0013



Fifth dedication:

Gratitude

God Almighty says "Do not withhold from the people the things that are their due".

He who does not thank people does not thank God.

We thank the people and government of Pakistan for allowing Arab brothers to stay in their country and for their support of the Afghan mujahidin brothers despite the pressure from the enemy of God.

May God protect this country from its enemies and preserve it as a power for Islam and Muslims.

Services Office
Camps and Fronts Command



AFGP-2002-000031-0014

[TC: Blank page]

AFGP-2002-000031-0015

IN THE NAME OF GOD, THE MOST GRACIOUS, THE MERCIFUL

Introduction:

Among the causes of success, and at the same time failure, is the security factor. The more attention and consideration Islamic groups, organizations and governments give to this aspect, the more successful and strong they will be, and the less attention they give it, or if action with it is in error, the more failure and loss the groups and individuals will suffer.

Any Islamic group, no matter what it is, must give this aspect of security the maximum amount of consideration, as most causes of failure in Islamic activity are due to that work's severe shortcomings and shallow experience with security and intelligence actions. Our best weapon in our fight against the enemies of God, whatever kind of fight this may be, is security and intelligence. The more we keep our movements secret from our enemy and the more we know about him, the stronger we will be. God Almighty has warned us against our enemies and told us: "Oh ye who have believed, take all precautions!" God Almighty has also told us about this issue when he said, "The unbelievers wish, if ye neglect your arms and your belongings, to assault you in a single rush."

The sharpest weapons for any Islamic group, after faith in God and His messenger, are security and intelligence. The group that does not conduct a security check of all its members every six months, from the ideological, social and security points of view, is doomed to failure and ruin- even after a period of existence- or to become ineffective.

Any Group established today or in the future that does not make the security aspect primary among its concerns and first in its actions will be quickly penetrated, and therefore not achieve the goals toward which it strives. It will find itself to be nothing in the end, after wasting time and young men. The fact is that our fight with our enemy is of faith first and security and intelligence second.

The groups must think of new security and outreach methods in order to be able to face their opponents everywhere afield, not only within the country but rather transcending it to surrounding and influential countries.

We wrote this book in loyalty to our Islamic nation. We hope the Islamic groups will derive good benefit from it. It is the fruit of extensive reading of books that deal with this realm, of a breadth of expertise all put together in this book, and of efforts by brethren who are faithful to their religion.

I pray to God Almighty that Muslim individuals and groups will benefit from this book.

AFGP-2002-000031-0016

Security Rules in Islam:

1. With friends and believers, by the word of God Almighty unto the mouth of Abraham, peace be upon him, the Almighty said, "Hast thou not believed?" He said, "Yea! But that my heart may be assured." This was between Abraham, peace be upon him, and his Lord God Almighty, may He be praised. Thus how should it be between an organization's individuals and one group, and between groups?
2. With enemies, the word of God Almighty is a warning unto believers. The Almighty said, "Let them take warning, bearing their weapons: nonbelievers would, if ye neglect your arms and your belongings, assault you in a single rush. There is no sin on you if you have trouble from rain or if you are ill and lay your weapons down. Take warning, that God hath prepared for nonbelievers a humiliating punishment."- Sura IV (al-Nisa', Women), verse 102.
3. With all Muslims, knowledge is to be according to need. The Prophet of God- may God's blessing and peace be with him- says, "Enough of such sin, that one tells all he has heard." How many there are of prattlers in our Islamic society, and people who brag that they know everything.
4. Security education for Muslims, not wading into rumors nor spreading lies. The Almighty said, "If a matter of security or fear comes to them, they would make it public. If only they had rehearsed it to the Prophet and the primary authorities among them, for the knowledge of those who will uncover it. [TC: Qur'an Sura IV (al-Nisa', Women), Verse 83]

SECURITY AND INTELLIGENCE

Introduction:

Mans need for security is a natural instinct ever since man started to work to fulfill his natural or basic needs by fishing and hunting. He gathered all the necessary information about the animals he wanted to hunt in order to achieve his goal with the least amount of harm to him. He searched where these animals lived, how they fought, how dangerous they were, as well as their weaknesses, and used such information to fulfill his needs and be safe from the dangers that these animals may pose. This is illustrated in mankind's search for an outside force to protect him and give him a sense of security since the early ages and before the advent of the Prophets and Messengers of God. Thus his idols were many and various. When we read these precious verses, we may learn of the most prominent objects worshipped in the course of man's existence in order for him to obtain some security as well as psychological and material tranquility. Said God Almighty in the [Qur'anic] sura of An'am [Cattle], verses 74-81, "Lo, Abraham said to his father Azar: 'Takest thou idols for gods? For I see thee and thy people in manifest error. So also did we show Abraham the power and the laws of the heavens and the earth that he might (with understanding) have certitude.' When the night covered him, He saw a star: He said: "This is my Lord." But when it set, He said: "I love not those that set." When he saw the moon rising in splendor, he said, "This is my Lord." But when the moon set, He said: "unless my Lord guides me,

AFGP-2002-000031-0017

I shall surely be among those who go astray." When he saw the sun rising up, he said: "This is my lord, this is greater." But when it set, he said: "O my people! I am indeed free from all that you join as partners in worship with God. Verily, I have turned my face towards Him who has created the heavens and the earth, and I am not of the ones who associate another God with God. His people disputed with him. He said: "Do you dispute with me concerning God while He has guided me, and I fear not those whom you associate with God in worship. Nothing can happen to me except when my God wills something. My Lord comprehends in His Knowledge all things. Will you not then remember? And how should I fear those whom you associate in worship with God though they can neither benefit nor harm, while you fear not that you have joined in worship with God things for which He has not sent down to you with any authority. So which of the two parties has more right to be in security if you but know?" ... Abraham, peace be upon him, achieved this feeling of security with the help and guidance of God. As for the people who received the messengers of God, they believed in God and His messenger as part of their quest for tranquility and happiness in this life and the hereafter. God Almighty told us that those who do not believe in God live in constant fear and worry, and the believers are the only ones who feel safe and do not fear anything, as God Almighty told us in the above verses.

This feeling of security in this life and the hereafter is based on safety from God's punishment, which can only be reached with faith in God Almighty. Faith is the basis of security. Therefore we see that security has always been a basic need that mankind has always sought to meet. The wars that took place over different periods of time in the history of mankind are a result of his desire to be safe from any threat and make sure that everyone is safe. Security is one of the basic responsibilities of each individual and group, and the protection of religion is one of the first responsibilities of the Governor or Caliph.

Pharaohs were among the first people to engage in the business of security and intelligence as we define them today. We see that in the instructions Hourmahab gave to an Egyptian doctor named Sinhawi in the era of Pharaoh Amtahab IV, which was one of the oldest works in the area of security and intelligence. Peoples and groups have engaged in the business of security and intelligence since the beginning of time, but never reached the levels at which they are operating today.

SECURITY IN ISLAM

Islam has given security the utmost importance it deserves since the beginning of the Islamic message. The Prophet – God's prayer and peace upon him - called upon people to believe in God in secret for almost three years. We see that in his style of preaching as this is how he convinced his wife Khadija - may God's prayer and peace be with her- mother of the believers, and 'Ali Ibn-Abi-Talib and Zaid Ibn-Harith - may God be pleased with them- as well as the rest of his companions. We also see it in the way he decided to make preaching public when he picked the house of Ibn-al-Arkam- may God be pleased with him- to meet with his companions in secret. We notice in this choice, as Professor Munir al-Ghodban - may God protect him - says in his book "The Method of Movement", that al-Arkam was sixteen years old and his house was located in the neighborhood of Bani Makhzoum- which was Abu-Jahl's neighborhood – so no one would suspect that such a meeting was taking place.

AFGP-2002-000031-0018

We also see it when the Prophet- may the prayer and peace of God be upon him- ordered his companions to migrate to Ethiopia. We see it in the preventive security measures taken by the Prophet- May the prayer and peace of God be upon him- when he migrated from Mecca to Medina, as he took all the precautions that he could, including reconnaissance, disguise, concealment, and misleading the enemy until he reached Medina safe and sound. We see it also in the battles led by the Prophet- May the prayer and peace of God be upon him- as he also used psychological and information war techniques with Quraysh such as during the incident that took place with Na'im Ibn-Mas'ud when he turned groups of Muslims against each other. Although these security measures were not as sophisticated and specialized as today's, they were sufficient, adequate, successful and available at the time of the Prophet- May the prayer and peace of God be upon him - and his successors, may God be pleased with them -. This is a fact that no one can deny in good faith. We will also find in this book evidence of intelligence used by 'Umar Ibn-al-Khattab - may God be pleased with him- in the letter sent to his commander, Sa'ad Ibn-Abi-Waqqas, may God be pleased with him:

IN THE NAME OF GOD, THE MOST GRACIOUS, THE MERCIFUL

From the leader of the faithful 'Umar Ibn-al-Khatlab to Commander Sa'd Ibn-Abi-Waqqas: When you reach the land of the enemy, watch them carefully, do not let anything about them pass you by, and have an Arab advisor or someone you can trust from the enemy's land, because if you trust a liar, he will not be of any help to you, even if he may be telling the truth at times, and if you trust a cheater, he will be a spy against you, not for you.

SECURITY AND INTELLIGENCE TODAY

In the last quarter of the twentieth century, the security apparatus was developed and became specialized and diverse as to cover the four areas of security: political, military, economic and social. The intelligence services of the five permanent members of the United Nations' Security Council compete against one another to obtain the greatest amount of information they can use to protect their countries against any potential threats, and to engage in secret wars such as what was known as the Cold War between Russia and the United States. Such secret wars could eventually lead to military wars. The party who is successful is the one able to gather the greatest amount of information to strengthen its intelligence and enhance its security. Intelligence today constitutes a major weapon in secret as well as public conflicts, and a virus that has spread across all government institutions of every country, especially communist and one-party governments or royal regimes, because intelligence services are the sharpest weapons in the hands of corrupt regimes in most countries of the world, especially Arab and Islamic countries.

AFGP-2002-000031-0019

The most important of all intelligence work is the ability to uncover secrets and collect data about the enemy, neutral parties and friends, to do what armies cannot do, and to accomplish special missions to which they are tasked. Intelligence services in our modern era are institutions with enormous capabilities to do good and evil at the same time. It uses men, women and all kinds of people, sometimes in a dignified way and other times in an undignified way. They cooperate with all kinds of people from all social classes, including presidents, ministers, representatives, business people, rich people, scientists and religious scholars, using the highest and lowest sentimental values, the highest meanings of nationalism and the lowest kind of human seduction, and all kinds of allowable and forbidden earthly pleasures. They work on a principle by which “the end justifies the means”, even if they have to kill. Today, they stick their nose in everything and control countries. They intervene in countries’ presidential elections and designation of cabinet ministers, policy making and the signing of treaties. They start military, economic and psychological wars, and remove and replace heads of states.

The powerful countries have achieved amazing advances in specialization, pragmatics, means and tools. Each security apparatus has two missions: security and spying on the enemy. We can say that each state has two systems: one is a security apparatus to safeguard secrets, establishments and officials of the state from being reached or penetrated by the enemy, and the other is an intelligence system to gather information belonging to the other party in order to take advantage of it and find out their real intentions.

It is a fact that the President of the United States receives a daily intelligence briefing about the situations of countries and events around the world.

ETHICAL INTELLIGENCE BEHAVIOR IN ISLAM

When intelligence people read this title, they will laugh within themselves. Is there such thing as ethics in intelligence??? The answer is: Yes!!!

Islam made all Muslims security people who strongly hold to their beliefs, protect people’s safety and keep them from going astray. It is the job of every Muslim to change every wrongdoing that he/she sees, or at least tell someone who has the authority to do so. God Almighty says: “Ye are the best of peoples, evolved for mankind, enjoining what is right, forbidding what is wrong, and believing in God”. Therefore, it is the job of every Muslim to protect his society from any danger, and repair what has gone astray. God Almighty warned the Muslims about what they must do when faced with an event or a rumor whose cause or origin is unknown to them, as he says: “When there comes to them some matter touching safety or fear, they divulge it. Had they only referred it to the Messenger, or to those charged with authority among them, the proper investigators would have tested it”.

AFGP-2002-000031-0020

Among the Islamic ethical values in security, we find:

First: In Islam, the security personnel are there to protect the people as well as the rulers, whereas in oppressive regimes, their mission is to protect the ruler against the will of the people, be it a group or an individual.

Second: In Islam, the job of security personnel is not to spy on the private lives of Muslims, because God Almighty tells us, "Spy not upon one other". All intelligence services in the world do that to protect their country's oppressive regimes. The best example of such behavior may be seen in Russia and single party countries who force people to do whatever the intelligence services want.

The Prophet Mohammed - may God's prayer and peace be upon him - warned us against spying on the private lives of Muslims in the true Hadith narrated by Ibn-Mas'ud - may God be pleased with him - in which a man was approaching a group and someone said "Is this so and so, with his beard dripping alcohol?" To which Prophet Mohammed - may God's prayer and peace be upon him - answered: "We are forbidden to spy on each other, and must see only what was shown to us".

Third: In Islam, the need does not justify the means for security and intelligence personnel, because God has ordered us to be righteous in what we seek, but also righteous in how we get it. One cannot commit a sinful act for the satisfaction of God. Today's intelligence services do not spare any effort to commit ethical or political crimes, killing anyone, or to commit any sinful act in order to reach their goals.

Fourth: In Islam, security and intelligence personnel do their work knowing that God is watching them; they seek His satisfaction and pledge their loyalty to Him.

Fifth: Their work is limited to spying on those who fight against Islam and Muslims.

Sixth: In an Islamic caliphate, the security apparatus are bound by the rules of Islam in that they do not intervene with other states' business. Further, they are to be disciplined, being within the bounds of shari'a law.

AFGP-2002-000031-0021

Evidence from the Qur'an and Sunnah allowing the use of intelligence services, and what the companions of the Prophet Mohammed- may God's prayer and peace be upon him- did: We see such evidence in the following verses from Surat al-Naml [The Ants chapter], verses 20 to 26: "And he took a muster of the Birds; and he said: "Why is it I see not the Hoopoe? Or is he among the absentees? I will certainly punish him with a severe penalty, or execute him, unless he brings me a clear reason for absence. But the Hoopoe tarried not far: he came up and said: "I have compassed which thou hast not compassed, and I have come to thee from Saba with tidings true. I found there a woman ruling over them and provided with every requisite; and she has a magnificent throne. I found her and her people worshipping the sun besides God. Satan has made their deeds seem pleasing in their eyes, and has kept them away from the Path, so they receive no guidance, that they should not worship God, Who brings to light what is hidden in the heavens and the earth, and knows what ye hide and what ye reveal. God! There is no god but Him! Lord of the Supreme Throne!" We notice that these verses contain the following items relating to intelligence:

- 1- Confirmation of one of the principles of intelligence work, which is the gathering of information, as Salomon confirmed that the Hoopoe did what he was supposed to do, and sent him back to where he had come from. Salomon said: "Soon shall we see whether thou hast told the truth or lied! Go thou, with this letter of mine, and deliver it to them: then draw back from them and wait to see what answer they return"..."
- 2- Presentation of the gathered information "I found there a woman ruling over them provided with every requisite; and she has a magnificent throne. I found her and her people worshipping the sun besides God. Satan has made their deeds seem pleasing in their eyes, and has kept them away from the Path, so they receive no guidance"
- 3- Evaluating the information presented and deciding whether it is reliable or not: "He said 'Soon shall we see whether thou hast told the truth or lied!'"
- 4- Studying and analyzing the information and reaching useful conclusions.
- 5- Providing information to the leaders and the relevant authorities. As a soldier in the army of Salomon, the Hoopoe saw that it was his duty to report the information he was able to collect to his superiors – Salomon - peace be upon him - in this case – "...and I have come to thee from Saba with tidings true." Thus, we see how the Hoopoe was very careful in collecting his information, even if that meant that he was going to be late for the meeting he was supposed to have with Salomon, which was potentially dangerous for him since Salomon warned that he was going to kill him unless he had a good reason for being late, which he did.
- 6- Using discretion and surprise while collecting information, and relaying that information at the right time.
- 7- Using the valuable information collected to defeat wrongdoing and promote the truth, as God Almighty says: "Salomon said: 'Soon shall we see whether thou hast told the truth or lied! Go thou, with this letter of mine, and deliver it to them: then draw back from them, and wait to see what answer they return'".
- 8- Using money as a means to find out the intention of the other party: God Almighty said: "The queen said: 'Ye chiefs! Here is delivered to me a letter worthy of respect.'" God Almighty also said: "And she said to the sister, 'Follow him' so she (the sister) watched him in the character of a stranger. And they knew not. And we ordained that he refused to suckle at first, until his sister came up and said 'Shall I point out to you the people of a house that will nourish and bring him up for you and be sincerely attached to him?'"

AFGP-2002-000031-0022

This noble passage talks about the principle of data collection and how Moses' mother used it as a woman of faith against the tyrant Pharaoh in ancient Egypt. The verse illustrates the importance of this method used by Moses' mother to get information about her son and trace his whereabouts after she put him in the river, which evidently broke her heart.

I believe that the noble verses praised the method used by Moses' mother to get some news about her son, taking into consideration that this woman was guided by God to protect her son, who was to become His messenger to the Pharaoh.

Using this method, Moses was returned to his mother, setting an example to use in fact finding, tracing, and collecting information and using it in a productive way to reach a legitimate goal. To illustrate the meanings of these noble verses, we note the following:

- 1- The use of a data collection process by Moses' mother in order to protect her son, and she told the sister (of Moses) "Follow him"; following means tracing and collecting information.
- 2- Choosing the most qualified person to accomplish this mission in terms of trustworthiness and carefulness and loyalty, to make sure that the information gathered is true and reliable. Most importantly, she knew how to keep the information gathered from anyone else ("And she told the sister of Moses"). Moses' mother chose none other than his sister because a sister is expected to be careful and loyal to safeguard this interest, and she is naturally inclined to find out the facts and collect information, which I believe is a key characteristic of a person sent to accomplish any such mission.
- 3- Following and tracing without drawing anyone's attention. (Follow him), meaning "be careful and do not draw attention to yourself", and in fact, she was able to see him without anyone noticing her.
- 4- Precise observation and clairvoyance while gathering information ("so she (the sister) watched him in the character of a stranger. And they knew not.")
- 5- Moses' sister used a form of modern intelligence, called "mental subversion". After she saw that the wet nurses were unable to breastfeed him, she said ("Shall I point out to you the people of a house that will nourish and bring him up for you and be sincerely attached to him?"). This way, she would be able to take Moses away from the wet nurses and take him back to his mother without letting them notice that she was one of his family members.
- 6- Attempting to achieve the goal behind the collection of data, Moses' sister did not only find out where her baby brother was in order to tell his mother, but she went on further with her mission to find out more about what was happening, until she found out where he was and tried to bring him back to his mother, which she did successfully.

AFGP-2002-000031-0023

Examples from the Noble Sunnah of the Prophet:

It was narrated that in the second year after the Hijra, the Prophet Mohammed- may God's prayer and peace be upon him- dispatched a reconnaissance brigade headed by 'Abdallah Ibn-Jahsh with twelve of the Muhajidin to get some news about Quraysh, handed him a sealed letter, and ordered him not to look at its contents until after two days of walking toward a specific place. When he reached the designated place and it was time to open the letter, he opened it and read "If you read this letter, go on by the name of God and with His blessings, and do not force anyone of your companions to follow you. Go ahead with those who choose to go along with you until you reach a palm tree where you can see Quraysh's caravan and bring us their news".

The following points may be noted from that mission:

First: That this was a reconnaissance brigade, with a mission to watch the enemy, gather news of him, as used to be the case with other armies, or like the vanguard in our times, with its mission strictly restricted to watching and information gathering without coming into contact with the enemy. This is called offensive intelligence, whose objective is to gather data about the enemy solely for the sake of the Islamic state.

Second: The Prophet, peace be upon him, ordered that it would remain secret, hidden even from those who bore it and who executed the mission, out of fear that someone around him would come upon it, and there would be a newcomer, stranger, or someone with an eye of aggression toward Muslims, and they would thus be alerted to the matter and the secret would be disclosed to them. This is what we call today preventive intelligence that protects information and prevents leaks of same.

Still in the same context, Hodayfa was quoted (by a series of narrators stated in the Arabic source) as recollecting what happened to him in that very dark, cold and stormy night of the winter in the Al-Ahzab incursion, when the Prophet - peace be upon him, - asked if any one of his companions would penetrate the enemy camp to know what they were up to "Would any of you bring us the news of those? God may make him accompany me on judgment". "None of us answered," Hodayfa said. Then the Prophet, peace be upon him, reiterated the same twice, still with no answer. Then the Prophet, peace be upon him, called on Hodayfa by name, appointing him to do the delicate job: "Go there and bring us news of them without provoking them to attack us". "When I went out I started walking on tiptoe as though I were walking in a bath so as not to slip," Hodayfa recollects, "until I came across Abu Sufian. I wanted to kill him but I remembered the instructions of the Prophet not to "provoke them." Had I fired on him I would have hit him. When I returned with the news and delivered my task I started to feel cold again, so the Prophet, peace be upon him, put on me a cloak of his on which he used to pray, and from that moment I went into a deep sleep until I awoke upon his voice joking with me, "Wake up, sleepy."

AFGP-2002-000031-0024

From this example, we conclude that:

- 1- The Prophet , peace be upon him, was keen on his followers adhering to his instructions, and not to kill anyone unless necessary, as getting valuable information is very important because planning with sound information provides victory for armies.
- 2- The imam or leader must dispatch eyes and vanguard to detect aggression.
- 3- The reason Hudayfa was dispatched on that mission was to gather intelligence about the enemy and the conditions they were in.

Point of inference:

This Hadith literally justified military spying on the enemy. The Prophet, peace be upon him, twice and three times called upon his soldiers to bring him the news of the enemy and the fact that he chose Hudayfa for the mission is an indication of the importance of the matter.

The Hadith indicates that the eye is to be chosen from the elite, who ensure, for their part, that there is no treason, and who adhere to obedience and implementation of orders.

The fact that Hudayfa, the eye, did not feel the cold and fear while in that very cold stormy and dark night of the battle that makes most of us afraid of accepting the challenge of that mission, is an indication that God was facilitating his mission; an indication of God's blessing this endeavor of military intelligence. What proves that even more is that once Hudayfa returned he started to feel cold again!

Evidence from traditional reports about the Prophet's, peace be upon him, companions and those who came after them:

Leaders of various ranks paid great attention to intelligence collection on the enemy, his territory, and his military units. It was the commander of the armed outpost who was the man in charge of information gathering. Often the commander himself undertook information gathering, interrogating prisoners or cross-checking the information gathered from different sources for confirmation, then circulating the information as fast as possible. Commanders also used to exchange information among themselves and send a brief of the same to the caliph. So, with all gathered information from different sources made available to the caliph, it becomes possible to the latter to make the right decision that would then be interpreted into orders to be issued to various commanders. When information made available to the caliph or commander was not complete, he would ask his same generals to complete it, or ask other relevant generals of his on another front to make up for the shortage in information if the information was relevant to the latter's fronts, so that in the end the picture became clearer.

Here are some examples:

1. Abu Bakr Al-Saddiq and the Prophet, peace be upon him, went out to gather information about the enemy near Badr.

AFGP-2002-000031-0025

2. Caliph 'Umar Bin al-Khattab, may Allah be pleased with him, also recommended to Sa'ad Bin Abu-Waqqas to stop at al-Qadisiyah and not to go beyond it, and to send armed personnel forward (...once you reach al-Qadisiyah, your armed personnel would be at its breach point, and people would be between stones and mud – on the edges of stones and edges of mud.)
In other words, the Muslims' camp would be on the edges of Iraq and its plains, and the armed personnel would be at the forward reconnaissance posts because these reconnaissance posts are all part of one command.
3. Caliph 'Umar Bin al-Khattab- may Allah be pleased with him- also advised Sa'd Bin Abi-Waqqas to stop at Al-Kadissiah, not go beyond it, and send the armed outpost ahead. "...so when you have ended at Al-Kadissiah, your armed outposts will be at its breaches, and the people will be between the rock and the mud, right to the edge of each.' This means that Muslim soldiers should be protected from both sides by the mountains on one side and the muddy plains on the other, with only the van guard ahead and this being the only axis of communications between the vanguard and army commander.
4. Khaled Bin al-Waleed used to go for information gathering himself in the Prophet's time.
5. Ali Bin Abi Taleb is known to have said "Know that those of you who are ahead must be the eyes of those in the back."
6. Amr Bin al-'Aas once entered an enemy fortress in Palestine disguised as being his own messenger to the Byzantine commander, intending to gather information himself about them.
Abu Yusuf, a mate of Imam Abu Hanifa, said: 'He must have an eye-brigade of his at the outskirts of the infidel's land to collect information about those from the merchants and search the latter so that if weapons or slaves are detected with some of them those will be sent back and the weapons confiscated. And, those who of the merchants were carrying books, the books be read so that if some of Muslims news are found in any of these books, the owner of these will be sent to the Caliph to see what he would do with him.' This is what we call today 'Preventive Intelligence' that prevents leaks of information to the enemy. And so we found that Muslim leaders from as early as 'Umar Bin Al-Khattab pay attention to gathering information about the enemy, which is indicative of the rightness and importance of this effort.

AFGP-2002-000031-0026

Islam's Provision for Intelligence

Reasons behind Islam's interest in intelligence:

1. Because intelligence is an absolute necessity for planning and fighting. This is understood from the Qur'an "Is then one who walks headlong, with his face groveling, better guided, or one who walks evenly on a Straight Way?" The commander should acquire as much information as possible about the enemy's might, weapons, capabilities, attitudes, movements and intentions for correct planning.
2. Because intelligence is a constituent and manifestation of strength that Islam advised to acquire "Against them make ready your strength to the utmost of your power". The more you know about your enemy, the more this be to your advantage.
3. Because intelligence is a major requirement for military positioning "O ye who believe! Persevere in patience and constancy; vie in such perseverance; strengthen each other; and fear God, ye may prosper." So when you know what is going on on the other side of the frontline you will be better positioned and prepared compared to your enemy.
4. Because intelligence is an element of vigilance and alertness "Oh ye who believe, take every precaution for yourselves". Vigilance and alertness prevents your enemy from taking you by surprise be it in a traditional military confrontation or in the fight between Islamic groups and tyrants of our times. This can only be achieved by gathering information about your enemy, i.e., intelligence.
5. Because intelligence provides for warning when the general command manages to acquire information about your enemy's intentions and movements before they can be materialized so that proper preparations be made.
6. Also because intelligence is a kind of prevention from potential damages and deadly dangers; a purpose that can well be served by intelligence forces gathering information about the enemy and preventing him from doing the same against us, thus preventing the defeat of the army and therefore the nation. Negligence, on the other hand, and slackness in practicing security & intelligence work might lead to deadly consequences for the nation. The Qur'an speaks about the consequences of inadvertence and the heavy damages that might inflict on the Muslims "the Unbelievers wish, if ye were negligent of your arms and your baggage, to assault you in a single rush."

Qualities of Intelligence Personnel

- 1- Good morals, conscience, straightness, and integrity in order to be trusted by others and resist temptation "O ye who believe! Do your duties towards God, seek the means of approach unto Him, and strive with might and remain in his cause: that ye may prosper." Al-Fallah commented on three types of morals: morals of faith, morals of seeking the path, and morals of Jihad for God's sake.

AFGP-2002-000031-0027

- 2- Loyalty to the creed: and readiness for sacrifice any time for it. This is because an intelligence person is usually faced with a lot of temptation including money, women, position and a promising career. So if he is not loyal to his creed, he will be drifted by temptation and therefore become a source of evil to his nation. On the contrary, when man is faithful to his work in the serve of God and his nation he cares not about reputation and faces with death rather more peacefully. Abu Musa Al-Ash'ari quotes the Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, as saying in reply to a question about the motive for fighting: "the one who sincerely fights for the word of God to prevail is indeed the one who is fighting for the sake of God."

An example of sincerity in fighting solely for the sake of God, is that in the year 120 that followed the migration of Prophet Mohammed , peace be upon him, and in a battle led by Maslamah Bin-Abdul-Malik Bin-Marwan, a battlefield situation was created that demands a lot of courage as it was extremely risky where a hole is found in the fortress or the enemy that no one on the Muslim side dared get through except one who took the risk and managed to create a break though that eventually led to the seize of the fortress by the Muslims. The Muslim commander was, of course, eager to know who that soldier was but the soldier kept a low profile until the Commander called upon him by the name of God. Then a man came in claiming he knows the one who, he said, has three conditions to show him: that he never be praised to the Caliph, that he never be rewarded for what he did, and that he be kept anonymous. So, when the conditions were accepted he admitted he is indeed the one. From that time on, Maslama, the Muslim commander, was quoted to ask God after every single prayer he read to be joined with that soldier in the doom day!

- 3- To be a good secret keeper even before his wife, relatives and friends. The Prophet himself, peace be upon him, was known to be a very good secret keeper. This had clearly manifested in the capture of Mecca and in the trench incursion when trench work was carefully kept secret so that it turned to be a total surprise to the enemy. The Prophet's intelligence was indeed very successful on that occasion in that he knew of his enemy's intentions and kept the trenching work secret for the whole 20 days period that preceded the incursion.
- 4- Not to be reputation, appearance, or superiority seeking as this would spoil him and reveal his status to the people, which might lead to the disclosure of secrets, a mistake many men make in similar contexts.
- 5- A high ardor and ability to withstand hard work for a long time, which is an important quality for man.
- 6- Intelligence, spontaneity and proper reaction to critical situations. A good example of this from the Prophet's, peace be upon him, time was a companion of his, Hodayfa who got in the enemy's camp in a very dark night for news gathering. And when he heard one of their commanders Abu-Sufian warning his soldiers from eyes and spies asking every one of them to check the ID of who is sitting beside him in the dark, Hodayfa hurried up to ask (before he be asked) who was sitting on the right and who was sitting on the left of his pretending to be one of the soldiers. He indeed got answers and so he saved his life and managed to get back to Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, with all the news.

AFGP-2002-000031-0028

- 7- The ability to discern and balance between fact and fiction, and between necessary and the unnecessary information. An example of this was in the Badr incursion when Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, wanted to know who of Quraysh (the enemy at the time) came out to fight him, how many did they count and where did they reach so far. So, he dispatched two reconnaissance patrols, one of which knew from two women the whereabouts of Quraysh's convoy ('behind the sand hill', called 'Furthest Slop') and the other found two boys who came to claim their share of water at the well of Bard.
The patrol took the boys to the Prophet for interrogation. From the boys' answer to his question on how many camels Quraysh army was slaughtering per day for their meals (between 9 and 10), he inferred their count was between nine hundred and one thousand; which was just about Quraysh's elite whom he therefore knew came to fight him. And, he managed to know all that in the proper time.
- 8- Curiosity and ability to analyze information. We see that in the Prophet's question to the boys about how many of camels Quraysh army was slaughtering per day for their meals (between 9 and 10), so he was able to infer their count was between nine hundred and one thousand.
- 9- Good understanding of the nature of his work and how important it is for the organization and the nation. God Almighty says "and whatever deed ye (mankind) may be doing, we are witnesses thereof when ye are deeply engrossed therein". God's understanding of his work makes the agent perfect his job and do it wholeheartedly. This can be clearly seen from 'Abdallah bin-Anees' mission dispatch by the Prophet, peace be upon him, to kill Khaled bin Sufian Al-Hazli who rallied the tribes to fight the Prophet, peace be upon him,.
- 10- The ability to balance between the courage, on the one hand, and the cautiousness on the other. A man must know when to attack and when not to attack. A manifestation of this was Hodayfa's abstaining from killing the commander of the enemy when he took to the enemy's camp at night for information gathering. So, he weighted things up and chosen to be cautious rather than courageous.
- 11- To avoid as much as possible revealing his identity as a security agent and to get a proper cover for himself, as negligence here could make him lose many opportunities for success and disturb his state of mind on security risks. An example of this was the mistake made by 'Abdallah Bin-Qays who was sent as a vanguard in the Cyprus incursion when an enemy spy woman disguised as a beggar approached him for charity and he offered her some. So, she came back to her people and led them to him. When she was later asked what made her know who he was she said: He first looked to me a merchant but when he gave me the charity he did so like a king, and so I knew he must be him, 'Abdallah Bin-Qays.
- 12- Wide social experience, with the ability to deal with and sort different kinds of people. He needs to be well aware of social and political structures around him, an excellent adapter to quick changes created by various circumstances. An example of this was 'Abdallah Bin-Anis who was dispatched by Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, to gather information about Huthayl and Bani al-Lihian of the Hijaz tribes whom he knew very well because they were neighbor to his tribe of Juhina.

AFGP-2002-000031-0029

- 13- The ability to express his thoughts and information clearly and concisely.
- 14- The ability to tolerate others' points of view that are different from his, i.e., must not be a fanatic as this would lead to errors and catastrophic consequences.
- 15- Knowledgeable in his field, be it political, military, economic or scientific.
- 16- Very attentive to changes.
- 17- Dependability. For example, when Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, dispatched a reconnaissance brigade headed by 'Abdallah Bin-Jahash to gather Quraysh's news, he handed him a letter and ordered him not to open it for two days. So, when this period went by he found an instruction in the letter on where to seek information on Quraysh with advice that he should not force anyone in the brigade to go along with him this way. 'As for me', he said, 'I am going alone to execute the Prophet's order'.
- 18- Normal course of life. In fact, what made many of the Russian spies detected in the West was the luxurious lifestyle, they quickly set to have that because it was not proportionate with the one they have at home or in the countries they were spying on.
- 19- Humble and flexible, as arrogance and tough behavior are what characterize security & intelligence personnel in many countries so that they can easily be identified with an exposed gun, self-importance and exhibitionism.
- 20- Obedience to his commander/boss. Again, this can be seen in Hodayfa's case when he was dispatched by the Prophet to gather news on the enemy. Hodayfa was in so convenient a position in the enemy's camp as to kill their commander; literally so with the arrow in the bow when he recalled the Prophet's order not to create any disturbance out there.
- 21- Honesty: This is an indispensable quality for any intelligence agent. He must not hide any information from his command.
- 22- Patience: This is also necessary for the intelligence agent as he will have to be separated from his family for a prolonged period of time and must stand the punishment if captured by the enemy.
- 23- Adaptability to any society he might find himself in. For example, when the Thaqif and Hawazin tribes joined hands to fight the Prophet, he dispatched his intelligence agent 'Abdallah bin Abi-Hadrad al-Aslami to explore their intentions and ordered him to get along with them in two days and get back with the news. And so 'Abdallah did, as he so quickly managed to get to their top commanders, learn their plot and get back to the prophet.

AFGP-2002-000031-0030

- 24- Courage: An indispensable quality for the intelligence agent. 'Umar bin Al-Khattab, the second Caliph after Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, gave this advice to his commander Sa'ad Bin-Abi Waqqas: 'Select for your vanguard people of wisdom and courage and provide them with the best of horses, etc.
- 25- Knowledge of languages: The intelligence agent must know more than one language.
- 26- Experience and skill in doing the job and the more experienced the intelligence agent is, the more successful he will be in accomplishing his mission.
- 27- He must apply the well-known rule of 'observe, associate & conclude'. The security and intelligence agent must have much of these skills and the higher he gets in the ranking the more he must have of them. Direct commanders of security and intelligence agents must pay special attention to each member of their squads to understand his psychological condition as well as social and financial situation, to know about his problems, his past and future concerns and help him find a way out of them, in order for him to be able to perform his duties free from stress. Incentives do also help encourage people to do better in their jobs.

Importance of the human factor in security & intelligence work

The most important feature of the security & intelligence system is the high attention paid to the human factor in it. And, in spite of the huge advancement in science and technology that makes the comparison between human and technological intelligence means seem to favor the latter, the human factor is still decisive. After all, intelligence is mental warfare and all technological equipment used in it is but aids. In fact, it is not by pushbutton only that we can get intelligence. The integration of human and technological factors in modern warfare systems still places the final decision and control in the man's hands. This is very much the same in intelligence systems though with more focus on the human factor.

AFGP-2002-000031-0031

Punishment of the Muslim Spy

There are a number of personal opinions about the Muslim who spies on Muslims for the enemy's account.

1st Opinion: That he must absolutely be killed, just as in the case of combating a polytheist spy. This is to deter others from spying on Muslims - an opinion of Malik and some of his followers. This is also the opinion of Judge Eyadh of the Hanbali teaching.

2nd Opinion: That he be killed if he repeatedly and routinely spied on Muslims-an opinion adopted by Abdul-Malik Bin Al Majishun from the Malik school of thought.

3rd Opinion: That he need not be killed but rather censured to the discretion of the Imam (imprisonment, beating, etc.) This is based on the Prophet's approach to the matter in the case of Hateb Bin Abi Balta' when he was pardoned for he is Muslim and the killing of a Muslim is forbidden. However, he should severely be censured to the discretion of the Imam, such as long imprisonment or banishment to a location far from the enemy until he repents. This is the opinion adopted in the Hanafi, Shafeii, and most of the Hanbali Math'habs as well as some of the Maliki, Bin-al-Kay'em al-Jaouziah, and Zaydi Shiites.

Selected Opinion:

If a Muslim spied on Muslims for their enemy's account, his case has to be referred the Imam to see the proper punishment in proportion with spy's position and the damages he inflicted by his act of treason. If the spy failed to make his case and the facts were established that he did what he did out of pure treason for the interest and in support of Muslims' enemy, the Imam will be free to impose a severe punishment on the accused, which might reach execution. I am nearer to adopt Malik's opinion and his advocates' out of preserving the Muslims' general interests. So every Muslim who comes to know about a spy must report him to the authorities to avoid his potential danger and do whatever they might seem appropriate thereabout. God Almighty says "O ye who believe! Take not my enemies and yours as friends (or protectors),- offering them (your) love, even though they have rejected the Truth that has come to you".

If, however, there were some reasonable circumstances that pushed the Muslim spy to act the way he did, the Imam is not free to impose the death sentence upon him by analogy with Hateb's case whom Prophet Mohammed , peace be upon him, chose not to kill and Abu-Lubabah's case who used to advise the Jews in the 'Bani Kuriza incursion' and who, when asked by the Jews whether or not to accept Mu'ath Bin-Jabal's opinion about them, made a sign of slaughter by his hand. This one too was not sentenced to death.

AFGP-2002-000031-0032

Punishment of the Protected Non-Muslim Spy

Muslim jurists have three opinions about the punishment of a non-Muslim who spied on Muslims for their enemy's interest.

1st Opinion: That his protection agreement becomes annulled and the Imam is free to choose between three punishment options: death, crucifixion, or enslavement. This is the opinion adopted by Malik, al-Aouza'e, Ahmad (preponderant) and Abu-Yusuf.

2nd Opinion: That his protection agreement becomes null only if this is stated in the contract by way of provision. However, it is cause for punishment; a long imprisonment sentence as seen by the Shaafii and Hanbali (preponderant).

3rd Opinion: His protection agreement does not become null whether with or without provision in the contract. However, it is cause for punishment in both cases as seen by the Hanbali and some of the Shaafii.

Argument of the first opinion

- 1- Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, sentenced Furat Bin-Hayan to death, as the latter was quoted to say, when he knew he was spying on Muslims for their enemy Abu-Sufian. The person, a known non-Muslim under Muslims' protection, declared to some of the Prophet's adherents (al-Ansar) that he is Muslim too. So, the adherents addressed Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him: 'But he says he is Muslim'. The Prophet replied: 'There are people whom we refer to their true belief' and ordered to cancel death sentence. The argument here is that, the Prophet sentenced a proved non-Muslim spy who was living under Muslims' protection to death but when that spy declared himself Muslim the Prophet cancelled the death sentence. This indicates that killing of a non-Muslim who spied for Muslims' enemy while under their protection, which was indeed the case of Furat Bin-Hayan, is justified, which clearly indicates that spying by such a person is considered breach to his protection agreement with the Muslims and therefore cause for inflicting a death sentence, as cancellation of the death sentence came here only after the sentenced declared himself Muslim.
- 2- The spy is considered an eye for the enemy on Muslims. So, if this is committed by protected non-Muslims, it will be considered breach to their protection agreement with Muslims, part of the Peace Agreement entered to with them forever by 'Umar Bin Al-Khattab whereby they must not spy on Muslims. So with this agreement valid forever, there is no need to conclude another agreement with them on that subject. Accordingly, if a non-Muslim living in any part of a Muslim nation's territories is found spying on Muslims for their enemy, he shall be sentenced to death in order to deter others from doing the same.
- 3- In Abi-Yala's book 'al-Ahkam al-Sultaniah' [**TC: Rules of the Sultan**], protected non-Muslims must avoid the following actions that would do harm to the Muslims: '...to join hands for fighting Muslims, to commit adultery with a Muslim woman, to get to a Muslim woman by way of marriage, to tempt any Muslim out of his beliefs

AFGP-2002-000031-0033

to block any Muslim's way, to harbor an enemy spy, to gather and send information about Muslims out to their enemy, to kill any male or female Muslim. And, should he commit any of the above his protection agreement shall become null...

Ibn El-Qassem went as far as to believe that protection agreement will automatically become null by committing any of the eight actions.

So, if a protected non-Muslim spied on Muslims or harbored a spy his protection agreement will become null, whereby he be considered a foreign fighter and therefore be judged and sentenced by the Muslims' law of war. Such as being the case, the person will be treated as a prisoner of war and the Muslim Imam will be free either to grant him freedom, redeem him, crucify him or enslave him, all to the Imam's discretion.

Selected opinion: If the protected non-Muslim spied on Muslims while he is committed not to do so by virtue of the protection agreement, his agreement becomes null. And, if no such provision is provided in the said agreement, the same remains valid and the person is still considered a member of the Muslim society subject to the Islamic law. There is no concomitance between the crime of espionage and being protected non-Muslim to invoke breach of protection agreement. Spying for the enemy, however, is enough cause for censure of the spy by the Imam to the latter's discretion; which can be anything between banishment, imprisonment, beating or, if necessary, execution with this being Abu Yousof's opinion and because Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, sentenced Furat Bin-Hayan to death while he was still a protected non-Muslim, which proves that censure of protected non-Muslim for espionage crime can reach an extreme of execution if deemed necessary by the Imam to deter others from committing such a serious crime, whereby protecting Muslims' secrets.

Punishment of a Refugee Spy

1st Opinion: The Maliki came to believe that spying for the enemy breaches the refuge agreement, as this agreement requires that the refugee does not spy for the enemy. So, if he did his refuge agreement becomes automatically null. Hanbali too seems to be of the same opinion by analogy with the case of the protected non-Muslim spy, as the level of protection of the non-Muslim is the same in both cases. al-Aouza'i is satisfied with just discarding his refuge agreement and sending him out of the Islamic territories. So, he who landed in Islamic territories by way of a temporary refugee then proved to be a spy will be sentenced to death, unless if the Imam rules he be enslaved whereby his refuge agreement becomes null. This is what Abu Yousof, al-Aouza'i, the Hanbali and Maliki came to believe.

2nd Opinion: The Shafeii and Hanafi came to believe that spying for the enemy entails no annulment of the refuge agreement, with the Hanafi seeing that the spy would only be killed if the agreement provisions for it. Otherwise, he would be censured with imprisonment and the like.

AFGP-2002-000031-0034

Argument of the first opinion

- 1- Granting refuge requires abstaining from spying. Being a refugee does not imply or entail being spy either. And, had we not considered spying by the refugee breach/annulment of the refuge agreement, we would have encouraged others to spy on the Muslims and inflict damages on them.
- 2- By analogy with what the Hanbalis say about the protected non-Muslim spy since level of protection of the non-Muslim is the same in both cases. The refuge, therefore, is not allowed to harbor a spy for the enemy or help against Muslims by leading their enemy to them. al-Aouza'i, however, though of the opinion of nullification of protection agreement in case of spying, he here shows leniency with the refugee spy where he is satisfied with just discarding his refuge agreement and sending him out of the Islamic territories.

The Selected Opinion:

The preponderant opinion is that of the Maliki and their followers because the refuge agreement requires the refugee not to disclose Muslims' secrets or show their weaknesses, and by doing so the refugee would nullify his refuge agreement. So, had we not judged it this way, we would have undignified Muslims, urge others to spy on and conquer them and inflict the worst of damages to them. As such, if a refugee committed the crime of spying on Muslims for their enemy's interest, his refuge agreement becomes null and the Imam will then be free between sentencing him to death, enslaving or redeeming him as a prisoner of war, as after what he did, he would have no word to keep and consequently no refuge shall ever be granted to him.

Punishment of the Military Spy

1st: The rule:

Muslim jurists except the Hadawi are of the opinion that military and infidel spies be sentenced to death or, which is Ahmad's opinion, crucified unless if it is female as the female body is all loins and the loins must be covered.

2nd: Argument that military spies be sentenced to death:

1. Salamah Bin-al-Akwa' was quoted as saying: 'We conquered Hawazin with the Messenger of Allah, peace and blessings be upon him. One day while we were having our dinner with the Messenger of Allah, peace and blessing be upon him, a man riding a red camel approached us. He made the camel kneel down, pulled a strip of leather from his pouch and secured the camel with it. The man joined the people for dinner and was very curious. We were in a poor condition as some of us were on foot. All of a sudden he left us in a hurry and went to his camel, untied it, and made it kneel down, and then mounted on it and commanded the beast to take off. I followed on foot. I ran on until I was near the thigh of the she-camel. I advanced further until I was near the haunches of the camel. I advanced still further until I caught hold of the nose string of the camel and made it kneel down. As soon as it placed its knee on the ground, I drew my sword and beheaded the rider who fell down.

AFGP-2002-000031-0035

I brought the camel back along with the man's baggage and weapons. I was met by the Messenger of Allah, peace and blessings be upon him, and the people were with him. He asked: Who killed the man? The people said: Ibn al-Akwa'. He said: All the man's belongings are his.'

This Hadith is an indication that killing of a military infidel spy is permitted for what he gathered and transfer to his accomplices of information about Muslim's weaknesses with a view to cause damage to them. Therefore, we find some of the Prophet's quotes that support this opinion, such as, '...go after him and kill him...', yet Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, praises the killer of the military spy by offering him all of the killed spy's belongings by way of prize, which indicates, on the one hand, the danger this spy represents to the Muslims and that killing him is permitted and desired, on the other hand. And, as long as that spy entered the Muslim's land under no protection or refuge agreement with them, he would be treated equally with the foreign combatant who came to fight Muslims on their land. The Imam, therefore, is free to choose between killing, enslaving or redeeming the captured military spy.

The resort to lie by the intelligence agent at war: The rule

There is a consensus between the jurists as to lie at war is permitted but the differences of opinions lie in the purpose of the lie; is it intimation or deception.

Opinion of those who justify the essence of lie at war:

Lie is justified at war; openly or otherwise Al-Nuwawi is of the opinion that deception, no matter how, of the infidels is justified unless if it breaches a protection or refuge agreement. Deception can be by dishonoring a promise, equivocation, intimation or ambushing, or the like of war necessities that cannot otherwise be permitted.

Intelligence in war is permitted, and is more needed than courage. Bin-Malmunir was quoted as saying "Ideal war is but safe deception."

Also, Mimoun Bin-Mahran was quoted as saying "To lie in some instances is better than telling the truth, as speech is a means of meeting purposes." So, in the case of a good purpose, which can be met by telling the truth or by lying, lying is forbidden. If the purpose can be met by lie only, lying is permitted if the purpose is permitted and due if the latter is so. So, if a Muslim is fleeing a tyrant and telling the truth would cause him to lose his life, lying becomes due. And, if the purpose of the war, peacemaking, or winning over a victim (for conciliation purposes) can only be met by lie, lie becomes permitted

AFGP-2002-000031-0036

though with as much caution as possible in order not to slip to unnecessary or otherwise forbidden practices, in which case lies becomes forbidden.

Argument of those who justify lie at war openly or otherwise

1st: Bin Shihab narrated that the Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, said: 'I have never known a lie that can be permitted but in three instances: at war, conciliation, and married couple wooing each other.' This was narrated by Um-Kulthum too. However, intimation is rather more appropriate.

2nd: Jaber Bin-' Abdallah narrated Prophet Mohamed , peace be upon him, said: 'Who would take care of Kaan Bin-al-Ashraf as he has done so much harm to the religion?' Mohamed Bin-Maslamah replied 'Would you like me to kill him?' the Prophet said 'Yes'. So, Mohamed Bin-Maslamah was reported to have come to that man and kept trying to deceive him by pretending he is opposing the Prophet's teachings until he managed to take him under his control and kill him. In another version of the narration, Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, was quoted as allowing Mohamed Bin-Maslamah to tell whatever lies that might help him accomplish his mission.

Point of inference:

Understood here is that lie at war is allowed by intimation. The above Hadith had been carried out in the context of war, and even if Mohamed Bin-Maslamah was telling the truth, he had asked for permission to say whatever it takes to accomplish his mission and Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, granted him that permission to openly lie.

As evidenced by his narrations, Imam Mohamed Bin-Al-Hasan does not justify lie at war but rather intimation. This opinion, however, is opposed by so many true quotes of Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, which justified lie and deception at war. True, as it is, that Islam forbids lies and considers it one of the worst sins but nevertheless states some exceptions to this rule, i.e., when a good purpose can only be met by lie as in the case of war, as war is deception. Indeed, declaration of war means that mutual understanding between the fighting parties is no longer possible, so deception can be used in all its forms to take advantage over the enemy and destroy his might, which is a vital good purpose that outweighs all other purposes. The preponderant opinion is therefore that lie at war is justified and permitted as believing one's enemy in what he says is in fact deceiving himself. Churchill endorsed what Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, did thirteen centuries before when he said in a meeting with Roosevelt and Stalin to discuss war and the future of Germany that the truth is so precious that it should be protected by a whole arsenal of lies.

AFGP-2002-000031-0037

In conclusion, we choose to believe that lying is justified at war, openly and by intimation, though intimation if possible is more appropriate. So lying is justified for Islamic group members when intelligence forces come to capture them, as this would save their lives.

Surrender of the intelligence agent to the enemy: the rule

If the intelligence agent has become surrounded and realizes that he is going to die whether he fights or flees, he had better fight to the death as this way he would win the martyr's prize and escape the infidels having control over him, torturing or abusing him. He, however, can surrender.

Ahman Bin-Hanbal said: 'I would like him rather to fight than surrender'. It is very hard, but death is inevitable anyway. Ahmad was also quoted as he sees that the person should rather fight if he realized that death is in fleeing. Fighting seems to be Al-Kharki's opinion too. So it seems that, if the intelligence agent has realized that he is going to die whether he fights or flees, he had better fight, though he is not forced to. Abu-Hurirah narrated that Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, has dispatched ten intelligence agents, headed by Asem.

Bin-Thabit. The ten were then attacked by one hundred throwers from Huthil tribe.

So, they resorted to a hill for protection. The attackers demanded the surrender of the ten with a promise to save their lives. Asem chose not to, so the attackers attacked them with arrows and killed Asem and seven of his squad and the remaining three surrendered with a promise to save their lives, among them were Habib and Zayd who took the license. All ten were good and all were right. This is the Shfei's opinion.

In addition, if infidels set to fire on a ship with Muslims in, they are free to choose what they believe most probably safer; either to stay or throw themselves to the sea. If they see it will all be the same, 'they can choose either one', Ahmad said. Aouza'i said 'Between two ways of death, choose the easiest'. Abu-al-Khattab, however, said they should rather stay in the ship as if they threw themselves to the sea, their death will be by themselves while if they stay they will die by others'. From this saying I see that, if the intelligence agent realized he is going to die anyway, he should not surrender to the enemy as by doing so he would kill himself by himself while if he fought he would be killed by the enemy's hand. God knows the best.

AFGP-2002-000031-0038

The rule on the intelligence agent killing himself

The rule on intentional self-destruction:

If the intelligence agent has become surrounded and realizes that he is going to die whether he fights or flees, and if he does not choose to surrender, he should fight, as he must not deliberately kill himself, in compliance with the texts that forbid committing suicide. The Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, was quoted saying: "heaven is forbidden for the person who kills himself, and forever will he stay in hell."

In the Qur'an: "...And do not kill yourselves. Surely, God is Most Merciful to you. And whoever commits that through aggression and injustice, we shall cast him into the Fire, and that is easy for God."

This refers to deliberately killing oneself, warning those who commit such act that they will be subject to punishment, which points to the fact that killing oneself deliberately is forbidden.

The evidence from the Sunnah:

Abu-Hurirah narrated that Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, said: 'He who killed himself with a piece of iron will stay in hell killing himself the same way forever.'

From above evidences from the Qur'an and the Sunnah, I see that it is forbidden for the intelligence agent to kill himself if surrounded by the enemy. However, what will be his destiny in the other life will by God's will be decided; forever in Hell, torture for he killed himself according to Prophet Mohammed, peace be upon him, who was quoted to have said: 'He who slaughtered himself with something, by it will he be slaughtered on doomsday', or amnesty. However, it could be that forever in Hell for who he killed himself is meant to indicate a long period of time of torture rather than literally forever. God knows best.

AFGP-2002-000031-0334

- e. It is necessary to have natural covers around the building, such as trees and to provide adequate lightings for the entire place and around in order to detect any possible movement. It is important to have more than an emergency door.
- 3- Appointing a person to be in charge of the building and it is recommended to be the cell chief. Security must be very strict and accessing person must be determined by the organization and the security apparatus. All necessary work tools, must be available to enable create all required documents or which he might be asked for, and to print necessary papers.

Duty of the Recruitment Section

Members should not be over seven individuals and their duty is to recruit members to gather the required information. The person who refuses to be recruited or to cooperate will be placed under our close scrutiny and information will be gathered about him; his weaknesses used to control him and force him to give us the information we want or do what we want him to do. This division in the course of his work you might commit a sin so there must be a formal legal opinion that takes into consideration the circumstances of the case, such as taking a naked picture or things of that sort (of course, after getting the formal legal opinion).

Duty of the Assassination and Kidnapping Section

This belongs to the implementation section and its members should not be over seven people and their identity can only be known by either the general security chief or the general commander. This service is directly controlled by the military commander and its members should not exceed two individuals in every major area and to be directly affiliated with the main regional commander. Their mission is assassinating influential state officials or as the military commander orders but without resisting the authority. Regarding sudden and rapid assassinations, it is not required to be successful from the first attempt, as it could be successful in the second attempt. It is important to carry out the operation and disappear immediately.

AFGP-2002-000031-0335

Investigation

Definition:

It is the accomplishment and acquisition of information on a specific target during a certain time.

Types of investigation:

- 1- Normal investigation / criminal acts, robbery, homicide, etc.
- 2- Personal investigation of a specific target such as recruiting him to work for a party, to join him to an organization or a group, to register him, , or to locate him for a case.
- 3- Investigation of spies in order to arrest them, whether they were caught red-handed or not at the time of arrest.

Purpose of the investigation:

- 1- Obtaining information.
- 2- Combating espionage and sabotage activities.
- 3- Recruitment service.
- 4- Special operation services such as assassinations, counter-revolutionary acts, and coup preparations, psychological, economic, military, and political sabotage.

Investigation types and methods:

- 1- Examination.
- 2- Monitoring.
- 3- Recruitment.
- 4- Instigation.
- 5- Secret search.
- 6- Erroneous question.
- 7- Investigation and interrogation.
- 8- Infiltration and agent planting.

Investigation of individuals:

Gathering information about possible candidates to join the organization, and this can be done as follows:

- 1- Physical description of the individual from head to toe: height, race, color, hair color, strong, weak, slim, fat, and any distinguishing marks.
- 2- Habits and customs.
- 3- Full name, address and travel history.
- 4- Life style: childhood, friends, his reputation among the people.
- 5- Marital status: single, married, his parents, relatives and friends.
- 6- Profession and qualifications.
- 7- Income and financial resources and proportionality to expenditure.
- 8- Political background and party affiliation.
- 9- Other skills he masters.
- 10- Particular and distinctive habits, the path he takes, time he wakes up and the time he leaves for work, etc.
- 11- Best time to undertake a covert search.
- 12- Places that he frequents.

AFGP-2002-000031-0336

13- Examining his house with a detailed description of his residence.

Note: To make the conclusion easy, we must consider two main points:

- 1-** His suspicious communications.
- 2-** Based on the rules (Observation, links, conclusions, and the link between the information).
What do you think his job is?

Investigation of Installations:

Is the gathering of information about suspicious installations or covert activities being carried out inside them, and this can be done as follows:

- 1-** Interior and exterior examination of the area (see examination section).
- 2-** Nature of apparent job (the cover of the installation).
- 3-** Working hours (employment system).
- 4-** Employees and their number.
- 5-** Security and guard procedures.
- 6-** The most cover to frequent the installation, for example, it is common for a visiting teacher, a student or a parent to visit an educational installations.

Instructions on investigation of installations:

- 1-** All investigation on targets that are proven not to engage in covert activities must be stopped.
- 2-** If the existence of secret activity is proven, an adequate and joint plan must be established with the necessary parties to combat this activity.
- 3-** If the target enjoys immunity that prevents us from arresting or convicting him, he must be placed under overt and covert surveillance.

Investigation report:

- 1-** Date report was written.
- 2-** Date investigation was initiated.
- 3-** Investigation team.
- 4-** Subject.
- 5-** Sources of information and degree of credibility.
- 6-** Report subject.
- 7-** Comments, mistakes, or anything else that could be reported.

Investigation of military installations:

- 1-** Number of soldiers at the facility, number of platoons and companies, army officers and their ranks.
- 2-** Arms at the facility, quantity and type.
- 3-** Officers; their ranks, names, problems, and occupations.
- 4-** Buildings at the installation; their distribution, locations, construction quality (interior and exterior examination).

AFGP-2002-000031-0337

- 5- Interior and exterior examination of the entire installation.
- 6- Description of the weapons, types of weapons, caliber, ammunition, range and crew.
- 7- Artillery-related information.
- 8- Morale.
- 9- Fuel depots.
- 10- Logistics.
- 11- This differs from one facility to another, depending on the facility type and the type of the required investigation.

Recruitment

Definition:

It is a way to obtain information, and is part of the offensive intelligence more than any other. It is called (Infiltration), and there are some difficulties in recruiting agents in a hostile environment country, movement or organization. Recruitment has several stages:

- 1- The need.
- 2- Determine the characteristic an agent must possess.
- 3- Names of those that have these characteristics / list them.
- 4- Gathering information on all persons working at the target.
- 5- Selection.
- 6- Ground testing and analyzing the consequences.
- 7- Guidance and training.
- 8- Trial.
- 9- Control.

The most common recruitment method adopted by intelligence agencies around the world is to implicate or deepen the person's weaknesses, and thus taking control of him. On the other hand, revolutionary organizations tend to strengthen his strong points and improve his weaknesses in order to take control of him

Candidates for recruitment:

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| 1- Immigrants. | 2- Poor people. | 3- Smugglers. |
| 4- Gamblers. | 5- Brokers. | 6- Political asylum seekers |
| 7- Workers at utilities and airports. | 8- Workers at seaports and railway stations | |
| 9- Border officers | 10- workers at cafes, restaurants, and hotels | |
| 11- Students | 12- Partisan people. | |

Candidates' Motives:

- 1- Financial Motive (Love of Money).

AFGP-2002-000031-0338

- 2- Love of adventure.
- 3- Patriotism.
- 4- Intellectual and political tendencies.
- 5- Personal motives, convictions, crime etc...
- 6- Extreme sexual perversions.
- 7- Desire for revenge.

Preferred characteristics in a recruit:

- 1- Proficiency in foreign languages and general knowledge.
- 2- Trained and strong memory to memorize details and faces.
- 3- Mental ability.
- 4- Physical fitness, patience and courage.
- 5- Geographical knowledge of capitals and their famous landmarks.

Training of recruited agents: The recruits must be trained on the following:

- 1- Secrecy of work and ways of delivering secret information.
- 2- Camouflage activity.
- 3- Interrogation and counter-interrogation.
- 4- Ways of communicating with people, good manners.

Explain his assignment to him in a straightforward and precise manner

Note: Taking into consideration the lifestyle he chooses bearing in mind what is required from him.

Precautions in dealing with recruited agents:

- 1- Promoting the recruit and making sure he is financially set.
- 2- Making him feel that he is constantly protected.
- 3- Treating him like a friend, no harsh treatment.
- 4- Taking care of his family and constantly asking about them.
- 5- Agents are expelled by creating conditions that force them to resign.

Importance of recruitment:

- 1- To guarantee growth of the security services.
- 2- To guaranteed contact with the public and continued relations with them.
- 3- To penetrate the enemy and know his secrets.
- 4- To rectify the status of the organization due to infiltration from other organizations.
- 5- To achieve self-sufficiency.

AFGP-2002-000031-0340

- 3- The discontent with the enemy state (Opposition): Those who can be possibly used due to common interests, in spite of our differences with them in terms of principles.
- 4- Old friends who live in the enemy state: such as the remaining friends of the French occupation in Syria and Lebanon as those are considered French sources of information.
- 5- Embassies: Are natural centers for espionage and recruitment of spies.
- 6- Foreign companies: Engineering, construction and industrial companies.
- 7- Money or sex temptation: The temptation of offering a lot of money will make those who are pursuing money and the unscrupulous respond to recruitment offers. Poverty can sometimes be the reason behind that. Same thing can be said about sex for sex-maniacs, which is a famous method used in international espionage.
- 8- Incitement and intimidation: Then by selecting a weak point in a person to exploit and force him to spy on a specific entity. Intelligence party will obtain pictures and documents etc... to indict an important personality in forgery, robbery or sexual misconduct, then threatens to disclose this information or these documents unless the person agrees to cooperate, as well as threatening him by putting pressure on his family, wife or relatives by detaining or assassinating them.
- 9- By using women in espionage: British Intelligence was the first to use women in espionage wherein, they recruited prostitutes in bars and pleasure houses frequented by certain targets of importance. These prostitutes are trained by the intelligence to use the most obscene ways, to seduce the targeted person and put pressure on him to easily obtain the information. At that time, Cohen has used the recruited women in collect information about Syrian officials. Hotel servants, secretaries, coiffeurs and secretaries in official departments, embassies and banks are used because they can obtain the most detailed information. Many spies were recruited as a result of falling in love with prostitute spies.
- 10- Recruiting Youths: A special study was carried out by foreign newspapers and has indicated that, Israeli intelligence has been kidnapping youth ranging in age between 13 to 15 years, and enrolling them in special centers supervised by psychological groups (connoisseur) with the sole purpose of nurturing the deviation motivates of these groups, most importantly, the delinquency. They encourage them to drink alcohol, get addicted to sex and encourage homosexuality at early age, and then send them to join the Palestinian militants in order to be the spies inside the revolution. Palestinian security forces then discovered these elements and started rehabilitating them and accepting them to the militants groups after recovery. Some of those have even become martyrs in the battle field.

AFGP-2002-000031-0341

Selection of the spy:

For every spy mission, there is a particular spy with specific qualities, suitable to the assigned mission. Every spy has a specific role and works within its boundaries. If the boundaries are violated, he will fall a loser, and he will loses those who are controlling him. This is where skills of the recruiters are mostly manifested.

The spy can either be a local of the targeted country, or a stranger. In the latter case, more stringent requirements have to be met when recruiting the spy that would ensure his success. Following are necessary qualities of the spy:

- 1- Composure: So that he does not panic in difficult and critical situations, rather, acts cool, calm and collected
- 2- Spontaneity: So that he can respond properly to any question and situation, and to act wisely and without delay, upon any imposed position.
- 3- Level of intelligence: The spy has to be highly intelligent, particularly if the mission is complicated and difficult. Israeli intelligence used to recruit the outstanding army officers for espionage missions abroad.
- 4- Courage: Which is very necessary given the many hardships and dangerous situations the spy usually faces; He sometimes carries secret documents, communication devices, and passes through check points or casual inspection.
- 5- Has to be social and able to deal with people and adapt easily to the society in which he will be living.
- 6- Suitable physical appearance to the society that he will penetrate (skin color, complexions, overall features...)
- 7- Must have a weak point or a gap from which we can penetrated and exploit in order to recruit him and makes him work honestly for us such as: (His love of money, ethical conduct, sexual scandals, extreme poverty, extreme hatred of the targeted state... etc.)
- 8- He must be fully convinced or we would have to plant it, to achieve the utmost objective on his assigned task. We can convince him that he is strong. When he feels of the strength of those moving him and those behind him (to make him feel that we have the possibility to release him if he gets captured).

AFGP-2002-000031-0342

Training of the Spy

There is no doubt that personal qualities present in an agent, is not enough; it needs to be developed by training and practicing. Therefore, constant of excellent training should be given to the spy and final tests must be given to check his capability on spying to make sure he is well qualified for the job. The spy is trained on the following:

- 1- To conclude information from an event he witnessed or a scene he saw: For example, he would be entered to a room with various dispersed things around and requested to provide his room's analysis to (what kind of persons were in this room, their descriptions and their staying period, their intellectual level, etc.) and he has to conclude all these, through their remnants in the room such as (the number of chairs, cigarette butts, type of magazines left, shoes, etc.).
- 2- Memory exercises: These are the most exciting nervous exercises: generally, a film is played for the trainees then suddenly the movie stops and the trainer breaks in to ask about some fine details of the last observed scenes. The trainer may also ask specific questions such as, "mention ten things that were placed on the table to the left side of the actor in the scene that preceded the last one." This sort of exercise is used to help the new agent memorize photos, documents and maps, which form the art of his future job. The agent is also trained on memorizing information that is quickly displayed to him such as number, model, color and identifying marks of cars passing with a certain speed in front of his eyes as well as the people inside the car, a telephone number being dialed by another person without looking at the dial but from the perception or tone of or time taken by each digit.
- 3- Following individuals: Secretly without drawing the attention of others. Most often, he will first be asked to hunt a professional agent that tries to deceive him, while another one is monitoring his performance and reactions through the whole process without his knowledge.
- 4- To escape pursuit.
- 5- To detect what sort of a person he is talking to, through his words and without seeing him (to deduce things) or to what is called the sixth sense.
- 6- Support hardships and severe conditions: of chilling climate, hunger, thirst, irradiant lights, and annoying sounds, as he might probably experience similar harsh conditions. He might be detained and these procedures will be applied on him, to force him confess.
- 7- Self-confidence and assume responsibility in difficult situations, in order to overcome it and any emergency situation such as in the case of finding himself alone in a strange country without money.
- 8- Using devices and tools needed to realize his job, and ways of carrying, hiding and smuggling them and enemy's detecting methods (There is a device used by the Jews

AFGP-2002-000031-0343

which uses X-ray to detect carrying items, and a dynamite detector that detects the vapor of dynamite even if this is hidden in cases, etc.) Among the devices needed in his duty are: -

- a. Radio communication set and ciphering devices: operation and maintenance of the same.
 - b. Several photographic tools such as cameras big and small with and without zoom, day and night, developing of film, photocopying machines (Photocopy), etc...
 - c. Voice recorders and repair.
 - d. Several Eavesdropping devices.
 - e. Compass, maps and how to use them in finding the right direction.
- 9- Personal Camouflage and disguising of messages, carried items and all types of camouflaging.
 - 10- Codified conversation only when needed and it is also required to talk and chat excessively with the citizens.
 - 11- Be familiar with the customs and traditions, religion, language, dialect and other subjects of interests to the society like, sports, races, famous clubs etc... Russians had major success in this field and in order to spy in the United States, agent is trained on a similar atmosphere where he will be realizing his duty and for this reason, they established the so called "Mini America" on the Baltic Sea as an authentic copy of the United States and it was entirely dedicated for that. All those present will be practicing the same customs and traditions of the citizens, whether eating and even the dialects, summing up, when the spy enters this mini residence, he forgets to be a Soviet.
 - 12- Secret ink and the art of number writing, using the cipher in correspondences and communications, using microfilm or microdot, in which the document is converted into a dot the size of pin head that can be easily embedded in a letter or beneath a mailing stamp.
 - 13- Forging of needed documents.
 - 14- Ways to swiftly snatch handbags, opening of the digitally-locked models, and handbag switching.
 - 15- High fitness and stamina exercises such as Judo, Karate, Taekwondo, and other martial arts, get rid of weapons, jumping out of cars or to another car at a speed of up to (60-70 km/h).
 - 16- Using individual arms and precision shooting.
 - 17- Using explosives, and knowing their calculations and formulas.

AFGP-2002-000031-0344

- 18-** Knowledge of some other relevant mission matters, military, political, economic etc...
Tests are conducted after the training to insure the proficiency of the training and a score will be given and based on that, the spy will be assigned to the duty that best fits him.

The spy needs to get used to the followings:

- 1-** To destroy papers and documents quickly and appropriately.
- 2-** Avoid movements which will draw attentions.
- 3-** To avoid talking emotionally and enthusiastically.
- 4-** Avoid direct question about his needs.
- 5-** Do not provide the name unless asked and avoid replying wisely when necessary.
- 6-** To hide and disguise his working equipment and never leave or forget any trace after leaving work location even though if he was in hurry.
- 7-** To convince himself that he is a normal person and he is un-exposed or suspicious.
- 8-** To avoid alcohol and women.
- 9-** To develop his sixth sense.
- 10-** To live in harsh conditions.
- 11-** To memorize his made up life story so well and to be narrated as if he is telling the truth.
- 12-** To be accustomed to face critical situations such as (name resemblance) calmly and equanimity. May be carrying of several documents that confirm his ID (passport, driving license, identity card etc...) will facilitate that.

Remarks on how to deal with an agent:

- 1-** The agent will be assigned a specific mission and will be held accountable. First, he will be worried. If it does not interfere with his task, never mind if he receives additional information obtained outside his duty.
- 2-** Spy should be acquainted in detail about his mission and type; if it is military, then it will be possible to explain the task by using of polyphonic shapes and photographs ... but; if it is political, a complete study must be given about the personalities, political parties among which he will be working and its relationships with each other.
- 3-** We have to convince the agent that he is strong as the person working with him and recruiter (promising to try to release him if he is captured).
- 4-** If more than an agent is sent to the same country, they should not be introduced to each other whatever the circumstances are but, it will be possible that the head of the network could communicate with every agent individually.
- 5-** It is recommended in a country where there are several agents from different branches, if they encounter while performing their duties, to not meet or exchange greetings in order to avoid jeopardizing the mission.

AFGP-2002-000031-0345

It is possible that one of them is under surveillance by the country's intelligence and which will result for the rest to be put under observation for just greeting or standing with the watched agent.

- 6- Strengthening the relationship between the agent and his controller and to strengthen personal bonds to ensure a faithful continuation on the job.
- 7- If the agent is married and regardless of the reasons, it is preferably that he does not accompany his wife, because by staying away, will ensure the success of the mission. His wife should not be aware of anything about his assignment.
- 8- The agent should be asked to determine a location or permanent locations for contact when needed and an acknowledged stock exchange tip. It is recommended for the permanent place to be a public one (such as a café, a restaurant, a park, etc.) and at a fixed time of the day.
- 9- More than an agent should be appointed to the targeted country and all their received information must be combined and be consistent in order to know who is doing the job professionally and who does not (Method of the British Intelligence).
- 10- If the enemy tries to recruit one of our spies, then a trap must be made to hunt him down or to convert our agent after his acceptance and cooperation, to a double agent (Ostensibly) to obtain more information about what the enemy wishes to collect, his tools and recruitment tactics.
- 11- Studying the environment of the location in which the spy operates and his penetration to utilities, services and his efforts to recruit new agents to recommend their names to his superiors.

****Information about millions of Russians and foreigners (for possible recruitment):**

It is well known internationally that every intelligence service in the world has an archive that includes files of suspects, confirmed spies, as well as all perpetrators of espionage acts, all intelligence agents and the entire Ministry of Defense, for reference in the event if espionage acts be committed again. Archives of any other countries can never be compared to what the Soviet Intelligence archive has, the so called Moscow's Central Index and which is considered to be as the highest point of saving information of millions before the introduction of computers and any other electronic device. This archive and which is approximately sixty years old and which is the age of the Soviet Intelligence, contains the information of millions of Russians and foreigners as well. Many of the Arab worlds could be surprised to know, that their names are also listed in that archive, Moscow's Intelligence Index. For every name listed in this index exists a file that includes detailed descriptions on the person; personal composition and rank of each person who used to be a civil servant and who might have even the slightest amount of secret official information or anyone who worked in the field of weapons or weapons manufacturing, or had a secret profession that enables the person to know important information. This file also contains information about persons who have contacted anyone in the Soviet secret service at any given time or those with whom a Russian agent sat and listened to them expressing their preferences to the Soviet Union.

AFGP-2002-000031-0346

The Soviet intelligence service adopts a theory about the possibility of selecting the righteous people for espionage activity and to work successfully in any country provided that they have obtained all possible information related to these people. This is why the Soviet Intelligence, in all their issued orders to their agents abroad, emphasizes the necessity to gather all (detailed information about the life of the person) if his candidacy is to be submitted for approval. For this purpose, and in order to have a complete picture of the intended person to be recruited, Moscow will not be only satisfied with the facts; hence it collects and records everything that has been said about the person by others. In additions, to the names, nicknames, place & date of birth, the family, relatives, accommodation, work, etc..., the said index includes (photocopies) of personal letters and phone call recordings even pursuing reports of that person, as well as names of teachers, class mates, distant relatives, friends, male and female colleagues, names of restaurants, cafés, and clubs frequented by his friends on their vacations, etc. This rich information of the central index has frequently and successfully been used in the recruitment of informants and other agents. Indeed, there were many cases for many persons who visited the Soviet Union for a vacation or a business, even once, and found themselves cooperating with the Soviet Intelligence for even one time, after finding themselves threatened with the information results and scandals that the Soviet central index had on them.

It is hard for the Western intelligence to believe such things despite the document obtained by the Canadian Intelligence after their detention of the Soviet spy Gozinko: (The second Directorate of the Soviet Intelligence is requesting Ottawa's Espionage Network members that, with all those you dealing with, there must be personal characteristics and different topics when talking to any public servant, army officers etc... starting from the agent's own personal life, relationship with employees, his everyday business, in addition to other questions in the case of newly made acquaintances in order to know everything about them."

In fact, since the introduction of computers to the Central Index, and in order to keep the Index updated, the intelligence service is requesting from all to provide the following detailed information: -

- 1-** All embassies, heads of branches, resident agents, intelligence inspectors, are requested to clarify the following points when entering into agreement with a new cooperative:
 - a.** His present and former occupation.
 - b.** His possibility to continue in service (in the army, air force, marines, etc. and where).
 - c.** How long has he been in service and does he like his job and if he intends to continue at the job ...?
 - d.** His relationships with his direct bosses (trust, interest, etc.)

AFGP-2002-000031-0347

- 2- Inquiring some aspects of his private life:
- a. His age, relatives, marital status.
 - b. His education and what is the latest level he achieved before employment.
 - c. His main specialty and his private professional information.
 - d. His political opinions and party affiliation.
 - e. His opinion of the monarchy if he is a citizen of a monarchy country and the same for the rest of the organizations.
 - f. His financial situation and his material ambitions such as (opening a commercial office), to obtain a car if he is deprived from it, or buying a house to stop paying rent and what are the difficulties that stand in his way?
 - g. His opinion towards the Soviet Union and its policy?
 - h. Regarding his country's prosperity, where does he find it more appropriate (Cooperating with the U.S. or Britain?)
- 3- Positive and Negative Personal Qualities: -
- a. Inclinations to alcoholic beverages addicted or regular?
 - b. Addicted to woman or a family man?
 - c. Does he like to enjoy good things or maybe he prefers quietness and loneliness?
 - d. Is he or his business controlled by his wife or he is totally independent in making his own decisions?
 - e. Social surroundings in general.
 - f. A brief description of every person he knows, whatever his position is.

These questions have been designed by the Central Index's experts for the recruitment of agents and show their precise and detailed interest and weaknesses points in order to use them if necessary. After collecting this information, it will be sent to the Central Directorate of the Soviet Intelligence to be saved in the Central Archive. This global collected information will be saved in there.

Sometimes, the Central Directorate requests more information out of necessity. For example, Vladimir Petrov, the Soviet intelligence officer in the Soviet embassy in Australia, was ordered to gather information about the weaknesses of those capable of obtaining government information, in addition to their, religious beliefs and foreign relationships, and about their marital relations, or if they have (Sexual abnormalities), in addition to a description of their behavior under the influence of alcohol. It is well known that many of the Soviet-recruited agents around the world, disclosed or still undercover have been recruited by Soviet resident agents when they were faced with copies of their files at the Central Index and which was shown to them by those resident Soviet agents.

Below is a list of some Soviet agents who were either arrested or have fled to the other camp.

AFGP-2002-000031-0348

They have disclosed the fact that the Central Index is a confirmed reality and that; they have furnished their officials with a lot of information about them and their family members and friends before joining the Soviet Intelligence Service, these are:

1. Igor Gozniko: Cipher officer in the Soviet Embassy to Ottawa.
2. Vladimir Petrov: Chief intelligence officer at the Soviet Embassy to Canberra.
3. Nicolai Khokhlov: A special Soviet agent.
4. Alexander Khaznashiev: An agent with the Soviet Embassy to Rome;
5. and others, who used to work in the Soviet embassies in the "Free World" countries, as they call it and those who went to the West and disclosed several detailed information about the Soviet Intelligence and particularly, the Central Index. They emphasized to have provided the Index in general, true information about their lives.

It is possible to know how enormous the Central Index in Moscow and its capacity by employing two hundred and fifty to just enter the non-stop information. The majority of the employees are female intellectuals and who can handle the information without seeking assistance from additional translators.

On the other hand, it becomes obvious that the Central Index gets mostly the required information through several traveling comrades of the Communist Party and trusted by the covert staff of the Soviet intelligence.

However, gathered information is not immediately classified at the Central Index before being checked twice by many agents and several informants, accordingly as follows:

1. The gathered information is returned from Moscow back to other agents for verification and consistence.
2. If information was collected under the supervision of the embassy, it will be given to several agents and none will be aware of the other's identity. These agents will be working completely independent and after that, this information will be compared, verified to check if it matches the reality or if it has partial similarity.

AFGP-2002-000031-0349

Employment

Definition:

The employment period will start after complete commitment is made either by signing the necessary papers or by other documentary means such as filming or voice-recording but, will be subject to the followings: -

- a. He has to be completely supervised.
- b. It is recommended that his officer is different from his recruiter.
- c. It is recommended that the agent should be investigated occasionally.
- d. Tests should be conducted to check the continuity of his ability and confidence.

Necessary Qualities of the Recruiter:

- 1- Strong personality: Is not the comital hence, is the strong who can restrain himself in anger (To control the emotions).
- 2- Psychology knowledgeable, to study (individuals behavior and personal analysis).
- 3- Must have experience and security field preparation. (Has been promoted through the Hierarchy and not abruptly obtained).
- 4- Must be extremely concerned for his agent and the capability to solve work problems such as the deciphering as an example.
- 5- Not to be parsimonious in appreciating and praising the agent.
- 6- Must be capable of carrying out an amicable interrogation (Friendly Investigation).
- 7- To build a strong relationship between you and the agent.
- 8- Security has to be the main concern and has to apply always preventive security procedures on the individuals.
- 9- Always observe the agent's motives and have consideration on him whereas :
 - a. Search for the dominance method (Weakness point).
 - b. Investigation and renovation of the control method.
 - c. Do not allow him to feel that the control method is his motivation to work hence, work is more important.

Occasions to choose the recruit in operation

- 1- When there is a delay in fulfilling the tasks.
- 2- When a new member joins the network.
- 3- After terminating the service of a network member.
- 4- When any change occurs in the appearance and behavior of the individual.
- 5- When an unprecedented activity occurs.

Ways to Test the recruit:

- 1- By giving to the recruit envelop money more than once.

AFGP-2002-000031-0350

- 2- Requesting information which is already known to us.
- 3- Requesting known information about his closest friend or relative.
- 4- Letting him tamper with work papers (of secret or lower classified documents).
- 5- Monitoring him while on a secret mission.
- 6- Sending him a letter (telephone call) from an unknown voice to check whether he will report it or not.
- 7- Testing the influence of stimulants, drugs and alcohol on him.

Working Problems:

- 1- Personal conflicts between the officer and the agent is due to:
 - a. Difference of age
 - b- Field experience
 - c- Inexperience of the officer
 - d- Ideology of the agent.
- 2- Family problems that needs to be investigated to avoid exaggeration.
- 3- Emotional and sexual problems: prestige devalues of either the individual or group.
- 4- Loss of motivation problems.
- 5- Exploiting the training on his favor.
- 6- Care must be taken to the possibility that the agent could study the personality of the officer, terminating with the adverse control.
- 7- Loss of temper or high tension might lead to a mental problem, which requires leave.
- 8- Exploitation of available resources illegally.
- 9- Espionage, interference of espionage on the officer or the agent by providing tendentious information.
- 10- Indolence with the security procedures.

General Comments:

- a. Take in consideration the benevolence of the agent that, he is working for a country which is not his and it is illegal, which might risk his life as well becoming psychologically distressed.
- b. The importance of fulfilling his obligations.
- c. Reactivating motives from time to time.
- d. Always work on providing a minimum level of mutual confidence.

Ending the Agent's Service:

This can occur when one of the following conditions is met:

First: When security mistakes are repeated numerously.

Second: Inability to work, due to illness or changing the nature of work.

Third: When the agent accomplishes his mission.

AFGP-2002-000031-0351

Fourth: When the agent requests that.

Observations regarding employing the agents:

- 1- Need to know basis: which means that the person heading the secret operation should know more than those below him; this is normal, and is dictated by the nature of the situation and assignment. However, a clever agent with experience and proficiency will understand facts and details of some of the secret operations even though he did not participate in them. To avoid this problem, activity must be divided into small units and separated from each other; just like an octopus, where no arm knows what the other arm is doing, one will be searching for food and the other will be searching for information but, the brain continues running all these arms.
- 2- The relationship between the case officer and the agent: The case officer must make the agent feel that he is trusted, that the importance and nobility of his work is appreciated, and to show him that the relation is not financially based although financial rewards are important but they are not everything. The relationship between the case officer and the agent is the corner stone of secret operations. Therefore, this relationship must be based on trust, and respect should be added to it too. Promises made by the case officer to the agent must be fulfilled or otherwise he should never promise unless he is authorized to do so. As to the wage, the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, says "Pay the worker his wages before his sweat dries up".
- 3- Arming oneself with knowledge: The case officer must use every possible piece of information he knows to control the agent. Without this knowledge, it becomes difficult for the case officer to make sure the work is on the right track. In espionage operations, it is easy to ensure that all the organization's contacts with the agent are through the case officer, but that is difficult to achieve in conspiracy, sabotage, political and psychological operations. Nevertheless, the case officer must be made aware of every contact the organization has made with his agent for correct situational awareness on the part of the case officer.
- 4- The importance of communicating with the agent: Agents and case officers must communicate. Their meetings could be either in cinema or theater where the case officer buys the tickets and sends one to the agent and informs him of the meeting time, and then changes the appointment time to either before or after. Meeting can also be held inside a bus, a museum or an apartment. Also, he can communicate with intermediaries whose duty is just to facilitate the oral communication between the case officer and the agent.
- 5- The case officer must know the agent's motives and needs because it will help him have the control over the agent where he can balance between the agent's motives and his assigned duties. He must also understand the agent's background, his past trends, and the environment in which he grew up in. His emotional and living conditions have a significant importance.

AFGP-2002-000031-0352

All this information about the agent will be helpful to the case officer not only to control the agent, but also will help him plan and realize the operation. Agent's motives might not be vital in establishing the relationship between him and the case officer but can play a role in deciding whether to proceed with or end to the relationship.

- 6- Termination of the agent's mission: This must be done fairly in order to win the agent's trust in the system, and to win the confidence of the agent. It must be noted that any quarrel between the case officer and the agent is the worst thing that could happen in a secret relationship. The responsibility of severing an agent fairly and quietly falls on the espionage organization, not the agent. It is important to arrange his situation so to ensure him a dignified life proportionate to the services he had provided.
- 7- Dealing with the double agent: The double agent is one who works for two opposing entities. Care must be taken when dealing with this type of agent, and his true orientation must be determined. Knowing that, is considered as the most complicated issues in espionage; as it requires following the information trail, and the case officer must be constantly alert and detail oriented at the same time.

The double agent works in different ways: he may get arrested by enemy agents, he may surrender because he found a friend or a wife that he wishes to stay with, he may find life in another country more pleasant, his superiors may be mad at him, or he may be concerned for his safety for some reason. He prefers working rather than being in jail for several years. The objective is for the opponent to give him information and instruction that the other side could extract what the opponent wants him to know, and how to know it. However, the counter espionage could recruit other agent through this double agent, and could discover other agents operating on their territories

There is a double agent of more importance and value. He is the one who pretends to be working with them, and the game continues until the opponent starts to doubt their agent or until the agent gets tired and then the game will be over

Secret Search

Definition

It is a way of collecting information with the aim to obtain evidence (Documents and materials which can be used in secret activities, confirming or denying that the target had done secret activity). It is carried out in two forms:

- a. To obtain evidence after the collection of the preliminary information on the target.

AFGP-2002-000031-0353

- b. This occurs on a periodic-basis as a preventive measure if there are some suspicions in certain cases or on individuals occupying sensitive positions.

Requirements of Secret Inspection:

- a. Writing the plan: It consists of determining the beginning and end of the operation, the assigned team, and cover for time and place, specifying the cover for both time and place along with documents to verify the cover.
- b. Determining the first warning team.
- c. Determining the second warning team.
- d. Determining the task of each member of the operation's team, along with their responsibilities.

The Search Team is composed of:

- a. A specialist in picking locks and doors.
- b. A photographer and an experienced technician on devices and tools.
- c. Additional light source.
- d. Small empty bottles for taking samples found in the search place.
- e. Small empty pouches to place things in.
- f. Feet booties and hand cloves to avoid leaving fingerprints or making noise.
- g. A quantity of small paper clips.

Instructions on Secret Search:

First: Drop down the window curtains (if any) in order not to reveal the inside search operation to others outside (which means in-out monitoring) mutual observance.

Second: Determining search priorities.

Third: Take a sample of all the liquids and powders to be analyzed at the lab.

Fourth: Discover and avoid the tools which the target might use to detect the search operation.

Fifth: Photograph all documents.

Sixth: Put everything back in its place.

Seventh: Do not use any appliance in the house whatsoever.

Tests (Detecting) Secret Search:

- 1- Place a chair in a particular place in the room where its location can be determined (by centimeters).
- 2- Place a film in a closed place, and verify if it is working or not

AFGP-2002-000031-0354

- 3- Spray powder around the house to detect footprints, or spray it on the table.
- 4- Place a mercury drop on an object where it will fall if the object is moved.
- 5- Use a voice recorder that is motion or voice-activated (automatic recording).
- 6- Place a piece of pencil core on the door so that it will break when the door opens. This can also be replaced by spaghetti sticks, or rig the door where it will make a loud noise when opened. .
- 7- Place a piece of a pencil core vertically in a drawer so if opened, it falls inside the drawer.
- 8- Roll the curtains up and place two opposite pins so that when the curtains are closed the pins will be separated from each other.
- 9- Spray some dust on the desk so that traces are left when touched.

Surveillance

Definition:

It is the process of obtaining information by observing and monitoring a specific target's activities or idle time during certain times, and the development of such activities.

Surveillance objectives:

- 1- To confirm or deny any reported news.
- 2- To obtain new information. This is one of the stages of personnel security.
- 3- To arrest disguised individuals.
- 4- To get documents that can confirm or refute reported news.
- 5- To discover crimes before and after they take place.
- 6- Special operations services such as (kidnapping or assassination).
- 7- Counter-espionage.
- 8- Countering psychological warfare and rumors by discovering their sources.

Types of Surveillance:

First: In terms of time:

- a. Permanent surveillance.
- b. Temporary surveillance.

Second: In terms of method:

- a. Visual surveillance, by means of persons.
- b. Technical surveillance by means of TV cameras, etc.

AFGP-2002-000031-0355

- c. Eye and technical surveillances.

Surveillance could be covert or overt, and it could also be fixed or mobile.

Fixed surveillance: Intended for monitoring fixed targets under fixed covers.

Mobile Surveillance: Used for monitoring a mobile target for a specific period of time. This is divided into two parts:

- a. Walking surveillance.
- b. Driving surveillance.

First: Walking surveillance: It is recommended that surveillance team should meet the following requirements:

- a. There should be no distinguishing marks.
- b. Team members must be consistent with the surveillance area.
- c. Team should be self-consistent.
- d. Prudence and conformity in dressing to the area.
- e. Total awareness of the area.
- f. Intensity of observation and immediate apprehension.
- g. Physical fitness.
- h. Patience and possession of courage and determination.

AFGP-2002-000031-0356

Planning for Surveillance Operation

First: Develop the implementation plan: and which includes the following elements:

- 1- Date of the plan.
- 2- Determining covers to use.
- 3- Executors.
- 4- Technical equipment to be used.
- 5- Date and time of start and end of the surveillance operation.
- 6- Determining the location where the target can be captured.

Second: Identifying the suspect, either by a person pinpointing him, from a photograph or from a complete profile of the suspect.

**Third: Useful Equipment: The Surveillance team is provided with the following:
Agreed secret codes and consists of the followings:**

- a. Target is moving to the right.
- b. Target is moving to the left.
- c. Target has stopped.
- d. Target has taken a car.
- e. Target is lost.
- f. Target is revealed.
- g. Target has entered a place with two doors.
- h. Target has left.

Surveillance distance should be selected so that target can still be visible and communications signals between the team members can be exchanged clearly.

Examples of the Signals used in the Surveillance Operation:

- 1- Taking off or putting on of glasses.
- 2- Lighting a cigarette (in night watch).
- 3- Taking a handkerchief from a pocket and sniffing.
- 4- Tying shoelaces.
- 5- Taking a rosary or a medal from the pocket.
- 6- Placing the hands in the pockets.
- 7- Taking a jacket or a pullover off and throwing it on the shoulder or carrying it by hand (in hot weather).
- 8- Closing the jacket buttons or zipper etc...

Conditions that must be met in signals:

- a. They should be clear, simple, and visible.
- b. They should not disclose the existence of communication between the team members.

AFGP-2002-000031-0357

- c. Should not be suspicious to either the target or people.
- d. They should be suitable to the time and the weather. For example, one must not take off the coat in cold weather or look at his watch at nighttime but rather light a cigarette or take of a white (Hat) at night.
- e. Signals must not be homogeneous or resembling another, for example, the first signal, entering my hand into my pocket and the other sign, or take out of my pocket.

Used Technique in Surveillance Operation:

Comments:

- a. Using two persons for surveillance is considered as inferior performance than the one with three persons. While the surveillance team that consists of one person generally a failure in most tasks while the team that consists of three is the (Perfect).
- b. Signaling system is determined by the case security officer.

Ways to detect walking surveillance (Provisional)

Ways to detect walking surveillance are many and unlimited. They depend mainly on the location and time as well as on the ability to create ideas:

- 1- The target may throw a piece of paper on the ground and see who will pick it.
- 2- The target may throw some money on the ground and bends to pick it up while looking who is behind him.
- 3- The target may accelerate and then suddenly stops at the corner of the street. (Be cautious because such movements might be dangerous and should therefore look normal and should not draw attention).
- 4- The target may enter a blind alley to see who will enter it behind him (the one who follows him) or use shop windows to see who is standing or walking behind him.
- 5- Target returning suddenly on the same route (returning to the initial point).
- 6- The target may also cross the street while the traffic light is still red.
- 7- The target may take a bus or elevator and then exit or leave shortly after it moves.
- 8- The target may try to reach an exposed area with just a little number of pedestrians.
- 9- The target may ask someone to stand on a balcony and walks on the street for several times so, the person on the balcony could observe if the target is on surveillance or not.

Basic (precautions) for surveillance:

- 1- The surveillance man must avoid the following:
 - a. Abnormal movements that would draw attention to him.
 - b. To disguise in a theatrical or easily discernable way.

AFGP-2002-000031-0358

- a. To gaze in the suspect's eyes.
 - b. Exaggerating innocence.
 - c. Entering into dead-end road where he might be targeted.
- 2- When the mission is restricted to just one alley, it is recommended walking on the sidewalk to avoid being attacked.
 - 3- To examine the way in advance.
 - 4- To make some appearance changes to clothes while in surveillance.
 - 5- To be more cautious while doing surveillance in cafés and the use of traps unless needed and until he is close to the target.
 - 6- It is necessary to carry all documents that prove his ID and entitle him to walk in the area.
 - 7- To avoid doing anything that would make him prone to opponent security measures while on duty.
 - 8- To carry enough money and bit of small notes.
 - 9- If the suspect takes the same way daily, then the road can be divided into several sections wherein, it will be possible to continue the surveillance on the target on the remaining sections so; if he escapes from that section, surveillance will be available in the other.

Second: Driving surveillance (Cars):

The following conditions must be met for a successful driving surveillance:

- a. That the car be a good one of an ordinary model and to be as strong as that of the target and without an easy tag number that will be memorized easily.
- b. The car must have no accessories or light reflectors (it must be totally undistinguishable).
- c. Car lights must be good, and must be checked for gas and water before the mission, and the driver has to be skillful.
- d. Internal light must be disconnected so that it does not light up when the door opens.
- e. It is preferable to have a small communication device in the car just in case it is needed in emergencies.
- f. A light reflector should, if possible, be placed on the target car so that it can (easily be discernable at night).
- g. The typical team members is composed of four with the driver included and it is recommended that the car should have four doors.

Surveillance with One Car should follow the following instructions:

- a. The surveillance car should stay at a distance from the target car that is determined by the traffic and visibility, allowing monitoring of the target and his movement.
- b. If the target gets out of the car (or the suspect's car stops), one of the surveillance crew must get out of the car to monitor him.

AFGP-2002-000031-0359

- a. A team member could exit to monitor him on the curves.
- b. If the target has definitely left his car and proceeded on foot, the surveillance team should exit also and surveillance will change to walking style, while the driver stays in the car.

Surveillance Rules with Two Cars:

- a. Same rules of surveillance with two individuals can be applied here.
- b. This way can be modified so that one of the cars travels on a road parallel to that of the target while receiving instructions from the first car.

How Can the Target Detect Car Surveillance?

- a. Target will drive fast and make a sudden stop.
- b. To enter a side street and make a sudden stop.
- c. Target drives on opposite direction.
- d. Making a U-Turn.
- e. To travel in an S-like way.
- f. To make a turn around a building block.
- g. To enter a dead end road.
- h. To stop and drive backward.
- i. To enter a parking lot and exit immediately.
- j. To throw something and check who will pick it up.

General Comments on Surveillance:

There is a rule that states: how easy is it to escape from surveillance and how hard to run a surveillance operation.

- 1- Surveillance applies to installations and individuals but; focusing on individuals.
- 2- Surveillance relies on common sense and spontaneity; which is based on training.
- 3- The team has to be trained on surveillance and had practiced it before.
- 4- The surveillance team members need to know how to operate some needed monitoring equipment.
- 5- The surveillance member must be well educated as task successfulness depends on expansion and increasing of culture.
- 6- Observance of the golden triangle rule: observation, connectivity and conclusion.
- 7- Surveillance of the target could be run as follows: every brother will monitor the target for a specific distance and to handover to the other until the target arrives.

AFGP-2002-000031-0360

How to Escape Surveillance in Cities**Introduction:**

In secret wars, the jihadist is subject to be followed by authority or opponent gangs or enemy agents. The objective behind that is to discover important and strategic locations and positions, to arrest or assassinate the jihadist or to determine the communication network that connects the jihadist organizational cell etc...

General:

- 1- Method of eluding chase differs with the legality of the chasers' work and their possibility to use their legal authority right or lacking of such right.
- 2- Method of eluding chase differs with the technical and organizational level of the chasers; as the accuracy of wireless tracking devices becomes higher, evading success rate becomes higher.
- 3- The first principle in escaping a chase is to know the city where the Jihadist is located at. Its entrances, exits, streets, alleys, crossings, permitted and prohibited traffic actions, cafés, and "vanishing points".
- 4- Vanishing points for the driving Jihadist are the most crowded with cars where many streets and side streets cross and visibility is difficult such as underground parking areas with two entrances.
- 5- Vanishing points for the walking Jihadist are big stores with many entrances and exits, cinema theatres, buildings with many entrances, multiple lifts, train terminals, swimming pools, etc.
- 6- Evading a chase can be made in the following three steps:

First: Reconnaissance: This is a long and inevitable preliminary job aided by getting acquainted with the city and determination of vanishing points, and it is an ongoing part of the job.

Second: Making sure about the existence of chase (surveillance detection procedures or chase).

Third: Escaping: regularly, escaping is easier for the walking Jihadist (walking quite normally in the street and in usual clothes with nothing to draw attention). The logic applied to the driving Jihadist (a normal car, with normal model, color and license). It also applies to the Jihadist passenger if his car is of a normal color and a familiar model and regular license plates. However, the escape becomes more difficult than the chase if the target is distinct in a form of dress or style.

- 7- The Jihadist must avoid getting trapped in restricted/blocked areas because if the chasers have the legal authority and in this case, they can use their personal status to arrest him.

AFGP-2002-000031-0361

Escaping steps of the walking jihadist:

First step: It is reconnaissance of the city and determination of vanishing points and which we've mentioned above.

Second Step: To make sure about the existence of chase. We have also mentioned this in the context of talking about ways to escape the chase. There is nothing repeating some of these methods: -

- 1- Walk quickly then suddenly stop in front of a shop window and pretend you are looking into it then abruptly turn head toward the chaser or just look at his reflected image through the window.
- 2- Enter a café and sit down in front of a mirror that reflects the image of the chaser or directly in front of the entry door.
- 3- Act illogically. For example, go up on moving escalator and then immediately go down the opposite one without entering the store, or a lift, or crossing the same street more than once from one sidewalk to another.
- 4- Stop and pretend you are tightening your shoelace while you unnoticeably look at the chaser.
- 5- Throw something on the ground and pick it up while looking unnoticeably at the suspect, bearing in mind that there might be other chaser on the same or another sidewalk or both. The Jihadist must also pay attention to the possibility of a hand-over from chaser (whom he could have detected) to another one.
- 6- Use glasses with mirrors that enable you to see forward and backward at the same time.
- 7- Walk one way, cross the street then take a transport means in the opposite direction to see if the chaser will do the same or not.
- 8- The Jihadist must try not to break any traffic law or openly carry a weapon, etc. as this would complicate his escape regardless of whether the chasers have a legal authority or not.
- 9- Violence is the worst form of escaping a chase, so no one should use it except in extreme conditions.
However, this does not mean that use of force is totally excluded in chasing operations, particularly if the chasers have a legal capacity and the chased Jihadist is an important figure that must therefore not be captured by the authority and if the chasers were to use force during their chase.
- 10- When the opponent is chasing more than one Jihadist, those shall select the most important one among them and send him to safety while using some of them as a lure to distract the chasers from the main figure. The same rule applies when the fighting group of Jihadists is carrying important secret documents, in which case the one who carry these documents should ensure his escape to safety along with the documents.
- 11- If the opponent is technically or organizationally superior, he might use more than one group to chase a person or a group with some of the chasers is being driving and some others walking and communicating among themselves with the main base.

AFGP-2002-000031-0362

- 12-** The Jihadist must not make any movement that indicates his awareness of being chased as this will make the chasers tighten their surveillance measures, which makes the escape even harder.
- 13-** The Jihadist must consider himself chased continuously and act accordingly so that combat cautiousness becomes instinctive and natural in his everyday life but not to such an exaggerated level that it makes him consider every person is a spy/reporter and explain every phenomenon as if directed to him. Combat cautiousness is different from infatuation with the latter being more dangerous than negligence. The important point here is to reach the point of balance between the two extremes.
- 14-** An aspect of combat cautiousness is to observe the street from the window before exiting home, not to sit in a café or in the street, not to go directly to any place, and passing through one or more evading points on the way to his destination.
- 15-** It is a mistake to believe that secret police take only the appearance of normal people such as maintenance workers, drivers, service men in restaurants and businessmen.
- 16-** Advanced apparatus use women and children in pursue of chasing and which drives away suspicion away and which will mislead the Jihadist and will make him feel more confident and to find himself finally trapped.

Camouflage and Secret Hiding

Camouflage: these are procedures taken by individuals to hide themselves from the enemy while still being able to perform their secret (combat) missions. In this sense, every disguise or camouflage that hinders the undertaking of the secret mission cannot be considered disguise or camouflage.

Camouflage is considered a natural defensive weapon (preventive security) and is based on the principle of integration with nature. Camouflage can reach absolute (100%) hiding. However, no matter the level of Camouflage, it remains important and helps avoid being detected by the enemy.

Requirements of Successful Camouflage:

- a.** To hide from ground surveillance.
- b.** To hide from aerial surveillance (photography).
- c.** To hide from Monitoring equipment that detects heat, smell, walking sound, or blended vehicles chain detectors.
- d.** To be applied all along the secret operation, day or night, regardless of whether the enemy is near or far away.

AFGP-2002-000031-0363

- e. To be continuous and become instinctive for the security agents.
- f. To be done with constant creativity and innovation.

How to Implement Camouflage:

1. The grounds around should be studied (colors, reflectivity, size of shadows, topography and traceability).
2. Surveillance equipment used by the enemy must be identified.
3. The determination of the type of camouflage to be used taking into account how far and how close the enemy is. The further away from the enemy, the lesser the significance and the need for camouflage.
4. The nature of the target itself must be determined, as well as the factors that contribute to its disclosure to the enemy such (enemy reconnaissance, color, shape, glitter, shadow, clues, temperature, smell and motion (that can be detected by electronic surveillance).
5. These factors must then be concealed so that the target may blend in with nature to the greatest extent possible.
6. The camouflage must be maintained and enhanced with time.

Camouflage of Individuals Requires the Following:

1. Hiding the color of the combatant's uniform by wearing clothes with colors that match common colors of nature for example, yellow for desert, multicolored for rocky or planted land, white for snow, and black for pitch dark nights. Hands and face should also be painted black.
2. Using available natural material as well as grasses to distort outlines made by the soldier's gear (helmet, bag, etc.)
3. Masking the glitter of weapons and metallic military equipment by covering the same with mud or with other available natural materials.
4. Hiding your shadow by positioning yourself in the shadows or make the shadow fall on a straight place.
5. Hiding footsteps particularly when walking in mud, snow or plowed earth, by walking on the edges between two spots of land of two different colors.
6. Minimizing the noise of walking and digging at night as much as you can.
7. Minimizing unnecessary movement.
8. Taking proper measures to trick enemy electronic surveillance equipment that detects smell, heat, and motion.

Secret Concealment:

Definition, secret concealment is considered one of the most important communications means, and the backbone of espionage efforts. It can be classified into the following three categories:

AFGP-2002-000031-0364

1. Hiding by means of letters and information (secret ink and secret carbon).
2. Hiding in secret shelters (dead collection points).
3. Transportation.

What is meant by secret hiding is not camouflage but total hiding of the object. Here are the points that ensure the success and maintainability of the secret hiding:

1. Preference of choosing the means.
2. Choosing the appropriate way (practical) of hiding operation.
3. Nature of the means should be maintained before and after hiding.
 - a. Color should not be changed.
 - b. Neither the shape
 - c. Neither the weight
 - d. Neither the size.
4. To avoid scratches, holes, protrusions or any other changes to the nature of the means.

Requirements of the Secret Cache:

1. The place has to be proportionate in terms of size
2. Accessibility must be easy by its owner.
3. Inaccessibility to the enemy.

Ways smuggling information:

There are old and new (modern) ways of information like money concealment smuggling, electrical devices, plastic materials, or advanced secret ink. List of prohibited or suspicious objects in airports must be well studied (Permitted and prohibited lists) when trying to smuggle information through an airport.

Ways to hide Secret Ink:

First: If the secret ink is dry (gunpowder) it can be saved in medicine capsules and placed back in the original vial of the medicine that should be of the dark (brown) type; of course after emptying the drug from the capsule.

Second: If the secret ink is liquid, it should be placed in closed medicine vials with the cover of the vial being sealed with tin foil.

Before that, the vial would have been emptied of the liquid medicine, using a normal syringe after raising the top of the cover a little bit, then well cleaned with alcohol and distilled water.

AFGP-2002-000031-0365

Hiding a Film

Gelatin substance is the film component that saves the photographs. We place all this gelatin substance with all photos in it in Formalin, which makes the Gelatin substance melt completely, and the photography substance remains. This will reduce its thickness to a mere (millimeters), thus it becomes easily concealable in a small (cream) jar, hair cream for example.

Note: Formalin is the substance used for preserving corpses.

Postal Monitoring:

Instructions:

1. Postal monitoring is tightened during war time.
2. Postal monitoring is useful in determining the army's morale state.
3. The possibility of sending communications to spies by mail.

Postal Monitoring Challenges:

1. Numerous languages.
2. The huge numbers of incoming and outgoing letters.
3. The use of a third party.
4. The need sometimes for advanced and precise equipment.

Office of Postal Monitoring:

It consists of the following elements:

1. Appropriate number of adequate employees for the average daily incoming and outgoing number of letters.
2. Translators.
3. Explosive expert.
4. Photographers.

Ways of opening the letters:

1. By heat.
2. By Iodine bath.
3. By Ultra Violet radiation.
4. The use of modern technical innovations means.

AFGP-2002-000031-0366

Suspicious Letters:

Suspicious letters can be detected through:

1. The source of the letter and transited post offices.
2. Date of the letter.
3. Address of the letter.
4. Stamps and the way they are placed.
5. The way of packaging.
6. Subject of the writing (subject, numbers, and date.)
7. Quotation marks (exclamation or question marks).
8. The margins (large, normal, small)
9. The way letters are bent.
10. Attachments of the letter.

AFGP-2002-000031-0367

Assassinations

Definition:

They are military operations but security is their backbone, and they are carried out by the intelligence (Special Forces). To insure their covertness, they require precise organization and elements with certain capabilities that can form a special service that has nothing to do with other organizational matters.

Islam's Rule on enemy assassination:

Islam unequivocally permitted the assassination of enemies who have done harm to God, the Prophet and Muslims. And the proof is:

First proof: The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, said: "Who would take care of Bin-al-Ashraf." Having won the Battle of Badr, the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, dispatched Zayd Bin-Harthah and 'Abdallah Bin-Rawahah to deliver the good news to the Muslims in Medina, and name those of Quraysh who were killed and captured in the battle. When Ka'b Bin-al-Ashraf heard the news, he said: "Is this right? By Allah, if Mohammad has indeed struck down those people, then it is better to be buried in earth than to walk over it".

After he confirmed the news, he left Medina to Mecca and met with the Quraysh Tribe. He started inciting them to retaliate. Ka'b Bin-al-Ashraf was a poet so he wrote poems mourning Quraysh's loved ones.

Ka'b Bin-al-Ashraf then returned to Medina and started harassing and humiliating Muslim women. So the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, said: "Who would take care of Ka'b Bin-al-Ashraf?" Mohammad Bin-Maslamah al-Ansari said "I will take care of him, messenger of God, I will kill him". Therefore, Mohammad Bin-Maslamah, Abu-Na'ilah Salkan Bin-al-Aws, and Abu-'Abs Bin-Jabr who were all from al-Aws tribe, went out to Ka'b's stronghold and killed him, and then returned back to the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, and informed him of the killing, acknowledging the assassination of God's enemy.

And this is how not only the Prophet permitted it, he also asked his companions who would volunteer to kill Bin-al-Ashraf since he breached the agreement by his incitement of war against the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, and harassing Muslim women.

Second proof: The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, permitted the killing of Abu- Rafi' 'Abdallah Bin-Abu-al-Haqiq, also known as Salam Bin-al-Haqiq. 'Abdallah Bin ka'ab Bin Malik said: When the Aws killed Ka'b Bin-al-Ashraf for his enmity to the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, Al-Khazraj swore not to let live among them a person of such a hostility towards the Prophet. They mentioned Abu-Raf'e 'Abdallah Bin-Abu-Haqiq from Khaybar, and asked the Prophet's, prayer and peace be upon him, for permission to kill him, and he allowed them so. This was after the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, finished from the Battle of al-Khandaq and Bani-Qurayza's matters. So, five men were dispatched and they were: ('Abdallah Bin-'Atiq, Mas'ud-Bin-Sanan, 'Abdallah Bin

AFGP-2002-000031-0368

Anis, Abu-Qutadah al-Harith Bin-Rabqi, Khuza'i Bin-Aswad who became a Muslim and allied with Bani-Salamah. They left and The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, appointed 'Abdallah Bin-'Atiq head of the squad and ordered them not to kill any baby or woman in their mission. They proceeded till they were able to catch up with him and killed him, they then returned and reported the killing of the enemy of God to the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him.

Third proof: Salamah Bin-al-Akwa' was quoted as saying: A spy from the unbelievers came to the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, while he was on travel and sat with his companions, he then tried to flee. The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, said: find him and kill him, so I killed him and he gave me his belongings.

The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, requested us to follow him and finish him off because he harmed Muslims by revealing their weak points. He also allowed his killer to take his belongings, which is proof that it is permitted to send someone to kill the enemies of Allah and his messenger, and those who reveal Muslim's weaknesses.

Fourth Evidence: It was confirmed that the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, ordered a raid on Bin-al-Mustalaq because they were invaders and they harmed Allah, his messenger, and Muslims. He assigned 'Usamah, May God be pleased with him, to attack them in the morning and burn them.

It is indeed permitted to kill those who should not otherwise be killed such as priests and women in case of treason or if they were contributing to the battle even just by advising. So, if it is permitted, due to a treason or support of the enemy to kill those who should not otherwise be killed, it becomes rather more logically permitted to kill for similar reasons those whom they do not otherwise have such an immunity from killing. Acts of treason include monitoring Muslims in battle. From the above evidences, it becomes obvious that killing of non-Muslims or enemies for acts of espionage, treason, insult to Muslims or similar acts of evil against the Muslims is permitted by Muslim intelligence means, agents, or by any other possible war tool.

Another example is when the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, dispatched 'Abdallah Bin-Anis to kill Sufyan; the leader of Bani-Lihyan tribe who, after the Battle of Uhud, started to gather people to fight the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, and conquer Medinah. So, 'Usamah went to that man and, when alone with him killed him and reported back to the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him.

Qualities of the Assassination Squad:

1. Clarity of faith.
2. Physical fitness and high individual fighting skills (running, climbing, driving a car and motorcycle.)
3. Skillful in using kidnapping and assassination weapons.
4. Intelligence and resourcefulness.
5. Sense of security.
6. Very aggressive in nature.
7. Courage and composure.

356

AFGP-2002-000031-0369

8. Armed with a legal Fatwa, authorizing him to kill the wanted person.

Training of the team members:

1. The squad is formed of members that are hard to be recognized, of social perseverance figures and who are far from being suspected by the authority and who were specifically trained a dedicated program for this purpose.
2. The selected members are continuously trained in secret quarters on martial arts. Each training cell (team) must not exceed three in number. Their training program is the same as that of the security squads with more focus on trap making, remote explosions, practical training on killing by kidnapping individuals who are sentenced to death and let the assassination squad kill them, heavy training on gun shooting as well as on the use of light weapons and the use of poisons. Also part of their training is sport and physical endurance training with detailed explanation to the weak points of the human body, killing techniques by either gun, rifle, knife, hatchet, poison or by suffocation; an indispensable part of the special training of the assassination squad.
3. There should be a reading program at the security and espionage library also to watch movies and videos in order to polish and develop their security awareness such as the failed assassination attempt of de Gaulle, 21 Hours in Munich, Yellow Wolf, and real kidnapping stories.
4. To follow up with the news of real operations those are being carried out here and there for exciting the trainees on one part, and educating them on the other.
5. To Study the places around in the city and master their entrances and exits and the use of transportation means.
6. Training on using aforementioned kidnapping and assassination weapons.
7. Newcomers are trained to observe the operation as escorts or guards before they can be moved to the real execution work.

Note: Expansion of this section is not allowed in order to keep it under strict control. Anyway, the losses in this section are presumably lower than in other sections and therefore it would suffice to keep just a limited number of individuals of special qualities.

Ideal Assassination Conditions:

1. When the target is alone away from his escort and protection team.
2. When the target is away from home or office, where the protection is weak.
3. When the target is walking on foot in streets.

AFGP-2002-000031-0370

4. When the target is leaving or entering a building or the car as these are weak points for the protection team, particularly in the case of remote assassination.
5. If the target has a poor sense of security and is unable to distinguish between normal and suspicious movements.
6. When the target's movements are overt such as visiting a specific place, to give a lecture, or attending a conference.
7. If there is a sort of a regularity or specific system while traveling or in getting to a particular route to reach a specific place.
8. If the target does not comply with the advices of the protection team.
9. If the target opens his mail or the door to the guests by himself.
10. If the target uses the same places in his travels such as the same hotel, same airlines, and the same suite.
11. If the target meets people without prior appointments.
12. If the target receives his guests in his personal suite rather than in a reception room.
13. If the target moves at night.

Motive to Assassination:

a. Revolutionary Reasons:

It is where groups or individuals resort to violence to change a regime in power by creating a turmoil situation to isolate the ruler or the governor, creating disturbances and internal obstacles and crisis in front of any organization or regime. For Muslims, ruler should govern only by Islam laws.

b. Economic Motives:

Some assassinations will take place because some people think that the leader is responsible for the economic situation in the country.

c. Ideological or Intellectual Motives:

In this case, assassinations will take place out of ideological or intellectual differences such as, the assassins will think that the victim has abandoned the beliefs of the party or the organization or may be the ruler is governing other than what God has revealed.

d. Personal motives:

Such as revenge, envy, hatred, anger or other personal reasons that overwhelm some persons who are part of the operation.

AFGP-2002-000031-0371

e. Mercenaries' Revenge:

Where the perpetrator is an individual or individuals, living on temporary bonuses and there is a huge difference between the real motive and the disclosed motivation by the assassin because he always gives flimsy and fake reasons for his action, while the real reason was monetary.

f. Psychological Reasons:

Insanity or a serious emotional disturbance that affects the perpetrator...this is why attention must be made to completely exclude any mentally or emotionally disturbed persons when developing a safety protection program.

1- Mental disorders and they are as follows:

- Schizophrenia cases: these are characterized by a state of indifference, distancing from people, hallucinations and other mental disorders.
- Paranoia.
- Autism that causes the person to fall in highly violent behavior or deep depression status.
- Loss of mental capacity because of aging.

2. Idiotic Persons:

This is manifested in a state of loss of direction in religion or politics, some might also suffer from inferiority complex where the person may try to deal with high-level people or create impressions with them. He might also try to make up by writing to or meeting with such important personalities. However, the most dangerous cases are those with paranoia.

Assassinations:

The assassination is a surprising and swift killing of a target to put an end to his harmful acts against Muslims or for the purpose of deterrence of similar criminals.

Characteristics of Assassination:

1. Deterrence.
2. Surprise.
3. Fast and calm in the implementation.
4. Secrecy in plotting, selection of execution team, training and implementation.

Phases:

Assassination Plan:

1. Determination of the target.

AFGP-2002-000031-0372

2. Performing sufficient reconnaissance of the target (examination, surveillance, secret search, etc.) and the most important part is the reconnaissance because it determines how assassination should be conducted, retreat methods, and necessary tools... etc.
3. Determining the assassination method.
4. Implementation.
5. Withdrawal process.

Reconnaissance process:

It covers: His movements, his fixed and changing appointments, his residence, the path he takes, his thoughts, his character, his relationships, his fixed and changing weaknesses, in addition to monitoring him closely. For example, most of these figures have inappropriate intimate relationships or frequent some places where they would not like to be seen by people. This is usually their weak point because their security is at minimum.

Surveillance is an art in on itself. You should get close to the target or even establish a relationship with him if possible, and if possible, let the executor in on the reconnaissance part even if only in the last stages.

Execution:

Assassination can be executed in the following ways:

First: Remote assassination by silent sniping for example, or timed or wireless detonation.

Second: Direct individual assassination: where the executor will assassinate the target while accompanied by one or two members for protection.

Third: Group assassination: such as ambushing the target's car, attacking his home or his work place.

The safest method is the first, then comes the second because the possible losses are most probably less than that of third method but. God knows.

In general, assassination operations require a specially qualified person. He must be a talented terrorist, and after a number of operations, the executor becomes a professional. That is usually after conducting three assassinations and one kidnapping (first class specialist can also be appointed to head some assassination cells).

Assassination Tools:

- a. Using a weapon at a close distance: The most common operations are close distance using a pistol or a knife.
- b. Explosives: This was a common way among killers but lately booby-trapped packages or letters became a successful assassination method.

AFGP-2002-000031-0373

- c. Long-range weapons: also a known method of assassination, using sniper rifle equipped with a telescope and which is widely used in hunting. In addition bazooka, directed rocket, hunting rifles and machine guns, can also be used.
- d. Poison or chemicals that can cause heart attacks.
- e. Direct attack method: such as in an ambush, attacking the car of the target, surrounding it and swiftly attacking the target inside.
- f. Other type of weapons can be used such as, radioactive materials, laser, poison gases, and others.

It should be kept in mind that people who are living in violent circumstances will not care if other people get killed or injured in the attack.

Killers use different ways to reach their victims. One of their most used approaches is to create a side-event like a fire or a quarrel in the street to divert the attention of the protection team of the target so that they can easily reach to their objectives. Therefore, the protection team must not be deceived by this approach and let others take care of such side events.

Kidnapping

It is done to force an opponent entity to yield to the Jihadists' wishes and demands given the importance of the kidnapped person or this entity, or to get information from the kidnapped before killing or releasing him depending on which is better for the Jihadists' interests. This is a more difficult operation than assassination and needs more reconnaissance and surveillance.

Kinds of kidnapping:

1. **Covert:** This is the safest and less dangerous kind of kidnapping where the kidnapped is moved to a prison without the authority's knowledge.
2. **Overt:** Where kidnappers seize the target overtly and the authorities come to surround the place and negotiations are carried out. This is often difficult because tyrant authorities often resort to deception and eventually attack the kidnappers. Here, attention must be paid to a number of points:
 - I. Seizing of the hostages must not take long, so killing of hostages one by one must start on the first signs of deception or procrastination by the authorities. This is to show how serious the kidnappers are in this and demands in future kidnapping events by the Jihadist must therefore be met immediately.

AFGP-2002-000031-0374

- II.** Attention must be given when releasing some hostages (kids and women could reveal all information).
- III.** Special attention must be given to the negotiation team and the possibility of transferring secrets of kidnappers' safeguards, their number and weapons.
- IV.** Attention must be paid to the food the workers bring in. Have the workers eat first, then the hostages, and finally the kidnappers after taking all measures.
- V.** Procrastination on the part of the authorities means that they intend not to meet the kidnappers' demands, or are planning for an attack.
- VI.** To be attentive to a sudden attack which might be done by concussion grenades, leaving both hostages and kidnappers temporarily unconscious, and allowing them to take control of the place (location), and then releasing the hostages and arresting the kidnappers. Poisonous gases or narcotics can be used.
- VII.** It would be useful to have some explosives that can be detonated easily in case of a sudden attack that may prevent the kidnapers from killing their hostages.

In the case of secret kidnapping, attention must be paid to the following points:

- 1.** Securing the prison where the target will be held. It is recommended to transfer him to another city or to the countryside to avoid being monitored by the authorities.
- 2.** Extreme cautions must be taken during communications and negotiations for the ransom as the ransom could contain a wireless tracking device that could help authorities locate the kidnappers. Therefore, the ransom must be covered with a metallic layer to prevent radio transmission...

AFGP-2002-000031-0375

Security considerations of assassination operation

1. A "Fatwa" must be issued to assassinate the designated person that is wanted by the supreme command, in which justifications from the Shar'ia are clearly stated as well as the reasons for assassination.
2. A security officer from our brothers studies the entire operation and prepares the plan accordingly. God knows, it is possible to add or deduct.
3. Selection of the executors in accordance to their assigned roles, and their capabilities must qualify them to carry out their specific part of the mission.
4. None of the assigned brothers for the operation should know anything about the role of others unless they work together.
 - Determining the type of cover for each part of the operation.
 - Determining the brothers tasked with any type of cover.
 * Setting up communications means and specifying the main, alternate, and emergency mailboxes, and training on the communication devices that will be used.
5. Once the "Fatwa" is issued and received, the budget of the operation must be determined.
6. Also to be determined is the finances of the operation, which covers:
 - a. Implementation of the covers.
 - b. Implementation of each step of the operation.
7. Persons who will finance the operation need to be determined; whether inside or outside the country, particularly the implementation of covers.
8. The best way to fund an operation is for each coordinator of part of the operation to have his own funds (in cash), and he consequently fund those working for him.
9. A time frame should be stated for each part of the assassination operation, with the flexibility to increase or reduce from the schedule.
10. Start date for the preparation should be determined.
11. Receiving the final report of each part of the mission. .
12. Start and duration of implementation phase has to be determined, according to the implementation method.
13. Training well on execution.
14. Considering the possibility that the operation might be cancelled.
15. Specifying the reason that may lead to the operation's cancellation.
16. Determining the ways to get to the executors.
17. Determining the main, alternative and backup ways of withdrawal
18. Specifying the means to use in the main and alternate withdrawal plans.
19. Receiving the final report of the operation whether it succeeded or failed.
20. The entire execution operation must be carefully studied, analyzed, criticized, and recommendations if any provided.
21. A report must be submitted in regard to operation progress, along with a study, analysis, criticism, and recommendations.
22. Each brother should report his part of the operation.

AFGP-2002-000031-0376

23. The brother responsible of the whole operation, should discuss, analyze and criticize with each brother if circumstances allow that to happen.
24. Should the circumstances not allow such a discussion, the brother in charge of the whole operation should report it to the Security Section of the Organization.

Parts of the Operation:**Part One:** Financing

Determination of the financing person or entity: this party must be trusted and must not know anything about the target. Budget of the operation should be handed over in full to the brother who is in charge of the operation and it should not be divided in stages but it must be handed over completely to the person in charge of the operation fearing from the eruption of an emergency situation that could disrupt the funding process. The person in charge of the operation should not be aware of the financing party.

Part Two: Examination of the places where covers are to be established.

This, of course, precedes the establishment of the cover areas (see preview).

Part Three: Establishment of all required covers for the entire operation.**Part Four:** Examination of the operation areas.

Review of the places where the assassination will take place. The inspection will include the assassination location of the person or persons. Determining the shooting distance in the case of a sniper, as well as the place where the weapons, ammunition and lenses will be placed before and after use. If the assassination is planned by mortar, then the fire angle should be determined as well as shelling coordinates by examining the place of the observer and place where the mortar and ammunition will be hidden. This job will be done by two persons unknown to each other and one of them will be the observer.

Nobody but the shooter and the observer will be there at the time of execution and after gathering all needed information; these two will be trained on the technicalities of execution (shooting distance, angle, coordinates, etc.) in a similar environment. The shooter and the observer should also be trained on how to access and exit the place of execution, and how to execute the operation and all that they should do thereafter including the roads/ways they will take. In brief, everything should be calculated and explained precisely with training having to cover everything from the time they are transported to the place of execution to the time of getting them out from the country. At the start, the shooter and the observer (who do not know each other) both will be transported separately to the place of execution and will start to communicate among them according to the communication part of the plan (time, duration, means, etc.)

Part Five: Gathering and verifying all possible information on the wanted target.**Part Six:** Monitoring the wanted target whether individual or a gathering. See the preview section.**Part Seven:** Preparation of the shooting place whether for the sniper, such as opening a small space or preparing a cemented foundation with a small iron base for the mortar. The mortar will be placed in it, if base plate cannot be transported.

AFGP-2002-000031-0377

Part Eight: The transferring of weapon and ammunition group whether sniper or mortar. This group needs to have precise information on where the weapon will be hidden (clear indications of the place), or maybe someone else will take the weapon and carry it to the intended place, in which case precise timing will be necessary so as this person will not meet with the other.

If the weapon has to be bought or stolen, it must be someone else to do this job. The person in charge of this part of this operation should instruct the buying operation.

Part Nine: The brother assigned to handle the communication equipment and defines the communication code for the entire operation, will be responsible to connect the person in charge of the whole operation and everyone else.

Part Ten: Covering and hiding, to be taken care of by a group of persons with a specific task assigned to each one of them. Following are some of the typical tasks of this group:

- a. Their responsibility is to transport the shooter and the observer out of the operation area after execution to 2 km within the first 3 minutes from end of execution and to 5 km within 8 minutes from execution then to the nearest travel agent within 10 minutes. In case the airport is near, they must be at the departure lounge in 15 minutes from the end of execution. Should any of the shooters or observers be arrested, the person in charge of the operation and the one in charge of the operation partially, should be out of the country within 15 minutes. It is recommended that, the person in charge of the entire operation as well as the person in charge of the shooter and the observer in a neighboring country.
- b. To hide the weapon and removal of remnants as much as possible.
- c. To totally prepare the place where the shooter and the observer are supposed to hide for up to a month, whereas the distance between the prepared place and the operational place should not exceed five minutes.
- d. Be ready to repatriate to a different location any uncovered brother.
- e. Demonstration of availability group to confirm the existence of the shooter and the observer in a different place away from the operation place.
- f. Insuring the availability of features disguising tools and clothes, travel documents, passports, and preparing identification cards with the new features in order to cross check points, if there is any. New ID cards should indicate that they are from the neighborhood and not strangers. Money must be provided for the two of them. It is recommended that the executor should have a different appearance after conducting the operation and special attention has to be given to the old identity card and which must be destroyed; maintaining only the new identity card and with the new appearance.
- g. A plastic surgeon has to be provided for the implementation of the plastic surgery, needed for the appearance change of the executor or the brother in charge of the operation so that he can leave the country in his new look with a new ID and passport and which were prepared after his new appearance.

Part Eleven: Distraction of the opponent security forces, to be taken care of by a special group. This group will create an event to draw the enemy security forces' attention away from the real operation. Relative timing here is vital between this group and the group responsible for carrying out the assassination operation.

AFGP-2002-000031-0378

If the operation is conducted using mortars, , the best thing to do is to create noises such as vehicle noises, engine noises, or us vehicle horns to mask the sound of the round as it lands or the sound of the snipers if silencers were not used.

Assassinations using mortars are ideal for targets that are gathered in large parties, targeting government's meeting locations such as government, intelligence and staff buildings, as well as leaderships' residences. If the target is a person such as a head of state, the best place to assassinate him would be in his summer residence, when he visits camps or attends public meetings or military operations, or when delivering a speech. In these cases you can take advantage of crowd or machinery noise, or aircrafts noise in the case of an airshow.

Part Twelve: Recruitment and infiltration group: its responsibility is to recruit those needed for the operation. The ideal way is to recruit one of the escorts of the target, or plant an agent inside that team. This operation could be costly. Every pertinent piece of information about this person must be collected, and this could go back to the last five years or more in order to determine his weak point and control him in some way or another.

Part Thirteen: Training on the equipment and tools to be used in the assassination such as the gun and the silencer, remote detonator or other killing devices that might be used.

Part Fourteen: loyalty to God and reliance on him after exhausting one's best during preparations.

Part Fifteen: What we have written above is the truth, but could be wrong in our point of view; it could also be wrong but seen as right by others. So we invite others to add their rights to ours.

May God reward them for good deeds.

AFGP-2002-000031-0379

**Remote Wireless Detonation
(Remote Controlled)**

* This is one of the most successful and secure assassination methods for the security of individuals, official in charge, and planner of the operation.

First: Items used:

1. A wireless transmitter.
2. An interface to the wireless device to enter the wavelength's security code. This interface can be connected between the wireless device and the battery, or it can be a separate interface that could be connected close to the antenna.
3. Detonator box (the receiver).

* The wireless device will be in the possession of the officer in charge of the operation or the Emir of the group, and the wavelength's code shall under no circumstances be disclosed to anyone else until the time of detonation; this is in order to avoid this code being disclosed to a traitor.

* The wireless device must be checked and tested well beforehand.

* The receiver too has to be checked using a small bulb instead of the detonator, as there are some receivers in the circuit of which can be closed without a specific transmission from the wireless detonation transmitter but rather in response to other radio signals of the same wavelength that might happen to be in the air at any time, which might lead to the detonation box being wasted. The first mistake here is the last one.

* Make sure that all wires used in the device and the charge to be detonated are in working condition.

* When planting the charge, the planting place must be well camouflaged, and so must the wires connecting the charge to the detonator, with the detonator being placed at a distance from the wires if it is to be reused. If it is not to be reused, it is better to integrate it with the explosive charge in order to not let the enemy know the style or devices used in the assassination operation. When the assassination is in an urban area, it is placed with the charge to make it easy to extend the wires, and there will not be a need for two places.

* The small wire intended to receive the wireless detonation signal should be above ground but you have to take camouflaging into account. . And if this has to be placed near the charge, then it is better to integrate the box with the charge.

* A line-of-sight must be ensured between the wireless transmitter and receiver with no mountains or large or dense buildings in between.

* The wireless receiver will only work after the code numbers, to which it was set, are received.

Those are:

1. The wavelength number.
2. The wavelength's security code.

This is to prevent accidental detonation of the charge in the implantation phase, or later in response to other radio signals of the same wavelength broadcast by the government or other radio devices.

AFGP-2002-000031-0380

F audio broadcasting similar waves.

- * If the target is mobile such as a car, advance time has to be taken into account; i.e., time for the wave to reach the receiver. This has to be precisely calculated as a function of distance as this time differs with distance even in case of a fixed target. Continuous training here is needed for mastering this technique. And in the real situation, pressing must continue until the charge is exploded.
- * When planting the charge, the receiver box must be put in OFF position. Only after it has been successfully tested with a lamp and the wiring is placed, before leaving the place the box shall be switched ON.
- * Also the transmitter must be kept OFF until after the charge planters have left the place when it should be turned ON waiting for the target.
- * Note: Test the lamp that you will use to test the receiver box and make sure it is not burnt out.
- * It might need you to keep pressing for more than 2 or 3 seconds for the signal to reach the receiver, so keep pressing.
- * In some cases, the detonator box might be booby-trapped too in order to eliminate an explosives expert of the enemy after the execution as well as to eliminate the device itself as evidence that might be used by the enemy.
- * Received signal level must be checked by a voltmeter taking the resistance of the wires and detonators into account in order to avoid any technical failure. The transmitter here can affect the reading of the receive signal level if at a close distance.

Pre- and Post-Execution Security Precautions

1. Experienced people must be selected for monitoring and surveillance in order to detect gaps in the enemy's security system in terms of both time (any possible timing for his movement) and space (any specific place mostly frequented by him).
2. A suitable place must be chosen for the explosive charge; i.e., a place that the target must pass through such as crossings, streets, building entrances, and it is recommended to be in a place that urges the opponent to slow down if in a car. Of course, this differs from one operation to another.
3. If no such place is found, things might be placed on the way to make the target slow down at a specific point. These things must not draw the attention of the target's security personnel.
4. All possible scenarios have to be drawn out for both: failure and success of the operation; in the first case to know how to escape and in the second to know how to optimally take advantage of the success.
5. Monitoring the target right from his zero-point of movement would always contribute to the success of the operation.
6. It is always necessary to explode the charge and retreat but it might sometimes be more useful to capture the target, dead or alive, to achieve more gains. An example of this is:

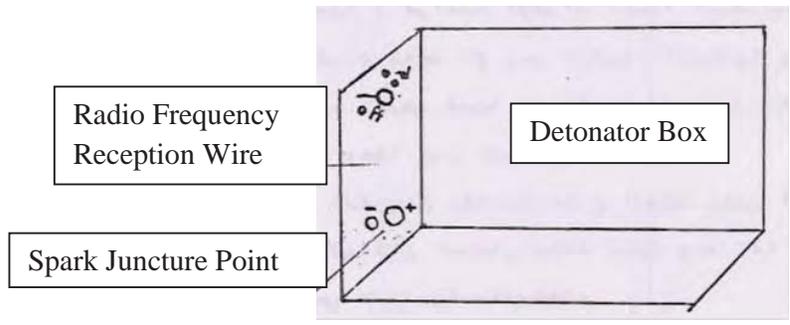
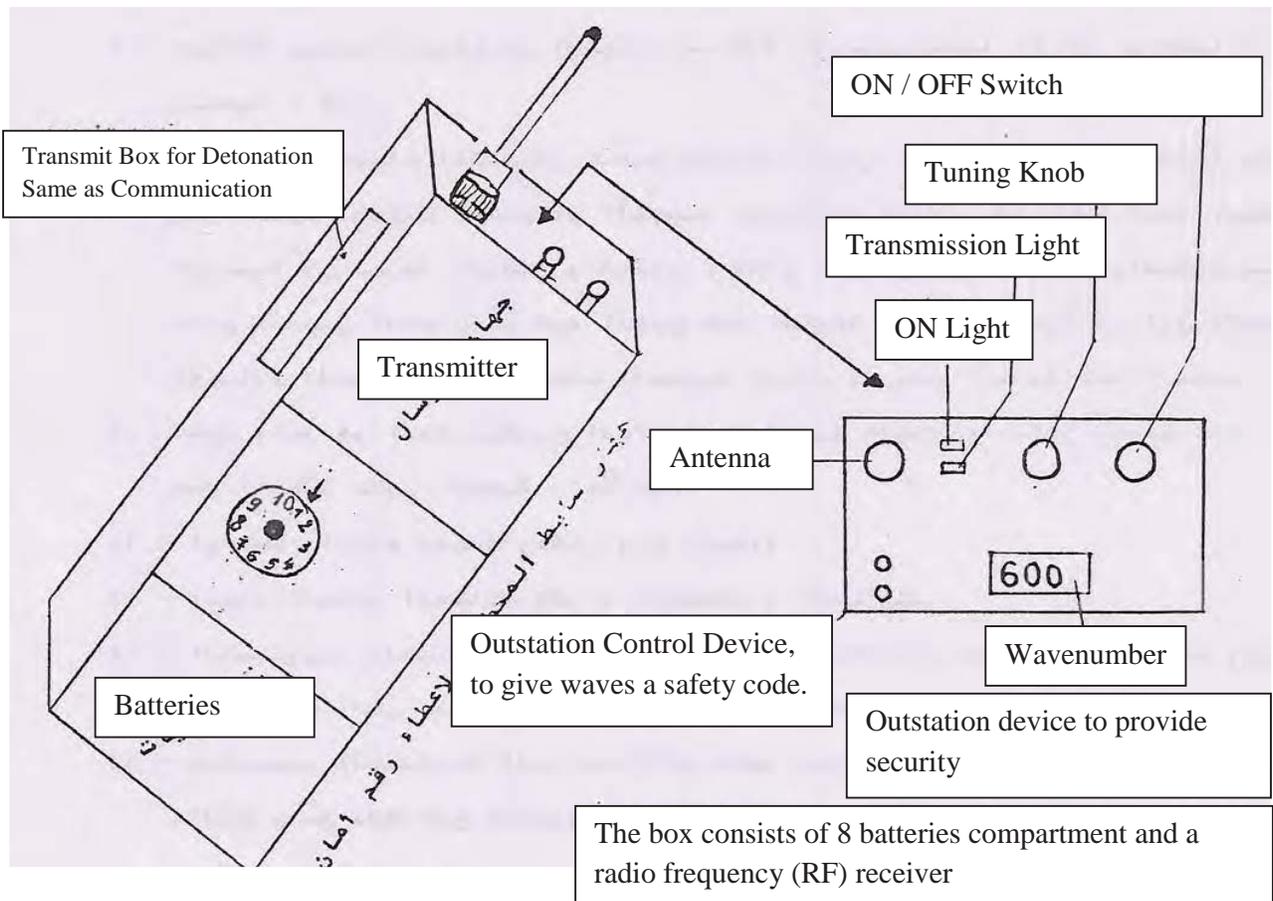
AFGP-2002-000031-0381

It was how Hamas members succeeded in assassinating the two Jews responsible for the killing of Abu Jihad and after that, they started demanding for political demands to return the cadavers to the Jews.

7. Note: There are various wireless detonators with different ranges such as 20 km, 7 km and 1 km.
8. Similar assassination operations that took place in the past should be looked into in order to take advantage and to look at it carefully, for example the assassination of martyr 'Abdallah 'Azzam, God's mercy be on him, where the security gap was the knowledge of time and place. The time was the Friday prayer and the place was Sabi' al-Layl Mosque and where he used to preach his Friday sermons. The explosive was placed at the mosque's first mandatory entrance after the failure of the first attempt, when it was placed under the platform.
9. Only one person should open the circle so that if anything goes wrong, the losses would be minimized.
10. Total reconnaissance of the target and of the place where the charge is to be placed.
11. Suitable covers must be found for the surveillance and examination team.
12. Total and perfect camouflage of the planted charge. This is determined by how clever the planter is and by the amount of information he has on the target and place of execution.
13. The operation has to be divided into modules with each module being taken care of by a specific person that knows nothing about the other modules. Only the brother who is in charge of the operation will have the complete picture and will be able to coordinate its implementation.
14. Funds for the operation should be handed over in full so that nothing will hinder the smooth running of the operation.
15. The individuals assigned for the operation must be trained on its execution and their performance must be scrutinized.
16. Those individuals must not be allowed to make any contacts until the end of the operation. For this purpose, a fully equipped place is provided for each one of them to stay in for, say, a year if the target is that important.
17. Preparations must be made for repatriating the whole operation team abroad depending on how dangerous the situation will turn and in case one of those is supposedly discovered, no matter how small the likelihood of discovery might be, as if the search is tightened all the names will eventually be disclosed.

AFGP-2002-000031-0382

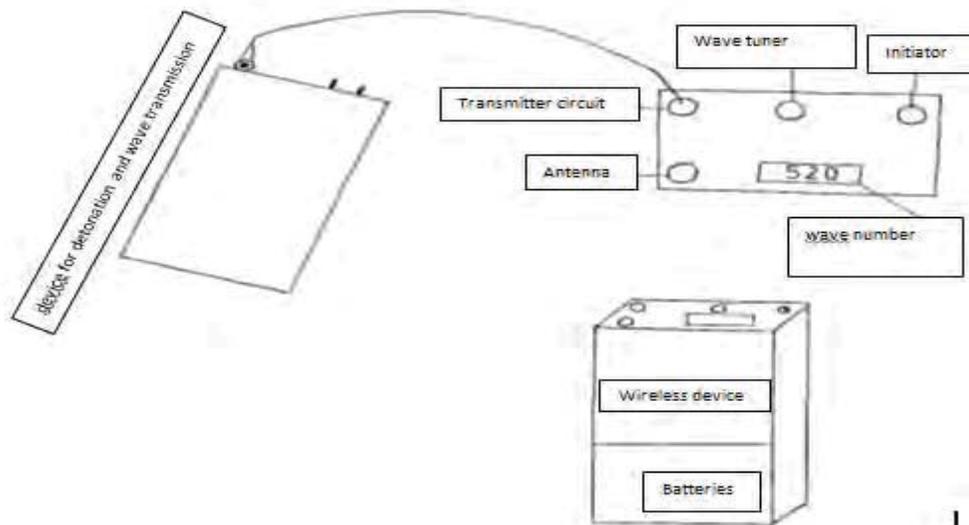
1. Transmitter



AFGP-2002-000031-0383

The transmission power of the transmitter depends on the following:

1. The transmission power level position on the transmitter; there is the LOW level for short distances and HIGH level for long-distances.
2. Nominal power of the transmitter.
3. The battery charge level (new or exhausted battery).
4. Type of antenna: roughly speaking, short antennas can suit short distance applications and (140,000 –164,000) wavelengths, long antennas for long-distances and (142,000-148,000) wavelengths and shorter antenna for long-distances and (150,000 to 160,000) wavelengths.
5. Topography: the best radio communication will be from the top of a mountain to a valley or to another top of a mountain where range can reach 30 km. However, the type of the receiver also plays an important role.
6. The worst radio communication would be from a valley to another and in urban areas where range can be limited to 1 km.



371

AFGP-2002-000031-0384

Detonation Method:

1. Choosing a frequency number according to the number that the receiver was programmed by and installing this frequency in the transmitter.
2. Selection of the detonation device with same code stated on the detonation box. For example, if the code inside the box is EE we will have to select detonation box EE, and if it is FF then we will have to choose the detonation box FF.
3. After the connection of the detonator, it is possible to detonate 12 charges consecutively, and it is for this purpose that we register the code of the box. For example, the first box EE2 means that when we place the EE detonation device on the number 2 and push the PTK button at the side face of the transmitter, the charge will explode.
4. Above precautions also apply here as to never put the detonation box to the ON position until after finishing all preparations and tests and just before leaving the place. This is in military operations. In assassination operations that take place in urban areas, both the detonator box and the charge are packed together.

372

AFGP-2002-000031-0385

Warfare Letters and Booby-Trapped Letters

We will speak in this section about the types of booby-trapped letters, starting with the two most deadly ones, i.e., biological and chemical letters that are not currently in use because they are internationally forbidden.

Biologically-Contaminated Letters:

This is an extremely dangerous killing tool which is internationally forbidden, being part of biological warfare and using it, is considered a war crime.

It is a normal letter contaminated with certain kinds of microbes that can stand dryness for a certain amount of time without losing its reproducibility. One single gram of such microbes contains 10 to 12 thousands microbes. It would suffice to contaminate the letter with a milligram of such microbes to ensure 5 killing 'microbe-soldiers' to the target's body through the blood or the digestive system to be infected and die immediately or shortly thereafter.

Conflicting nations have not yet used this kind of weapon out of the fear of consequences or the use of the same weapon by the enemy against whole cities. The problem here is that this sort of contaminated letter cannot be detected until after the infection occurs and until laboratory experiments are done on mammals. However, the danger can be diminished by exposing the letters to a high enough temperature which will kill such microbes.

Chemically-Tainted Letters:

This is also an extremely dangerous killing tool that is internationally forbidden being part of the chemical warfare, the use of which is considered a war crime.

It is a normal letter that has been tainted with a certain Mustard compounds (such as Nitrogen Mustard and Mustard Phosphorus), other strong poisons or some nerve agents such as "V" agent of a secret formula. The danger of such letters comes from the possibility that poison would be transmitted to human beings through the mouth, skin or scratches causing an immediate death or death after a while.

Conflicting nations have not yet used this kind of weapon out of the fear of consequences or the use of the same weapon by the enemy against whole cities. The problem here is that this sort of tainted letter cannot be detected until after the infection and laboratory analysis are done.

AFGP-2002-000031-0386

Booby -Trapped Letters:

This is an assassination tool, terrorism and spreading of panic in secret war. It is a normal letter in which an explosive charge, a trigger and a flaming tool are so embedded in that the explosion takes place by merely opening the letter. There are two types of booby trap letters depending on the ignition method used: a booby trap letter with a flaming tool and an air-ignited booby trap letter.

1. Booby-Trapped Letter with a Flaming Tool:

At the beginning, this kind of letter was nothing but a small amount of explosive material grafted with a flaming tool (mechanical or chemical) and fitted with a trigger. The letter is rolled like a magazine in a cylinder-shape and sent by mail. The flaming tool and the explosive material had to be pasted on the magazine then the letter is rolled and tightened with a thread or sticker. The safety pin is later pulled out with the thought that the pressure built on the magazine body is high enough to hinder the movement of the flaming tool. It is only when the tightening thread is cut off that this tool will move to ignite the trigger and consequently the explosion.

However, this tool was not always practical given the relatively large size and weight of old flaming tools and the possibility that they be seen from either side of the roll, and that the magazine body will lose pressure for any reason, which results in the flaming material tool moving to ignite the trigger and consequently the explosion. Devising of smaller and lighter flaming tools and the use of miniature batteries with an electric switch to close when the tightening thread is cut off does not offset all the drawbacks of this method.

The battery and trigger size problem remained an obstacle to the use of electrical tool in this kind of booby trap letters though, however, this tool saw a larger use in booby trap mail packages and booby traps in general (see the booby trap and booby trap mail package). But, in the late forties when it became possible to have (1 cm in diameter and less than 1 mm thick) flat batteries as well as miniature flat electric triggers, it has become possible to hide the batteries and triggers inside the letters without having to roll or otherwise change their appearance, particularly if the letter is composed of more than one page or placed in a thick envelope.

The detonator in modern booby trap letters consists of a very thin flat mercury battery, flat thread wires, a thin flat trigger and a soft flat charge in the form of paper foils that weigh between 10 and 30 grams of a highly explosive material that is unaffected by moisture or temperature and has no specific odor, with the two extremities of the wire connecting the battery being stripped and spread apart,

AFGP-2002-000031-0387

thus opening the electric circuit of the trigger. However, one extremity of the wire is connected to the letter from different directions with flexible threads so that when the letter is withdrawn from the cover the two extremities of the wire will get closer together until they close the electrical circuit of the trigger which causes the explosion of the trigger and consequently the charge. The two wires can be replaced by two bold lines of carbon drawn on the letter so that they get connected to each other when the letter is withdrawn, causing the electrical current to flow in the trigger circuit.

Given the sensitivity of the trigger material to shocks and bumps and in order to prevent the letter from being exploded during transmission and sorting processes, trigger material must be placed inside a solid cover that protects it from shocks and temperature the letter might be subjected to. The battery in the booby trapped letter can be detected by touching it if the pages are not thick enough in the letter. It can also be detected by looking if the papers and the cover are transparent. This can be made by placing the letter against the sun or a strong light source (paying attention not to get the letter very close to the light source as it might be exploded due to high temperature).

But, if the letter is thick and non-transparent, then the only way to detect the booby trap is to use an electromagnetic detector usually available at the central post offices. When the suspected letter is passed before the detector, it produces sharp beeps if any metallic parts (battery and wires) were detected.

However, with the development of chemical flaming tools, the possibility of making a chemical plastic flaming tool that lights up like a match when the letter (attached to it with silk or nylon threads) is drawn out the cover as well as the possibility of using a trigger with plastic cover have made the electromagnetic detector ineffective due to the lack, in this case, of metallic parts in the letter. Only X-ray devices and trained dogs can detect this sort of non-metallic booby trap.

Following are three ways booby trap letters can reach the target in spite of the electromagnetic detector used at the post office:

1. When undetectable chemical flaming tools are used in the letters.
2. Infiltration of the booby trap letters directly to the target's post office box, after being stamped with forged post office seal.
3. A very limited number of booby trap letters can mistakenly pass through the electromagnetic detector undetected, particularly when the batteries and wires used in these letters are so small that they can only be detected by highly sensitive and precise electromagnetic detectors.

Therefore, to avoid these mistakenly passed letters, the institution that is prone

AFGP-2002-000031-0388

to such danger is equipped with a (second-defense line) electromagnetic detector to filter these unfiltered booby trapped letters. The second detector can be replaced with an ordinary mine detector after modification to detect miniature metallic parts.

If no such mine or electromagnetic detector is found at the target institution, suspected letters can be sorted based on weight, thickness or distinctive odor or those that contain foreign objects moving inside. Then, the suspected letters should be opened in a special isolated roofless room (to ease the pressure caused by the explosion) fitted with a metallic table, a strong stone or cement barrier/wall with a hatch fitted with a bulletproof glass. Following is the sequence that must be followed by the designated person to open these suspected letters:

1. The tip of the cover is gripped with the special clip attached on the metallic table.
2. Then, with a sharp blade, the tip of the cover is cut no more than 1mm all along the cover.
3. The cover is then opened from that cut by as much as needed to take the letter out with the metallic clip, without moving any part of the letter or causing any friction to it.
4. The person must then go behind the protection wall and draw the rope of the clip monitoring through the protected hatch the letter while being removed from the cover. In order to ensure the utmost possible safety during cutting the tip of the cover, the person should wear bullet and fragment proof armor, a steel mask to cover the head and the neck, bullet-proof glasses and ear-protectors similar to the ones used by artillery soldiers to protect their inner ears from the pressure resulting from the explosion.

B. Air-Ignited Booby-Trapped Letter:

This is a booby-trapped letter fitted with an explosive charge and a trigger but not with a flaming tool as ignition is made here by means of an amount of a gaseous or solid chemical material embedded in the letter that if exposed to the oxygen of the air burns and explodes the trigger then the charge. The gaseous or solid chemical material here is placed inside a small evacuated envelope that is torn off when the cover is opened and the letter is drawn out, which makes it exposed to the air and consequently leads to the explosion.

Air-ignited booby trap letters fitted with a gaseous flaming material can be detected by noticing that it is more inflated than normal letters while the ones that are fitted with a solid flaming material can be detected by an X-ray device that shows both the gaseous and solid materials in dark color. Noteworthy here is that air-ignited booby trap letters of any kind must never be

AFGP-2002-000031-0389

opened as this in itself could spark ignition.

Procedures to follow regarding the Booby-Trapped Letters

When a booby trap letter is detected by any means, the specialist should take the fingerprints from it with the goal to identify the sender or the courier (of course, excluding the post office couriers). Then, they should be burnt in an isolated place by trying to open it with the help of the specialists given the danger of this measure. If you want to study the kind of flaming tool used in it, an X-ray photo can be taken of the letter for later analysis.

377

AFGP-2002-000031-0390

Psychological Warfare

Introduction:

Almighty said "Against them make ready your strength to the utmost of your power, including steeds of war, to strike terror into the hearts of the enemies, of God and your enemies, and others besides, whom ye may not know, but whom God doth know. Whatever ye shall spend in the cause of God, shall be repaid unto you, and ye shall not be treated unjustly."

The Prophet, prayer and peace upon him, was quoted as having said: "I would have had to fight a month to achieve what I have achieved by having the enemy terrorized."

Also Khalid Bin-al-Walid said to the Romans: "I brought you men that love to die as much as you love to live."

Above quote from Qur'an, the Prophet's Hadith and Khalid Bin-al-Walid's quote all indicate the importance of psychological factors in winning people over and achieving victory in battles. Islam has been conscious to address and win the souls to its side and the Almighty said "O my Servants who have transgressed against their souls! Despair not of the Mercy of God for God forgives all sins: for He is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful." Al-Zumur 53. Islam recognizes both dimensions of the human being; the body and the soul. Here are the sources of energy of the human being:

1. **Spiritual Energy and Power of Faith:**

The Prophet, prayer and peace upon him, was quoted as having said about his closest companion Abu-Bakr al-Siddiq ": Abu-Bakr has just got something more (of faith) in his heart than you rather than any more fasting or praying".

2. **Mental and Intellectual Energy:**

The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, was quoted as having said about 'Umar Bin-al-Khattab: "If there is any inspired person after me then he should be 'Umar" and "I have never seen a genius doing what he does" and in the Revelation Hadith: "Then 'Umar took the bucket which turned into something like a big drum.

3. **Power of the Will:**

The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, was quoted as having said before Al-Hudaybah Conciliation Treaty "I will keep fighting for this religion until it prevails or the issue is no more". Abu-Bakr al-Siddiq also said: "By God I swear that if they denied me a 'penny' of what they used to deliver to the Prophet, prayer and peace upon him, for Zakat (one of the five pillars of Islam) I will fight them for it".

4. **Physical Energy:**

The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, was quoted as having said about Khalid Bin Al-Walid in the Battle of Mu'tah: "Then one of God's swords (meaning Khalid) took the flag up and by this sword the way to victory was opened". Khalid himself narrated that the day of Mu'tah nine swords were torn off in his hand and only one Yemeni stood up in his hand to the end.

5. **The Power of Joining Hands:**

In the Qur'an, God urges judges to join hands "And hold fast, all together, by the rope which God (stretches out for you), and be not divided among yourselves." (Qur'an 3:103). The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, also was quoted as have said "believers are like blocks of a wall all tightened to each other". Yet in the same meaning

AFGP-2002-000031-0391

"Believers to each other are as close and caring as organs of the body, so that if any one of them suffers all other organs will be affected and stand up for help".

On the other hand, the body has weaknesses such as passions of all kinds, illusions, fear, worry, etc.

Psychological Warfare through History

Psychological warfare a fact as old as the human civilization and connected to the struggle among people. However, it was only after World War II that it emerged as a branch of knowledge with specific laws and rules. Following are examples of psychological warfare throughout the history of mankind:

-In the Battle of Madyan, 1245 B.C., the Israeli Jadon was found in a disadvantageous tactical situation facing the Madyan people who were more numerous and better equipped than his soldiers. So, he chose 300 of his men to undertake an operation aimed at demoralizing the Madyans and creating disturbance among them. He gave each one of these 300 men a torch and a horn and distributed them around the enemy camp at night – as it was known at that time that to each 100 soldiers there one torch holder is assigned to lighten the way for them. Then at the specified time, Jadon signals then 300 torch-holders to come out all at once and they started to blow in the horns all together, which made the Madyans wake up in a panic and a huge disturbance was created among them that they started to fight each other inside their camp and most of them chose to flee with the Israelis doing nothing but chasing and killing them.

-Another example dates back to Napoleon Bonaparte's expedition to Egypt in 1798 when he, Bonaparte, claimed he came to rescue the Egyptians from Mamluks' oppression and called himself "The Protector of Islam", claiming that he ruined the Pope's Chair in Rome and fought Christians. He even used to start his statements and calls to the people with "In the name of Allah", the common Egyptians were almost deceived so much as they started to call him "Haj Mohammad Napoleon". But it was not long before his horses started trampling Mosques and hit the Jihadists rebels.

-In the book of "War" of the Chinese commander Sun Tzu from the fifth century B.C., torches and tambours should be used in night fighting and a large number of flags in day fight so that the enemy's ears and eyes become confused.

-Khalid Bin al-Walid be blessed by God, used to exchange between the right and left wings of the army and the front with the back at night in order to make the enemy think that new reinforcements came to participate to the battle which would cause them disturbance and panic.

Definition of Psychological Warfare

This term "Psychological warfare" appeared for the first time during World War II but still with no single specific definition. However, we have chosen the following definition because we consider it more comprehensive: Psychological Warfare is a planned use by a state, a group of states or an organization, at the time of peace or the time of war, of various propaganda measures to influence thoughts, emotions, attitudes and the behavior of groups, enemy, friendly or neutral nations, which help achieve the political goals of that state, group of states or organization.

AFGP-2002-000031-0392

Importance and Danger of Psychological Warfare in our present time

God Almighty says: "I will instill terror into the hearts of the Unbelievers" (al-Anfal 12)

God Almighty says: "But the (Wrath of) God came to them from quarters from which they little expected (it), and cast terror into their hearts, so that they destroyed their dwellings by their own hands and the hands of the Believers, take warning, then, O ye with eyes (to see)!" (al-Hushur 2)

Also the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, was quoted as having said: "I would have had to fight a month to achieve what I have achieved by having the enemy terrorized".

Psychological warfare is the worst kind of war being waged against Muslims and Islamist groups in our times; indeed the super powers have chosen this kind of war to replace traditional wars for it is the least expensive and the more rewarding. In fact, the outcomes of psychological warfare have become so huge that even the military warfare has become just part of it.

It can be waged before and during military actions and continues after this action has ended, and it usually takes days before their results (good or bad) start to materialize or maybe years, but when it succeeds the success will be overwhelming, yet it does not observe the moral rules and traditions of war.

It is the most dangerous of warfare because it targets the combatant's mind, thoughts, and hearts in order to demoralize him and kill the will of fight in him and consequently defeat him. American general James Janine confirms that the West has reviewed all his strategies of war and the nature of the latter and has drawn up a totally new strategy that focuses on the ideological or psychological factor after it proved how immensely important it is. Therefore, today's actual warfare has become a universal psychological warfare. Churchill has confirmed that psychological warfare has often altered the course of history that would, along with military, economic and political wars form the universal warfare. In fact, many factors have contributed to make psychological warfare one of the most important international struggle activities in our time, with this being just a reflection of one of the most typical characteristics of today's international community, i.e., ideological struggle. Indeed, most inspired leaders of our time, both military and political have started to believe that psychological warfare has become a complement to and interactive with military and political – ideological – warfare, the reason that has made many states now harness a large part of its efforts and resources to develop psychological warfare tools.

Dr. Zahran says: "Psychological warfare is considered the most efficient weapons the states can use today because it plays an effective role in killing the enemy's motivation and morale". "Psychological warfare", Dr. Zahran added, "is one of the most important issues of our time and is the most dangerous warfare".

Dr. Mukhtar al-Tahami says: "Psychological warfare is a really dangerous warfare but it is a reversible weapon". Dr. 'Ali Husni al-Kharbutli says commenting on the psychological

AFGP-2002-000031-0393

warfare that has been waged against Muslims and in which participated all infidels and Jew forces in the civil world: "Psychological warfare is the most dangerous thing reformist movements can face everywhere and in all times as it targets the rising reformist teaching and ideas preventing them from reaching the minds and the hearts. Division is a tool of this warfare, the wagers of which always throw hindrances in the way to block any meaningful development. Those worriers work in darkness, stab in the back, create a state of confusion in thoughts and ideas, gossip and rumors, help spreading terrorism, and use attractions as well."

Nuclear threats makes psychological war even more dangerous from the danger of military confrontations in battlefields as the world has become divided into camps each armed to the teeth with nuclear weapons, offering psychological warfare new dimensions as it has become the alternative to military action yet the only kind of war superpower/nuclear states can wage in addition, of course, to limited wars waged on their behalf, mostly in the third world.

Characteristics of Psychological Warfare in Islam

1. Contrary to what is going on in the present time of lying, cheating, deception and forgery, honesty is the major characteristic of psychological warfare in Islam in terms of words, action and goals. As when the Qur'an tells something about an event in the past or in the future it tells the truth. For example, the Qur'an tells about the defeat of Persians in spite of their victory on the Romans, and so it happened. God Almighty says: "The Roman Empire has been defeated - In a land close by; but they, (even) after (this) defeat of theirs, will soon be victorious- Within a few years. With God is the Decision, in the past and in the Future: on that Day shall the Believers rejoice- With the help of God. He helps whom He will, and He is exalted in might, most merciful." (Ar Rum 1-5).

Also, the Qur'an describes al-Akhnas Bin-Sharif al-Thaqafi; the person who was hurting the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him. God Almighty says: "Heed not the type of despicable men, ready with oaths. A slanderer, going about with calumnies, (habitually) hindering (all) good, transgressing beyond bounds, deep in sin, violent (and cruel), - with all that, base-born." (Al Qalam 10-13) and all descriptions of that person were true, otherwise Quraysh's leaders would not have kept silent about this description to one of them particularly when he is described as "mean".

As to honesty in action, we find an example of it in the Qur'an "For the iniquity of the Jews we made unlawful for them certain (foods) good and wholesome which had been lawful for them;- in that they hindered many from God's Way;" (An Nisa 160) as if these things that were prohibited for the Jews were not so, prohibited, the Jews would have denied that.

Honesty in the goal is represented in the following verse from the Qur'an, as God Almighty says "We have truly sent thee as a witness, as a bringer of Glad Tidings, and as a warner" why? The God Almighty replies "In order that ye (O men) may believe in God and His Messenger and those ye may assist and honor Him, and celebrate His praise morning and evening." (Al-Fath 8:9).

2. Also, psychological warfare in Islam is fair, as it is defensive rather than offensive. For example, when 'Abdallah the second son of the Prophet died, Abu-Lahab said: "Mohammad has now become childless without offspring", so the following Qur'anic verse came to reply to this gloating on the part of Abu-Lahab.

AFGP-2002-000031-0394

God Almighty says: "To thee have we granted the Fount (of Abundance). Therefore to thy Lord turn in Prayer and Sacrifice. For he who hates thee, he will be cut off (from Future Hope)." (Qur'an 108:1-3)

3. Continuity is another characteristic of psychological warfare in Islam against its enemies: God Almighty says: "The Unbelievers spend their wealth to hinder (man) from the path of God, and so will they continue to spend; but in the end they will have (only) regrets and sighs; at length they will be overcome: and the Unbelievers will be gathered together to Hell;" (Al-Anfal 36). This verse of the Qur'an is an explicit defiance to all God's enemies and everything they do, and all resources they would use trying to defeat this religion is categorically and surely condemned to usefulness and would do nothing but fill their hearts with bitterness of loss and the sense of total final defeat that would eventually lead him to Hell; the worst destiny ever.
4. It is defensive as it should only be waged when the enemies attack the religion or disgrace the graceful in Islam (the entity of God and the Prophet). God Almighty says: "(O Unbelievers!) if ye prayed for victory and judgment, now hath the judgment come to you: if ye desist (from wrong), it will be best for you: if ye return (to the attack), so shall We. Not the least good will your forces be to you even if they were multiplied: for verily God is with those who believe!" (Al-Anfal 19).
5. Flexibility and magnanimity, in the sense that it gives the enemy the chance to stop his evil efforts. "Say to the Unbelievers, if (now) they desist (from Unbelief), their past would be forgiven them; but if they persist, the punishment of those before them is already (a matter of warning for them)".(Al-Anfal 38)
6. Defiance: of all infidels of all natures and races. God Almighty says: "Say: "If the whole of mankind and Jinn were to gather together to produce the like of this Qur'an, they could not produce the like thereof, even if they backed up each other with help and support". (Al-Isra 88). This verse represents a confirmed psychological defeat of all infidel efforts of all kinds to the end of time.
7. Finally, psychological warfare in Islam is not secretive but declared and categorical against all infidelity until it reverts to the truth or is defeated. God Almighty says: "But if they turn away, say thou: "I have warned you of a stunning Punishment (as of thunder and lightning) like that which (overtook) the 'Ad and the Thamud!" Behold, the apostles came to them, from before them and behind them, (preaching): "Serve none but God." They said, "If our Lord had so pleased, He would certainly have sent down angels (to preach). Now we reject your mission (altogether)." Now the 'Ad behaved arrogantly through the land, against (all) truth and reason, and said: "Who is superior to us in strength?" What! Did they not see that God, Who created them, was superior to them in strength? But they continued to reject Our Signs! So we sent against them a furious Wind through days of disaster, that we might give them a taste of a Penalty of humiliation in this life; but the Penalty of a Hereafter will be more humiliating still: and they will find no help." (Fussilat 13-16)

AFGP-2002-000031-0395

Scenes of Psychological Warfare in Qur'an

The Holy Qur'an came to change the human soul and it was represented by images and plenty of scenes to influence in this soul. Some of these scenes and attempts were used by the atheists against believers to force them to renounce their faith and deter them from disseminating the message of God and following Prophets' ways. Infidels' ways in this regard included threats of killing, sometimes killing, threat of banishment, banishment sometimes, threat of imprisonment, sometimes imprisonment, threat of stoning ... torture in various forms, in brief: to try to influence the soul and mind through inflicting pain on the body or eventually extermination.

On the other hand, some psychological warfare scenes described in the Qur'an are ones the believers use against infidels building on what is in the believer's soul of pride and bravery and what is in the infidels' soul of attachment to this lower life and immersion in its pleasures, trying to break the connection between the infidels themselves and their attitude, and to destroy the obstinacy and ardor in infidels' souls for nothing but suppressing falsehood, oppression and infidelity and establishing truth, justice and faith in God. And, in addition to the description of Prophets' experiences that summarized the history of struggle between infidelities and faith, the Qur'an also describes the Prophet Mohammad's experience, which is the richest experience in this field.

Indeed, the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, had faced all kinds of enemies and hostilities as well as many kinds of ardent wars both traditional and psychological.

Quraysh's Ways of Psychological Warfare against the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him,

1- Sarcasm and Mockery Campaign:

This was at the beginning of the Prophet's mission when he gathered Bani Hashim and told them "I brought to you the happiness of this and afterlife, ordered by God to show you his way, so who of you will support me on this matter." The people gave him deaf ears and started to disperse around when his cousin 'Ali Bin-Abu-Talib, be blessed by Allah, stood up and he was still a youngster, replied "Me, God's messenger, I am your supporter, I am a war to those whom you fight. Bani Hashim started laughing after hearing Ali's statement, be blessed by God. Abu-Lahab said to Abu-Talib in tone of sarcasm: "have you heard what your nephew said, he wants you to obey your son's orders" and went off on the other men. Another example is what Abu-Lahab told the Prophet (in sarcasm) when he gathered the leaders of Quraysh to call him to embrace his mission: "Woe to you! Is that all you called us for?" A Qur'an verse was then descended in a perpetual reply to this sarcasm. God Almighty says: "Perish the hands of the Father of Flame! Perish he! No profit to him from all his wealth, and all his gains! Burnt soon will he be in a Fire of Blazing Flame! His wife shall carry the (crackling) wood - As fuel! Around her neck is a rope of [Twisted] fiber. (Al-Masad 111)

AFGP-2002-000031-0396

Other Qur'an verses were also descended in reply to other mockery and sarcasm by the Prophet's opponents (that he, in their words, is childless, an orphan, and the son of Abi Kabshah etc.)

2. The Use of Calumny war between Abu Talib and the Prophet peace and Allah's prayers be upon him,

This was manifested in the several failed attempts with Abu Talib to deprive the Prophet peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, from his uncle's protection. Including when they told Abu Talib: offering him the best and most handsome youngster in the tribe to adopt him as his son in return for his niece; "the one", they said, "who defied your traditional religion, disperse your tribe and made fools of them! Hand him over to us to kill him and if so you did, it will be just a man for man, a head for head..." the Prophet's uncle replied "God! What a bad bargain; should I give you my son to kill and you give me yours to raise? This, by God, will never happen."

3. The Temptation and Intimidation War:

This is manifested in Quraysh's offer to the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, and that, when he was offered by Utbah Bin-al-Walid's by saying: "Niece, given the high honor and decency you do hold among us, what you are calling your people for is a really serious matter that caused their unity to split, made fools of them, underestimated their gods and beliefs, and turned their ancestors into infidels. So, listen to what I am offering you and choose what you like of it if you are aiming for money we will offer you enough money to become the richest among us, or if you are aiming for a throne we will crown you to be our king, or maybe you are seeing things that you could not help seeing, we will provide you with the best medical treatment no matter how much this would cost us until you get better of such things like (hallucinations) that could sometimes overwhelm the man so that he becomes needy for treatment."

The Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, replied: "Have you finished Bin-al-Walid? And he replied "Yes".

The Prophet resumed: "listen" then read a verse from Fussilat until he was stopped by Bin-al-Walid and then replied by the Prophet "You have heard what you have heard, so that is it".

He returned back angry and the Quraysh is observe the changes on his face and they said: we swear in Allah that Abu al-Walid has come differently to you as he was, and asked him about his negotiations and he answered: "I just heard something and I swear like nothing I heard before to the end of the story. So, enticement weapons did not work with the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, and Quraysh had to resort to another weapon.

4. Asking for the Impossible:

Quraysh continued their psychological warfare against the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, coming up with a new way every day with a goal to limit the propagation of Islam. One of their newly created ways was the demand for the physically impossible to them trying to embarrass the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, such as to ask God to displace the mountains that surround Mecca which constrained their living, to explode fountains for them to solve the problem

AFGP-2002-000031-0397

of water scarcity, to turn the desert into gardens of palm and grape, a book that descended from the sky that they could touch by their own hands and see by their very eyes, to revive their ancestors to confirm the resurrection, and to bring an angel to descend from the heaven to support what for them were the Prophet's claims, etc.

The Prophet's peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, reply to all these demands was, as narrated by Bin-Hisham: "It was not for that I was given a mission, so if you accept what I came to you with it will be what you accept for yourselves in this and the afterlife, and if you reject it I will adhere to it until God judges between you and me."

Other examples of impossible demands to the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, were Quraysh's attempts to push him to despair from their embracing the new religion by insisting on their demands for miracles as described in the Qur'an as God Almighty says: They say: "We shall not believe in thee, until thou cause a spring to gush forth for us from the earth, "Or (until) thou have a garden of date trees and vines, and cause rivers to gush forth in their midst, carrying abundant water; "Or thou cause the sky to fall in pieces, as thou sayest (will happen), against us; or thou bring God and the angels before (us) face to face: "Or thou have a house adorned with gold, or thou mount a ladder right into the skies. No, we shall not even believe in thy mounting until thou send down to us a book that we could read." Say: "Glory to my Lord! Am I aught but a man, - an apostle?" (Al-Isra 90-93) and "And they say: "What sort of an apostle is this, who eats food, and walks through the streets? Why has not an angel been sent down to him to give admonition with him? "Or (why) has not a treasure been bestowed on him, or why has he (not) a garden for enjoyment?" The wicked say: "Ye follow none other than a man bewitched." See what kinds of comparisons they make for thee! But they have gone astray, and never a way will they be able to find!" (Al-Furqan 7-9)

However, with the support of God Almighty to Prophet Mohammad, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, all these attempts were failed with the confirmation that they would not believe even if he was to deliver the miracles for which they were asking, that guidance is a gift from God, and that the mission of Prophet Mohammad, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, was just to deliver the message of God.

5. Rumors and False Accusations:

This was in Mecca and at the Arab markets, and during the pilgrim season where Quraysh infidels used to gather to discuss what to say to the Arabian tribes about Mohammad, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, so that his missionary activities will not have an effect on them so they met with al-Walid Bin-al-Mughirah who advised them to agree on one single statement and to not contradict with each other or argue with each other and they replied and said: you say it, and he said: He reflected their demands and asked then what they thought. Some of them suggested that they agree on accusing him of being a priest. He rejected this and swore that he cannot be a priest. We have seeing his soothsayers and divination. Then some others suggested that they would accuse him of being crazy. He again rejected it confirming he was not crazy. We have seeing the madness and we knew what has strangled him, engrossed or his whisperings. Then a poet, they said, Poetry! We knew it all", He again refused confirming "What he says is not like poetry". "Then a witch we call him", they said. "No not at all, we knew "Witchcraft and witches' ways", he said, "What he says is not like the witches do". They finally

AFGP-2002-000031-0398

asked him to say his opinion. He said: "By God I swear that what he says is as sweet as the fruit of a so pure tree carrying so sweet and rich fruits that you can never come to say anything like it". "The nearest thing to accuse him of", he iterated, "is that he is a witch that came with a witchcraft that can divide the man and his brother, the man and his wife, and between the man and his tribe", and on that they agreed and dispersed. Qur'an verses thereafter descended to the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, revealing this conspiracy of Quraysh in this regard. God Almighty says "For he thought and he plotted; - And woe to him! How he plotted!- Yea, Woe to him; How he plotted!- Then he looked round.- Then he frowned and he scowled. Then he turned back and was haughty; - Then said he: "This is nothing but magic, derived from of old;- "This is nothing but the word of a mortal!" Soon will I cast him into Hell-Fire!" (Al-Muddathir 74:18-26).

We notice from this Qur'anic reply how tense and terrifying God's threat is to all those who dare to tell tales on God, the Qur'an and on the Prophet. In fact, Quraysh had disseminated several falsehoods which the Qur'an totally refuted and returned Quraysh's cunning on them. One such falsehood was that the Qur'an was written by Mohammad, prayer and peace be upon him, to which God Almighty replied as follows: "Or do they say, "He fabricated the (Message)"? Nay, they have no faith! Let them then produce a recital like unto it,- If (it be) they speak the truth!" (At-Tur 33-34). They also claimed that a Christian boy was dictating it to him and that the Prophet was crazy and a witch to which falsehoods the Qur'an replied with. God Almighty says "We know indeed that they say, "It is a man that teaches him." The tongue of him they wickedly point to is notably foreign, while this is Arabic, pure and clear" (An-Nahl103); and that he was a mad man and a magician. God Almighty also consequently said "O thou to whom the Message is being revealed! Truly thou art mad (or possessed)!"(Al-Hajar15:6). So, they used to launch a series of falsehoods so that if one failed to affect the audience the other would succeed. This was their psychological warfare approach at the individual level. They also used to wage such a psychological war against the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, at the group level such as if the Prophet invited a group of Arabs to explain to them the new mission he came with, Abu- Lahab – the infidelity head - hurries up after him to tell the audience, "Do not listen to him, he is just a liar and an apostate'.

6. Abuse and Intimidation Warfare:

Then they started torturing the weak Muslims and accuse the strong ones of foolishness. The Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, found a way out of this by migrating to Ethiopia.

7. The Boycott Warfare:

This was manifested by Quraysh by boycotting all the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, Bani-Hashim and Bani-al-Muttalib. And it was both social and economic boycott, with a hope to push people to handover the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, to Quraysh to kill him.

8. Slandering war against the Qur'an: As they claimed that the Qur'an is but a collection of tall tales and myths of the past as indicated by the Qur'an. God Almighty says: "But the misbelievers say: "Naught is this but a lie which he has forged, and others have helped him at it." In truth it is they who have put forward an iniquity and a falsehood. And they say: "Tales of the ancients, which he has caused to be written: and they are dictated before him morning and evening." (Al-Furqan 4-5) The reply from God came decisive in the Qur'an to this falsehood: God Almighty says: "Say: "The Qur'an was sent down by Him who knows the mystery (that is) in the heavens and the earth: verily He is Oft- Forgiving, Most Merciful."(Al-Furqan: 6).

AFGP-2002-000031-0399

9. Slander Warfare against Believers:

By describing them as a lower and weaker class when one day Qurayshi leaders demanded to sit with the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, this method was used by the infidels of Quraysh thousands of years before. God forbade the Prophet from doing so: God Almighty says: "And keep thy soul content with those who call on their Lord morning and evening, seeking His Face; and let not thine eyes pass beyond them, seeking the pomp and glitter of this Life; no obey any whose heart We have permitted to neglect the remembrance of Us, one who follows his own desires, whose case has gone beyond all bounds." (Al-Kahf 18:28).

10. Skepticism on the Messenger:

This was manifested by Quraysh's campaign against the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, when he told them about his nocturnal journey to Bayt Al-Maqdis and as a result of this, some of them reverted back on Islam. The same weapon Thamude; the tribe of Prophet Salih prayer and peace be upon him, when he informed his Almighty God about what they informed the believers and what was the believers' response, God Almighty says "The leaders of the arrogant party among his people said to those who were reckoned powerless - those among them who believed: "know ye indeed that Salih is an apostle from his Lord?" They said: "We do indeed believe in the revelation which hath been sent through him." (Al-A`raf 7:75).

11. Shunning out of Arrogance toward invocation:

God Almighty says: "But if they turn away, say thou: "I have warned you of a stunning Punishment (as of thunder and lightning) like that which (overtook) the 'Ad and the Thamud!" (Fussilat 41:13). Indeed, shunning was a sort of behavior known among Arabs and Jews before. God Almighty says "Hast thou not turned Thy vision to those who have been given a portion of the Book? They are invited to the Book of God, to settle their dispute, but a party of them turn back and decline (The arbitration)" (Al-Imran 3:23). God Almighty also described polytheists in the following Qur'anic verse. God Almighty says "Giving good news and admonition: yet most of them turn away, and so they hear not. They say: "Our hearts are under veils, (concealed) from that to which thou invite us, and in our ears in deafness, and between us and thee is a screen: so do thou (what thou wilt); for us, we shall do (what we will!)" (Fussilat 41:3-4) and also "But never did a single one of the signs of their Lord reach them, but they turned away therefrom." (Al-An`am 6:4)

12. Argument:

The same way that distrust attempt took the controversy shape as in the dispute of Aad tribe's to their Prophet Hood prayer and peace be upon him, God Almighty says "They said: "Comest thou to us that we may worship God alone, and give up the cult of our fathers? Bring us what thou threatens us with, if so be that thou tallest the truth!" God replied to them as follows "He said: "Punishment and wrath have already come upon you from your Lord: dispute ye with me over names which ye have devised - ye and your fathers, - without authority from God. Then wait: I am amongst you, also waiting." (Al-Al-A`raf70-71).

AFGP-2002-000031-0400

13. Doubting Islam:

This was an effort made by the Jews to strip the Muslims from their religion. God disclosed their position and exposed them. God Almighty says "A section of the People of the Book say: "Believe in the morning what is revealed to the believers, but reject it at the end of the day; perchance they may (themselves) turn back;" (Al-Imran 3:72) Jews also took the polytheists' side claiming they were right and the Muslims wrong as disclosed by the this Qur'anic verse too. God Almighty says: "Hast thou not turned Thy vision to those who were given a portion of the Book? They believe in sorcery and evil, and say to the unbelievers that they are better guided in the (right) way than the believers!" (An-Nisa: 4.51).

14. Stealing of Muslims' Rights: Jews resorted to steal Muslims' deposits and their debts under the pretext that the owners of these have embraced Islam. The Holy Qur'an mentioned and disclosed them. God Almighty says "Among the People of the Book are some who, if entrusted with a hoard of gold, will (readily) pay it back; others, who, if entrusted with a single silver coin, will not repay it unless thou constantly stood demanding, because, they say, "there is no call on us (to keep faith) with these ignorant (pagans)." but they tell a lie against God, and (well) they know it." (Al-Imran3:75).

15. Spreading Chaos and Igniting Wars: This was also done by the Jews in Medina because Jews were not pleased to see Al-Aws and Al-Khazraj in accord and friendly, a united nation. So one of them, Shass Bin-Qays went on to remind them of their old hostilities and battles until they almost set to clash with each other when the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers, be upon him, interfered and suppressed this diabolic war fire and said to them: "How could you practice such paganism while I am still among you and after God showed you the way to and honored you with Islam, saving you from infidelity and getting you closer to each other?" The following Qur'an verse descended on this occasion. God Almighty says "Say: "O ye People of the Book! Why obstruct ye those who believe, from the path of God, seeking to make it crooked, while ye were yourselves witnesses (to God's Covenant)? But God is not unmindful of all that ye do." O ye who believe! If ye listen to a faction among the People of the Book, they would (indeed) render you apostates after ye have believed!" (Al-Imran 3:99-100).

16. Degradation and Mockery: God Almighty says: "When the unbelievers see thee, they treat thee not except with ridicule. "Is this, (they say), "the one who was sent by God?"" (Qur'an 21:36), and "And they say: "What sort of an apostle is this, who eats food, and walks through the streets? Why has not an angel been sent down to him to give admonition with him?" (Al-Anbiya: 25.7).

17. Objection to the Almighty God's Choice for sending Messengers:

God Almighty says: "Also, they say: "Why is not this Qur'an sent down to some leading man in either of the two (chief) cities?"" (Az-Zumar43:31).

18. Laughing and provoking laughter: This was in Mecca. God Almighty says: "Those in sin used to laugh at those who believed. And whenever they passed by them, used to wink at each other (in mockery). And when they returned to their own people, they would return jesting. And whenever they saw them, they would say, "Behold! These are the people truly astray!" But they had not been sent as keepers over them!" Perpetually, God's replies to them and to all who lie to them use this weapon of psychological warfare against Muslims, came with the following verse. "But on this Day the Believers will laugh at the Unbelievers: On Thrones (of Dignity) they will command (a sight) (of all things). Will not the Unbelievers have been paid back for what they did?" (Al-Mutaffifin83:34-36).

AFGP-2002-000031-0401

The Prophet's peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, in his Psychological Warfare against his enemies

1. Deterrence:

The Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, was quoted as having said: "I would have had to fight a month to achieve what I have achieved by having the enemy terrorized." Also in the Qur'an, God Almighty says: "Against them make ready your strength to the utmost of your power, including steeds of war, to strike terror into (the hearts of) the enemies, of God and your enemies, and others besides". (Al-Anfal 8:60)

2. Victory by Terror:

In most his battles, the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, won most his battles by having the enemy flee from the battlefield.

3. Security:

The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, used to be reticent about his goals from the battle yet show other goals to the enemy. He also used sealed letters.

4. Reconnaissance:

The Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, used to gather information about his enemy before attacking him, and on the other hand, prevent his enemy from gathering information about him and his movements as he had patrols ranging all around Al-Madinah (his stronghold city).

5. Being on Good Terms as a commander with his Soldiers:

The Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, was very much close to his companions' hearts. Qurayshi Urwah Bin-Mas'ud, once said to his people: "Tribe, I have seen kings of Persia, Rome and Habashah and none of what I have seen resembles to Mohamed among his companions; those would never ever hand him over to anyone or anything." And the affection was reciprocal on the part of the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, towards his companions. God confirmed that pure perfect reciprocal affection in the following Qur'anic verse, as God Almighty says: "to the Believers is the most kind and merciful" (At-Tawba 9:128)

6. Moral Preparation for the Battle:

An example to this was the education on the part of the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, to his companions during all his time in Mecca and Al-Madinah, using the Qur'an as the greatest school for education ever known. He used to say to his companion: "The one who killed a man from the enemy will be entitled to death's belongings" and "Anyone of you who gets killed while sincerely fighting in the name of God facing the enemy not fleeing from him will be in the Paradise in the afterlife" Also, the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, used to Pray to God in battles asking for help to achieve victory such as "God, you who descended the Book (the Qur'an), who drives the clouds, the quick to judge your creatures, please defeat the infidel coalition, please defeat them, and shake the land beneath their feet and make us prevail over them".

7. Consultation:

In spite of the fact the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, was backed up by the revelation, he used to consult his companions for the following reasons".

- a. To establish the legacy of consultation in his nation.
- b. To provide the guidelines of consultation to follow by the coming rulers after him.

AFGP-2002-000031-0402

- c. To persuade soldiers of the justness of their battle.
 - d. To confirm the meaning of brotherhood to Muslims.
 - e. Humility of the prophetic leadership.
 - f. The importance of soldiers to their commanders.
- 8. Material preparation.** The Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, was quoted as having said: "He who equips a Jihadist will gain the reward from God" and also said (Surely, strength is in archery).
- 9. Firmness and Swiftness:**
When confront problems, the prophet of God, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him,, knew that Quraysh was at Hamra' al Asad, he ordered the Muslims to stand up quickly and confront them even though they injured.
- 10. Voluntary Discipline:** Companions of the Prophet (prayer and peace be upon them) were at the top in terms of discipline with him. We can see that, when he gave 'Abdallah Bin-Jahsh, be blessed by God, a letter and he asked him not to open it until two walking days and so he did. Also, we can see that, when he solved the problems between the Muhajirin and Al-Ansar and went out with him in the battle of Tabuk.
Deprive the Enemy from the Surprise Factor: The Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, him, has suggested to Muslims to give careful precautions to deprive the enemy from any surprise and complying with the Almighty sayings: ("O ye who believe! Take your precautions" (An-Nisa4:71) also said (Unbelievers wish, if ye were negligent of your arms and your baggage, to assault you in a single rush" (An-Nisa 4:102). Examples to this were the digging of the trench around the City, also, Khalid Bin-al-Walid used to not sleep unless by mobilizing soldiers and he never sleeps or allow others to sleep.
Demoralizing: We can see that, when the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, attacked Khaybar, he started to shout "Allahu Akbar, Khaybar is no more, what a wicked day for an enemy of ours, the one that wakes up on us waging a war on the same!" The Prophet also used to take surprise the enemy to oust him. Another example, when he detained Abi Sufyan to just see the Muslim armies passing in front of him.
- 11. Fragmentation of Enemy Forces:** An example to this is when the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, invaded Khaybar, where the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, emplaced the army between the Ghatfan and the Jews so Ghatfan could not provide the Jews with its troops. The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, also wanted to apply the same with the Ghatfan in the battle of al-Ahzab by offering them one third of Medina's revenues, but Al-Ansar, be blessed by God, refused that and instead informed the Prophet, they were not covetous to take any of the city's proceeds unless the villages and businesses, by God, after we've been blessed by Islam and His guidance and He made us proud of you, we will not give them our money hence, our sword.

AFGP-2002-000031-0403

Dr. al-Siba'i, God rests his soul, has said in his book "Our Great Personalities in History", page 102, that the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, was keen not to face all enemies together at the same time, and if this happened and all gathered to fight him he would try his best to fragmentize their forces, then in the first opportunity attack the strongest fragment of the enemy force, then the weaker and so on until he achieved victory.

Muslims' Ways of Psychological Warfare

1. Truthfulness: in speech and determination in achieving the goal:

This can be seen in Abu- Bakr al-Siddiq's, may God be pleased with him, precept to the Muslim commander 'Akramah who was dispatched to Amman: "Do whatever you mentioned doing, and do not make your words any vain talk and think before saying anything and when to say it". In fact, truthfulness of Muslim leaders was one important psychological factor in defeating the enemy and demoralizing their battle aspirations as it occurred to Khalid Bin-al-Walid, may God's blessings be upon him and when he surrounded "Olis" and which had Persian masses and their Arab followers and found it difficult to make any breakthrough. Khalid may God's blessings be on him pursued God for support by saying "God, I swear if you help me prevail on those I promise I will let none of them that we capture alive until their river turns red from their blood". And when he prevailed, Khalid called on his soldiers to capture as many of the enemy soldiers as possible and kill only who refused to surrender. Then he blocked the flow of that river and appointed a number of men to kill the prisoners to honor his oath. The killing lasted one day and one night. However, since the river was blocked, Khalid's oath was not totally honored. So, he was advised to unblock the river. The water then flowed merged with the premature blood and was called "The River of Blood".

2. Bravery during the war:

This can be observed in Khalid's bravery, may God's blessings be upon him and the rest of the Muslim commanders, the dueling before initiating the battle, and which is a means of psychological warfare.

3. Annihilation of the Enemy Military Leaders:

Since the first moments of the dueling battle, the commanders knew that death was their destiny when confronting the Muslims and as a consequence, their fear reflected on their soldiers.

4. Killing of Enemies and throwing their bodies in their faces :

Khalid Bin-al-Walid, be blessed by God used this style to introduce horror and psychological defeat in his enemies, while `Umar Bin-al-Khattab recommended his military commander Sa'd Bin Abu Waqqas not to spare the life of any prisoner except in the context of a safety agreement; this is to frighten God's and his enemy.

5. Decisive Chase:

When victory looms, armies used to surround and eradicate the defeated army, to avoid building up a new resistance.

6. Relying on Intelligence for Demoralizing the will to fight:

This used to happen, depending on Arab Christians and prisoners of war.

AFGP-2002-000031-0404

7. Pursuing the Opponents:

It happened when Ayyad Bin-Nizar's tribe fled to Caesar of the Roman Empire. 'Umar Bin-al-Khattab, sent a letter to Caesar saying: "I was informed that one of tribes has abandoned our land and immigrated to your land. I swear by God that if you do not drive them away, we will be driving away all the other remaining Christians. Caesar complied and he returned them back to `Umar, may Allah be content with him.

8. Taking Advantage of Conflicts among Enemies:

For example, in the Damietta Battle which was fought by Saladin, God rests his soul, he contacted all different sects openly and at the sight of each other until he created suspicions among them and eventually facilitated a good conciliation agreement to Saladin's terms.

9. Appearance in front of the enemy in a manner that terrorize him.

When Abu-Dujanah put the death band on his head and began walking arrogantly carrying the Prophet's sword and in front of the army gatherings, the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, said: "This is a kind of walk God dislikes except in this context".

10. The Jihad by word:

For example, the Prophet, peace and Allah's prayers be upon him, said to Hassan Bin-Thabit, may Allah be content with him: "Provoke polytheists and Gabriel will be with you." Also, quoting Ka'b Bin-Malik when he said to the Prophet, "Allah made poetry what it is." The Prophet replied: "The Believer should fight for the sake of God by sword as well as by word; by God the Creator I swear that what you utter of words against the enemy is as effective as the sweat of horses swelling up in the battlefield". Having said that, the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, establishes the following:

- a. That Jihad by word is necessary in armed and political struggle.
- b. That Jihad by word could yield more effective and quicker results on the enemies than would military Jihad do.
- c. That Jihad by word is a legitimate way of fighting the enemy.

11. Creating division between the Enemy and his Allies:

An example of this is what the Prophet's companion Na'im Bin-Mas'ud did in the Battle of al-Ahzab; as he managed to create a division the Jewish tribe of Qurizah who did not honor the agreement with the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, and their allies from Quraysh and Gafan tribes, which led – thanks to God - to the defeat of 'the coalition' or allies.

12. To neutralize other forces and deprive the enemy from their possible support:

For example, the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, concluded treaties with various tribes whereby freedom of delivery of his mission was guaranteed, as well as peaceful coexistence. This has automatically isolated and deprived Quraysh, his enemy, from making alliances with them.

13. Intimidating and psychologically pressurizing the enemy: Such as what Khalid-Bin-al-Walid said to the surrounded people of Qinnisrin "Even if you rode the cloud, God will take us up to you or bring you down to us".

AFGP-2002-000031-0405

Also of help will be to highlight the enemies' dilemmas and that there is no escape from Islam. Embrace Islam, pay tribute or face death. .Our dead are in Heaven, yours indeed are in Hell. Either victory or martyrdom. Another example is what Khalid Bin-al-Walid wrote to Hormuz: "Embrace Islam and you will be safe, or get yourself and your people under our protection and pay tribute, otherwise blame nobody but yourself as I have brought you people that love to die as much as you love to live".

14. Stripping the Enemy off the Will to Fight:

An example of this is when the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, ordered to have a military parade before Abi Sufyan, may God be content with him, until he went to Quraysh to inform them, this Mohammad has come to you with an army you have never seeing before.

15. Depriving the Enemy of Vital Facilities:

As this would weaken and subjugate them the way the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, did with Khaybar people.

16. Surprise Element:

This is rule number one of the war, that is to say, to take the enemy aback while he is preparing. The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, applied this rule in all his battles, particularly the conquest of Mecca.

17. perpetual advanced Preparation:

In compliance with God's instructions, "Against them make ready your strength to the utmost of your power, including steeds of war, to strike terror into (the hearts of) the enemies, of God and your enemies, and others besides, whom ye may not know, but whom God doth know" (Al Anfal 8:60), and taking advantage of every development.

18. Showing signs of superiority and glory through faith in God before the infidels:

Typical examples of this are the negotiations that took place between Sa'd Bin Abu-Waqqas, and Rustum and Kesra. History books are full of such events.

19. Slogans and Cheers:

This can be seen in the speech of prophet Mohammad during the Hanin incursion when Muslim soldiers dispersed away from him. He said: "I am the prophet, this is not a lie, and I am the son of 'Abd-al-Mutalib. O horses, ride Allah – Allah is great."

MILITARY COMMISSIONS TRIAL JUDICIARY
GUANTANAMO BAY, CUBA

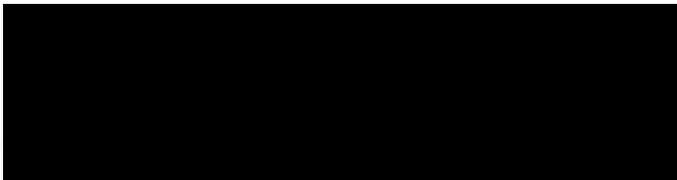
<p>UNITED STATES OF AMERICA</p> <p>V.</p> <p>ABD AL HADI AL-IRAQI</p>	<p>DECLARATION OF</p> <p></p>
---	---

1. I am fluent in written and spoken English as well as written and spoken Arabic.
2. I have taken the ALTA Language Services Translation Assessment and scored at skill level three or higher, which corresponds to professional performance.
3. I am familiar with the Arabic document bearing bates numbers AFGP-2002-000031-0406 to AFGP-2002-000031-0505, which is the Afghan Jihad encyclopedia.
4. To the best of my knowledge and belief, the English translation attached to this Declaration is a true and accurate translation from Arabic into English of the Arabic document described in paragraph 2 of this Declaration.

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed on: 07/30/2014

McLean, Virginia



HADI-1-016632

AFGP-2002-000031-0406

Missions of Psychological Warfare

- 1- To make the enemy doubt the goal he is fighting for.
- 2- To shake the enemy's confidence in his men (soldiers and commanders) and material forces as well as his confidence in achieving any victory, persuading him that waging or continuing with war will be useless.
- 3- To create division between the people of the enemy, their leaders and army so that they doubt each other, thus creating a situation of zero-confidence between them.
- 4- To create division between the enemy and his allies, and push the latter to refrain from supporting him.
- 5- To neutralize other forces and deprive the enemy of their support.

How to counter psychological warfare

- 1- **The power of faith in God Almighty and purity of Islamic creed in the mind of both the leadership and the soldiers are the basis for countering any rumor or claim.** This is because the person with strong faith in God sees things in the right context, rejects rumors and refers to the leadership for things unknown to him as stated in the Qur'an. God Almighty says: "When there comes to them some matter touching (public) safety or fear, they divulge it. If they had only referred it to the Messenger, or to those charged with authority among them, the proper investigators would have tested it from them (directly)." (Al-Nisa' 83). Whether the rumor is targeting a leader in particular or the leadership in general, he who has strong belief and clear ideology will have confidence in both, his leader and his leadership, as stated in the Qur'an. God Almighty says: "Why did not the believers - men and women - when ye heard of the affair, - put the best construction on it in their own minds and say, 'This (charge) is an obvious lie'?" (Al-Nur 12). When the believer sees or hears about the enemy's forces and capabilities, or threats, this will only make his faith in God grow stronger as he believes in afterlife. And if he lived and victory could not be achieved in the first round, then there will be many rounds for which he will surely prepare. God describes that good example of the forerunners in the following Qur'anic verse, as God Almighty says: "Men said to them: 'A great army is gathering against you': And frightened them: But it (only) increased their Faith: They said: 'For us God will suffice, and He is the best disposer of affairs.'" Also, the Muslim leader will not forget to thank God if he prevails. If not, he will resort to God and study the reasons of defeat in preparation for a new round of fighting the enemy. Psychologists and psychological warfare experts agree that armies with no creed or culture are the most affected by psychological warfare.
- 2- **To know as much as possible about the enemy:** Knowledge of the enemy, his methods, goals and ways of thinking is an important factor in countering the enemy's psychological warfare and makes the jihadist more prepared for it with faith, strength, and solid creed.

AFGP-2002-000031-0407**3- Uncovering and resisting division attempts:**

When psychological war is waged by the enemy, Muslim leadership has to uncover it and show its falsehood to Muslims in general and Muslim soldiers in particular as stated in the following Qur'anic verse, as God Almighty says: "O ye who believe! If ye listen to a faction among the People of the Book, they would (indeed) render you apostates after ye have believed!" (Al-Imran 100) God Almighty disclosed in the Qur'an the truth of People of the Book in all times. God Almighty says: "And how would ye deny Faith while unto you are rehearsed the Signs of God, and among you Lives the Messenger.

Whoever holds firmly to God will be shown a way that is straight." (Al-Imran 101) The Qur'an and the Prophet's teachings will always be there, therefore leadership and soldiers should refer to the Qur'an and Prophet's teachings when faced with psychological warfare; whether it be waged by outsider enemies or rulers at home who rule by other than God's revelations. God Almighty says:

"And hold fast, all together, by the rope which God (stretches out for you), and be not divided among yourselves; and remember with gratitude God's favor on you; for ye were enemies and He joined your hearts in love, so that by His Grace, ye became brethren" (Al-Imran 103).

4- Consciousness to soldiers' issues:

That is to monitor the unsuccessful and the frustrated, isolate them from the soldiers and punish them accordingly because an army could be harmed by insiders before by the enemy since the frustrated will find listening ears from around him. The following Qur'anic verse describes hypocrites and those who stayed behind in Tabuk incursion. God Almighty says: "If, then, God bring thee back to any of them, and they ask thy permission to come out (with thee), say: 'Never shall ye come out with me, nor fight an enemy with me: for ye preferred to sit inactive on the first occasion: Then sit ye (now) with those who lag behind.'" (Al-Tawba 83).

Isolating those elements from the army is better for the army. whereas if they stay they will do no good yet will do harm to the army even if they are numerous as described by the following Qur'anic verse, where God Almighty says: "If they had come out with you, they would not have added to your (strength) but only (made for) disorder, hurrying to and fro in your midst and sowing sedition among you, and there would have been some among you who would have listened to them." (Al-Tawba: 47).

5- Detecting attempts to shake soldiers' confidence in victory:

This can only be achieved by closely monitoring soldiers' morals and suppressing such confidence shaking attempts from the beginning. A typical example for this was in Al-Khandaq incursion with the following Qur'anic verse describing hypocrites' role in that event, as God Almighty says: "And behold! The Hypocrites and those in whose hearts is a disease (even) say: '(God) and His Messenger promised us nothing but delusion!' Behold! A party among them said: 'Ye men of Yathrib! Ye cannot stand (the attack)! Therefore go back!' And a band of them ask for leave of the Prophet, saying, 'Truly our houses are bare and exposed,' though they were not exposed they intended nothing but to run away." (Al-Ahzab: 12-13)

6- Eliminating attempt to play down the victory and its value:

Psychological warfare is launched well before the battle, and is intensified during and after military action. An example of such attempts is the Jews' attitude towards Muslims' victory in Badr Battle as they tried to downplay the victory, but when it became obvious they tried to raise doubts about it. Then, when Zeid Bin Harithah came with the news riding on the Prophet's camelback, they claimed he has just said that out of delirium or fear

AFGP-2002-000031-0408

And said we recognize the camel, and if the Prophet prevailed he would have kept the camel. They even tried to assassinate the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, who later told them: "You, Jews, should fear a punishment akin to that of Kuraish from God. So, embrace Islam and be safe; you know for sure I am the Prophet that your Book told you about, which God revealed to you".

7- Eliminating attempts of intimidation and psychological pressure :

We notice this in the attempt of Abu-Sufian after the Uhud incursion, when he dispatched a group from Hazil tribe to Medina, and when they inquired about Kuraish, they told them that they had made massive preparations that the Muslims will never match. The Muslims soon detected this intimidation attempt and suppressed it on the spot saying: "Allah is sufficient for us, and He is the best disposer of affairs.". The Qur'an registered this attitude as follows, as God Almighty says: "Men said to them: 'A great army is gathering against you': And frightened them: But it (only) increased their Faith; and said "Allah is sufficient for us, and He is the best disposer of affairs." (Al Imran: 173)

8- Secrecy and promoting security consciousness:

There is a rule known in the work of intelligence officers that says: "Need to know". Indeed, not all known is told, and not everyone has the right to say whatever they like. The blessed Abu-Hurirah said: "If I were to disclose the knowledge I have I would be killed". Also, God warned the Muslims from accepting rumors without investigation, as God Almighty says: "O ye who believe! If a wicked person comes to you with any news, ascertain the truth, lest ye harm people unwittingly and afterwards become full of repentance for what ye have done." (Al-Hujrat: 6)

9- Constant guidance, orientation and education:

Religious and intellectual guidance and education, solving soldiers' problems, educating them on the importance of their roles, and explaining the Islamic creed and Shari'a to them all plays an important role in eliminating and countering psychological warfare. The Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, spent thirteen years in Mecca training and educating his companions. Thus, they persevered and defeated all kind of psychological and material attempts to abandon their religion. The same can be said on Muslims in Medina.

10- Giving soldiers their rights:

As there is nothing that could demoralize a soldier more than feeling oppressed and not getting what he is entitled to, being neglected by the leadership or discriminated against, or not appreciating his efforts. God prohibited such oppression as in the Prophetic Hadith (O my servants, I have made oppression unlawful for myself and made it unlawful among you, so do not oppress one another.) In fact, oppression is behind defeat, loss of blessings, lack of success, punishment, disappointment and failure, and demise.

AFGP-2002-000031-0409

11- Presence of good example:

If the leadership and the commander are role models to their soldiers, this will eliminate the psychological warfare and its effects. As in this case, mutual trust is established between soldiers and their leader. A typical example of this is the young Muslim men in Mecca having maintained their Islam in spite of all the bad descriptions that Mecca's infidels gave of the Prophet (God's prayer and peace be upon him).

How to eliminate the effects of psychological warfare:

- 1- Purifying the soul from pain and regaining self-confidence.** For example, when Muslims wondered about the reason for defeat in the Uhud incursion, God replied to them as follows, as God Almighty says: "What! When a single disaster smites you, although ye smote (your enemies) with one twice as great, do ye say? - 'Whence is this?' Say (to them): 'It is from yourselves: For God hath power over all things.' What ye suffered on the day the two armies met, was with the leave of God, in order that He might test the believers." (Al-Imran: 165-166). Here, God indicated to Muslims that what caused defeat was their own doing. As told to them in the previous verses of the same chapter, God Almighty said: "So lose not heart, nor fall into despair: For ye must gain mastery if ye are true in Faith. If a wound hath touched you, be sure a similar wound hath touched the others." (Al-Imran: 139-140)
- 2- Confronting with facts:** This is also seen in the Uhud incursion when a rumor spread around during the battle that the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, had been killed, so he went up the mountain to be seen by his soldiers and reassure them. He called some of his soldiers by name just to prove he is still alive, knowing that the enemy would get to him even before the called Muslim soldiers arrive. And that was indeed the best way to suppress that rumor.
- 3- Analyzing the reasons for defeat:** This is inevitable to avoid causes for defeat as a prelude to removing them; for example, in Uhud incursion, the blessed companions of the Prophet found out that the reason for defeat was due to the shooters, God bless them, disobeying the Prophet's, prayer and peace be upon him, orders and abandoning their positions even though he stressed on them not to leave their positions neither in victory nor in defeat unless they receive clear orders from him.. They never disobeyed Prophet's orders, prayer and peace be upon him, since. Another example is taken from the Hunain incursion, when Muslims said that they would not be defeated because of scarcity of soldiers.
- 4- Removing the effects of psychological and military defeat:** It is accomplished by military action like it happened with the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, when he went out to face Quraysh in Hamra' Al-Asad following Auhud incursion, in spite of the many wounds suffered by Muslims

AFGP-2002-000031-0410

The Role of Intelligence in Psychological Warfare

Intelligence has three objectives in psychological warfare:

First: Propaganda analysis; whether it is state propaganda or enemy propaganda.

Second: Information gathering.

Third: Security measures responsibilities in psychological warfare.

First Objective:

Propaganda analysis needs pungent insight and full knowledge of the way the people who are under study think. Referring to this Paul Limburger says: "Propaganda is directed to the tiny details of the mind where people keep their personal associations and orientations in a world with shaken interpersonal relationships. The language to be used in propaganda is that of the mother, the teacher, the endearing lover, small birds, the policeman, the actor, the priest, (the thug) and the journalist. All these styles should be used successively. Propaganda analysis for evaluation purposes must be more perceptive to decide whether the analyzed propaganda is able to achieve its goals or not.

Propaganda analysis requirements:

- 1- To obtain the material to be actually analyzed; from the press, leaflets, books, radio broadcasting, etc. and following these sources over a period of more than six months.
- 2- The analyst should be fully familiar with the region in which he is operating to avoid mistakes in making the analysis and reporting.
- 3- There should be enough employees working with the analyst to avoid missing any important points of the analysis.
- 4- Sound selection of the media material he is to analysis, such as newspapers overseen by the government, newspaper of the opposition, and local newspapers; which are considered a good guide for domestic propaganda.
- 5- Selection of a number of government officials, tracking and getting every statement they make.
- 6- Availability of time, language proficiency, and the degree of analysis viability, which are all helpful in propaganda analysis.
- 7- Communicating with the audience receiving this material to find out the impact of the propaganda they received in order to complete analysis of the media person.
- 8- Making use of printed material.
- 9- Making use of the broadcast material since it is the least expensive, the largest source for propaganda absorbance, and heard by millions of people, by monitoring one or two programs from one station to come out with a good analysis; and making use of modern equipment

AFGP-2002-000031-0411

to record broadcasted material. And, when recording the broadcast material by one person or a small group, the main radio station must record the news and write it down word by word, which give the analyst the chance to review the material.

How to distinguish between truth and propaganda when we monitor?

It is up to the listener himself. If the broadcast is consistent with what the listener believes and knows it would be true, and if it were not consistent then it is propaganda. Editors, writers and journalists are characterized by the facts they collect. If the selection is intended to impact the people then it is propaganda. If it were broadcasted merely as news then it will not suffice as propaganda.

The propaganda analyst usually looks in the direction in which the broadcast material runs. He might identify and determine the "propaganda purpose" intended to affect the targeted audience by these broadcasts according to his estimation of general information available to him about the situation. And even if he could not identify the purpose of the broadcast, he can speculate through the type of the audience or the effect the broadcast material is supposed to create on them. On the other hand, if the analyst did not know the targeted audience, he can monitor the character of the broadcast material, the language of the service, and where from, where to and when it is broadcasted. Linebarger proposes a typical method that can assist the analyzing process. Linebarger, found it useful in analyzing public and secret German broadcasts, and analyzing Japanese propaganda materials in the last months of World War II.

This method includes the following elements:

Source including media medium, **T**ime, **A**udience, **S**ubject, and the **M**ission.

Making a new acronym (**STASM**) is just to help assimilate the five constituent elements of this word. Linebarger also indicates that the best application of this method is the use in analyzing broadcast materials that is listened to and of known sources. When dealing with these materials, the following must be considered:

-Consider first the nature of the source: there could be several possibilities; the real source from which the news or the topic originated and the apparent source the news is associated with, the source that first used the news, and the second-hand source that used the topic by way of quotation or taking some excerpts.

It could be useful to study the elements which constitute analyses of a propaganda subject.

AFGP-2002-000031-0412

The source:

1-The original source, where did the subject come from:

- A- The leak source: how did the news emerge?
- B- The person or the entity that generated the news.
- C- Who brought the news to us, the person or the entity controlling the known transmission media; we should disregard all the means available for the advertising analyst.

2-Apparent or superficial source:

What is the source claiming that the transmission was taken from and who brought it?

3-First and secondhand sources:

First Source: (the one who came out with the news first), the second-hand source (is the one that quotes the news from another source).

A- What is the relation between the first and the secondhand sources?

It is usually in the form of quotation. This is seldom a case of plagiarism or violation of copyright of the firsthand source.

B- Any modification in the second use from the first one, if the text is known in both cases:

- Have any paragraphs been omitted?
- Are there any modifications to the text?
- Has there been any addition to other broadcasted material?
- Is there any falsification that seems deliberate?
- What is the effect due to transferring from one language to another?

Time

1- What is the time of the reported events?

2- Transmission time?

3- Time of repeating the transmission?

4- Apparent reason for this timing?

The audience:

1 Audience directly targeted.

2 Indirectly targeted audience such as a (broadcasted program in English directed to North America but it reaches instead to Hong Kong and Singapore; through intentional planned by the program sender).

3 Non-targeted listeners or audience such as a citizen in West Africa could read the Lebanese "Al-Hawadith Magazine" or a Japanese person listening to the Friday sermon broadcasted before prayers time.

AFGP-2002-000031-0413

The subject:

What does it say – what does it contain.

- 1- Classify contents under the proper headings (i.e., is it merely news without falsification or is it information).
- 2- Summarize the contents to show any new propaganda tactics.
- 3- Sort contents that are beneficial in counter-propaganda.
- 4- Check how important the contents are from an intelligence perspective.

The Mission:

- 1- The nation, the group or the person being attacked.
- 2- Relevance to former subjects of the same mission or the relationship with former missions.

Second Task: Collecting Information.

This can be accomplished in different ways:

Overt information gathering, such as from newspapers, magazines, books, printed matter, official reports, radio and television or any information. In free press countries or where the press is free from government scrutiny, this is an important way of information gathering for the intelligence.

Covert information gathering (espionage) is used in cases where overt gathering is not enough to cover a specific point or subject. This can be accomplished by agents, informer, reporters, and modern equipment such as spy satellites. The essence of espionage is to reach the target, acquire it and transfer its information to the end user as quickly as possible.

Third Task: Security measures in psychological warfare

Normal security measures must be applied in all circumstances. The best way to achieve this in the field of psychological warfare is increasing security awareness among all military and civilians working in this field in peace time as most of those often instinctively talk to some other trusted people about important matters related to their work that might seem to them unimportant, to misguide them by giving the impression that they have insights to such issues, which might greatly affect security efforts.

And there is a dangerous symptom, if it spreads among those who work in psychological warfare, it would destroy much of their efforts, such as rumors and lies, for which we have dedicated a special section given its importance. Therefore, all those who work in psychological warfare at all levels must not be affected by any rumors and lies spread by the enemy, yet it is their duty to defuse this weapon and warn the people and soldiers not to be affected by the enemy's purposeful propaganda. Security measures taken in psychological warfare follow essentially the same general rules of security. Although attaining security requires the application of specific rules, intuition and instinctive feelings play important role in

AFGP-2002-000031-0414

measures which should be followed particularly in Psychological Warfare operations. For the purpose of study, here is a summary of fundamental rules that would achieve the purpose in this field:

1- Secrecy classification of the materials used:

This is the means that we have to classify materials and information used in psychological warfare according to their secrecy level. In fact, problems are often created for security personnel due to the lack of adequate security classification of information kept by various administrations working in this field. As a general rule, Top-Secret label must not be given to materials and information that are not useful to the enemy. Security classification of information is usually assigned to officers who are well trained on this job.

2- Identifying personnel who handle classified information:

After defining persons who are allowed to handle information at various security classification levels, personnel security measures must be applied on them. This is because people who work with those person, who are not authorized to handle classified information often instinctively try to know what sort of information those authorized persons have that they do not have themselves, and if they manage to get it, they do not appreciate the value of the information. They often feel offended for being deprived from having the same authorization, mostly out of curiosity and inquisitiveness. But, if they somehow get this information, they most probably appreciate how important it is; thus we find these individuals not committed to keep the secrecy of information. This is why security rules of handling classified information must be applied to the employees as whole and not just some individuals.

3- Making the distinction between security measures and censorship:

A distinction should be made between security measures that are taken in psychological warfare operations and censorship on publications. Censorship is quite a different function that has its own set of rules and conditions. Taking improper security measures and offering security officers the power to control censorship issues would encourage them to express yet enforce their own preferences in the press, the art or politics under the pretext of security. It is inevitable the consequences of this will be ineffective security and unsuccessful censorship.

Censorship must be applied in complete consistency with the national censorship policies or operation theatre censorship policy. On the other hand, evaluation of broadcast production or publications is another job, the purpose of which is to evaluate the production and consistency with the strategic propaganda. Publications and printed material are censored by sending it to the security officer. This way, security intelligence in all various branches can undertake the task of protecting the state secrets and installations.

AFGP-2002-000031-0415**Sabotage Resistance:**

Sabotage is a method of devastating warfare and is usually aimed at damaging the regime or the military or political organization of the enemy. It is an action against the administrative system, industrial and food production of the enemy and his armed forces, transportation system, and generally against anything that hinders the enemy's military effort.

Sabotage action is undertaken in various forms, not necessarily violent. There are direct, active violent and sudden sabotage operations against major objectives and targets. There are also indirect, passive ones against enemy morale and financial resources carried in nonviolent approach. Still there are other forms of sabotage called psychological targeting, the aim of which is to influence the masses to general strike or for the purpose of spreading a state of fear, chaos and disorder. Direct sabotage operations are undertaken through several means and at various levels. They can be targeted to major installations such as factories in areas of important industrial activity in the enemy's country, or to small targets such as crossover points in railroads and other targets that eventually hinder the national warfare effort of the enemy. Arson, destruction, explosives, damaging or blowing up machinery, is material manifestations of direct sabotage. The tools vary according to the target and targets' conditions.

Marine sabotage targeting ships, marine installations and navigation lines is one of the most dangerous sabotage works, due to severity of the inflicted damages.

Indirect or passive sabotage operations, on the other hand, can achieve their goals without apparent violence. The commonly known form of this kind of sabotage is to stimulate reducing production output, slowing down installation work, negligence that looks unintentional but eventually leads to damaging production efficiency, or organized theft of warehouses, and so on. However, psychological sabotage that aims at disturbing the enemy at his very home or at the territories occupied by its military is one of the most dangerous of all, as we mentioned earlier. Psychological sabotage based on rumors and humor also have devastating effects that are no less damaging than violent forms of sabotage yet outweigh the latter as we will see in the section on rumors.

In fact, sabotage is considered a major weapon in psychological warfare and like intelligence operations requires military, economic, technical and psychological preparations and the planning of which relies on information provided by active intelligence systems. It is carried mostly by subjects of the target country in which the events take place. For this purpose, preventative intelligence should make counter-precautions by securing installations, factories,

AFGP-2002-000031-0416

and vital utilities after detailed study of the site, the nature and system of the work and of the workers, in what is called "The Security Project".

However, countering sabotage must cover all kinds of sabotage; direct and indirect, material and psychological, based on practical analysis of possible sabotage scenarios, and candidate sites, and in general relies on the following:

- 1- Study and knowledge in directing implementation work.
- 2- Arresting the saboteur before he sets to action. A real-life example of this is the Egyptian intelligence's case of Wolfgang Lutz, the Israeli agent whom Israeli intelligence assigned the following missions:
 - 1- Collecting information on warfare effort.
 - 2- Collecting information on foreign experts contributing to develop the warfare effort for the purpose of undertaking direct material sabotage operations and assassinations as well as psychological sabotage activities such as sending intimidation letters to those experts, and disseminating hostile leaflets aimed at dividing the Egyptian community. This is a typical case from which we can see that we cannot differentiate between counter-espionage and counter-sabotage.

AFGP-2002-000031-0417

Countering Conspiracy and Rebellion

Conspiracy and rebellion here are meant to be a plot for a revolt against the regime with the goal of changing it or the ruling figures or imposing certain demands to meet the objectives of conspirators. Conspiracy in essence means rebellion and disobedience of the authorities or the prevailing rules. 'Civil disobedience' is sometimes used instead of 'rebellion'.

Sometimes, conspiracy can be locally originated from the people without incitation or assistance from abroad but is most often incited from outside countries, the interests of which contradict with the current regime before it happens.

The mission of security intelligence is to uncover any conspiracy or rebellion attempt, aborting it and arresting its plotters.

Security intelligence uses various intelligence methods in countering conspiracy and rebellion attempts, making use of all possible human and technical resources that are very similar to counter-espionage techniques, that is to say that security intelligence undertakes active counter-measures in this field.

Conspiracies and coups that take place in some countries are but a series of activities directed either from inside the country or from abroad, and are usually controlled and or encouraged by foreign countries, which makes them major national security concerns. Countering conspiracy is the tool that helps maintaining national stability based on the following elements:

- 1- The use of all technical intelligence tools and methods to impose protection and control in all fields, entities and establishments the individuals of which might possibly act against the current regime.
- 2- To identify the countries that are expected to support or encourage such conspiracies by studying their political principles and objectives adopted by the state and which cannot agree with the objectives and policies of such countries.
- 3- Monitoring the activities of groups, individuals and organizations that are possible targets to plotters of conspiracies and coups.
- 4- Also, monitoring of masses' state of mind and emotion as well as responsiveness to current events (public opinion) is considered a basis for the protection against conspiracies.

Countering destructive activity:

Countering of destructive activity is first and foremost based on people's awareness because destructive activity often starts by questioning the state's doctrine or orientation

AFGP-2002-000031-0418

and most often adopts a doctrine that is opposed to that of the state and promotes it particularly among mediums of the population that are psychologically and mentally prepared to accept it. And in spite of the fact the destructive activity usually tends to be secretive, it is limited in its first stage to penetrating the mind without violent action. The proper way to counter destructive activity, therefore, is increasing people's awareness, particularly if such activity is prohibited by the country's laws.

Domestic security:

This includes all preventive measures undertaken by the state to keep safe its secrets, national policy as well as its military, scientific and economic information and diplomatic decisions plus other secret information that would affect the security and safety of the state. Domestic security also counters the enemy's espionage by limiting the movement of its agents and preventing any leak of valuable information to the enemy intelligence. In dictatorships and fascist regimes where police methods govern almost everything in the state, it is easy for security systems to maintain their control on all subjects of the state. This is, in contrast with democratic states in which the individual enjoys a much wider freedom which hinders many security efforts.

Preventive security measures range from keeping secret information and preventing its leak to the resistance of any infiltration to sensitive positions in all state sectors. The final stage will be espionage counter-measures. We must not overlook the importance of the people's security awareness which tremendously helps the success of the security plan.

Counter-espionage:

Counter-espionage is the active side of preventive intelligence and can be defined as the knowledge, organization, analysis and activity the state intelligence uses to paralyze enemy intelligence activities.

Counter-espionage activity is directed against foreign intelligence activity with its main task being to identify enemy secret agents, exploiting it and controlling it.

The overall goal of all these efforts is to protect the security and safety of the state and prevent enemy agents from penetrating sensitive circles, and in this context uses knowledge to uncover activities of enemy organizations as well as its plots and intentions.

AFGP-2002-000031-0419

Broadcast censorship:

Broadcast security is a different matter. Experiences from World War II indicate that SPOT NEWS cannot follow routine security procedures and that it must be broadcasted quickly. Therefore, it is always desirable to use two kinds of censorships that complement each other.

- 1- The first kind of censorship can be achieved by the use of a so-called "SECURITY LIASON" on a continued around the clock basis with those operating the broadcasting station so as to quickly pass military news. The security (liaison) officer must be trained on the principles of total cooperation based on the realization of how important the propaganda is. He must realize that his task is to explain to his superiors the propaganda needs rather than to hold himself superior to the staff of that establishment. This has a reasonable psychological justification, as the presence of a friendly and kind security officer would promote the cooperation on the part of the broadcasting colleagues. Otherwise, a non-friendly attitude would push the colleagues to protect the dignity of their jobs, work and positions. And if repulsion becomes stronger between the security officer and the broadcast writer or broadcaster, it always leads to the worst consequences, particularly if this repulsion impacts morals of the propagandists.
- 2- The second kind of censorship can be practiced under supervision and censorship of the security officers using listening aids; i.e., good reception devices that enable those officers to listen to the broadcasts without meeting with the broadcasters. Of course, it will be useful that those officers have a certain level of awareness and able to criticize, as they unlike Liaison Officers, do not need to be closely cooperative with broadcasters with their criticism being possible after the transmission of the material rather than the other way around. Therefore, their criticism can be tougher and stricter to be applied in the future. Thus, the kinds of censorship are different from one another in terms of both form and timing; with the first performing censorship of the propaganda production during the transmission process and the second performing this role after that.

One major point that must always be kept in the minds of propagandists is that the security officer must remain so and cannot become a propagandist, as this is akin to turning a broadcaster into a security officer. The best approach is that each party should understand the other's job and know its limits, and that each one should try to help the other accomplish his mission.

AFGP-2002-000031-0420

Propaganda

Dr. Zahran defines propaganda in psychological warfare as "the planned used of any kind of mass media in order to affect the minds and emotions of a given enemy, neutral party, or friendly group for a specific strategic or tactical purpose".

Then he spoke about its effects: "Propaganda affects both civilians and military personnel and is based on the knowledge of the human psychology, sociology, and social psychology". It "disseminates languish, demoralizes people and tries to suppress motives and impulses to fight". It is characterized by "finding its way in the audio, the print and the visual; being silently flowing through people's daily lives, penetrating their minds through various media until a change is created in people's minds, beliefs and direction, to eventually make them embrace the proposed alternative".

Propaganda is divided into two types: positive and passive propaganda.

Propaganda is positive when it is aimed at inducing a change that would not otherwise take place in the target's behavior. The negative type aims to prevent an otherwise expected change in behavior from taking place if the campaign did not take place.

Propaganda depends greatly on playing with emotions, either directly or indirectly, in inducing the desired behavior but this does not of course mean that it excludes the mental dimension of the process.

Another fact about propaganda that should always be kept in mind is that the propagandist might often be overwhelmed by unexpected circumstances on which he has no control, and that would jeopardize his plots, no matter how skillful and perseverant he might be and detailed planning.

All this is expected to be wiped away by emergencies that no one has control of. Indeed, no matter how precise our expectations might be in inducing the planned change in behavior and attitude, we are often faced with certain mental factor that would affect people's behavior and attitude.

Propaganda tools

Media is the technical mitigated name of propaganda. Since the word "Propaganda" has been exhausted and created such a bad impression and ugly picture in our minds, it has been replaced with "Media". In fact, there is no such "Media" that gives the abstract truth without embracing, defending and promoting certain viewpoint. Every media system, media establishment, and media man has his own principles, and ideas or a case that tries to make, out of either real or false belief. However, there is no such media

AFGP-2002-000031-0421

professional that is “not affiliated” to the case. What I mean to say in other words, all that is now called media outlets are merely means of propaganda.

Indeed, television, radio, newspaper, posters and leaflets thrown from airplanes on cities and military installations, loudspeakers used by the armed forces in the battlefield, fighter jet bombs and shells that are stuffed with leaflets, printed matter, cinema, exchanges of people, libraries, and information centers, all these are propaganda tools.

However, the most dangerous of all technical propaganda tools today is television because it puts together more than one communication means and consequently more than a persuasive tool that might affect people's mind; namely the ear and the eye; the most important channels connected to the brain. Television coverage has now become nearly as widespread as radio.

The second most dangerous propaganda tool after television is radio, which has its own advantages over television such as ease of operation, low cost and wide coverage. In fact, a radio broadcast station can be operated from a Jeep in the field. However, the most dangerous propaganda tool remains the human being through personal communication.

Indeed, it has been proven through many studies, referendums and public opinion polls carried out in the West that the element of personal contact is a more effective tool of influence than all other technical propaganda tools. The most widely known experiments in this field are that of Lazard, Merton and Cater. From studies showing the effect of personal communication according to public polls of voters, buyers or others; personal contact came with 33%-39% result, compared with 14% for magazines, 25% for radio, and 6% for newspapers of polled opinions.

The use of correspondence in propaganda:

Correspondence can be used in propaganda, each require certain information according to its. Following are different types of correspondence:

- 1- Leaders' correspondence: this is based on precise information on the personality and psyche of leaders corresponded with and how connected they might be to the enemy. They can be addressed using bias, slander, objectivity or moderation in order to win them over or at least keep them neutral.
- 2- Slander correspondence: these are letters that are sent to two enemy destinations for slander purposes and neutralizing one of them. The two letters sent here are based on precise information on both parties, the nature of the relationship between them and of course on gaps through which slander can be affected. Authentic irrefutable evidence documents such as internal or partisan leaflets had better be sent here to the other party to substantiate the claims.
- 3- Deception correspondence: when we make a certain movement, we disseminate false, deceiving news to the enemy by sending letters to newspapers to spread this news in order to deceive the enemy. Double agents can also be used to get deception information

AFGP-2002-000031-0422

to the enemy under our control.

- 4- Advice correspondence: Letters of this kind are addressed to some men that have no close connections with the hostile regime, advising them to stay away from that regime, to neutralize them and to keep them in their positions to be later used to our benefit.
- 5- Correspondence with foreign media: using either overt or covert communication channels with them in order to disseminate the news we want in the way we want through them so it appears genuine and did not come from us.

AFGP-2002-000031-0423

How to better use propaganda

We must consider seven basic principles for using propaganda:

- 1- In the case of offensive and aggressive propaganda, targets have to be figures rather than subjects. It is easier this way to focus all efforts on persons because dealing with subjects is much complicated issue than to be addressed by propaganda that should rather be simple and easy.
- 2- Propaganda must be discrete and disguised so that it does not look like it is propaganda, otherwise it will fail.
- 3- Propaganda must rely on valuable information and precise knowledge of how things are going. It must be totally consistent with the political, cultural, military, economic and emotional orientations of the target country and population.
- 4- The propaganda must not seem as if it is creating new subjects but rather focusing on already current life subjects that should be treated to achieve propaganda objectives. The nearest to this approach is the Soviet communist propaganda against the West as it gathers all its efforts and focuses them on present and sensitive life subjects in the target countries like unemployment, political instability, and disintegration from within, yet addresses these subjects in artistic style and proposes its dialectics the same way.
- 5- Propaganda must adaptable to follow daily changes and must always be ready to amend its interpretations to suit daily changes that take place.
- 6- Propaganda cannot be automatically controlled. Even if instructions and directions come from a central authority that has total control over it, the style and means must be left up to those who do the implementation.
- 7- Propaganda must use all possible and available resources, particularly citizens of the target country, trying to win them over to get involved.

Propaganda plan:

One of the most important factors of success in every business is planning, and planning propaganda is no exception and it is of the most important factors of its success. When drawing up the plan it should not be complicated (it has to be simple; and can be repeated without impacting its subject).

Dr. 'Abd-al-Qadir Hatim mentions the following factors to be considered in drawing up the propaganda plan:

- 1- Propaganda must address not only minds but also emotions, "In this sense", Dr. Hatim says, "In addressing emotional orientation, propaganda must talk about love in the face of hatred,

AFGP-2002-000031-0424

justice in the face of unjustness and of honesty in the face of lying."

- 2- Continuously repeat aphorisms.
- 3- Propaganda must be tough and aggressive, as (propaganda and terror are not contradictory with each other, yet violence can complement propaganda. A German propagandist describes violence as the brilliant arc of the lightning, drawing the attention and directing it skillfully where the propagandist wants.)
- 4- Show power, success and victory, which have more impact than promise of victory.
- 5- Propaganda must not try to induce sudden indoctrination of the desired belief, as it is only expected to weaken the spirit of resistance as a step to accept the new ideas, and must use logical discussion to influence [TC: Illegible] the targeted people.
- 6- Concentrate on a few ideas and repeat them again and again.
- 7- Renewal is inevitable in propaganda as routine propaganda has little chance of success, even with repetition it will soon become boring.
- 8- Continuation, perseverance and follow up (so-called "door-to-door propaganda").
- 9- Address everyone in the language they understand (everyone has his own propaganda).
- 10- Simplicity is propaganda style, appropriateness in presenting the ideas, and total clarity. Hitler said in his book Kifah that (propaganda should have its mental level adjusted according to comprehension of the stupidest person of the targeted people).
- 11- Make use of opportunities, events and surprises.
- 12- Harmony between various propaganda tools.
- 13- Carry out experiments before the real action - this is known in propaganda as the "Test Balloon" or "feeling the public opinion's pulse", etc.

Psychological techniques in propaganda:

Propaganda tactics can be summarized as follows:

- 1- To create an alternative goal instead of the main goal. Dictatorships, for example, promote sexual and alcoholic freedom as a replacement to keep its subjects away from it and from their own rights.
- 2- Making use of the prevailing idea.
- 3- To replace desirable or undesirable nominations by other ones.
- 4- Selectivity of facts (such as in news bulletins and how selected.)
- 5- Lies.
- 6- Repetition.
- 7- To point out to an enemy, false or real, to focus people's emotions on it.
- 8- Making use of trusted references.
- 9- Emphasis on the truthfulness of claims.

AFGP-2002-000031-0425

The following is a brief on an experience of a propagandist mentality that might be the richest, most eminent and most developed propaganda practice in the world, that is to say, the Nazi Experience.

Nazi Propaganda Tactics

Nazi propaganda had endorsed the following tactics:

- 1- Addressing the general public and avoiding the intelligentsia:
Hitler saw that big revolutions did not erupt out of defending a scientific theory or desire to spread the same but out of the blind fanaticism for an idea or ideology. For this reason, Hitler saw that propaganda must be popular, i.e., down to the mental level of the general public and that the larger the targeted audience the lower the propaganda level should be so that all classes of the public can understand and assimilate it. The most effective propaganda is in a sense the one that is first targeted to the heart and senses of the public then to the mind.
- 2- Intimidation and inducement:
This manipulation of both ends of the nervous system of the human life, i.e., extreme intimidation on one part and enthusiasm and inducement on the other, is a good representative of the Nazi propaganda activity with which Nazis managed to control the whole German nervous system. It has now been revealed that many of the men who followed Hitler and died for him hated him, but Hitler propaganda techniques and putting them in a state of hypnosis; their will was paralyzed, they lost the ability to understand or even hate. Although they did not love or hate Hitler, they were, in a way, bewitched by him which made them mere dummies in his hands. Of course, the effect of Hitler's propaganda in making people bewitched by him was limitless; indeed as it targeted the darkest corners of the collective unconsciousness and avoided the levels of feeling and thinking, resulting in passions and unreasonable yet contradictory tendencies to overwhelm and govern the human being.
- 3- Focus and repetition:
Hitler says that Christian Church survived for two millenniums because it has kept repeating and reiterating the same thing all that time long, and so should the National Socialist State do by focusing on one target or one enemy at a given time, then move to another enemy and so on and so forth so that enemies can easily be eliminated one by one instead of dispersing the efforts on combating more than one enemy at a time. Thus, we saw this propaganda trying to eliminate the 'Weimar Republic' after World War I and replaced it by the Nazi Party. After that, it declared war on Jews, then the communists, the socialists, trade unions and the Church. After that, they focused on adding Austria, then on Czechoslovakia to devour it, then the demand for "Wazij" crossing that caused World War II. During World War II,

AFGP-2002-000031-0426

these goals extended to cover (invading the living space) of Germany, then defending of the people with the help of (the New Europe), and then defending the Christian values, and so on.

- 4- The resort to deception and lie when necessary:
Goebbels' attitude was clear in this regard; he said, "Lies can be useful when it is not possible to prove its falsehood". The essential point is the credibility of the news on the part of the recipient rather than its truthfulness, based on the premise that denial of false news is useless. The stimulus here is that the more false the news is the more its effect on people as general public usually thinks this way: "They would not even dare to say such a thing if they were not confident it is true". Hitler, in fact, knew that the falsest falsehood leaves its effect on people even if it proved later that it was baseless. On the contrary, however, Goebbels refrained from using many propaganda materials though they were to his favor in order to deprive the enemy from getting any useful information from them. An example of this was holding the news related to the considerable degradation of the quality of Russian weapons and the German plan to use new secret weapons. Goebbels also saw it necessary to resort to the unknown black propaganda whose source is unknown when traceable propaganda is not credible or can yield undesirable results. Then, he realized the importance of rumors or mouth-to-ear propaganda where official media denial would be useless.
- 5- Paying much attention to the timing of propaganda:
This is to ensure the propaganda will reach the targeted audience before the opponent propaganda as he who speaks first to the world is always right! This should also ensure that the propaganda will reach the targeted audience exactly when the situation becomes fully ripe and not after that and that opponent propaganda must not be given time to achieve its goals.
- 6- Focusing on slogans and phrases that characterize the events:
In order to be effective, they must be simple and easy to memorize and must be repeated in the proper situations. They must also be equivocal with focus on inducing the desirable responses from the public.
- 7- Trying to create an acceptable level of stress in the home front:
As too much stress could destroy morale just as too little stress causes indifference and negative attitude.
- 8- Domestically oriented propaganda must not lead to any frustration:
It must create confidence and optimism and avoid anything that could otherwise lead to the opposite.
- 9- Propaganda must help create an aura of glory around the leaders:
And to make heroes out of them as people's enthusiasm to give sacrifices is associated with how much they trust their leaders.
- 10- Clear identification of propaganda's enemies so that all hatred is focused on them.
- 11- It must be kept in mind that propaganda cannot make immediate changes in undesirable orientations

AFGP-2002-000031-0427

therefore, it must undertake and/or stop undertaking specific actions.

12- Propagandists must work in complete coordination with intelligence:

This is particularly important when it comes to the events and public opinion. Hence, Nazi propaganda resorted to taping telephone calls and analyzed what was published in foreign newspapers and media outlets, spies and taking confessions from prisoners and monitoring their mail to their families.

13- Propaganda must succeed in providing information and news:

This should be the main activity rather than commentaries, in addition to caring for leisure.

14- The goal, content and effectiveness of enemy propaganda and how it can effectively be detected, if at all, determine the proper attitude towards restricting, neglecting or ignoring it.

15- Direct contact with people, particularly in mass conferences can play a role that outweighs all media outlets, if it were cleverly prepared for.

AFGP-2002-000031-0428

Types of propaganda

Propaganda has several types. It can be divided into strategic and tactical propaganda from the time perspective, but can from the source perspective be divided into the following types:

1- White propaganda:

This is the propaganda which declares its source. This propaganda usually resorts to the right argument and good reason in explaining attitudes and goals, which gives it persuasive power to and easy access to people's mind and soul to convince them with legitimacy of its goals.

An example of this is the leaflet that was delivered to the German army units in World War II in English, French and German, urging German soldiers to surrender saying:

"The German soldier who comes with a copy of the leaflet gives an indication to his wish to surrender, then he will be disarmed, taken care of, offered food, and medical treatment". The leaflet carries the official seals and the signature of the Supreme Allied Commander Eisenhower.

2- Grey propaganda:

This is an anonymous propaganda and can be interpreted as black propaganda such as the leaflets dropped by the German to American soldiers in Italy depicting an American soldier dismissed from the army because of a permanent war disability under which the following begging sentence is written: (Do you have a penny for me?)"

3- Black propaganda:

This is quite anonymous propaganda yet it gives the impression that it is originated from a source that is quite different from its true source. And, it is top secret because if the true source is disclosed it loses the benefits. It targets directly the security of the enemy which increases the success of the agents. For example, the German sent messages to the French soldiers on the Maginot Line claiming they are sent from their families and compatriots countrymen telling them that their women were practicing prostitution and have become infected with sexually-transmitted diseases.

Propaganda, according to Dr. Zahran, has (a tactic that is similar to the tactics of the battlefield) in that it offends and defenses, might retreat from a certain sector of the front in order to hit in another and pretend it is going to launch an offensive somewhere while concentrating forces somewhere else. Propaganda can be divided into two divisions:

1- Strategic propaganda: This is targeted to the enemy forces, peoples of enemy countries and all occupied territories. In addition to established war plans, this propaganda aims at achieving other well determined objective goals during periods which could last for weeks, months or years.

2- Tactical propaganda: This has to do with tactical plans and is often directed to a limited audience and designed to support local military orders.

Dr. Zahran makes a distinction between two types of propaganda, the strategic propaganda directed to hostile people to demoralize and to surrender

AFGP-2002-000031-0429

And tactical propaganda aimed to hostile military forces to spread the spirit of defeat.

Still, there is another classification of the propaganda: Defensive and offensive

1- Defensive propaganda:

It aims at maintaining a kind of an agreed upon and applicable social or public activity.

2- Offensive propaganda:

Offensive propaganda aims at stopping any undesirable social or public activity and converting it by propaganda and orientation to another desirable one. This can be achieved either in revolutionary means (within the community) or through international diplomatic channels.

3- Divisional propaganda:

This is meant to be a propaganda that divides the targeted enemy society or makes cracks in a specific standalone military front. An example of this is the campaign launched by the Allies in World War II inciting Catholic soldiers in Germany to rebel on the German nationalism.

4- Focusing propaganda:

This kind of propaganda is intended to disprove part of the enemy propaganda in a specific subject (such as the Japanese accusations of the Americans of having committed atrocities, in reply to similar American accusations).

Dr. Hamid Abd-al-Salam Zahran, adds additional type of propaganda to previous ones, the white propaganda which originated by the government and black propaganda of an unidentified source.

Dr. Anwar Sibai' adds (private and official propaganda) private propaganda, according to him, is the kind of propaganda practiced by political institutions that feel they need such propaganda and consider it a turning point in its political life - this is why they spend very generously on it. With time, such institutions get into a propaganda game with each other and in the heart of competition...in such game, facts may get distorted.

Official propaganda, on the other hand, is the government's official statements about problems faced by the masses. Then Dr. Sibai' mentions some departments within the government that practice such propaganda "Ministry of War", he said, "is the entity that tells officials what to say about national defense, offense or neutrality plan, concentration of forces, or surprise. Most Foreign Affairs Ministries in the world have special departments for defending the state's policy...and all economic, military or cultural aids granted by some countries to other nations are but a new type of propaganda aimed at achieving certain goals."

AFGP-2002-000031-0430

Additionally, there is (domestic propaganda and foreign propaganda). "It is inevitable for any political community to have its propaganda machine run in the direction of political strategy and for the support of the latter both at home and abroad". Hence, all media organizations of a state work within the circles of domestic and foreign policies of that state.

418

AFGP-2002-000031-0431

The Rumor

Definition:

It is the circulation of false unfounded news or presenting partly authentic news in a deliberately exaggerated or distorted way to psychologically influence the local, regional or international public opinion for the purpose of achieving some political, economic or military goals at the local, regional or international level.

Or it is (a particular subject circulated among people by word of mouth in order to believe it or believe it is authentic with no evidences to substantiate its authenticity).

The rumor can be spread by means of the media.

Not all rumors are the product of imagination. Some of them may be baseless and some others may have some truth in them. And they are not always false or malicious. For example, let us suppose that in an air battle an airplane is shot down on the home territories and that local people hurried up to save the pilots. Though official media will not talk about the event out of security considerations, the people themselves will talk about it to their friends and the true story will be spread as a rumor. In fact, a distinction must be made between the rumor and the news. In order for the news to be news, it must be substantiated by proof and exclusive evidences. The rumor, however, is poorly substantiated. For example, when a newspaper publishes the text of renting law, this would represent true news. But, when people start talking about it away from reality, the news starts to become a rumor.

The myth is a rumor that has been frozen with time and become part of the people's oral heritage. Myths that deal with basic forces in nature, cosmos and some of the people's convictions are called theological myths.

Constituents of the rumor:

1- Ambiguity of truth:

Rumor is built around an ambiguous part of the truth and a core of reality. In fact, it sometimes has a base. Ambiguity comes from the lack of news, brevity or incredibility of the news. Rumor, therefore, cannot affect those who know the facts or can check them.

2- The importance of the subject:

The subject of the rumor has to be important in order to make people circulate the rumor with interest; otherwise there will be no rumor. For example, the spread of a rumor about the rise in sugar price is not a valid subject for rumor in our countries because it is of no interest to the people here. Rumor, therefore, is an expression of people's fancies and interests and a parameter of public opinion, thus psychologists are interested in studying, monitoring and fighting it.

Rumor strength is partly proportional with the multiplication of ambiguity and importance (Rumor strength = Ambiguity x Importance). However, if either the rumor ambiguity or importance is nil, this will not make the rumor nil too.

AFGP-2002-000031-0432

Motives and chattering reasons:

- 1- Living in a community where people are used to telling the news without making sure whether it is true or not - instead they use expressions of uncertainty like (I have heard that, I think that, I have been told that, and so on), which makes the individual a qualified carrier of the rumor virus.
- 2- Keenness to present an acceptable convincing explanation of events even if the person did not have explanation elements.
- 3- Human haste, eagerness and curiosity as well as the lack of time to make the necessary investigations.
- 4- The fact that details do not last long in human memory makes the news and events tend to shrink with time and get distorted with transmission from one person to another, and emerges as rumors. Indeed, it has been established by experiment that 70% of the details drop during the first 5 or 6 transmission instances even during a short time. This way, a rumor changes from being true news until people start to circulate it among them when they gradually drop some facts and add bits of their own imagination and fancies to it so that it becomes interesting and exciting; and soon will it become like a snow ball that gets bigger whenever you roll it. Here we appreciate the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, who said or quoted saying: "May Allah cause to flourish a slave (of His) who hears my words and understands them, then delivers them as heard from me. There may be a carrier who is more aware than the recipient".
- 5- Hatred of opponents and competitors leads to creating rumors about them.
- 6- Showmanship leads to creating rumors and modifying the facts so that the person leaves an impression that he has information that nobody knows about.
- 7- Emotional psychological motives such as love and admiration (of a person or a group), hatred or hostility, hope, fear, curiosity and suppression. Inability to cope with certain opponent to defeat him leads to creating and iterating rumors about him.
- 8- Self-appeasing and inability to deal with failure: just as a person who fails in business resorts to accuse other traders of cheating, blandishment and bribery to satisfy and persuade himself that he is cleaner and better than they are since he did not behave as such. This way, he starts spreading rumors about others to satisfy himself; if he could not get something which he likes, he would describe it as sour grapes.
- 9- Reflection: Rumor is a kind of daydream. So, if the story or rumor is consistent with people's tendencies and explains to them the truth that coincides with their secret life, they tend to believe it. This is called "reflection", where the person's emotional composition unconsciously reflects on his interpretation without knowing what is going on around him.
- 10- Psychological Projection: Or what is known in psychoanalysis as "the search for a scapegoat". This is the process of defending ourselves by denying our unpleasant impulses while attributing them to others, exaggerating in accusing them of the same, which relieves us from the pain of our mistakes and shortcomings and earns us a kind of psychological respect.

AFGP-2002-000031-0433

“We blame our times but the blame is in us. And we do not have to blame others.”

Psychological interpretation of the rumor:

Some psychoanalysts see that rumor resembles a daydream in that it represents an expression of our suppressed tendencies, fears and desire for revenge. In fact, reiteration of rumors eases our existing emotional tension and relieves suppressed drives. Rumor also relieves the mind from pressure of an obscure situation where the individual look for reasonable justification and tends to give interpretations consistent with his motives and wishes. This is why when rumor moves from person to another it undergoes modifications that suit the carriers' drifts and drives. An intelligence system has once launched a rumor by way of experiment. The reflected version of the same was received a week later full of add-ins and complications that expressed the people's hopes and aspirations.

Classification of rumors:

Rumors can be classified according to their subject, drives or speed of propagation.

- A-** According to their subject: Rumors can be divided into political, racial, illness, economic, or military rumors. This classification is useful in that it can set a range of subjects that are important to people so that we identify their interests and propose the appropriate treatment.
- B-** According to their drives: rumors can be divided into hostility, fear, curiosity, interpretation, relief of emotional stress, optimism (dreaming rumors) as well as security & fear rumors, as being mentioned in the Qur'an: "When there comes to them some matter touching (public) safety or fear, they divulge it."
 - There are also rumors that spread in peacetime and others that spread in wartime.
 - Among wartime rumors:
 - 1- Wishful (dreaming) rumors or (safety) rumors.
 - 2- Terror or horror rumors.
 - 3- Divisional rumors (back stabbing): the aim of which is to spread hatred and hostility.
- C-** According to circulation:
 1. Slow (creeping) rumor: they are circulated slowly and people handle it by whispering. The reason for the low speed of circulation here can be either difficulty of social cohesion or being so strange that it is difficult to believe.
 2. Quick (swift) rumor: they propagate among very large groups in a very short time. More quickly and widely to propagate are catastrophe rumors such as famines, floods, earthquakes, and dramatic events like wars and their consequences. The reason for the high speed of propagation here is that these rumors create much interest among people and are loaded with huge feelings and emotional panic and anger,

AFGP-2002-000031-0434

or sudden delight. This kind requires immediate action on the part of concerned officials and security systems to avoid its dangers and serious consequences.

- 4- Diving rumors (Surplus):** This kind of rumor emerges in certain times and circumstances and disappear to reappear newly again in the same similar circumstances when it appeared the first time. Some of these rumors are spread in wartime such as poisoning water supply, mutilation of women and prisoners, rumors of new governments as well as World War I & II rumors. These rumors can be interpreted in two ways:
- i. Either they hibernate in people's minds until they bring them out years later when they find themselves in a similar situation to the one they first heard.
 - ii. Or it could be that human needs create similar stories in similar circumstances.

Ways of presenting rumors:

- 1- Direct presentation: This is to present the rumor by the speaker directly to the ear in the form of news.
- 2- As a joke: In fact, the rumor popularity relies not only on the psychological and social preparedness of the target audience but also on the way it is formulated. The clever circulator launches the rumor in the form of a joke in order to make it more attractive to the people and widely spread. Whether people believe it or not, this joke-like rumor leaves its effect on the opponent. Examples of these kinds of jokes are political rumors launched about presidents and ministers as well as caricature sketches in newspapers that target a specific idea or VIP such as showing scholars and clergy in funny or shameful ways with intention to hurt and defame them.
- 3- Presented as a story: by putting the rumor into a good story to attract people's interest and increase the popularity of the rumor.
- 4- As a saying: in order to fasten accusations and defame a person or a group "The guardian is the very thieves".

Purposes of rumors in wartime:

Wars and disorder (such as demonstrations) are the best times for rumors to emerge. Following are the purposes of rumors:

- 1- Fragmentation: meaning demoralization of the opponent and splitting his lines. This is manifested in several ways:
 - A- Demolition of the opponent's morals: by spreading panic and despair and shaking his confidence in the victory. The Germans used dreaming and panic rumors for demoralizing the French during the German assault on France. For example, they used to spread rumors of false victories for the French

AFGP-2002-000031-0435

and to later discover that it was unfounded news, resulting in despair.

Then defeat rumors are spread to deepen the state of despair and distress. Another example from Islamic history when the infidels spread a rumor in Uhud incursion that the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, was killed, which caused some Muslims to disperse and stop fighting so that only a few of them were left around him.

- B-** Dispersion and dissension of the enemy such as creating friction between the officers and the soldiers.
 - C-** Spreading division and conflict between the enemy and his allies to push the latter to desert him such as what Nai'm Bin Mas'ud did with Ahzab.
 - D-** Rattling the enemy's confidence in his men, leadership, convictions and the cause he is fighting for, such as false hadith launched by the hypocrites to defame the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, in his mission and in his person. The Muslim community then suffered a whole month of this terrible rumor that left them in total perplexity.
- 2-** Masking the truth: When some true information reaches the enemy, rumors may be launched about that causing doubts about it, leaving the enemy unable to distinguish true from false information. The Germans were the masters of this technique in World War II.
 - 3-** Degrading and damaging the enemy's media sources: By spreading fabricated rumor saying that your enemy has hit a target on your territories, and have this fabricated news reach the enemy through double agents or neutral media, so that the enemy broadcasts the news-rumor by his media. Then, you take it the published fabricated news and disprove it and expose the lie thus degrading the enemy's media and information sources. An example of this was during the World War II in 1941 when the German Media Ministry circulated a rumor that British air raids have severely damaged Berlin railroads and that Berlin railway station was completely destroyed. The British picked up this news-rumor and broadcasted it thinking it was really news. Then, the German invited media reported and showed them the railway station totally intact, which shook the credibility of the BBC.
 - 4-** Lure of classified information reticent by the enemy: When a rumor is circulated about heavy damages on the part of the enemy, enemy leaders under the pressure from their people are pushed to disclose this fact thus giving us valuable information that we desperately need. Our media must therefore be careful not to be trapped in such rumors, but use other means.

AFGP-2002-000031-0436

Gossips and Riots

Although rumors are not the only reason for riots, however it plays a supportive role in creating it. There is a psychology rule that says "There could not be unrest without rumors that incite, accompany and aggravate it.

Development steps of rumor-incited unrest:

- 1- Before the unrest starts, the target country passes by a period of restlessness created by the lack of assurances during which rumors take the form of stories of discrimination and humiliation, thus becoming an indication to security forces to take preventive measures and so things are taken care of.
- 2- When rumors takes a threatening nature indicating an eminent danger, the rumors take various forms, such as "Do not leave your home this evening as something is going to happen today..." Then, unrest can be expected to erupt soon, a reason for security forces to take the necessary precautions to prevent the unrest activities before happening.
- 3- The eruption of unrest activities most often as a result of a very agitating rumor that circulates among people like wild fire, to be followed by sabotage, arson and killing incidents.
- 4- After the eruption of the unrest, other rumors propagate more quickly than ever speaking about furious torture and killing operations that consist with the violence that has already erupted, which accelerates the revenge process.

Rumors and public opinion:

Rumors circulate through people and prepares people's mind while spreading. At this stage, it takes the form of a short, clear and easy to understand and deliverable rumor. Then it becomes sharper and sharper after details being added to it, emphasized by the people, in the mind of which the rumor becomes an important part of thinking. Thus, the rumor soon becomes a reflection of people's emotions and their own aspirations. And, since the individual behavior is very much affected by the collective behavior, so it becomes part of the public opinion. For example, Iraqi intelligence has created a specific rumor, by way of experiment, and circulated it among the people. A week later, the rumor returned to the source more complicated than it was a week ago with more details and add-ins that were worthy of attention and analysis, which are indicative of public opinion.

Rumor analysis:

In order to analyze a rumor, one need to know its psychological drives, what makes it propagate among people, what are the laws that govern its propagation and what sort of distortion it undergoes during propagation?

AFGP-2002-000031-0437

Scientist Albert has proposed a good guide for analyzing rumors in which there are many questions that help the analyst in his work such as questions about the obscurity and importance factors and which one is more important. The inner tension, reasonable elements of the rumor, the purpose of circulation, whether it includes any dates or figures, does it address current events, what is the presentation style: a joke, a story, in which language and linguistic style, the best way of implementation, and so on and so forth.

For example, in the fifties and sixties when extermination campaigns intensified against Islamists, a rumor was circulated that those **preachers** had received sums of money from the British and Americans, stating names, numbers and places of money delivery. If we analyze this rumor, we will find the following:

- 1- The (source of the rumor was the intelligence of that state as well as communist and nationalist parties. They aimed from launching and circulating this rumor to absorb any possible feeling of sympathy the ferocity of the planned hit on those Islamists would create among the masses, using the much hated names, and black history of Britain and America by the people and its bitter experience with them.
- 2- Specific evidence was necessary to prove the Islamists' betrayal as it was not enough just to say that they are agents for the British and Americans. So evidence of the betrayal had to be given with the story of delivering money, giving names, numbers and places to delude the masses of their honesty.
- 3- The story of money handed over to the Islamists was plotted based on a rich field experience. No wonder, as the regimes have done their best to buy the loyalty and integrity of their agents; made it easier for them to portray the issue with such plot. Party members who live at the expense of the people can easily "project" their reality to target their opponents (as the Arab saying goes: "She infected me with the disease and slipped away").
- 4- The rumor greatly relies on the people's ignorance of the facts, which reveals a kind of gap with the masses; otherwise such rumors would not have been circulated and believed.

Rumor constituents:

Islamic society, which is based on the rules of God, is one of the most immune societies against rumors and psychological warfare thanks to the preventive controls that counter rumors' iteration and circulation. Here are the reasons why:

- 1- Educating Muslim individuals with the virtue of controlling their own words and silence when there is nothing good to say. Indeed, silence is one of the most important protections against rumors, as these will stop a while later and therefore die out. Protection, in fact, is rather more important than treatment. There are numerous texts that Islam urges people to keep silent when they have nothing good to say. Here are some examples:
 God Almighty says: "Not a word does he utter but there is a sentinel by him, ready (to note it)." (Qur'an 50:18) (He who believes in Allah and the Last Day, let him speak good or remain silent), narrated by Al-Bukhary and Muslim.

AFGP-2002-000031-0438

"The person would utter a word, unaware of how harmful it might be, that makes him slip in Hell a distance further than that between the sun rise and sun set". – Approved prophetic hadith.

"The person needs more to be a liar than to say all that he heard", narrated by Muslim.

- 2- Educating individuals to verify what they hear. So, since rumors usually bear partial truthfulness which makes individuals – if committed to their faith- not accept these rumors as there is no way to verify them. God Almighty says: “ye who believe! If a wicked person comes to you with any news, ascertain the truth, lest ye harm people unwittingly”. (Qur’an: Al-Hujurat)

Commenting on the false hadith and showing Muslims how to deal with rumors, God Almighty says: “Why did they not bring four witnesses to prove it? When they have not brought the witnesses, such men, in the sight of God, (stand forth) themselves as liars!” (Qur’an: Al-Nazr).

This is what Sayed Qutb, may God rest his soul, calls: "Request of External Evidence".

- 3- Educating Muslim individuals to favorably judge each other which holds the Muslim society together and makes the propagation of rumors difficult. Mutual good opinion between individuals in the Muslim society is the rule, unless conclusive evidence is presented that breaches the trust. Commenting on the false hadith, God Almighty says: “Why did not the believers - men and women - when ye heard of the affair, - put the best construction on it in their own minds and say, "This (charge) is an obvious lie”?” (Qur’an: Al-Nur).

This is what Sayed Qutb calls the "Request of Internal Evidence".

- 4- Education the individual on taking life seriously enough and avoiding focusing on silly things or chewing on low-level issues. "An indication of how good the Muslim is, as a Muslim, is to keep out of business that it is not his" and "God likes Muslims focusing on high-level rather than low-level concerns" Hadith Narrated by al-Tirmizi.
- 5- Filling the gaps through which ill-wishers have access to circulate rumors. This is by making advice fundamental in Islam (The religion is an advice). This way, Muslim society becomes strongly cohesive, in terms of individual relationships among each other and their relationship with their leaders, thus blocking the way for any ill-wisher who may want to circulate rumors.

Also, Islam advised people to keep away from suspicious and doubtful places and people (May God, have mercy upon a person who avoids dealing with the scurrilous). This way, ill-wishers will not find a gap through which to launch their splitting rumors and falsehood.

- 6- Educating people how to deal with obscure and anonymous news, i.e., by referring them to the higher authorities for investigation, analysis and taking the proper actions thereabout. God Almighty says: “When there comes to them some matter touching (public) safety or fear, they divulge it. If they had only referred it to the Messenger, or to those charged with authority among them, the proper investigators would have tested it from them (direct).” (Qur’an: Al-Nisa’).

AFGP-2002-000031-0439

Sayed Qutb, may God rest his soul, comments on this Qur'anic verse as follows: "This verse pictures a group of Muslims in a camp that has not realized yet how devastating rumor can be in splitting the lines because they have failed to live up to the challenge of the events. Rumor is destructive, whether it is a rumor of security or a rumor of fear. The first loosens the tension of vigilance in the camp that has been on alert, regardless of what vigilance orders might be since being vigilant out of alertness is different from being vigilant in response to orders. Lack of vigilance out of a false feeling of security could be fatal. Similarly, the spread of a rumor of fear in a secure and confident camp could cause shaking, disturbance and unnecessary movements in an effort to provide protection against a false danger, another possible fatal mistake.

Qur'an guides the Muslim folks to the right path how to deal with such rumors; that is to say, to refer the news or rumors of security or of fear to the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, or to their believing leaders to find the facts, and are able to discern and make the right inference from the stacks of false and circumstantial news (rumor analysis), and consequently whether it be good to publish the news or not to publish it.

Above are the most important preventive measures brought about by Islam to counter rumors and psychological warfare; but if the rumor did indeed get around, in the community then it must be dealt with. Here is the treatment:

- 1- Rumor monitoring: In order to know the truth about it and where it was originated from. This task can be performed by a specialized apparatus in the state.
- 2- Rumor analysis: In order to know its drives, goals, effect and how it is made (by disclosing its truth, separating the exciting plotted part of it, and how to counter it by another rumor...).
- 3- Filling the time of people by keeping them busy and providing jobs for them in order to get rid of the atmosphere rumors can be circulated in, i.e., boredom and laziness. Indeed, empty minds can easily be filled in with lies and trifles. Once, the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, was on his way back to Medina with the Muslims from one of his incursions, and they stopped for rest. While the immigrants and supporters were at the water well; a fight erupted between one of the supporters and an immigrant. Hypocrites, among the Muslims, set to exploit the situation and aggravate the problem until it has become really critical. In order to suppress the riot, the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, ordered them all to march at mid-day for the whole day until they became exhausted. Then, he allowed them to take some rest and so they all went in a sleep out of exhaustion. This way, the riot was suppressed.
- 4- Preventing circulation of rumor since it is an effective weapon used by the enemy. For example, Qur'an instructed the Muslims not to deal with circulating (false) rumor. God says: "And why did ye not, when ye heard it, say? - "It is not right of us to speak of this: Glory to God. This is a most serious slander." (Al-Nur).

AFGP-2002-000031-0440

- 5- Disclosing the irrefutable truth by issuing statements and publishing information about the issue or subject which filled people's minds with doubts and made them exchange rumors, while balancing that while keeping the secrecy of the issue and information at hand. So, the leadership here has two choices: either to keep matters vague so that it becomes able to implement a certain plan, and thus leaving room for rumors, or clarify things and thereby block the way of rumors at the expense of losing part of its ability to carry the political or swift military attack. So, balancing between these two choices is necessary in order to make the best choice. Educating people in peace time to trust the leadership, obey its orders, believe what it says and trust the wisdom of its acts, and increase the awareness of individuals. All these things make people capable of facing and helping the leadership face rumors.

Example: In the Uhud incursion, a rumor got round that the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, was killed at a very difficult time, which terribly affected the morale of the Muslims, so much so that some of them dropped their weapon and stopped fighting. To face the situation, the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, camped on the mountain in order to be seen by his soldiers and return the trust to them. He even deliberately started to call some of his soldiers by their names just to prove to them that he was still alive. Showing himself alive on the mountain was the irrefutable truth to counter the rumor with. This not only eliminated the negative effects of the rumor on Muslims but also helped positively gather the dispersed forces together in the battlefield, so effectively in fact that they chased the next day the enemy soldiers to Hamra Al-Asad.

- 6- Tracing the rumor to know who launched and circulated it so that appropriate punishment can be applied.

In countering rumors, attention must be paid to the following factors:

- i. The reply should be reasonable and substantiated with facts.
- ii. The reply must be so objective that it leaves no room for discussion.
- iii. Not to exaggerate by resorting to absolute negation as many rumors have a nucleus of truth in that they must be recognized by the leadership so that public trust increases in its leadership.
- iv. Not to ascribe all rumors to the enemy so as not to magnify his picture in the mind of people or help make of him a coat hanger on which to hang all our problems (such as the Camp David Coat Hanger).
- v. To place the rumor in a context where it is preceded by a negating, mental preparatory introduction and followed by a mentally-decisive conclusion. If we directly present the rumor without introduction, it could get attached to the mind of people, and we would have contributed to the propagation of the rumor instead of effacing it.
- vi. To break the original syntax of the rumor because it is attractive and very much worked on by brains and departments. Use an alternative, flimsy linguistic 'dress' instead of the original one.

AFGP-2002-000031-0441

- 7- Ignoring inert rumors, as not all rumors deserve a reply and it is useless preoccupying people's mind with such rumors.
- 8- Serious presentation of the rumor rather than presenting it in a comical or amusing context, and drawing attention to its harmful and dangerous effects.
 - Some highly effective expressions can be used to warn the masses against dangers of rumors and its harmful effects and describe those who propagate and circulate them. The following are examples of such expressions:
 - i. Rumor is a lie and only those who have no faith fabricate lies.
 - ii. Rumor is a doubt and doubtful words are the worst to utter.
 - iii. Rumor is illusion, fooling and deception.
 - iv. A rational person does not rely on rumor because it is not worthy of being relied on.
 - v. Rumor is one of the enemy's weapons.
 - vi. Rumor demoralizes people and the one who circulates it is a traitor.
 - vii. Rumor exposes what's in the mind about others.
 - viii. Rumor is the weapon of the coward, the envier, and the hypocrite.

Note:

Rumor can be permitted to flow as a preventive weapon from enemy's attacks. For example, in World War II Hitler used to draw whole fake cities on the ground and deploy cartoon airplanes in order to deceive the Allies and make them attack these false targets. And when the allies did so and declared that they destroyed German 'targets', Hitler's media machine did not deny the news, leaving them flow normally. If the Germans denied it and disclosed the trick, the Allies will get back to hit real targets. Thus, rumors in this case have been used as preventive weapon. However, we have to balance between the harm of leaving the rumor propagating among people and the harm that will be caused by disclosing the truth. A way out of this is deny the rumors by our media and use our double agents to assure the enemy that his attacks were fatal!

AFGP-2002-000031-0442

Brainwashing

The first one to use this term was the American journalist Edward Hunter. There are other terms as well that stand for this operation such as (Mind Control), (Thought Reform) (Ideology Reform), and (Menticide), but brainwashing is the most commonly used term. Brainwashing is connected to propaganda and incorporation or political normalization aiming at thought shaping, degrading or destroying some beliefs and indoctrination of some others, using the mind, emotions, logic, creed, attraction and oppression.

Definition:

It is an attempt to direct the human thought or action against the free individual's wish, will or mind, and is a tool of psychological warfare. It can also be defined as enforcing an innocent individual to confess voluntarily of crimes or charges against him, his organization, people or state (that he actually did not commit), then indoctrinate new convictions into his mind. Brainwashing is carried out through damaging the personality constituents of the prisoner (or spy), making him despise himself and his belief by constantly humiliating his personality and belief, accompanied with physical pressure. These three psychological, mental and physical constituents of the person can, if changed or disturbed, be re-built according to a new doctrine.

Techniques used in brainwashing:

These techniques may have been streamlined today. However, the nature and intensity of pressures applied on the individual may differ from one person to another depending on his personality...the circumstances and how important the case is as well as on the performance of the people in charge with this job. And, in spite of the noticeable differences between Communist Chinese and European practices of brainwashing, this operation is carried out by any combination of the following techniques:

- 1- Social isolation** of the individual: By throwing him into an isolated dungeon far away from all his acquaintances, sources of information and images of life so that he starts to feel he is the only lonely in the world which makes him yield to his prosecutors or interrogators in a submissive state of mind.

Furthermore, to stop calling him by his name, and call him by a number instead. With this total isolation from the outside world, once arrested, his jailers

AFGP-2002-000031-0443

start to apply other kinds of pressure on him such as giving him fabricated information about his family, friends, and the world, to create the influence they want.

- 2- **Physical pressure:** Such as periodic denial of food and sleep; bondage with chains; using environmental effects such cold and heat; exhaustion; pain; drugs that diminish the individual's self-control, physical exposure by denial of suitable cloths, and making him feel under total control of his jailers, stress associated with uncertainty of life or death, misgiving him in his friends and the organization to which he belongs, all this with a goal to push the individual to a state of complete breakdown that makes his mind prepared to yield to any indoctrination from his interrogator, and more ready to accept suggestions and behavior-control of those who ask him for specific behavior.
- 3- **Threats and violence:** Salah Nasr, an expert in this field, describes some of these actions in his book: "The prisoner is tied down so tightly that he cannot move anymore and a heavy stone is placed upon his chest and left in this condition for a long period of time. Or, he could be told by someone else other than his interrogator that he is going to be executed if he did not cooperate. Or the prisoner could be placed with a number of other prisoners in the same cell. Then, when one of the cell-mates gets back from the torture room bloodstained like a piece of meat or only his clothes returned to the cell, this will be an indirect message to the rest of his colleagues of what awaits them if they refuse to cooperate. The prisoner might also be placed in a vessel-shaped cell and tied to this cell so cannot make any movement, and then water is poured slowly in the vessel until it reaches the level of his nose. This same round of torture is repeated for as long as a month. Or, the prisoner could be stripped and left outdoors, exposed to extremely cold conditions, then forced to plunge his feet in a pool of cold water, or placed in a corner for interrogation while water dropping on his ear every single minute for hours.
- 4- **Total control:** Of the prisoner's very existence even the way he performs his personal needs, and that while he is awake and asleep, with a view to put him under constant psychological harassment to make him realize that his jailers are capable of anything.
- 5- **Alienation and uncertainty:** By leaving the prisoner for a long period of time without accusing him of any specific charge...then he is suddenly shocked with the confirmation that he is well aware of all the crimes he 'committed' and that he had better confess quickly, while being unable to defend himself, unaware of the charges he is accused of and unable to ask for a while of reflection as he must respond immediately to his jailers' request.
- 6- **Torture:** where the prisoner is subjected to various kinds of physical and mental torture.
- 7- **Physical exhaustion:** The prisoner is gradually weakened with his meals planned to make him lose weight and strength and his endurance diminish to a degree where even mental activity becomes difficult for him, and interrupted sleep could hasten the exhaustion.

AFGP-2002-000031-0444

8- Personal despising.

9- Establishment of the charges.

10- Humiliation and pressurization: Salah Nasr also mentions that all rules of the prison require total submission on the part of the prisoner with humiliation in eating, sleeping, washing and so on according to specific system without being allowed to do anything without permission from the guards, and bowing his head while keeping the eyes fixed on the floor while talking to the guards.

Social pressures such as interrogating for long time are also used.

11- Apologizing and honoring after humiliation and softness after toughness of treatment; as well as carrying out personal meetings and attempts of persuasion.

12- Collective teaching: Daily collective teaching has been used in Communist China where the new belief is indoctrinated through reading sessions and lectures followed by questions in order to make sure of assimilation of the new belief by every prisoner.

13- Final confession: This is the final stage, where indoctrination really starts first by erasing the undesired beliefs then presenting the new ones, with the prisoner being taught new patterns of behavior and requested to assume new social roles, and turning the individual into a new person.

Depth and Effectiveness:

- 1- This depends on the physical and psychological strength of the victim and how established his belief is. The proficiency of persons in charge of the brainwashing operation plays also a big role.
- 2- Time of implementation (from 1 to 4 years) an average of two years, but less than a year is not enough to achieve the desired results.
- 3- Brainwashing gradually loses its effect (often) when the victim returns to his original society.
- 4- Adolescents are more affected by brainwashing since they have not yet developed their personal identity.

Resistance:

- 1- Advance knowledge of the brainwashing techniques makes the person more able to counter them.
- 2- By maintaining one's own critical ability (psychological discussion) and high morale that stems from his conviction.
- 3- Holding on and heeding to strong conviction and belief: Recalling of admirable examples from the history of the person's belief, and presence of bases of belief to reassure and make it easy on him to resist the guilt feeling stemmed from the faith.
- 4- Self-confidence and a high sense of dignity (inner will can resist external pressure).
- 5- Keeness to reject favors and kindness of his brainwashers.

AFGP-2002-000031-0445

Psychology of Brainwashing

Brainwashing has been attributed to different psychological schools such as Pavlov's, Freud's and Collective Behavior School. Still there are some who believe it is difficult to attribute brainwashing to any known psychological school. However, most psychologists tend to agree that psychological processes used in brainwashing covers the following:

- 1- Impersonation: the prisoner usually impersonates the most eminent of those who interrogate him.
- 2- Deterioration of mental ability as a result of physical and psychological exhaustion.
- 3- Inability to cope due to the long isolation: only few people can stand long isolation without developing serious mental or emotional disturbances. Confusion that results from long isolation also contributes to the softening of the prisoner's resistance and facilitates his subduing.
- 4- Suggestion: This plays an important role in helping the prisoner formulate his confessions, particularly because he is no longer able to distinguish between his own doings and those suggested by his interrogators.
- 5- Repetition: the prisoner is told time after time that he is guilty; this is in addition to reiterating the new beliefs to be indoctrinated to him, which contributes much to the prisoner's acceptance of the same.
- 6- Guilt feeling.
- 7- Self-destruction: The humiliation and degradation the prisoner is subjected to make him feel small. The more important the prisoner and the higher his power, social status or stature before being arrested the deeper this feeling, as he compares between his current weakness and incapability and the power and control his interrogators enjoy over him...Self-destruction as a result of this greatly affects the prisoner's resistance to brainwashing.
- 8- Conditional behavior: The deliberate establishment of a connection between the reward and punishment and the progress or failure of the prisoner is one of the techniques (the condition) used to make him deliver the desired response.
- 9- Non-rational response to unexpected stimulus: The unexpected application of degradation, humiliation, pain, and hunger creates emotional reaction on the part of the prisoner and therefore drives him to yield to his jailers in a relatively short while.
- 10- Alteration of fear and hope: In spite of the brutality the jailers show towards the prisoner, they are keen to keep a line of hope of a better life for him if he yields.

AFGP-2002-000031-0446

Terminology of psychological warfare

Psychological warfare in terms of content and practice is as old as human conflict. This is referred to in the Qur'an in more than one instance, namely the following verses: "This is their similitude in the Torah; and their similitude in the Gospel is: like a seed which sends forth its blade, then makes it strong; it then becomes thick, and it stands on its own stem, (filling) the sowers with wonder and delight. As a result, it fills the Unbelievers with rage at them." (Qur'an 48:29), "But when they are alone, they bite off the very tips of their fingers at you in their rage ('Aal-Imran 119) and God Almighty says: "Fight them, and God will punish them by your hands, cover them with shame, help you (to victory) over them, and heal the breasts of Believers. And still the indignation of their hearts. For God will turn (in mercy) to whom He will; and God is All-Knowing, All-Wise." (Al-Tawbah 14-15)

The commons have some expressions that are connected with psychological warfare such as: "I will quench my thirst" and "I will make his boil" and the like. Below are the meanings of the term given by Webster since he first introduced the term of psychological warfare in his annex to his English language dictionary in 1941 until now:

- Nerve warfare.
- Morales or morale warfare.
- Psychological or talents warfare.
- War of wills.
- Propaganda warfare.
- Cold war.
- War of rumors.
- Political warfare.
- Brainwashing or brain warfare or mental warfare.
- Verbal, belief or Ideological warfare.
- Deception warfare.
- Non-combat or non-traditional or special war
- Psychological warfare.
- Revolutionary warfare.

Revolutionary warfare:

Salah Nasr defines revolutionary warfare as "the activities by the Communists to seize power in a particular state and establish their ruling there, and includes all efforts that aim at demoralizing the enemy, demolishing his beliefs, destroying his entity, using for this purpose political maneuvers, economic pressure, misleading information, incitation, terrorism, sabotage, etc. provided that this all carries out in the framework of a totalitarian ideology and specific revolutionary means".

Political warfare:

This is the equivalent term adopted by the British to what the Americans call "Psychological warfare".

AFGP-2002-000031-0447

The main aim of the destructive political warfare is to weaken the enemy and if possible destroy him using diplomatic maneuvers, economic pressure, true and misleading information, incitation, intimidation, sabotage and terrorism as well as isolation from friends and allies.

One of the major tools used in waging political warfare is the transmission of ideas. Laswell and Linebarger defined political warfare as "a term that is more than universal". Linebarger's definition of the term is "the drawing up of a national policy in a way to back up the propaganda or military operations, concerning direct interstate political relationships between governments, or relationship with communities that have a political identity."

Cold War Expression:

"Depending on the means used in waging it, namely, actual physical or psychological, war can be hot or cold, respectively. Cold war is what is called psychological warfare, political warfare, nerve warfare, propaganda warfare, morale warfare, or talents warfare or ideological warfare".

"Cold war or psychological warfare in this sense is the war that aims at influencing the individual psyche to make him give up thoughts, goals and embraced principles he used to believe, replacing it with other thoughts goals and principles".

"Psychological warfare has long been associated with actual warfare. In fact, psychological warfare has always been in full swing in cold wars that precede or follow hot wars, yet it is indeed the cold war itself".

In 1953, the term of psychological warfare started to be called the Cold War, i.e., the international struggle between the East and the West. "Since World War II ended until now, psychological warfare persisted creating a situation that is neither a situation of actual war nor is it a situation of a real peace; it is the Cold War".

The difference between hot and cold war according to Dr. Nasr in his book "From Diplomacy to Strategy" page 29-51, who said:

- 1- Hot war starts chronologically from day one of the military action and ends with the ends of the latter, while a cold war has no specific date to start or ends on.
- 2- Means of the hot war are the known war machines in all possible variations, while cold war is media or propaganda warfare.

In terms of the effort and expenditure, huge amounts of money are spent by cutthroat competing states on cold war means and tools. Indeed, millions and billions of dollars are spent for the sole purpose of controlling radio broadcasting waves as part of the cold war

AFGP-2002-000031-0448

between the NATO and Warsaw Pact. Moscow's government allocated a huge amount of money to prevent western propaganda programs from reaching the soviet territories by satellites. To have an idea on how huge this amount of money was, it would be enough for the BBC to broadcast to an audience of 100 million in 37 different languages. In fact, the Soviet Union with the help of its allies in WARSAW Pact, especially Bulgaria, used to jam almost 80% of the radio waves broadcast from Western Europe.

Moscow Radio has built two thousands transmission units just to jam Voice of America radio. These units have successfully broadcasted 3200 hours in 86 different languages which was of concern for Voice of America of the potential of losing a large number of their audience. The fervent race to control radio waves by both parties is a clear indication to the importance of this media means as a political tool directed to the public; a tool that is not less important than building an army, as there are nearly 2 billion radio sets in use worldwide. Of course, western countries radio stations are not innocent either, as many see Voice of America as an extension to the CIA and that their employees used to hold diplomatic passports. The late American president Reagan also pumped millions of dollars to circumvent the communist jamming barrier on Voice of America and Radio Free Europe (RFE) which are based in Germany.

Brain Warfare or Brainwashing

Edward Hunter was the first to use the term of brainwashing. It is every attempt to control the human mind and direct it towards planned purposes after stripping it from its resources, information and former beliefs.

Or it is any attempt to direct the human mind or work against the free person's own wish, will or mind.

Brainwashing is "re-shaping of the thought, and is a psychologically altered course operation in an explosive manner. It is a re-education process whereby the established belief or doctrine is cleansed and a new opposite belief is indoctrinated.

Psychological warfare experts used their knowledge of physiology, to study the nervous system and the relationship between the two to control the mind by physiological means.

Noteworthy here is that the term 'brainwashing' was first introduced to describe the techniques and processes used by the communist states to achieve one or both of the following goals:

AFGP-2002-000031-0449

- 1- To force an innocent person to confess voluntarily and sincerely that he has committed serious crimes against the people and the state.
- 2- Re-shaping that person's political beliefs so that he denies his former beliefs and becomes a committed Communist.

Morale warfare:

Morale stands for doctrine. History proved that armies are defeated more for weak morale rather than for lack of resources.

General Jamal Mahfouz describes moral by saying: "Morale in psychology are defined as the individual's state of mind at a particular time, under particular circumstances. As we might find the person quite brave and full of enthusiasm at a given time and under some circumstances, while we may find the same person at another time under some other circumstances hesitated, weak and in lack of activity."

Napoleon used to say: morale in relation to material force of the army equals three to one, i.e., Army morale 75% to material value of 25%.

In fact, high morale is considered an important factor in achieving the victory in wars being the major motive for fighting. It is the source of strength and capability to face and overcome the hurdles and horrors of war as well as the determination to achieve victory on the enemy no matter what the sacrifices might be. Also in peace high morals are considered one of the most important motives to loyalty, enthusiasm and passion in preparation, training and safeguarding works.

Also demoralization of the enemy has become an important strategic goal of struggling armies to achieve by drawing up plans to destroy the enemy morals either by actual or psychological warfare. Montgomery described the soldier's morale as being "the greatest factor to achieve success and that it is important yet essential to understand that battles can first and foremost be won in the hearts of men".

General Marshall also indicated that "modern war needs as much of morals as of hardware." For all above reasons, all armies pay much attention to build up, maintain the morale of their soldiers and protect them from meltdown factors. Indeed, there are specialized systems in all armies now where military experts, psychologists, sociologists, psychotherapists and others join hands for this purpose.

AFGP-2002-000031-0450

Collective morale work like a shield to protect the individual from external pressures, including pressures of all types of mass media.

War of Wills:

This is the struggle between two wills and with the objective to paralyze enemy's determination and to destroy his will to fight by deterring him and pushing him to a situation where he finds no hope of continuing the fight, setting aside achieving any victory. War, in fact, is not only a war of hardware; it is rather a war of wills and of doctrines.

Fronts of psychological warfare:

There are three fronts on which psychological warfare works:

- 1- The enemies,
- 2- The friends,
- 3- The neutrals.

These three fronts operate with specific plans and strategies for each.

As far as enemies are concerned, and whether the enemy is a state, a party, a military pact, a coalition, a political or other ideology, the aim of the psychological war will be to destroy this enemy, defeat it and distort its claims and demoralize its advocates.

As far as friends are concerned, psychological warfare embraces and defends friends' viewpoints and works constantly on strengthening and maintaining this friendship.

As to neutrals, psychological warfare aims at winning them over to defend the same case being defended. However, on the domestic front, it uses all possible means to achieve several goals at the same time:

- 1- To convince the people of the fairness of the case being defended and maintain people's high morals.
- 2- Constantly work to emphasize the dignity of the leaders and describing them as examples to follow and be proud of.

Goals of psychological warfare:

- 1- To spread despair among enemy forces, lower the fighting capabilities of enemy soldiers by demoralizing them, questioning the ability to victory, preparing the public opinion against the war, spreading terror in its forces, encourage complaining among its soldiers by exaggerated description of own forces and victories as well as of enemy's defeats until they realize that they are facing an unbeatable force, suggest that all attempts to re-build will be useless, as well as to use aggregated figures of own hardware in total number of airplanes, tanks, missiles, etc. And focus on scientific and technological supremacy.

AFGP-2002-000031-0451

- 2- To alter way of thinking, course, values and convictions so much as to help win the psychological war over the targeted party.
- 3- To encourage enemy soldiers to surrender by addressing them directly and distributing leaflets encouraging surrender and non-resistance, with different tricks to encourage them to do so.
- 4- To shake the enemy's beliefs in his principles and goals by providing evidences on how impossible they are to be achieved, yet distorting these principles and goals and magnifying mistakes that are made when trying to achieve them.
- 5- To weaken the domestic front of the enemy and crack it up. This can be done by showing how far the enemy's economic, social and political systems are far from meeting people's aspirations, putting economic pressure on the enemy's government to break down the economic system, encouraging some sects to stand up against the general direction of the government, misgiving enemy's political leadership and armed forces, make a split between the armed forces and civilian masses as well as by intriguing and slander between various sects.
- 6- To demoralize the enemy: The vital goal of the war is to destroy the enemy's material resources and morale. And, if a military victory is achieved in the battlefield, efforts still need to be made to destroy the enemy's morale as well if total victory and surrender is to be achieved. Here starts psychological warfare that targets the morale before anything else. There are countless examples from the history of war that managed to destroy the material side while being unable to destroy the morale of the defeated enemy, did not last long before the situation is reversed and the victorious became defeated and the defeated became victorious.
- 7- To confuse the enemy's policy makers and military leadership: Though psychological warfare usually targets the masses and enemy soldiers, it can also have more precise and complicated targets, meaning the enemy's decision makers and military leadership.
- 8- To fragmentize the unity of the enemy nation, split it out and encourage its leaders to draw away with the majority direction, and make various parts of the nation fear each other.
- 9- To destroy the enemy's leadership, its proficiency and loyalty.
- 10- To win the enemy's mind over in addition to the wining of the enemy's territories and spreading despair among the people of these occupied territories as to the usefulness of resistance.

As for who initiates and instigates the psychological war and the inside, we can record some goals.

AFGP-2002-000031-0452

- 11-** To unite the nation, and charge one's own people with hatred of the enemy.
- 12-** To persuade one's own people of the justness of the cause to maintain high morale.
- 13-** To win the neutrals over and establish the idea of inevitable victory.
- 14-** To boost and strengthen relationships with allied peoples.

Side Effects of Psychological Warfare

In order for aforementioned effects and goals of psychological warfare to be achieved, there are certain conditions to be met with the target having to be in an appropriate state of acceptability and vulnerability to such warfare.

Psychological war is analogue to bacteria that could not affect the body unless its vulnerability and resistance is weak enough to be infected.

If the 'body' of the nation is safe, holding together and immune in terms of creed, psychological warfare could not affect it. The contrary of what was intended for may happen, and the psychological war may backfire and reflect back to the attackers.

Indeed, if the enemy aims at drawing a better picture and acceptance for himself among the targeted people and the latter discover the attacker's real intentions and sinister techniques; this will only make them more hostile and distant.

There are warnings in the Qur'an from such attempts on the part of hypocrites to make great speeches to woo Muslims and win them over. God says: "Ah! Ye are those who love them, but they love you not, - though ye believe in the whole of the Book. When they meet you, they say, "We believe": But when they are alone, they bite off the very tips of their fingers at you in their rage. Say: "Perish in your rage" (Al-'Imran).

The Qur'an reiterates that same position and uncovered the Jews' attempts to woo Muslims and win them over, and warned Muslims against them so that the Muslim society does not buy into their deceptive techniques and open up to them. Such example is given in the following verse, as God says:

"How (can there be such a league), seeing that if they get an advantage over you, they respect not in you the ties either of kinship or of covenant? With (fair words from) their mouths they entice you, but their hearts are averse from you; and most of them are rebellious and wicked." (Al-Tawbah 8)

The enemy might seek to fragment and break apart the targeted nation. However, if the attacked people realized that aim they can only get closer together as it was the case with the Muslims when the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him, warned them from the intrigue of the Jews who aimed at splitting Muslims' lines, said "Would you do that thing of 'Ignorance Era' while I am still among you? Do not revert after me to become infidels cutting each other throats".

AFGP-2002-000031-0453

Having heard what said, Muslims hurried up to embrace each other and dispersed as if nothing happened between them, yet more closer together. The Jews' intriguing attempt soon reflected back to their own necks.

The enemy might also target the leadership by misgiving them and making the people lose enthusiasm to and belief in it like the campaigns Abdullah Bin Ubbay used to organize and launch, with a hope to restore his leadership and drive Muslims away from the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him. However, machinations of this hypocrite had done; as Muslims got closer and closer to the Prophet, prayer and peace be upon him.

God says: "Among them are men who molest the Prophet and say, "He is (all) ear." Say, "He listens to what is best for you: he believes in God, has faith in the Believers, and is a Mercy to those of you who believe." But those who molest the Messenger will have a grievous penalty" and also the verses before and after this verse from the noble chapter of Al-Tawbah.

God says: "They say, "If we return to Medina, surely the more honorable (element) will expel there from the meaner." But honor belongs to God and His Messenger, and to the Believers; but the hypocrites know not."

Another goal for the enemy in his psychological warfare against his opponent is to spread vice and backbiting in the community and circulate vice and aberration news and immoral stories to create a state of frustration and demoralization among people such as plotters of 'false rumor' speech that turned out to be to the benefit of Muslims; just the opposite of what the 'plotters' wish of evil, much corruption and wicked outcome.

God says in Qur'an: "Those who brought forward the lie are a body among yourselves: think it not to be an evil to you; On the contrary it is good for you" and "Those who love (to see) scandal published broadcast among the Believers, will have a grievous penalty in this life and in the Hereafter: God knows, and ye know not." Al-Nur.

What I wanted to say here is that not each goal the plotters of psychological war and those who enforce it can necessarily achieve, or what opponents hope to attain from their campaigns.

Psychological warfare, in fact, is a complicated and sensitive process. A 'dose' more or less than it should be, may lead to opposite reaction on the part of the target; that is what we call the 'side effects' of psychological warfare.

Also if the enemies launch psychological warfare on one side of your 'camp' or community, this will stimulate the camp or the community to make up for the shortage and repair the faults. This way, your enemy would have rendered you a service while he was intending to destroy you.

Means of psychological warfare

Below is a list of the means of psychological warfare to achieve the referred goals with the details of some:

- 1- Propaganda.
- 2- Rumors.
- 3- Panic.
- 4- Deception with tricks and delusion; war is a trick.
- 5- Creating crises.

AFGP-2002-000031-0454

- 6- Creating anxiety.
- 7- Pretending and claiming to be invincibly strong as well as degradation and humiliation of the enemy's capability.
- 8- Threats of all weapons of psychological war.
- 9- Inducement and intimidation.
- 10- Taking advantage of conflicts, contradictions and disputes within the enemy.
- 11- Trustfulness and determination to achieve the goal, and delivery of own threats.
- 12- Use of social relationships and emotional aspects such as spreading news among the soldiers about the suffering of their families.
- 13- Bravery in the battlefield.
- 14- Extermination of military leaders at the first moments of the fight.
- 15- Crucial chasing of the enemy and killing as much as possible of his forces.
- 16- The use of supporters (the so-called Fifth Column) to bring fear to enemy's heart.
- 17- To show extreme strength that would terrorize the enemy.
- 18- Surprising the enemy at both the strategic and tactical levels and in terms of time, types of weapons, mobilization and organization.
- 19- Brainwashing and spreading of 'mind infection'.
- 20- Espionage for the purpose of intelligence gathering.
- 21- Economic pressure.
- 22- To pretend to defend minorities, this pleases the nation and nurses the majority's suspicions in the minorities, and might push some of the minorities to cooperate with the attackers.
- 23- Political assassinations of eminent leaders, figures and dignitaries.

As far as tools are concerned, psychological warfare uses all possible communication tools starting from personal contacts, to mass media (press, drama, audio and video broadcast). Broadcasting here is by all means the major tool. Indeed, the invention of radio after World War I has heralded a new age and serious phase in the field of information, orientation and mind modification.

Radio broadcasting has been used extremely effectively in the war for propaganda purposes and for the spreading of rumors. And it has been confirmed how effective human voice can be in adding so much vitality to dialogues, discussions and commentaries as no printed matter whatsoever can compete with.

Propaganda is perhaps the most dangerous, effective and most commonly used weapon of psychological warfare ever. This is why we will elaborate more on; from the definition of propaganda to its historical development, its development, and ways and tools as used by major world players in this field such as the Nazis, the Communists and the capitalist West. We will dedicate a special thorough section to the recent Arab-Israeli unmatched propaganda struggle.

AFGP-2002-000031-0455

Sections of psychological warfare:

- 1- Strategic psychological warfare: That aims at establishing mass communication with a large, geographically widely dispersed audience. It is not limited by time or space and is not targeted to a specific group.
- 2- Tactical psychological warfare: This is targeted at enemy armies at their bases or on the battlefield or at enemy citizens located in the military operations area. It is managed by a psychological operations branch at the military forces headquarters.

Success factors of psychological warfare:

- 1- Setting the target: Though the whole enemy population is considered a target for psychological warfare, this major target must be divided into secondary targets such as the armed forces, government officials, national economy, trade unions, etc. with suitable effort, tool and input specified for each individual target. The successful propagandist is the one who manages to persuade enemy soldiers that the real enemy is not them but rather the tyrants in power and their special forces.
- 2- Focusing: Meaning constantly pointing to the target without dispersing efforts on side skirmishes with secondary targets until the propaganda goals are achieved.
- 3- Proper timing: Propaganda cannot be successful if it is not launched at the proper time with the target being already 'ripe' for reception. Precise timing also makes the propaganda or rumor more credible.
For example, the Zionist enemy reports the news of Palestinian militants' operations in time if these were carried out before the eyes of Jewish settlers, and therefore cannot be denied. Of course, it usually undermines the consequences of these operations. This is better than denying these operations and letting the settlers hear the news from other sources and therefore being at risk of demoralizing their citizens to a much greater extent.
- 4- Central planning: Meaning that it should be planned by a central committee formed of military men, politicians and psychological war specialists so that a consistency is achieved between all military, political and propaganda roles. No statement should be given or threats launched that are not consistent with the political goals. The best efficiency here can be achieved by forming a unified command or a high central committee to coordinate these matters.
- 5- Specialization: Managing of psychological warfare is no less important than managing actual warfare in that specialists are needed with precise specifications in various fields of science including social psychology.

AFGP-2002-000031-0456

Delivery tools of psychological warfare (delivery methods):

- 1- Broadcasting and other media tools: Radio broadcasting plays a major role in the delivery of desired information to millions of people in a short time. News bulletins are of great importance in this field, so are commentaries on wisely and purposely selected news as this selection is also important in psychological warfare. Transmission is carried out either by short or medium waves MW. Short waves, though larger in range, their reception is rather poor; therefore, transmission time should be shorter. Strategic radio broadcasting can be extremely effective, particularly if carried out at a shorter range and on Medium Wave (MW). "Black Radio" is a term refers to any illegal radio transmission that works underground. These kinds of radio stations are used to instigate revolutions, sabotage, and attack regimes. In World War II, Germans when occupying a country, they used to use such stations in the territories occupied by them to make the enemy believe these stations are still on his side so he gets trapped by Germans.

There are other types of radio stations which are a combination of secret and public radio stations as they receive subsidies from certain intelligence entities and pretend they are private stations.

Television and cinema, however, are limited to friendly and neutral territories to show propaganda movies to create a supporting public. They can also be used in counter-propaganda operations.

- 2- Leaflets: These can be dropped from airplanes or shelled by artillery to cities and enemy's armed forces concentration areas. Content of these leaflets is either rumors, news that includes some propaganda or call for surrender leaflets, with the latter being the culmination of years-long efforts by radio broadcasting that aimed at demoralizing the enemy at the home front. The Allies distributed passport leaflets during the war, carrying the signature and seal of the Supreme Allied Commander Eisenhower, to the "exhausted and hungry German soldiers" describing how they will survive after handing themselves over to the Allies and what kind of 'rich meals' prisoners of war get. And it worked. Special emergency leaflet are also used in repeated situations with the same psychological warfare approach so that they are ready to distribute for immediate use in the proper time.

Leaflets in general can also be distributed by patrols that penetrate enemy territories or by agents.

- 3- Books: Books has an advantage of allowing propaganda to be supported by illustrations, descriptions and documents. Examples of these books are those published by Israel and speak about the Israeli military and intelligence supremacy such as "Planes Crushed at Dawn", "War of Shadows", "Mirage vs. MIG"

AFGP-2002-000031-0457

"Tel Aviv Eye", "Ekman in Jerusalem" and other books that try to influence the reader's mind and morals.

In areas where enemy control and censorship is tighter, the cover of the book must be concealed. For example, the Japanese published a book in English during WWII, similar to American books with a logo of American publisher. The book opposed Roosevelt's war against Japan and was distributed to the Japanese people by way of confiscated materials published by the enemy. The purpose was just to persuade the Japanese and Asian nations supporting Japan that there is an opposition to the war even in the United States.

- 5- Loudspeakers: These are used in the field to address enemy soldiers, influence their morale and urge them to surrender. The range of loudspeakers does not exceed 200 meter which greatly limits their use. However, in World War II, a loudspeaker integrated with the body of the tank was successfully developed with a range up to 2 miles, for which reason the tank was called the "Propaganda Tank".

Aircraft flying at low altitudes can also be used to address the masses and national army with loudspeakers.

- 6- Counterfeit money: The distribution of forged money leads to an imbalance between the exchanged banknotes and bank deposits, and consequently leads to a lower value of the counterfeit currency and eventually to economic then social crises, which causes social chaos that creating aversion, tension and distrust between the people and the government. This is what was done to Turkey in World War I.
- 7- The surrendering enemy (POW): Those can be used to win the rest of enemy soldiers over by showing might and invincibility, and how well POW are treated, most of whom are turned into spies after having their brains washed.

AFGP-2002-000031-0458

That we may not lose another 'Azzam

Protecting an Official: the Role of Escort and Protection

Protecting leaders of Islamic groups, as well as faithful free Islamic persons, is a duty incumbent upon group leaders themselves as well as personnel of the group and the organization and upon Muslims in general. In order that we do not easily lose a jihadist scholar like the beloved sheikh, Doctor 'Abdallah 'Azzam- may Allah rest his soul- or Isma'il al-Faruqi, or Subhi Al-Salih- God rest their souls- we offer these adapted memoranda.

Course of study on protection and escort

Introduction

Objectives of protection: The primary objective of the protection plan is the person intended for assassination, kidnapping, disturbance, or infliction of injury. All forms of trouble must be kept away from him; even protective measures are not to conflict with his freedom of movement.

Definition of protection: a broad security band surrounding the person whose protection is required, preventing attack against him, to a degree in which the effect of an attack becomes as light as possible. It is difficult to provide absolute protection, thus it is incumbent upon all security apparatuses to cooperate in thwarting success of any attack.

All protection personnel are to know and study this, and they are to study the subject's activities to protect him and continue being prepared for any surprise attack.

Principle elements of the protection process:

- 1- Planning is the mission of the person in charge of security, assisted by others in the same task.
- 2- The protective process, which comprises:
 - A- Designating the mission of each person in the protection plan,
 - B- Knowing the movement of the persona as well as informational media coverage of the person.
- 3- Analyzing threats by gathering data about them, studying them, taking the necessary steps in the event of dangers being present, and putting the plan in place. Information is distributed and responsibilities are divided.
- 4- Plan Implementation:

Requirements for protection personnel

- 1- Confidence: If protective personnel gain the confidence of the one in charge, they are able to work more proactively as a team with high competence against any attack.
- 2- Clothing should be appropriate and proper, similar to that of the official in charge to gain respect and esteem from others.

AFGP-2002-000031-0459

- 3- Courtesy and manners are to be in dealing with the official in charge, the public and VIPs. They should not speak with a loud voice or joking of any sort. .
- 4- Create a spirit of camaraderie and brotherly love amongst team members, facilitating their work and dealing with danger.
- 5- All personnel must deal with any attack, whether it is by persons or by vehicles.
- 6- Protection personnel are to surround the official from all directions, keeping close except by a few steps, thereby securing the optimum corporeal barrier between the attacker and his target.
- 7- Protection personnel must keep a sharp eye on people around the VIP, to identify dangerous persons and prevent them from approaching, while allowing non-dangerous persons to approach.
- 8- The protection team must be shrewd to comprehend and work as a team without causing a nuisance for others.
The VIP must be protected from assassination, unintended harm, kidnapping, or impediment from the population at large.

Qualifications of protective personnel

- 1- Physical condition: Protection personnel must be in strong physical condition, must have taken close-quarters combat courses and endurance strength. None of them should be afflicted with a chest disease such as asthma or high pressure. He must have sharp eyesight, acute hearing, and be free of ailment.
- 2- Mental condition: Protection personnel must be mature and experienced, must not be aggressive toward people, and not quick to anger. It is therefore preferred that they obtain leave, even a short one, after each mission. They must be agile, active, and negligent. They must be cautious and alert. Protective personnel must know the officials to whom they are assigned especially when protecting an Islamic personage.
- 3- They should be experienced in rushing into battle during an assassination attempt, and in wresting a knife and sidearm from any attacker.
- 4- Persistence in daily training, live-firing two or three times weekly, and must have done a course on handguns and practiced firing them.
- 5- The protection team must have had a course on first aid.
- 6- Training on communications equipment, and how to use it.

The principle rules in the processes of protection and escort

- 1- Caution and resolve in confronting danger.
- 2- Correct behavior during threat for protecting an official; swift action in silence and with confidence.

AFGP-2002-000031-0460

- 3- Protection team members must scrutinize the hands of people around the target and monitor their eyes. Those who may be making an attempt are usually anxious and look troubled; particularly those who place their hands behind their back or in their pockets. They must always be ready, psychologically and mentally for any possible attack.
- 4- If there is any suspect or if you doubt someone, keep your eyes on him or task someone else to do that.
- 5- If there was an incident that might endanger the VIP, such as a car suddenly stopped or a fight between two people erupted, etc., two of the escort team must get the target away from to another location, particularly if it were in a public gathering. The target should not be brought back until the situation is returned back to normal, and even in this case he must not get back to the same place and better if he extends his apology to the public and does not come back.
- 6- In case of an attack, the first escort member must get the target away from the scene, while the one closer to the attacker tries to disarm him. Protection team must guard the target with their bodies whether they be walking or in the car.
- 7- Escorts must not move away from the VIP, and if this happens it should be an indication of danger.
- 8- Escorts must maintain a security zone around the target without offending the public.
- 9- In the case of driving the target, escorts must take the shortest route to the destination after screening the rout end-to-end.
- 10- When distributing escort members, particular attention should be paid to left-side of the target's front and back where the heart is.
- 11- Moving forward is better than backward, the escort team must therefore be positioned to face the danger.
- 12- When the target stands up, escort team must shield his body with theirs to keep him out of sight of possible attackers.
- 13- Escort member must enter ahead of the target and open each door for him and be ahead of him everywhere.
- 14- When indoors, the protection team must accompany the target away from dead points (doors, windows, etc.) but take him down the hall to keep him out of attackers' range of sight and safety.
- 15- Positions of the protection team members:

Positions of protection team members are not stationary but could change from one mission to the other. However, there are typical positions or protection configurations that need to be studied, as follows:

- 1- Position one person standing 10-15 cm behind the target and watching at a horizontal angle of 180°-360°.

AFGP-2002-000031-0461

- 2- Position two personnel to the right and left of the VIP to provide lateral protection.
 - 3- Position three personnel to the official's right, left, and back. They are to be 10-15 cm away, together surrounding him from all sides.
 - 4- Position four personnel surrounding the VIP from all sides, each of them observing through 360° around him.
 - 5- Position five personnel: they take up a pentagonal formation around the VIP, each providing 360° protection.
 - 6- Position six personnel who take up a hexagonal formation and provide protection from all directions.
 - 7- Position seven personnel like the one just above, with the seventh member ahead of the others to inspect entries, exits, and stairways.
 - 8- Upon encountering an attack, the nearest associate deals with it. Two others to help him and two stay to protect the VIP and transport him to another location. Others are to secure a ring around him by locking their arms above the shoulders together or shielding one another entirely. Others are to clear the way, keeping their backs toward the public or composing an aggressive formation, wherein the personnel cover the official with their bodies from all sides and from above, which is necessary when the attack is strong.
 - 9- There must be agreed-upon signals by which protection team communicate between the close and far ones. These signals, whether verbal or by hand, identify the type and direction of the attack, and are to be brief and clear. Thus without these signals, a distant protection member cannot tell the occurring danger nor in what direction to take the VIP for protection.
 - 10- The effective method for voice signals is to specify weapons and their location relative to the VIP whose protection is desired. The clock method is the optimum way with respect to its simplicity and clarity. It represents movement of the protected VIP clockwise ...forward movement is always toward number 12, number 3 is to the right, 9 means the left, and 6 is backward.
 - 11- Direction of the threat, determining the azimuth: If the danger is directed from a high location, such is considered elevated. If the danger is from a low location, lower than the height of the person, the attack is determined to be a low-angle attack. Threats that are at the same level of a person's height are known as middle threats.
- 1- When protection team members communicate verbally, others familiarize themselves with the type and location of the danger. If said threat is not from a weapon use phrases like: "Man at three o'clock": this means that the man standing to the right is a threat. Or "camera 11 o'clock": this means that the person carrying the camera or the camera is encountered slightly to the left, or that the camera in

AFGP-2002-000031-0462

the same location represents a threat; or “the target is at 12 o’clock high”, meaning that the threat is in an elevated position dead ahead. These signals alert all protection team members and escort personnel for quick action.

- 2- The clock position method is also applied while riding in a vehicle. It may be used to apprise the vehicle driver or escort personnel of the presence of something abnormal or dangers en route. For example: “man on roof, ten o’clock high” or “three men in the vehicle at five o’clock”.

Principle fundamentals for means of protection under attack and unarmed defense:

- 1- Friendly populace: Sometimes crowds approach the official to express their affection for him by shaking hands or touching him. The following procedures must therefore be taken for protection team and escort personnel to interact with the populace.
 - A- As an escort, attempt to clear the way by asking the populace, with a polite voice, to back away.
 - B- Make obstinate people- whether males or females- move away, by gentle movements that do not provoke agitation or attract attention.
 - C- Crowds may try to grab the hands of protection team. One may get free of same in a gentle manner.
 - D- Occasionally people’s attention may be drawn to external sounds such as a siren.
 - E- Greeting is advised to be by handshakes allowing the official to move among the crowd. Utmost caution and alertness must be taken toward people who attempt to approach quickly, or those who hide their hands in their pockets or behind their backs, or unusual persons who walk slowly or use crutches part of the time. Protection person and escort can thus identify the attacker on sight by seeing anxiety, fear, and extremism through the eyes. They must not ignore persons that they consider non dangerous, like clergy, officials in uniform or old men, and so on.
- 2- Throwing Objects.
 - A- Caution must be taken toward things that are thrown toward the VIP, as it is incumbent upon the protection person and escort to block them away.
 - B- If time permits, the escort should remove his coat and wrap it around his hand in order to prevent objects from reaching the VIP or to repel them from him.
 - C- The escorting protection team should keep thrown objects away with their own bodies.
 - D- You may resort to the cave aggression position team to protect the VIP.
- 3- Hostile crowd: In the case of an aggressive populace, the VIP must leave the location. If the crowd is moderately hostile, or in the event that persons present attempt to hinder the VIP

AFGP-2002-000031-0463

and stop the advance of the convoy, unarmed guards must take the following measures.

- A-** Repel the intruder by grabbing his necktie.
- B-** Push the intruder with the full strength of the escort guard.
- C-** Strike the individuals on the hands and legs. Avoid hitting critical spots of the body so that it does not lead to a fistfight. Thus the mission of security team and guards is to deter attackers and move the VIP from the place.
- D-** If someone attacks with a knife or a handgun, the guard must keep the weapon away from the VIP before taking it from the attacker, which can be done afterward in a few seconds.

17- Protective action in an emergency situation

- A-** The first concern is the VIP safety.
- B-** The security member alerts others to the presence of danger by means of signals.
- C-** The closest member confronts the attacker.
- D-** The rest of the team draw their weapons and stand ready.
- E-** The person in charge of the team gives instructions to get the VIP away.
- F-** There must be good communication among all protection team so that others are able to cover the place of withdrawing members.
- G-** Withdrawal must be complete. Protection members are to cover a visual field of observation through 360°.
- H-** In the event that the VIP is hit, the ring that protects the concerned VIP must not split and remain intact to protect him.
- I-** In the event the VIP is hit, one of the protection team must protect him with his own body while another administers first aid. Conditions and circumstances determine the urgency of transporting him immediately or his remaining until medical assistance is concluded at the place of the incident. If the VIP and the accompanying escort are wounded together, it must be remembered that the VIP's life is more important.
- J-** In all cases protection members must be poised and unaffected by emergency events.

18- Clothing:

Customarily, escort as well as protection and security team wear certain clothing and reflect an attitude of maturity and professional competence that stimulates respect. In all cases clothing must be suited to the occasion.

- A-** Nonslip rubber-soled shoes with low heels.
- B-** Stable tie-on shoes.
- C-** Wear inexpensive durable clothing so that it is not torn.
- D-** Coats must be left open to allow weapons to be drawn quickly.

AFGP-2002-000031-0464

- E-** Ties must be attached with a clip so that if someone pulled it out to catch you, you can easily escape.
 - F-** In winter time when the weather could be sunny in the morning and rainy in the evening, keep a raincoat and hat with you.
 - G-** Take off all rings and watches so you do not lose them in the crowd.
 - H-** Sunglasses are okay to wear but must be taken off in emergency situations.
(Listen to weather reports in the radio during the day so that you can make proper precautions.)
- 19-** Problems faced by the escort in charge of protecting the VIP:
- A-** Most of these problems are target-related, how what impression to give to the public of himself, and how he responds to the protection procedures.
 - B-** Escort member must comply with the guest's wishes even if this caused protection measures to be softened, as there is a rule in VIP protection that runs "Do not interfere with the guest's wishes in order not to embarrass him before the public". This decreases protection measures and increases potential threat. The following are things a guest dislike and objects to:
- 1-** Sometimes, the guest requests his escort that nobody to be ahead of him. In such case, escort members must stand on both sides and behind the guest to ensure his protection from these directions.
 - 2-** The guest refuses to have protection team members around him but nevertheless requests to provide him with a round protection at a distance. This can happen in social occasions when the escort team wear normal clothes and walk around among the guests or pedestrians. And when the guest stops to buy something from a store or visits a gallery or walks down the street, escort members must stay a 15 to 50 feet away from him. Protection problems must be overcome by using new and comfortable means.
 - 3-** When the guest advances to the greeting crowd to shake their hands or when he crosses the security barrier, two escort members must stay to his sides and a third one behind, all watching around while the fourth member stands on alert behind the first.
 - 4-** If the guest gets too close to the welcoming crowd, escort members must try politely to keep a short distance between him and the crowd.
 - 5-** When the guests request the escort to buy him a newspaper or the like, he must give a polite apology as he could not leave his position but nevertheless he will take care of the request immediately, and tasks someone from other security but not from the protection team.
 - 6-** Usually, the guest chooses one escort member to be his guide. In this case, the chosen member becomes immediately responsible for the movements of the guest and his protection in emergency situations.

AFGP-2002-000031-0467

[TC: Pagination of English translation reordered to accurately convey the Arabic text]

- 7- It happens occasionally that an escort loses personal items while moving about in public. He must leave them, paying no attention to them, because bending down to pick up something that fall compromises protection of the guest. Thus personnel should carry only essential items while they are on a mission: weapons, identification, and some coins for using a telephone if there is a need.
- 8- Clothing of an escort should merely be clean and neat because any expensive clothing is subject to tearing or otherwise during the mission.
- 9- It is imperative to verify names and conduct investigations of those who come to visit the official.
- 10- Become acquainted with those who are in direct contact with the VIP.

Conditions with the most risk exposure:

- 1- You are exposed to risk when you are:
 - Alone and far from your home, office, or town.
 - Entering or exiting one of the buildings.
 - Stuck in traffic.
 - Walking.
- 2- Beware of unusual movements. If these movements raise suspicion, report it immediately.
- 3- Prior notice on the particulars of your movements poses great risk to your personal safety. It is therefore preferred that you delay giving notice, and when the need does arise, it is essential to minimize notice of same to a few people close to you.
- 4- Avoid being too regulated in travel, taking a certain route, or arriving at certain times. Try to always have a companion.
- 5- Let there be a person who informs the officials in case of delay in your arrival.
- 6- Let there be a person who accompanies you to and from the vehicle.
- 7- The vehicle must park at the closest entry point to your intended building.
- 8- Neither transport nor open a car door or window to strangers.
- 9- When traveling, inform the security official of your travel.
 - Suitcases must be locked and kept in your sight or watched by travel crew.
 - It is preferred not to use the same hotel or the same place to stay in each trip.
 - Do not meet any guest without a prior appointment or make sure to verify his identity.
 - Do not meet anyone at the suite specified for you; instead meet them at the lobby where others are found.

AFGP-2002-000031-0468

10- Avoid walking alone, particularly at night.

11- It is better to install an additional telephone line near the bed as well as an alarm.

12- Mail:

- Do not open a suspicious or unordinary mail package, but immediately call the security chief.
- Immediately forward threat or humiliation letters, whether they be signed or anonymous, to the security chief for investigation.

454

AFGP-2002-000031-0469

Protection of the VIP's Whereabouts

This can be achieved as follows:

First: Analytical Study of the location and which includes the followings:

- 1- Overall examination of the area (see examination section).
- 2- Careful inspecting the place.
- 3- Checking of security requirements such as evacuation and emergency exits.
- 4- The alternative plan.
- 5- Maps should be provided for the area in which the VIP lodges and danger locations highlighted on the map, such as an isolated workshop, a place that can be used for an ambush, and the like. Watch points must be determined as well as the number of personnel needed to protect the buildings and rooms for the period of accommodation that must be specified.
- 6- The place must be inspected before arrival of the VIP.
- 7- Parking places must be determined for the VIP's and accompanying cars. It will be better if the VIP's car does not park in front of the building as this will draw attention to his presence there.
- 8- A radio communication must be provided between the protection team and the VIP escort.
- 9- Two cars must be made available and ready to carry the VIP in case of emergency.
- 10- Point of reception and who will be receiving the VIP in must be determined.
- 11- The route the VIP will take when entering the place must be precisely determined; and alternative route as well. The location has to be inspected in advance. The vehicle and the driver must always ready to leave in case of a threat on the VIPs.
- 12- ID and telephone numbers of the person who checked the lift must be determined. Before using the lift, capacity of the lift has to be verified to find out how many escort members can accompany the VIP. And in case of any technical fault, the person who checked it has to be consulted.
- 13- Reception room must be known in advance so that the number of people who can attend the reception is determined.
- 14- VIP's and escort rooms must be determined and carefully checked in advance.
- 15- Check how to use fire extinguishers and telephone number of the nearest hospital and nearest police station.
- 16- The number of suitcases of the VIP and his escort must be determined in order to facilitate clearance and storage as well as provide the car needed to carry the same.
- 17- The arrival path must be determined.

AFGP-2002-000031-0471

[TC: Pagination of English translation reordered to accurately convey the Arabic text]

Second: Identify possible sources of danger and distribute protection team members to the locations where danger can possibly come from. Use all your senses in tracing danger indications; watch for suspects, listen to unusual persons, smell materials and touch to identify them.

Third: The presence of protection team members in formal dress, in addition to secret protection personnel, discourages possible attackers.

Fourth: The head of security is responsible to control access of persons to the place where the VIP is.

Persons whose names are not already listed among the planned visitors must be watched until they leave. When persons whose names are not listed show up they should be watched till they leave. Special attention must be paid to watching persons who carry anything in their hands or what they bring out of their pockets.

Fifth: Instructions to the protection team:

1- Instructions:

Security personnel must know exactly what their duties are.

2- Ability to perform duties:

Protection team members must be extremely fit and strong as well as skillful in using weapons.

3- Enduring security person:

Security person must undertake his duties, watchful and effective. Below are some qualities he should have:

A- Anticipation of events and to predict the occurrence of risk.

B- Does not accept things for their face value, but to predict risk in everything.

C- Anticipates the occurrence of tricks and suspicious movements.

D- Focus on his assigned duties.

E- Confronting the likelihood of danger.

F- Alert and cautious.

G- Implements orders given to him and does not get involved in unexpected threats.

H- In case he is alone, he must use the lights to inspect dark areas. However, he must not get in if it were not lit well.

I- Always be ready for surprises.

J- Checks locked and unlocked doors, windows, etc. to make sure that they are not tampered with.

K- He must not leave his assigned place and leave it unprotected.

L- To choose a safe place and does not expose himself to danger.

M- In case of an attack, he must use all available tools to abort it.

AFGP-2002-000031-0465

[TC: Pagination of English translation reordered to accurately convey the Arabic text]

- N- Work in cooperation with the protection team but be ready to take personal initiative in case of danger arising.
- O- Know the guest protection plan well.
- P- Bear in mind above items, and anticipate the occurrence of an attack and thwart it.

Some risks to which a VIP may be exposed to:

A VIP is subject to different types of hazards. These dangers are not plainly clear. Though no one senses them, injury or death may result from them. These hazards may be simple such as a broken step, an uneven rug, a loose electric wire, a reckless driver, an unstable podium, or a weak podium, or a bridge over which the guest's car crosses.

Another requirement is to make sure there are no eavesdropping devices where the guest visits. The mission of the protection team is very difficult due to the person being subjected to some accidental or intentional procedure. It is likewise incumbent upon protection personnel to always be on the lookout for anyone who may cause harm or death via:

First: Normal accidental hazards. The following are some imminent risks:

- 1- An electrical cord or an unstable lamp.
- 2- A loose screw on the handhold of a train, door handle of a car, or handrail on an elevator.
- 3- A loose rug on a smooth surface.
- 4- A broken or unstable staircase.
- 5- A worn-out strip of material in a car or airplane.
- 6- A slippery bathtub.
- 7- An electrical current near a bathtub or washer.
- 8- A broken chair leg.
- 9- A weak rail on a balcony.

Most of these hazards may occur as a result of normal use.

Second: Intentional hazards.

These dangers are quite varied and are implemented in different ways according to the creativity and imagination of the perpetrator. It is therefore imperative to examine everything that comes near to the guest, and to guard him. Examples of these dangers:

- 1- Use a light bulb and stuff with explosives.
- 2- A statue may be made of explosive material.
- 3- A leg of a chair or table may be filled with explosives; the same may be done with a door.
- 4- A toilet may be rigged with a pressure-actuated button that explodes when one sits on it.

AFGP-2002-000031-0466

- 5- Books are the best means for concealing explosives.
- 6- Items left behind such as suitcases, bags, boxes, letters, parcels, waste baskets, telephones, and cooling ducts are all excellent places for hiding explosives.
- 7- There are other places which may be searched, such as windows and neighboring and facing balconies, from which an attacker could fire on the guest with a scope-equipped rifle.
- 8- Lower floors obscured by trees and buildings.
- 9- Tools for climbing windows and doors.
- 10- Ladders, tossed aside, which could be easily used.

Sixth: Inspection Training.

Members of a team protecting a VIP must persevere in training to be able to search the VIP's rooms. The team member must think with the attacker's mindset also, as an engineer to recognize natural and man-made risks and the suitable places to hide explosives. It is thus essential that each element know his assigned mission location, examine it, and inspect it vigorously.

There are fundamental rules that must be remembered when conducting a search:

- 1- Precise organization.
- 2- Examine each item thoroughly during the inspection. If a security member finds a suspicious item or suspects that an item is hidden somewhere, he must not touch it; rather, he is to request expert assistance. It is preferred to evacuate the entire location or building.

Seventh: Inspection tools.

The best tools used in inspection are the human eyes. However, the human eye is not able to see in the dark, so you must use other equipment comprised of:

- 1- Electric light.
- 2- Multipurpose pocket knife.
- 3- Medical or electronic stethoscope for bomb search.
- 4- Screwdriver.
- 5- A plastic piece (such as a ruler) to examine doors and windows for hidden wires.
- 6- A small hand-held mirror to help the searcher see what is behind objects, as under furniture or behind cabinets, and for other uses.
- 7- Steel piece for prying (crowbar).
- 8- Pliers with nonconductive rubber cover.
- 9- Lightweight folding ladders to search external openings and trees.

AFGP-2002-000031-0470

[TC: Pagination of English translation reordered to accurately convey the Arabic text]

Goals of the inspection:

What to inspect?

- 1- Do not inspect anything that might put the life of the guest at risk or embarrass him.
- 2- When to inspect? Inspection must be continuous.
- 3- Where to inspect? Danger can come from anywhere.
- 4- When the inspection ends, if the place is verified safe it is good; otherwise repeat the search. .

First: Inside Buildings -

Specific places in the building must be inspected taking into consideration possible dangers that might emerge.

- A- Large buildings such as universities, hotels, etc.
- B- The person appointed to protect a specific place in the building might be asked to secure the whole floor, and thus be capable to carry the instructions given to him with caution during emergencies.
- C- The use of lifts: A specific lift must be placed under the disposal of the guest provided that it is fitted with an on/off switch while a guard is assigned to stay in the lift at all times. And if this cannot be arranged, the following measures must be taken:
 - 1- Enter the lift from the garage and use a lift not frequently used by others.
 - 2- The chosen lift has to be off until it becomes needed to be used, where a guard must be placed in it.
 - 3- Stop the elevator from the inside by switching off the power until it gets used while maintaining a security guard inside it.
 - 4- The lift must be stopped at the desired floor using the main switch.

Inspection of buildings:

- 1- Start from the outside to the inside and from the bottom upwards.
- 2- In outdoor search, start your inspection by searching things on the ground around the building, barriers, garbage cans, trees, raised flower beds, car parking, etc.
- 3- Common places: special attention must be paid to such places though it is difficult to set a general rule for searching here. Therefore, everything must be inspected from reception rooms to WCs...etc.

AFGP-2002-000031-0472

[TC: Pagination of English translation reordered to accurately convey the Arabic text]

Inspection Techniques: -

1- Inspection of buildings:

Inspection technique differs according to building type and size. The following procedures show the techniques that have to be implemented:

A- Outdoors:

- 1- Number and location of entrances.
- 2- Entry system at entrances, fire exits, the roof and verandas.
- 3- How to access higher floors from outside the building.
- 4- Type and intensity of lighting around the building, especially the entrances.
- 5- How to get the guest out of the building using exits other than main entrances.
- 6- Determine cabling to the building, if underground you must determine all channels and inspect all supplies channels to make sure it is not overlapping with others.
- 7- Hidden entrances must be inspected well, particularly tunnels that connect one building to another.
- 8- Location of buildings that take overlooks the guest's room. It is recommended to dedicate a room for the guest in the higher floors for better protection from adjoining floors (i.e., by the upper and lower levels), in addition to the protection provided on the guest's floor.
- 9- Ways to secure the places that surround the building differ with the type and purpose of the place. Every type requires a special and different method to protect the guest.

B- Indoors Search:

The way the building is designed and its purpose determine the type of indoor inspection and security measures to be taken.

- 1- Entrance: Search starts from the entrance of the building. Doors can present a threat, particularly glass where people bump with it, swing and revolving doors with the latter type of doors being particularly risky as it facilitates the task of the possible assassin and must, therefore, it should not be used.
- 2- Entrance hall:
 - A- Furniture pieces that might hinder the movement of the VIP must be removed as well as anything the possible assassin could hide behind.
 - B- All entrances must be secured to prevent unidentified persons from getting in.
 - C- All drop ceilings and artificial walls must be inspected.

3- Corridors:

These must be protected and foreigners must not be allowed in. All items in the corridors must be checked and anything that might be a threat to the VIP must be removed, in addition to inspecting all rooms around the corridors.

AFGP-2002-000031-0473

4- Stairs and lifts:

These must be inspected in advance before being used by the VIP and escorts. They must also be re-inspected from time to time. All accesses to the lift as well as emergency exits must be inspected too. If there is a telephone inside the lift, it must be checked to see if it is working. Security men must be provided with wireless communication devices. Also, stairs have to be searched well and stairs entrances must be secured. Make sure access doors are fireproof; otherwise, the lodging of the VIP must be changed.

5- Safety tools:

A- Fire extinguisher must be checked for validity.

B- Fire alarm system needs to be checked for validity.

C- Enough time should be allowed for security personnel to carefully and cautiously inspect the rooms. The following arrangement can be made:

Security chief can divide the room inspection work between his men into two equal parts and each member searches his designated section clockwise, as follows:

1- The inspection should extend from the floor to the waist level, with inspection covering all objects left on the floor or fixed to the wall, carpets included, up to that level. If two persons are inspecting the same part, they should move in opposite directions until they meet again in the middle. The first inspection must be lengthy and thorough includes removing carpets and using an electronic detector.

- Neighboring houses must be inspected and guarded in the absence of their habitants.
- Room of the VIP must be guarded from all directions and from the upper and lower sides.

2- The second inspection must cover everything up to the head level.

3- Third inspection must cover everything from the head to the ceiling level, including ventilation ducts, windows, and lighting points (lamps and chandeliers).

4- Fourth inspection covers false ceilings, electrical wirings, and ceiling piping and ducts.

AFGP-2002-000031-0474

Items to be inspected:

- 1-** Ceilings: Inspect above false ceilings and hatches leading to them, check for any secret access and make sure of the safety of ceilings and of electrical wiring.
- 2-** The floor: Check under floor panels and unlevelled carpet for any devices.
- 3-** Walls: Check the walls carefully for any covered work. Check all objects attached to the walls to make sure they represent no danger or carry any dangerous devices. Also check doors, handles, locks and curtains.
- 4-** Cupboards: Check hangers, shelves, lights, keys and that there is no hidden door behind them.
- 5-** Windows: Check window locks to make sure they are safe as well as window-type A/C units and metal curtains.
- 6-** Bathrooms:
 - A-** The floor: Must be clean from any slippery material.
 - B-** Cupboard: Make sure there is no explosive in.
 - C-** Latrine: Must be inspected and make sure it is well fixed to the floor or to the wall and that there are no explosives in it.
 - D-** Bathtub: Make sure it is not slippery.
 - E-** Sink: Check it carefully; in and out.
 - F-** Medicine cabinet: Check its contents as one of these contents might be a poison.
 - G-** Electrical wiring: Make sure of the safety of all electrical wiring.
 - H-** Ventilation hatches: These can be checked by shaking their covers to see if they are well fixed or not.
- 7-** Furniture: must be carefully checked.
 - A-** Check spots where insects gather as these might be worn points of the furniture piece that might cause harm to the guest such as a chair or table leg.
 - B-** Newly upholstered pieces of furniture: Must be well checked to make sure there are no strange objects in them.
 - C-** Tables, desks, and book shelves: Remove all contents of these items, and check everything piece by piece as well as every book. Get furniture off the wall to see if there is anything behind it.
 - D-** Stacked furniture: this is difficult to inspect and must be checked by X-ray.
 - E-** Beds: Mattress must be checked as well as parts, joints, and any other piece of furniture in the bedroom. If you find anything in any piece, get it out of the place.
- 8-** Electricity and wiring: This part of the inspection needs a specialist. Power lines must be checked for validity and that they are electrically safe and have no device that might endanger the life of the guest. Check every lamp and make sure it has no explosives

AFGP-2002-000031-0475

particularly fluorescent lamps as they might be a place for large quantities of explosives. Electrical appliances such as fans and hair dryers must also be checked as they might include a spray poison that can be released when the appliance is turned on.

9- Inspection of the theatre and platform:

Inspection of the theatre is a difficult job given its large size and the difficulty to check all of its sections.

A- Inspection of the small stage is an easy and non-complicated task.

Inspection: The best way to inspect the safety of the dais is to check its parts when it is assembled. A guard man must be placed to protect the dais when the VIP is to deliver a speech. However, this is difficult in most cases. Therefore, the dais must be very carefully checked to ensure there are no explosives or the like in.

- 1- Check the supports to make sure they are strong enough. The stairs leading to the dais must be strong and tightly fixed.
- 2- A strong support must be installed around the dais to ensure none of the persons sitting at it will fall down.
- 3- If a drum is to be used in a festival, it must be checked from the inside.
- 4- It might be necessary to raise the dais to check beneath it. Also, all pieces of furniture must be checked before placing it against the dais as well as the microphone and loudspeaker and other equipment to make sure there are no explosives in there.
- 5- Electrical wiring must be well checked by a fire department expert to make sure of its validity and safety.

B- Inspection of a large auditorium or theatre:

Inspection of such places is complicated and difficult. Therefore, a study must be prepared that show human resources needed to do the job, guards included for as long as the VIP is in there.

Inspection:

Everything in the auditorium or theatre such as seats, doors, corridors, wiring, etc. must be checked for safety:

- 1- When giving a lecture or delivering a speech, you have to make sure that those who manage the scene are proficient enough for such a job, and that all those who enter behind the scenes have their identity checked.
- 2- All rooms and corridors in the theatre must be inspected.
- 3- When the guest is on the stage, back doors of the theatre must be locked.
- 4- The VIP must be secured and informed of his protection plan in detail. And must be warned in case of a danger in order to take care of himself.

I- Check list of ensuring all sites are checked:

- 1- Maps of the visited sites.

AFGP-2002-000031-0476

- 2- Locations where the inspection is to be carried out.
- 3- Rooms to be visited by the guest.
- 4- Date and time of the visit.
- 5- Press coverage.
- 6- Number of personnel needed for inspection.
- 7- Time the procession is expected to arrive.
- 8- Parking facilities for the procession vehicles.
- 9- The reception officer.
- 10- The reception place.
- 11- Pathways used when entering the building.
- 12- Main, sub- and backup roads.
- 13- Lift capacity.
- 14- Location of the stairs to be used.
- 15- ID card and telephone number of the lift operator.
- 16- Capacity of the reception room.
- 17- Location of the guest's resting room.
- 18- Nearest telephone set to the guest.
- 19- Nearest meeting room.
- 20- Nearest rest hall for escort members.
- 21- Nearest fire extinguisher and its type.
- 22- Nearest firefighting station and its telephone numbers.
- 23- Fire alarm device and how to activate it.
- 24- Nearest hospital and its telephone number.
- 25- Nearest doctor and his telephone number.
- 26- Nearest police station and its telephone number.
- 27- Number of bags.
- 28- Miscellaneous.

II-Check list and study of airport or port arrival or etc...

- 1- Meeting the port's manager or the security team in order to discuss all details with them.
- 2- Study of indoor facilities.
- 3- Study of outdoor facilities.
- 4- Preparations for the arrival and departure of procession.
- 5- Identify the roads to be taken by the procession.
- 6- Shift system and emergency arrangements.

AFGP-2002-000031-0477

- 7- Selection of resting room for the guest and his escort.
- 8- Determination of check points.

Entrance procedures:

- 9- Determination of body barriers.
- 10- Arranging refueling the guest's airplane, etc.
- 11- Selection of the stop point.
- 12- Security arrangements of runways or seaport.
- 13- Preparation of ambulance vehicle.
- 14- Preparation of necessary equipment needed in emergency cases.
- 15- Selection of press reporters.
- 16- Selection of crowd places.
- 17- Ensuring the safety of bags.
- 18- Determination of bathrooms location and phones for guest use.
- 19- Miscellaneous.

III-Check list of the hotel, conference hall or accommodation:

- 1- Meeting with the manager or owner.
- 2- Meeting with chief of security, firefighting section and hotel manager.
- 3- Studying the event with liaison personnel.
- 4- Selecting the suite where the guest stays.
- 5- Room selection for the central security personnel.
- 6- Studying the suite, adjoining rooms, and other places used by the VIP.
- 7- Arrangement technical inspection.
- 8- Determination of the security checkpoints.
- 9- Selection of the guard room.
- 10- Security screening of nearby houses.
- 11- Preparation of duplicate keys of the suite or lodge.
- 12- Preparation for mail reception room away from the VIP room. .
- 13- Provisions for gifts' and packages' security check.
- 14- Provisions for food security check.
- 15- Studying fire extinguishing equipment.
- 16- Notifying local security and firefighting stations of their special investigation procedures.
- 17- Informing local security and firefighting stations of their assignments.
- 18- Inspection of lifts, stairs and escalators.

AFGP-2002-000031-0478

- 19- Arrangements of exits using lifts and stairs.
- 20- Checking the identity of services and kitchen staff, as well as all who work close to the VIP.
- 21- Preparation of main table menus, reception people, etc.
- 22- Determination of rest stations and provision of the necessary rest hall.
- 23- Guarding places and rooms that have already been inspected.
- 24- Main telephone numbers in the region.
- 25- Safekeeping of suitcases.
- 26- Securing emergency exits in roads.
- 27- Press arrangements.
- 28- ID checking requirements.
- 29- Miscellaneous.
- 30- If no suite is booked, then use a room in a high floor that should be guarded from all adjoining rooms.
- 31- Guarding the rooms during the presence of the VIP and when he leaves and return to the hotel, as any gang, or intelligence agents or organization can easily get a copy of the keys to any hotel rooms.

Main items of the inspection check list:

A- Main items:

- 1- Telephone set list.
- 2- Lamps and lights.
- 3- Cupboards, pens, desk-sleeves, shoes, gloves, etc.
- 4- Lighting wiring on the wall and the ceiling.
- 5- Frames of pictures, posters and mirrors.
- 6- A/C units.
- 7- Lighting switches.
- 8- Inner and other doors.
- 9- Under the carpets.
- 10- Rest points on stairs.
- 11- Doorbell.
- 12- Mailing Box.
- 13- Windows from the inner and outer sides.
- 14- Furniture and upholstered seats.
- 15- Newspapers and magazines.
- 16- Motor covers and false floor.

AFGP-2002-000031-0479

- 17- Door handles.
- 18- Walls.
- 19- Inside false ceilings.
- 20- Inside TV and radio sets.
- 21- Inside entrances.
- 22- Statues, desks and awards.
- 23- Window frame.
- 24- Emergency fire extinguishers.
- 25- Metal curtains of all kinds.
- 26- Inside wall and desk clocks.
- 27- Side lights.
- 28- Folded newspapers.
- 29- Electrical switches.
- 30- Pillows with zippers.
- 31- Tiles under the wooden floor.
- 32- Electrical wiring boxes.
- 33- Fire alarm bells
- 34- Letters.
- 35- Packages and parcels.
- 36- Paper packs.
- 37- Heating, ventilation & air conditioning piping & wiring.
- B- The Office
 - 38- Bookshelves.
 - 39- Flowers and plants.
 - 40- Clothes hangers.
 - 41- Cupboards.
 - 42- Typewriters.
 - 43- Chairs.
 - 44- Calculators.
 - 45- Filing cabinets.
 - 46- Stamps.
 - 47- Calendars.
 - 48- Panels.
- C-Houses:
 - 49- Flower beds and window frames.
 - 50- Carpets.

AFGP-2002-000031-0480

- 51- Beds.
- 52- Behind panels.
- 53- Shoe boxes.
- 54- Pillows.
- 55- Jewelry boxes.
- 56- Dresses.
- 57- Hat boxes.
- 58- Electric covers.
- 59- Arms and ammunition.
- 60- Sport equipment.
- 61- Inside cameras.
- 62- Children's toy boxes.
- 63- Inside lights and batteries.
- 64- Inside bags.
- 65- Wigs.
- 66- Under the sink.
- 67- Fans and heaters.
- 68- Curtains.
- 69- Vacuum cleaners.
- 70- Transformer boxes.
- 71- Room partitions.
- 72- Mosaic ceilings.
- 73- Children Toys.
- 74- Fish pools.
- 75- Inside candle holder.
- 76- CD album.
- 77- Music boxes.
- 78- Baby carriage and bed.
- 79- Washing machines.
- 80- Musical instruments
- 81- Pet crates.
- 82- Dog houses.
- 83- Tool kit boxes.
- 84- Attic (loft)
- 85- Water drains.
- 86- Behind drug cabinets.

AFGP-2002-000031-0481

- 87-** All items inside drug boxes.
- 88-** Inside the latrine.
- 89-** The soap.
- 90-** Toilet paper.
- 91-** Clothes hangers.
- 92-** Hair dryer.
- 93-** Water heaters.
- 94-** All kitchen tools; heater, can opener, etc.
- 95-** Gardening tools.
- 96-** The oven, stove, refrigerator, etc.
- 97-** Garbage sacks.
- 98-** Gas piping.
- 99-** Inside heaters.
- 100-** Food in the refrigerator.
- 101-** Sink.
- 102-** All kitchenware.
- 103-** Salt and spice boxes.
- 104-** Heaters fuel.
- 105-** Ironing board.
- 106-** Pantry.

AFGP-2002-000031-0482

Protection Center Check List:

- 1- Size of the area being watched to check the identity of individuals, groups and vehicles, etc... as well as their activities. Record the information.
- 2- Are there any individuals in your jurisdiction?
- 3- How do you judge activities of the individuals that you watch from your point? Write it down.
- 4- Are these individuals being watched in all their movements? Write it down.
- 5- How many people are in your area? Write it down.
- 6- What is the number of buildings that you can watch from your point? Write it down.
- 7- What is the number of windows that you can watch from your point? Write it down.
- 8- What is the number of roads you can take to headquarters? Write it down.
- 9- Can you see or communicate with other escort team members? Write it down.
- 10- How far is the second protection point from you?
- 11- Are there any flammable fluids in your area such as gasoline, chemicals, etc.?
- 12- Are there any explosive-grade materials in your area?
- 13- Are there any advanced weapons at your point such as rifles, ammunition, knives, etc.?
- 14- Are there any connections in your area that might be a threat to the VIP?
- 15- Are there any boxes or bags in your area that weapons, explosives or other damaging materials could be hidden in?
- 16- Are there any furniture pieces in your area that weapons or sabotage devices can be hidden in? Record how many.
- 17- Are there any microphones or the like that can be used for eavesdropping?
- 18- The nearest toilet room to your point.
- 19- The nearest water fountain to your point.
- 20- Are there any crooked ceiling tiles or panels where dangerous equipment can be hidden?
- 21- Where is the nearest fire alarm box to you?
- 22- Where is the nearest fire extinguisher to your point, type, and its application?
- 23- When this fire extinguisher was last checked? Is the seal still valid?
- 24- Where is the nearest telephone to your point?

VIP Protection Checklist

- 1- Establish a fixed security management center before, during and after the conference.
- 2- Check the inspected buildings, neighboring properties and residents.
- 3- Check for special problems caused by nature; lands, water obstacles.
- 4- Risks posed by the electricity, telephones, water, and lines connected to the conference room.

AFGP-2002-000031-0483

- 5- Define the restricted areas.
- 6- Necessity of physical borders, light, emergency exits, and alarm systems.
- 7- Check dangerous spots.
- 8- Position security guards wearing official outfits at specific locations.
- 9- Setup a special signaling system.
- 10- Provide parking and car maintenance personnel for conference participants.
- 11- Inspect all packages.
- 12- Organize a checking system for the mail, stamped packages and suspicious items.
- 13- Locate a message center to relay intelligence information to the guest and the members of his delegation.

VIP Protection Center's Manual and Checklist

- 1- Who is this VIP?
- 2- What location is the VIP visiting?
- 3- What is the VIP's arrival time?
- 4- What is the VIP's departure time?
- 5- What are your main responsibilities?
- 6- Who is the commander of the operation? Who is the project officer?
- 7- What time do you go to your post?
- 8- At what time is your mission over?
- 9- What type of ID card will you be using?
- 10- What means of transportation will you be using?
- 11- What means of communication will you be using? Radio, telephone, wireless...etc.
- 12- What are the eating and drinking rotation arrangements?
- 13- Wear clean and neat clothes.
- 14- Do not eat, smoke or drink coffee on the job unless authorized by your superiors.
- 15- Do not display weapons.
- 16- Stay where you are when approached by others.
- 17- Do not leave your post unless authorized by your superiors or ordered to perform another duty.
- 18- Keep your area clean.
- 19- You must know how to operate radio (wireless), telephone, and the like.
- 20- You must be proficient in using weapons.
- 21- You must know how to use all emergency equipment.
- 22- You must be able to recognize all members of the guest's protection team.
- 23- You must be able to recognize the VIP, his family, and his members.
- 24- You must know the VIP's whereabouts.

AFGP-2002-000031-0484

- 25-** You must know the VIP's schedule.
- 26-** You must know the instructions for your mission.
- 27-** You must know the location of protection team members in relation to your position.
- 28-** You must know the radio codes and all necessary phone numbers.
- 29-** You must be aware of all the activities around your position.
- 30-** When you go on leave, give the official a summary of your mission.
- 31-** Do not accept things as their face value, anticipate danger everywhere.
- 32-** Try to predict tricks and deceptive moves.
- 33-** Be always prepared to face any source of danger.
- 34-** Always get to work early to watch the crowd and get familiar with your mission.
- 35-** Do not take chances:
 - If you are alone at night, use lights and stay away from dark areas.
 - Do not be vulnerable to surprises.
 - In case of an attack, take advantage of all the barriers to protect yourself.
- 36-** Check all the closed doors, windows, etc. for safety.
- 37-** Avoid any means of distraction:
 - Do not eat or drink while you are on duty.
 - Do not meet with your friends while you are on duty.
 - Do not gossip with others.
 - Do not listen to the radio or watch TV while you are on the job.
 - Do not close your eyes or sleep while you are on the job.
 - Do not give out information to anyone.
 - Do not attend to personal matters while you are on the job.
 - Do not sing or whistle while you are on the job, because that reflects carelessness and distract you from doing your job.
 - Be quick to observe what is going on around you.

Protecting the VIP during Movement by Vehicle
(Studying the routes and motorcade security)

There is protection difficulties associated with moving the VIP from one place to another by car. It requires preparation, planning and security measures.

The following are the main principles for attacking a motorcade:

Without a doubt, any attack on the motorcade is planned beforehand. Therefore, a study of the location, the VIP's schedule and the motorcade's route is mandatory. The attack is usually sudden, in order to break apart the protection team and allow the assailant to reach his target.

AFGP-2002-000031-0485

Usually, the assailant lets the motorcade pass and aims at it from behind. The attack could also be carried out from a moving vehicle, from a horizontal point of view, or another way.

Main precautionary measures:

- A-** Inspect the roads used by the VIP by checking them very well before and during the visit. It is recommended to schedule the passage of the motorcade outside of rush hour. A file must be put together, with the roads to be used, their distances and types. The Mission Officer can place security personnel in specific roads, and help the VIP carry out his visit to the end.
- B-** A decision must be made to define:
 - 1-** The main routes.
 - 2-** Alternative routes.
 - 3-** Emergency routes.

Note: Some routes may be changed after the completion of the study due to a danger alert, works on the road, and the discovery of an isolated house or any place that may pose a threat to the security of the VIP.

- C-** Final considerations when selecting the road:
 - 1-** Flat roads are recommended.
 - 2-** Safety and security considerations
 - 3-** Is there any congestion? Is there a possibility to switch routes?
 - 4-** Type of route: Are there abnormal or dangerous areas?

First: - Study of the Route:

Routes must be studied for three reasons:

- 1-** To know the roads and dimensions that may facilitate the presence of an assassin.
- 2-** To use intelligence information to monitor the route and know its natural dangers, congestions and road conditions.
- 3-** To get the inclinations of area residents: There may be people living in the area who oppose or sympathize with the VIP.

Second: - Dangerous Area File:

It is necessary to know the route's dangerous spots or risk areas such as:

- 1-** Areas where snipers, assassins or kidnappers may hide.
- 2-** Hidden Paths.
- 3-** Bridges.
- 4-** Road Heights.
- 5-** Trenches, tunnels, and underground areas.
- 6-** Tree areas.
- 7-** Road construction work.

AFGP-2002-000031-0486

- 8- Deserted or high rise buildings.
- 9- Congestion areas.
- 10- Obstructions' areas.

Third: Route Security and Facilities

In addition to the aforementioned, members of the protection team must be aware of emergency procedures during each and every phase of the operation, and keep this information in the operation's file.

- 1- Escape routes.
- 2- Nearest hospital or medical center.
- 3- Nearest police or fire station.

Danger and emergency zones must be defined on the map. It is also recommended to take pictures of such areas.

Fourth: How to Perform a Route Study

- 1- Route Study: All main, secondary and emergency roads must be screened and get to know it well.
- 2- Get out of the car to inspect the road: When inspecting a road, members of the protection team must leave the car and check the road. They must also put themselves in the assassin's shoes and try to think like him. They must be aware of any natural hazard on that road:
 - A- Monitor all roads leading to hidden passages, bridges, underground tunnels, etc., and place security guards along such roads, if possible.
 - B- Thoroughly check all tunnels and tree areas and know all the roads leading to them.
 - C- Check all road construction work, unusable roads, and steep slopes.
 - D- Check all deserted and high rise buildings to make sure that no assailant hiding inside, especially high rise buildings where floors are between 3rd to 8th provide the best angles for an assassin.
 - E- Check all congested areas on a day with conditions similar to the day of the VIP's visit. You must ensure protection in such areas and be familiar with emergency routes in case the motorcade comes under attack.
 - F- Check all areas with obstructions and be familiar with all intersections within such areas.
- 3- **Escape and Safe Areas:**
Such areas must be carefully picked and be close to police stations and hospitals.
- 4- **Route Changes:**
When changing routes from main roads to secondary roads, you must alert the command headquarters of such change.

AFGP-2002-000031-0487

If it is absolutely necessary to go through a dangerous area, you must assign in advance a protection team before the passing of the VIP.

Fifth: How to Inspect Buildings Surrounding the Route:

- A-** Meet the residents of the building and find out the building's use. Also meet the owner of the building and provide him with the security center's phone number so that he can report anything suspicious. You must also take down the owner's name and address in case the security center needs to get in touch with him.
- B-** Floor Inspection:
You must know and take notes on all the floors and windows in the building. In case there are important individuals living in the building, take down their names and alert the security center. You must also instruct the building's superintendent to close all doors and windows when the VIP passes through the area.
- C-** Recording Risks and Taking Pictures of the Building
- D-** Purpose of the Building: identify the purposes for which the building is used. If it is industrial, find out what type of industry it is operating, and if it is an industrial building and has a security guard during the day as well as night time. Find out if anyone can get into the building and what type of people lives in the building. If it is a hotel, find out the type of guests it receives, etc.
- E-** Weapons and Explosives: Make sure that the building is weapon free. Also find out if there are explosives in the building, find out what kind and the quantity. Take notes and find solutions.
- F-** Dangerous Individuals: When you meet the residents of the building, you can determine whether there is any dangerous person among those. You must provide the building's superintendent with the security center's phone number so that he can call the center in case there is any danger. You must also ask him to identify every person entering the building on the day of the VIP travel through the area.
- G-** Building Changes: If any changes are made to a specific building, you must check those changes thoroughly and make sure that everything is ok.

Sixth: - Preparing a Study Report:

- A-** Complete: You must prepare a full detailed road and building report, record all points of entry make notes and recommendations, include the date and name of the individual conducting the study, and submit it to the operations officer for review and evaluation.
- B-** Sorting by Address: The form must be sorted according to the street address of the building.
- C-** Determine and Study the Danger: Place dangerous sites aside in the report file for further study and investigation.

AFGP-2002-000031-0488

Road Security

Different geographical areas mean different roads and different security measures are to be taken. There are five main ways to protect and secure roads.

1- Road Patrols:

Road patrols can be done using cars, motorcycles, etc. depending on the type of road. Generally, the patrol vehicles precede the motorcade to make sure the road is safe.

2- Area Patrol Vehicles.

3- Walking Patrols:

Members of the protection team walk in dangerous areas to do the following:

A- Watch the public and the streets to identify any suspicious individuals. If an individual is determined to be suspicious, members of the protection team will identify and question him.

B- Monitor buildings, especially windows from the third floor and up. Two people are designated for this mission.

4- Building Monitoring: There are two types of monitoring:

A- Roof Monitoring: Where a protection team member is equipped with the necessary clothing and equipment such as a binoculars.

B- Empty and Deserted Buildings which are dangerous: Place a security guard at the entrance of the building and place a few protection team members inside the building.

Motorcades

A- Selecting the car: It is necessary to provide enough cars for the transportation of members of the protection team and the VIP's escort team, as well as escort cars. The VIP usually travels in a luxury car. Following are the criteria of the vehicles and equipment to be used:

1- If it is a rental vehicle, it must be thoroughly inspected prior to being used.

2- The vehicles must be robust to travel long distances and does not overheat if driven slowly.

3- The vehicles must be spacious and able to carry a large number of escorts.

4- The vehicles must be equipped with a two-way wireless radio.

5- The vehicle carrying the VIP and his escort must be inspected for reliability.

6- The vehicle must remain clean with a full tank of gas at all times.

7- If the VIP is subject to a threat, it is recommended to use a regular car.

8- If necessary, the vehicle must be armored.

9- The vehicles must have steel radial tires.

10- The vehicle must have seatbelts.

11- The vehicle must carry a fire extinguisher, a first aid kit, and emergency equipment.

AFGP-2002-000031-0489

12- Wide rear view mirrors.

13- Members of the protection team must have corrugated rigid nails and smoke grenades to throw in front of the attackers' vehicle.

B- Organization of the Motorcade:

The position of the VIP and risk factors must be taken into consideration when preparing the motorcade. There are two main types of motorcades: Official and unofficial.

I-The following are some general guidelines about the motorcade:

- 1- The delegation must be escorted by an additional vehicle carrying more members of the protection team, or to carry the VIP in the case of an emergency.
- 2- The VIP's vehicle must be preceded by a control car to alert the motorcade of any possible danger. It also serves to stop and watch traffic in the area.
- 3- Armored vehicles: Their movement must be organized so it is not done according to traffic lights. In the case of a large motorcade, it is recommended to get help from traffic police and have a motorcycle ahead of the motorcade.
- 4- The VIP's vehicle must stop and move progressively and alert the escort vehicles using light signals and the two-way radio.
- 5- Specially marked vehicles, such as police and security vehicles, help organize the motorcade.
- 6- Unless there is an emergency, motorcycles must never precede the motorcade.
- 7- If a car tries to pass the VIP's vehicle, you must give way to it so that it can pass rapidly.

II-Motorcade Line of Movement:

Members of the protection team must be assigned positions from which they can monitor the movement of the motorcade, to provide the necessary protection and watch the items overlooking the direction of the motorcade. The driver's mission is to look ahead and watch the road while the escort sitting next to him operates the two-way radio.

- 1- Two car motorcade with the VIP's vehicle upfront, followed by an escort vehicle behind it.
- 2- Three car motorcade with a security vehicle upfront, the VIP's vehicle in the middle, and an escort car in the back.
- 3- 4 to 5 car motorcades, with a security vehicle up front, followed the VIP's vehicle, the escort car, a car carrying Members of the protection team and suitcases, and a security car in the back of the motorcade.

AFGP-2002-000031-0490

- 4- Movement in a parade or an official motorcade: A military police vehicle upfront, followed in this order by a group of motorcycles, a security car followed by the VIP's vehicle, the escort car, escort motorcycles, a vehicle carrying the VIP's escorts, a news vehicle, a few motorcycles, three guest cars, an additional protection vehicle, and a security vehicle at the end.

Duties of the Driver and Members of the protection team:**Mission Drivers:**

They must be experienced and even witty at times. As much as it is possible, this task must be given to a member of the protection team, especially when it comes to driving the VIP's vehicle in case of an emergency, the driver is then required to use his expertise to save the VIP. In addition to being a member of the protection team, there are other requirements the driver must fulfill:

- 1- He must have some mechanical knowledge, be able to identify small car problems and repair them.
- 2- He must know the rules of protection as well as the route very well. He must also be capable of using the two-way radio and emergency equipment.
- 3- It is preferable for him to be a police academy graduate and have experience in defensive and offensive techniques.
- 4- He must be familiar with car racing, or have participated in one; as such person knows every part of the car intimately and is calm in all circumstances.
- 5- He must have a clean record and not have been involved in many car accidents.

Main Driving Procedures

Following are the main aspects of driving that each motorcade driver must know:

- 1- He must know the vehicle and its parts.
- 2- He must reset all features to suit his comfort in the vehicle.
- 3- He must always use the seatbelt.
- 4- He must keep the vehicle clean and keep a first aid kit and a fire extinguisher handy.
- 5- He must pay attention to other drivers and traffic.
- 6- He must speed up progressively and turn smoothly.
- 7- He must see the road in front of him very well, and pay attention to anything dangerous.
- 8- He must use turn and stop signals so that other drivers of the motorcade know where he is going.
- 9- He must know the details of the route.
- 10- If driving an escort car, he must keep an eye on the VIP's vehicle and drive behind it.
- 11- If driving the leading car, he must take into consideration the vehicles behind him.

AFGP-2002-000031-0491

- 12- When the VIP's car signals to change routes, the turn must be closed to traffic until the VIP's car passes.
- 13- He must be capable of making wide angle turns to protect the side of the VIP's vehicle from which it can be attacked.
- 14- He must keep all angles clear to know what is going on around him.
- 15- He must be suspicious of any car attempting to pass the motorcade.
- 16- He must use the rearview mirror to have clear vision.
- 17- He must drive well and pay attention to what happens in front of the motorcade.
- 18- He must drive well and pay attention to vehicles trying to pass the motorcade.
- 19- He must keep a safe distance between him and the cars in front of the motorcade.
- 20- He must drive in the middle of the road.
- 21- He must never leave his position and come back at the same time every day.
- 22- He must change the route every day.
- 23- He must always be prepared and carry tools for defense or attack in case the vehicle comes under attack.
- 24- When an emergency is signaled, he must ask the VIP to bend down under the window.
- 25- He must never leave the vehicle unless otherwise instructed by the motorcade's leader.
- 26- He must not be distracted by listening to the radio or talking while driving.
- 27- He must not leave the car to open the door for the VIP or anyone else.
- 28- He must not stare at the lines on the road because that could make him dizzy.
- 29- He must not think that newer cars are less likely to break down, as they can and they do at critical times.
- 30- He must never allow another vehicle to come between his car and the VIP's car.
- 31- He must not speed. Speed can cause accidents.
- 32- He must never take the car over its limits.

Experienced Driving Skills:

You must know the assassin's methods of attack in order to be able to drive in a defensive way. Some of the known methods of attack are:

- 1- Two car assault: The first is used as an obstacle and the second to carry out the assault.
- 2- The assault car usually carries three people in addition to the driver, while the barrier is usually a one man car.
- 3- The assault usually takes place from the driver's left hand side. The attackers fire at the car when they get to a blind angle in the back of the target's vehicle, and carry on until they pass it.
- 4- The methods of attack are to the advantage of the attacker, which means that the attack usually takes place at turns or intersections where escape is easy.
- 5- The assault lasts 10 to 15 minutes.

AFGP-2002-000031-0492

- 6- The surprise factor is always a problem.
- 7- The attacker takes advantage of the confusion and chaos after the attack, and then carries on with his mission by kidnapping or killing his target.
- 8- Most assault vehicles are either rented or stolen.

The VIP Protection Team

This team carries on the following tasks:

- 1- Secure the safety of the vehicle and passengers.
- 2- Watch dangerous areas, which is essential to the protection of the motorcade.
- 3- The passenger on the right hand side of the driver calls the Command Center and escort protection team members.
- 4- One of the passengers is usually assigned to help the driver determine the right path.
- 5- Provide defensive or offensive measures in an emergency situation.
- 6- Help the driver operate other protection equipment.
- 7- Watch for escape routes in the case of an emergency, including police stations, government and official buildings, turns, intersections, etc.

Maneuvers of the VIP protection team:

Members of the protection team must work as a united cohesive team in order for the motorcade to be able to go through all the roads and turns without any problems. The VIP's vehicle must be isolated and protected as much as possible to prevent an attack from a car that sneaks in between the VIP's vehicle and the other vehicles. The driver must keep radio contact with the escort cars in order to get back to the initial order. Following are the main maneuvers that must be done in the case of a two to five-car VIP motorcade.

1- March Commencement Procession:

The escort cars must always be present and ready to move as soon as the VIP gets into his car, the movement sign is given. The protection escort car proceeds behind the VIP's vehicle to the left, preventing any strange car from passing.

2- Traffic lights:

The VIP's vehicle must never be stopped in a position directly facing strange cars. The car must be stopped in a halfway position to prevent anyone from seeing the VIP from a strange vehicle. This technique can be used always, even when the vehicle is in motion. The escort protection car must keep on driving in the same position as described in the previous paragraph.

3- Changing the route:

When the driver gives a signal to change routes

AFGP-2002-000031-0493

the escort car must move to the far left behind it to keep blocking traffic behind. It is preferable that the driver of the car ahead calls the others by radio to inform them that he intends to use a different route.

4- Turning Points or road change:

In case the driver intends to change his way, he needs to alert the escort car so that it can keep its position with regard to the VIP's car to protect the latter. Such change must be done smoothly and in an organized way.

5- Driving on an open Highway:

It is preferable to get some help from the local police and security officers, as the motorcade must proceed in accordance with the existing speed laws, and the VIP's car must be preceded and followed by a police car, while members of the protection team thoroughly inspect the road. If driving on a three lane highway, the driver of the VIP's car may switch between lanes while making sure that the latter is protected at all times by the escort cars as described above. In case of an attack, the driver must maneuver well to lose the attackers on an emergency side road, while escort cars form a barrier blocking the attackers' car to facilitate the VIP escape. An escort car has to stay behind the VIP's car and use the last vehicle to block the way between the VIP's car and the attackers' car.

6- Arriving to the Destination:

Parking must be organized upon arrival to the destination place where the visit is to take place. Usually, there would be another protection team waiting to receive the VIP. The VIP's driver must park the car in an appropriate position so that if he had to leave, he would only need to turn on the engine to take off. The escort car stops traffic until the VIP leaves his car. Then, the escort cars park closely behind each other to prevent any attack from in between cars. Members of the protection team then leave their vehicles quickly to form a human chain around the VIP to protect him.

Driving confuses the attacker and makes him lose his strategic position. His focus switches to the moving vehicle, allowing members of the protection team to quickly take the VIP out of danger.

A- Locate emergency escape routes.

B- Giving the VIP instructions to bend down in parallel the car's window, as that protects him and makes the attacker believe that the VIP is not in the car. Therefore, the bullet goes through the car instead of the VIP. The human shield also protects the guest and guarantees his safety.

C- You must find out the number of attackers or cars involved in the attack, and determine the danger areas.

D- Always use the car door as protection shield.

AFGP-2002-000031-0494

7- Measures to protect the VIP inside his car:

There are two possibilities:

First: The VIP is strong enough to protect himself.

Second: The VIP is scared and shaking when he comes under attack. The VIP must tighten up his seatbelt and all windows and doors must be locked. You must also instruct the VIP to bend down parallel to the car's window, cover his head, and stay calm until asked to move.

The Attack:

The attack relies on the surprise element. There are different factors for the attacker to succeed in his mission, such as the geographical position, the attacker's expertise and luck. All these elements can be used to protect the VIP's motorcade, but the best protection is to assume that an attack is being planned and take all the necessary steps to prevent it:

1- On a wide highway:

A sudden stop is an excellent tactic, as it leads the attacker to believe that he succeeded to force the motorcade to stop, therefore he stops and gets ready to carry on with his mission. At that point, you make a sudden turn or penetrate the attackers' cars.

2- When driving on a wide highway, the attack comes from the driver's left hand side. A slight left turn confuses the attackers and forces them to protect themselves from collision.

3- In crowded streets:

It is recommended to drive on the side of the street to avoid being boxed in or help the VIP get out of the car quickly and go into a nearby building. The driver can also make a quick thirty to forty degree angle turn.

4- A well planned sudden stop of the VIP's car forces the attackers' car to go beyond their target and miss the opportunity to aim and shoot successfully.

5- The best protection against attacks on the motorcade is the vigilance of the motorcade escort protection team. By being extremely vigilant and watching everything around the motorcade, the motorcade escort protection team can prevent the attack or force it to a failure.

How to deal with an ambush or car block:

The attacker's goal is usually to slow down or stop the motorcade at one point to kidnap or kill the VIP. In this situation, the protection team has two choices:

1- The safest and best choice is to steer away from the danger zone.

2- The second choice is to drive fast through the danger zone. The most important goal of the protection team is to take the VIP away from the dangerous area and prevent the attackers from getting to him; however, sometimes it is difficult to change

AFGP-2002-000031-0495

directions, in which case there are three possible measures to take:

- A-** Call the Operation Center on the radio to inform them of the attack (number of attackers and method of attack), as well as the actions that the protection team intends to take (such as steering away from the car block).
- B-** The protection team determines the location of the motorcade, road conditions, and escape areas.
- C-** Once you get away from the attackers, inform the management center about the motorcade's new movement schedule, the VIP's condition as well as that of the protection team and the vehicles. The type of attack and the number of attackers help determine the main measures to be taken by the protection team. As follows:

Ambush: If it were difficult to change directions:

- A-** Draw attention by sounding the horn or the alarm signal.
- B-** Increase speed of cars.
- C-** Shoot quickly.
- D-** If possible, one of the escort cars attacks the ambush, shooting to kill or scare away the target.
- E-** If the VIP's car stops for any reason, instruct the VIP to bend down inside the vehicle and cover his head with his arms.
- F-** It is preferable that the car does not stop even if it has a flat tire or has a problem, as it is more difficult to hit a moving target.
- G-** Any possible maneuver by the driver of the VIP's car gives the protection team the opportunity to force the attackers to lose control.

Road Blocks (Closing the road with barriers)

Usually, the attackers use two cars to make a road block, and use the following techniques:

- A-** The attackers' car passes the VIP's car from the right hand side and suddenly stops in front of it and blocks the road.
- B-** The attackers use two cars: The first performs its mission according to the techniques described above, while the second stops on the other side parallel to the VIP's car to prevent the driver from turning or changing his direction. (Note: In this case, the driver must not attempt to go through the road block.)
- C-** Two attackers' cars stop in a perpendicular way in front of the VIP's car, while a third one prevents the VIP's car from changing directions. This method of assassination or kidnapping is always successful, in which the attackers mostly use small cars. In most cases, the driver can go through the roadblock if he is calm and applies the following techniques:

AFGP-2002-000031-0496

When the driver notices a roadblock in front of him, he must:

- 1- Slow down.
- 2- Switch to first gear without letting the attackers notice that.
- 3- Come to a fast and sudden stop. The driver must do this upon noticing that the attacker is getting close to his car, or when the two cars stop to block the road. He must stop a car and a half's length away from that position.
- 4- Define the point of attack or impact: The point of impact on the attackers' cars is always on the wheels, allowing the VIP's car to push them and change their direction, taking the attackers by surprise.
- 5- Using maximum speed: The driver must be in control of his car as he hits the attackers' car from a 45 degree angle, at which point the protection team shoots at the attackers and aborts the attack.
- 6- Bring down the car used to block the road. Do not just hit the car, but push it far away.

Safety of the VIP's car

The safety of the motorcade vehicles especially that of the VIP's car, is extremely important. These cars must be under 24 hour surveillance and no one must be allowed to get near the VIP's car, as it takes less than 15 minutes to place a bomb in the car.

A- Safety:

- 1- The car must be parked in a spacious area and watched by armed personnel. No one must be allowed near the vehicle without an authorization from the head of the protection operation.
- 2- Oil and gas must always be checked.
- 3- When the car is brought in and while waiting for the VIP, it must be protected by a number of escorts and no one must be allowed into the car.
- 4- If the car is parked at a hotel parking lot, it must be under special surveillance at night. It is preferable to park the car in a military area, a police station, or a fire department building.

B- Protection and Maintenance:

A member of the protection team must be assigned maintenance of the VIP's car. If that is not possible, the vehicle must be taken to designated maintenance shop; a member of the protection team watches throughout the maintenance job. When using a rental car, it must be very well maintained and checked well. After the maintenance job, you must test drive the car at different speeds and switching gears.

AFGP-2002-000031-0497

C- Vehicle Inspection:

A member of the protection team must be assigned to this mission. If he sees anything suspicious, the vehicle must be taken away and inspected by an expert. At the same time, no one should touch the body of the suspicious vehicle.

- 1- The explosives placed in the vehicle usually have a tape connected to the engine so that they are detonated when the engine starts. They are usually placed in the engine or other places. The detonation is timed for when the vehicle is in motion.
- 2- The vehicle inspection must be similar to that of a building, working from the outside in, checking the lowest level and on up to the roof. Before the inspection, the following information is needed from the main driver, owner, or the rental agency:
 - A- When was the vehicle last driven? Who drove it?
 - B- Where was the vehicle parked? How long?
 - C- What are the areas to which the vehicle has been exposed?
 - D- When the vehicle was last inspected or repaired?
 - E- Making sure the gas tank is safe.
 - F- Did anything unusual happen to this car or its last driver?
- 3- Detailed Search:

A detailed vehicle inspection checklist is attached. In any case, the following measures are helpful to the inspection carried out by members of the protection team.

- A- Inspect the area around the vehicle focusing on new traces of footsteps and/or other traces.
- B- Check for the presence of pieces of steel, screws, nails, or any unusual item around the vehicle.
- C- Notice any traces under the vehicle. If that is the case, that means that someone has tampered with the bottom of the vehicle.
- D- If the vehicle is parked on sand or smooth soil, check the floor under all the frames.
- E- Check the car thoroughly and pay special attention to any traces of forceful removal, fingerprints, or other items.
- F- Pull out the frame covers and check them thoroughly.
- G- Go under the vehicle and check its bottom. It is recommended to lift it up and check it to make sure that there is not a hidden bomb or anything of that sort.
- H- Pull the cover up completely, if that is possible, and check the engine thoroughly.
- I- The inside of the car must be inspected the same way as a room, which means it must be divided into three sections:

AFGP-2002-000031-0498

Route Study Summary

* From: _____ *To: _____

* Distance: _____ * Required Time for the Trip: _____

* Detailed description of the route from the starting point to the finishing point, including streets, turns, street names and numbers: _____

* State the number of buildings on the route, as well as scattered buildings: _____

* Designation of Government and Official Buildings: _____

* Number of windows looking onto the motorcade's route: _____

* Names and numbers of intersections crossed by the motorcade: _____

* Designate the number and names of protection centers along the route: _____

* Position and number of parked cars the motorcade will pass by (with the exact passing time):

* Indicate the locations and number of waste disposal containers, storage places, post office boxes...etc. along the route, where explosives could be placed: _____

* Indicate the number of people that you pass along the route: _____

AFGP-2002-000031-0499

* Indicate the number of high passages on the route: _____

* Indicate by name the number of low passages on the route:

* Indicate the names and number of tunnels and bridges: _____

* Indicate parking lots, picnic areas and tree areas: _____

* Indicate workshop areas, roads in bad condition, and areas where an attack may take place:

* Indicate the location of the closest hospital or medical center on the route: _____

* Indicate alternate or emergency roads: _____

* Indicate safe areas: _____

In addition to the above items, a route study includes the following:

* Meeting building owners or superintendents and the security officer in charge of buildings overlooking the area where the motorcade is supposed to pass, and asking him to cooperate with the security team by closing the building's windows, keeping people away from roof tops, and alerting the security center of any suspicious activity.

* Making sure that their cooperation is legal in terms of providing information.

* Conducting a detailed and thorough road inspection, checking post office boxes, windows, etc.

Date:

Signature of the individual conducting study:

AFGP-2002-000031-0500

Detailed Vehicle Inspection Checklist

- * Car Make: _____ * Model: _____
- * Body: _____ * Number of Doors: _____
- * Color: _____ * License Plate Number: _____
- * Location of the car: _____
- * Name of Inspector: _____
- * Name of Mechanic: _____
- Time: _____ Date: _____
- * Information about the previous owner: _____

- * Inspection of the area around the vehicle and under the wheels: _____
- * Inspection of the vehicle's exterior: _____
- * Indications of forceful opening: _____
- * Inspection marks: _____
- * Thorough inspection of the bottom of the car: _____
- * Taking down tire covers: _____
- * Taking down the entire cover: _____
- * Thorough inspection of the front of the car and the engine: _____
- * Disconnecting all battery wires: _____
- * Opening all doors: _____
- * Thorough inspection of the rear side of the car: _____ * Back: _____

AFGP-2002-000031-0501

*Doors: _____

*Door Handles: _____

*Floor Mats: _____

*Back speaker: _____

*Lights: _____

*All keys: _____

*Back seat: _____

*Back seat headrest: _____

*Ashtray: _____

*Under the front seat: _____

*Front seat headrest: _____

*Front doors: _____

*Front of the car: _____

*Open the door: _____

*Floor mats and keys: _____

*Other doors: _____

*Radio and lights: _____

*Front seats and ashtray: _____

484-A

AFGP-2002-000031-0502

- * Air conditioning and extensions: _____
- * Dashboard, light switches and others: _____
- * Open the trunk cover and pull it out all the way: _____
- * Thoroughly check the trunk: _____
- * Trunk carpet: _____ * Spare tire _____
- * Equipment storage box: _____ * Electrical wires: _____
- * Behind the backseats: _____
- * Under the back sides: _____
- * Check the gas tank: _____
- * Turn on the engine while the vehicle is stopped: _____
- * Engine: _____
- * Warm up for 15 minutes: _____
- * Turn on all accessories: _____
- * Other: _____
- * Move the vehicle one meter forward and back.
- * Check the spare tire: _____

Security of the VIP's Suitcases

Safeguarding and examining suitcases protects personal belongings and official items from being lost. Such items belong to the VIP and the members of the delegation traveling with him. In order to protect these belongings from being lost or stolen and make sure they are free of explosives and suspicious items, the following tasks must be performed:

AFGP-2002-000031-0503

A- Moving from a specific location:

The person in charge must obtain a list with the names of all the members of the official delegation. The suitcases must be marked with similar tags containing the suitcase number, the owner's name or number (attached is a suitcase distribution list). All official delegation suitcases must be put together, counted and accompanied from the center to the airplane, where they are checked and counted again.

B- Arriving to the center/headquarters:

Upon arrival at the center, suitcases must be recounted to make sure that the number of suitcases received matches the number sent.

Bomb Threats:

When receiving a bomb threat, there are a number of important considerations:

A- The individual receiving the threat must not give the caller any information and fill out a special form. There are important pieces of information that must be recorded:

- 1- Explosion time.
- 2- Location of the bomb.
- 3- Type of bomb.
- 4- Description of the equipment.
- 5- Reason for placing the bomb.
- 6- Name and location of the caller.

B- The Military Police must be notified to come and to assist the protection team. Others may be notified as well.

- 1- Ambulance and paramedic must be prepared in case of an explosion.
- 2- The military police.
- 3- Firefighters.
- 4- Security personal.

C- A decision to whether evacuate the VIP from the area or leave him there must be taken. It is a very difficult decision, so you must take the following points into consideration:

- 1- Evaluate the caller and his motive to know if the threat is real or not.
- 2- Find out when and where the bomb was placed to explode.
- 3- Find out the VIP's connection with the motive for placing the bomb.
- 4- Find out whether the center where the VIP is headed has been very well inspected.
- 5- Find out the type of building and how vulnerable it is to be attacked.

AFGP-2002-000031-0504

D- Before making a decision to evacuate the VIP, the area must be inspected. In doing so, you must take the following points into consideration:

- 1- The inspection must be planned, organized and thorough.
- 2- If the VIP is in the building, search starting the closest point to him.
- 3- If you know the location of the bomb, start from there.
- 4- The search must be conducted by individuals who are familiar with the building/area.
- 5- The search must be conducted with the help of military experts.
- 6- You must assume that any suspicious body or package, or any bomb, is a dangerous item that must not be touched unless in the presence of military experts.

Dealing with maniacs:

Maniacs must be checked out. If one of them threatens the VIP, it becomes necessary to investigate the matter further and determine how dangerous he/she is. Most maniacs get in touch by mail or phone. It is necessary to keep an information file on all maniacs.

A- Handling maniacs

- 1- Evaluate how dangerous the maniac is.
- 2- If time allows, and if a nosy maniac calls to register a complaint or for anything else, it is recommended to advise him and transfer him to a specialized institution.
- 3- Verify the name of the maniac with the police to find out any information they have on him/her.
- 4- If the individual is determined to be dangerous, he/she must be arrested in order to take further action.
- 5- A non-dangerous (disturbed) maniac may be sent away with an accusation of disturbing others.

B- Dangerous Individuals. These may be:

- 1- Individuals making a specific threat toward the VIP.
- 2- Individuals carrying out an activity on the day of the event.
- 3- Individuals known for their animosity toward the VIP.
- 4- Individuals who endanger the wellbeing of others with threats to the VIP.
- 5- Determine the type of questionings.
- 6- Take defensive measures, with the main objective of eliminating the threats.

Taking into consideration the following steps:

- a- Questioning.
- b- Arrest.
- c- Detention.
- d- Monitoring.
- e- Cover-up.
- f- Transport.
- g- Transport to hospital.
- h- Embarrassment.

AFGP-2002-000031-0505

C- Interviewing maniacs

- 1- When it becomes necessary to interview a maniac, it is necessary to know how he thinks and how dangerous he can be to others.
- 2- It is dangerous to try to argue with people who do not have a sense of logic.
- 3- When talking with a maniac, it is necessary not to give him a sense of failure. If possible, try to take a picture of him.
- 4- Calls from maniacs must be treated in the same way as bomb threats.

Deception in Protecting the VIP:

A- There are many means of deception or cover-up in protecting the VIP, to hide his whereabouts in a specific location at a specific time for his own safety. The goal behind such operation is:

- 1- To avoid putting the VIP in danger as no one knows where he is.
- 2- To avoid embarrassment: Sometimes and in some places, the VIP may be embarrassed by the presence of some people he does not wish to see for personal reasons. Therefore, he may want to avoid seeing them. His activity could then be covered up.
- 3- To finish a necessary task: The VIP may wish to receive a guest or go on a visit without anyone's knowledge.
- 4- In case there are not enough members of the protection team around. In this case, officials choose not to make the VIP's visit public and the visit is covered up by a few individuals.

B- Types of Cover-ups.

- 1- Change of plans: A local event may force a last minute change of trip schedule. There may also be danger on the route, in which case the VIP uses another car in the motorcade while his escort uses the car that was initially reserved for him. This way, the VIP remains in the motorcade, but not where he is expected to be.
- 2- Changes in the official program: Prevents the assassin from carrying out his plan as scheduled.
 - A-** Announcing that the VIP is traveling by car, when in reality, he is traveling by plane.
 - B-** Announcing that the VIP is traveling somewhere, when in fact, he is going somewhere else.
- 3- Making false declarations: This can be made through the press in a diplomatic way. For example: announcing that the VIP is traveling on Tuesday to a faraway area by train, when in fact, the VIP has already left the country heading back home by plane.

MILITARY COMMISSIONS TRIAL JUDICIARY
GUANTANAMO BAY, CUBA

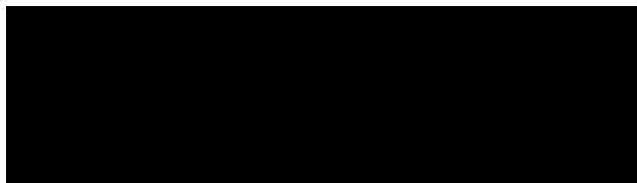
<p>UNITED STATES OF AMERICA</p> <p>V.</p> <p>ABD AL HADI AL-IRAQI</p>	<p>DECLARATION OF</p> <p></p>
---	---

1. I am fluent in written and spoken English as well as written and spoken Arabic.
2. I have taken the ALTA Language Services Translation Assessment and scored at skill level three or higher, which corresponds to professional performance.
3. I am familiar with the Arabic document bearing bates numbers AFGP-2002-000031-0506 to AFGP-2002-000031-0607, which is the Afghan Jihad encyclopedia.
4. To the best of my knowledge and belief, the English translation attached to this Declaration is a true and accurate translation from Arabic into English of the Arabic document described in paragraph 2 of this Declaration.

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed on: 07/30/2014

McLean, Virginia



HADI-1-016835

AFGP-2002-000031-0506

4. Hiring a look alike: In most countries a double that looks like the VIP is used to replace him during official visits while the VIP himself moves freely and quietly. The double may also appear before the public from a distance at a balcony without having to speak.
- C- There are several scenarios in using such methods, where security members perform their roles as if the VIP is among them.

Ability to Distinguish

- A- **Motives:** The security team members should be able to distinguish and observe all that takes place around them. Protection of the VIP should always be the main task. While preparing for the visit, the security person should screen the location and has to see, hear, smell, observe and remember everything in order to make a sound decision on what is required. Therefore the mission remains accurate and conclusive.
- B- **Description:** Description has to be accurate and detailed because detail helps the person who is not familiar with the location or the event while working to have a clear idea of the mission or the individual. The description has to include the following:
- 1- Who: Who are the individuals involved in the observation?
 - 2- What: What actually happened, or what did you see yourself?
 - 3- Where: Where did the incident happen, and the location?
 - 4- When: When did the incident happen?
 - 5- How: How did the incident happen?
 - 6- Why: Why did a particular event happen?

If the above applies to the description it will be a complete one. The security member should understand major issues related to his activity while meeting people and collecting information.

C- Common mistakes:

One should observe and describe changes based on his acquired experience; the changes are usually dependent on the following:

- 1- Previous thoughts.
- 2- Prejudice: Some people may be prejudice towards certain colors or faiths.
- 3- Suggestive: The person you are talking to may try to tell you what you like to hear.
- 4- Panic.
- 5- Exaggeration.
- 6- Neglect or carelessness.

AFGP-2002-000031-0507

D- Main causes for mistakes:

- 1- Inability to observe: One may live on a certain road without paying attention to nearby buildings, emergency warnings or light poles etc., and may not notice things around him or remember their details.
- 2- Weak memory: People tend to forget things they hate.
- 3- Time elapsed after the incident: Due to occasional weak memory, one should meet people and talk to them not too long after the incident, otherwise the inspector may get distorted and less detailed information.
- 4- Memory related to occupation: People tend to memorize things related to their jobs, for example a mechanic can give accurate details of his profession...etc.
 - a- Women usually observe other women's fashion and cuts, color, price, type of fabric, while men do not care about such things.
 - b- Teenagers may describe car models and specifications and give statistics and information about it.
 - c- Criminals notice other criminals clearly, and may describe their activities.
 - d- Items prone to miscalculations are:
 - 1- Age: Age of the other sex or individuals of other nationalities.
 - 2- Speed: Speed cars or planes, or a moving person.
 - 3- Time: Exact time for an incident to occur.
 - 4- Direction: Where a person is coming from or where he is going to.
 - 5- Color: Colors appear different under different lights.
 - 6- Quantity: Determining the number of persons or items due to noise, violence, or not paying attention.
 - 7- Noise Direction: Due to echo from buildings or hills, or the like, it is difficult to determine the source of sound.
- 1- The degree of relying on other people: there are several factors related to the reliance on others degree. Some are: knowledge or relationship of a person to a subject or item, i.e. if the person is an expert in different kinds of aircraft, his observations of aircrafts will be more accurate and detailed.
- 2- Interest or prejudice: If the person is interested in a certain sport, his observations tend to be more accurate and detailed.
- 3- Readiness and ability to observe: Mental or health condition of the person is a very important factor when making observations.

AFGP-2002-000031-0508

- 4- Time factor: If the incident happened a long time ago, one tends to use imagination for description.
- 5- Suggestions of other people: The way questions are asked may influence people with new ideas.
- 6- Old experience may influence description of a new incident.
- 7- Motive: Motive could be fear or other than fear.
- e- **Relying on senses:**
 - 1- Sight: Or vision is the most important source of information; however it may get affected by rain or fog at times.
 - 2- Hearing: May get affected by perspiration or noise.
 - 3- Taste: Having food with lots of spices may change the taste of the food later on.
 - 4- Smell: Perspiration may affect smelling.
 - 5- Touch: Helps to find out if an item is hot, cold, soft, and coarse.
- f- **Describing individuals:**

It is important that all members of a protection team should know the technique in describing things and individuals, particularly if the person being described will be put under surveillance. An accurate description of people requires the following rules:

 - 1- Identifying the words used to describe human feelings.
 - 2- Practicing of monitoring people, and how to memorize their description accurately.
 - 3- Adapting a methodology in monitoring and identifying people.
 - 4- Attention to details: What an individual wears, what color is his jacket, tie...etc.
 - 5- Differentiating between the truth and mere speculation. Never say I think or I believe.
 - 6- Avoid suggesting details particularly when asking a question.
 - 7- Remember that the most difficult person to describe is the ordinary type person, medium built, with no distinguishing.
 - 8- Look for something that makes the described person stand out, such as a scar, an accent, etc.
- g- How to describe a place: an accurate description requires adherence to the following rules:
 - 1- Being familiar with the technical terminology used in describing a place.
 - 2- Training on how to monitor rooms and know where the light switches are, number of doors and windows and their places, etc.

AFGP-2002-000031-0509

- 3- After training on strengthening observation skills, practice inspecting entire building such as an airport or a civic center, etc.
- 4- Focus on details such as the type of building and street type.
- 5- Differentiate between the truth and mere speculation.
- 6- Look for a specific characteristic of the place you are watching. Are there high rise buildings? Watch towers, railroad crossings, bridges, new buildings, and any place where explosives could be concealed.

i. Technique used to monitor people and crowds.

Precise monitoring and interpretation of situations requires the following from a protection team member:

- 1- Monitoring the behavior of people and crowds: Are they worried, angry, resentful, etc.
- 2- Paying attention to individuals that are isolated from the crowd
- 3- Trying to uncover the presence of suspicious gatherings. Do they have a leader within them?
- 4- Pay special attention to packages and boxes or any other items of that sort which crowd members are carrying.
- 5- Pay attention to anything irregular or new in the area.
- 6- Focus attention on concealed sources of threats.

* Luggage Inspection Checklist:

* Location:

* Date:

Color:

Owner:

Room:

Silver: Special Guest
 Yellow: Guest Escort
 Red: Guest Team
 Green: Escort Officer
 Brown: Guest Protection Team
 Black: Others

* Luggage Inspection Report

* Location: -----

* Presidential Security: -----

Name:

Position:

Number:

AFGP-2002-000031-0510

Sequence

Security Team

*First confirmation: _____

Amount:

*Second Confirmation _____

Amount:

*Luggage Details _____

*Notes _____

Signature:

Threatening Procedures from a Bomb Threat Caller

Instructions: Be calm and polite, listen, and do not interrupt the caller. Let the person in charge know that the caller is on the line using agreed upon signal codes.

*Individual's name:

Time:

Date:

*Caller identification:

Male ()

Female ()

Adult ()

Teenager ()

Approximate age of caller ()

Origin of call:

- () Local
- () Long Distance
- () Pay Phone
- () Internal (from inside the building)
- (Leave the key on the board).

AFGP-2002-000031-0511

Sound Features	Speech	Language
Loud/Soft	Fast/Slow	Excellent/Good
High/Deep	Clear/Fuzzy	Medium/Weak
Disturbing/Comfortable	Stutters/Speaks out of his nose	Normal/Other
Strange		

Dialect	Demeanor	Background Noises
Local/Not local	Calm/angry	Office Machines
Strange/From the area	Logical/Not logical	Factory Machines
	Comfortable/Uncomfortable	Train sound
	Objective/Sentimental	Animals/Music
	Shy/Funny	Calm/Noisy
		Traffic jam
		Party

AFGP-2002-000031-0512

Second: Street Security Posts:

A- Assignment positions of Protection Team Members:

Members of the security team have to be assigned to different positions on the street where the VIP is to pass through by placing three or four men on each turn. The nature of the expected danger determines the number of men assigned. Also assign some individuals to watch intersections and streets if the traffic lights are turned off.

B- Contact with Security Center:

Members of the security team must keep in constant contact with the central headquarters in order to be able to carry out their mission successfully, using radio, telephone, and various hands signals.

C- Member Responsibilities:

The responsibilities of the members of the protection team in the streets are similar to their responsibilities in other positions. In the street, a security team member faces various issues that may affect the safety of the VIP, such as maniacs and others. You must contact the main office to get instructions. Sometimes a security team member must take the initiative and make his own decisions. It is also necessary to isolate all suspicious individuals and those that may pose a threat to the safety of the VIP.

Third: Rural Routes:

The main security protection rules that apply to rural roads, apply urban roads.

Fourth: Rooftops and Deserted Buildings:

A- Rooftops: Most likely place for an assassin to position himself. Therefore, a member of the security team must be assigned to the highest rooftop in the area to observe everything. He must be equipped with a radio and wear protective clothing. A relief person must be assigned to take his place for short periods of time. He must also have binoculars to be able to watch the area closely.

B- Deserted Buildings may occasionally be designated as monitoring centers. A member of the security team must be extremely vigilant in positions like this one, as these buildings have no lights.

Fifth: Protection of a Public Restaurant:

If it is impossible, the following measures may be taken:

A- Have members of the protection team sit at tables surrounding the table where the VIP is sitting.

B- Choose a table near the emergency exit, and place members of the protection team on both sides of the exit.

C- If possible, choose a side table so that the VIP does not have to walk all across the dining room to get to it.

AFGP-2002-000031-0513

- D-** If possible, place an obstacle or something similar between the VIP table and public tables, such as flower bouquets, wood barriers, etc.
- E-** Place some members of the protection team at tables between public tables to watch the people inside.

Sixth: Protection in a Recreational Activity:

A- Protection during a sports event:

- 1-** Get a special booth for the VIP and his escort.
- 2-** Identify ticket holders sitting close to the VIP.
- 3-** Keep the booths next to the VIP booth for the protection team members.
- 4-** Assign additional members of the protection team around the VIP. Also, assign guards wearing official outfits.
- 5-** The VIP must arrive to the stadium after the game starts and leave before the end of the game.

B- Protection while participating in a recreational activity:

- 1-** If the VIP plays tennis or any other type of sports, you must take the same security measures as in any other case.
- 2-** If the VIP is playing golf, swimming or ice skating, additional security is needed. In this case, you must follow the following steps:
 - a-** Find out the exact time the VIP is supposed to start playing.
 - b-** Inspect all entry and exit points.
 - c-** Additional security officers must be assigned to precede and follow the VIP throughout the activity.
 - d-** Use the radio and binoculars.
 - e-** Determine the location of the security members along the road that the VIP will take. And also assign one member in an elevated position to watch the location.
 - f-** A medical team should accompany the team.
 - g-** Come up with an emergency plan in case the VIP is attacked.

Seventh: Press Conferences:

Such conferences must be very carefully planned and must take place in a location under the supervision of the protection team:

- A-** Journalists, radio and television personnel, photographers, technicians and others must arrive to the conference location with their equipment before arrival of the VIP.
- B-** If the press conference is open to the public, journalists must sit in front of the public to serve as a barrier between the VIP and the public.

AFGP-2002-000031-0514

- C-** During big press conferences, it is recommended to give credentials to participants and to check their identity.
- D-** The location must be protected and there must be only one entry and one exit. It is recommended that the VIP enters from another door which must be guarded.
- E-** When journalists arrive, all their equipment must be checked.
- F-** When selecting locations, with the help of the photographer, find out the best location to take pictures.
- G-** If the VIP's life is in danger, is it preferable to use a non-combustible podium.
- H-** It is recommended to have conference participants sit down.
- I-** In the case of an outdoor conference, make sure the location is secured with barriers around it.
- J-** The VIP must use a door close to the podium to enter and exit the conference site, and not walk close to the public.
- K-** The VIP must be the last to arrive and the first to leave the conference site.
- L-** When the conference starts, one of the people accompanying the VIP must speak briefly first and distribute copies of the VIP's speech.
- M-** If the conference is held inside a building, it is recommended to reserve a room where the VIP can rest while he is waiting for the conference to start, and stay there until everybody leaves the building.
- N-** It is recommended for the VIP not to exit the conference site from the same place he entered.
- O-** In the case of an outdoor conference, have an ambulance ready in case of an emergency.
- P-** The protection team must always pay close attention if the VIP tries to shake hands with someone from the public.

Eighth: Ensuring Food Safety

- A-** There is no known way of making sure that the food is safe and poison free. Therefore, you must make sure that the food comes from famous and well known places. The people who prepare the food must be loyal and healthy.
- B-** If the food is served at a reception or a restaurant, it is recommended to test it on the waiter himself.
- C-** If the VIP is a foreign person, you must know the types of food he does not eat if he is on a diet or for religious reasons.
- D-** In case the VIP goes out for a picnic and the food is prepared ahead of time, make sure it is kept in a freezer so it does not go bad.
- E-** All drinks (no matter the kind) must be served in sealed bottles.

AFGP-2002-000031-0515

Ninth: Use of Cars**A- Area Vehicles:**

In the case of large operations, the city can be divided into sections in order to facilitate monitoring and securing the guest's safety. The roads may also be divided into five or six sections. Each section would have a commander moving around his area, and is equipped with a radio. His car is considered the central (main) inspection vehicle, and is known to all his assistants. It is necessary to designate an excellent driver who knows the road and the locations of the protection team very well.

- B-** It is necessary to designate one or two cars to escort the VIP's car - car security officers can alternate roles during the mission.

Tenth: Concealed Positions

Sometimes, there are secret locations for security forces. If there is prior knowledge of a possible threat or that someone may attack the motorcade. These secret centers are usually out of sight and provide a very good coverage of the area. At the same time, additional security officers are designated to watch the area near those secret locations so that the entire area is covered. They must all carry very good communication devices to be able to alert if anything happens. If a security officer is placed in an uncomfortable location such as deserted areas, another officer must be designated to alternate with him during this mission.

Eleventh: Protection of the VIP in an Airplane:

This is an important task; therefore the identity of the individuals designated for this task must be checked.

- A-** The members of the VIP protection team must identify the people surrounding him. For this reason, all individuals must be given VIP name tags for identification.
- B-** Organizing the assignment of ID tags must be done through the Operation Commander. IDs must be kept safe so that they are not lost or forged by unauthorized individual.
- C-** Continuing Changes: The look of the ID tags must change continuously.
- D-** Members of the protection team must wear special pins (for the permanent team).
- E-** Temporary Protection Team Members must be given specific ID tags.
- F-** Clear Instructions: IDs and pins, etc. must be placed so that everyone can see them.
- G-** Permanent Items: They may be saved and used in other occasions by simply adding the pictures of the individuals wearing them.
- H-** Quick Items: They are prepared in a short amount of time. These are temporary cards to identify all those who work around the VIP. These cards are only used in emergency situations, not in ordinary circumstances.
- I-** Issuing General Command Guidelines:

AFGP-2002-000031-0516

- 1- Means to Identify Members: They must be issued by the Operation Commander to all the individuals involved in the operation.
- 2- Members of the press must carry special ID tags if they are allowed to attend. If they are to be with the guest at all times, they must wear big and clear ID tags hanging from a chain or a ribbon around their neck.
- 3- Servers such as the help personnel, the maintenance personnel, etc. must wear special identification pins.
- 4- Sometimes it is possible to use electronic ID verification machines in conferences with a large number of participants.

J- Vehicles Identification:

- 1- Vehicles used by members of the VIP protection team must have special signs placed on them. It is recommended to place them on the front or one of the sides so that everyone can see them.
** Warning: (This method may damage the vehicle's paint, so you may want to use washable paint.)
- 2- Sometimes, it is necessary to place the signs on both sides of the vehicle. This way, it can be seen and identified by all members of the operation.

Note:

With regard to airplane food, if it is not a private airplane and the VIP does not have his personal chef with him, he must not eat or drink anything on the airplane. The VIP's escort must solve this problem before boarding or after getting off the airplane. The VIP's escort must carry with him what the VIP may need in terms of drinks, or make sure that it is sealed by bringing it himself and tasting it before giving it to the VIP. It is better not to eat or drink anything on the airplane.

Twelve: Protecting the VIP during Prayer Time:

A- In a mosque, the VIP is either the Imam or the Speaker.

B- Taking inspection measures, especially the podium.

- 1- The VIP should be inside the sanctuary, not outside.
- 2- Most of the individuals on the first row must be members of the escort team, or trusted individuals accompanying the VIP.
- 3- The mosque's rooftop must be guarded.
- 4- If applicable, the upper stage must also be guarded.
- 5- Divide the mosque according to its pillars, and place a security guard next to each pillar.
- 6- Place security guards in the last row to watch the worshipers and the guards standing next to the pillars.

AFGP-2002-000031-0517

- 7- Place security guards behind windows on the rooftop to watch the worshipers and the guards on the last row.
 - 8- The VIP enters the mosque, and then the preacher gets on the podium.
 - 9- No one is to get close to the VIP.
 - 10- The VIP walks through the rows until he arrives to the first row.
 - 11- Members of the escort team must be on the right, on the left, and behind the VIP, and must keep a distance between 15 to 20 cm between them and the VIP.
 - 12- The VIP is the first to leave after the prayer is over, and will exit from a door on the side of the sanctuary.
 - 13- If there is no side door by the sanctuary, security guards must line up on both sides along the VIP's path when he is entering or exiting the mosque.
 - 14- All entrances must be monitored.
 - 15- If there are not enough security guards, it is possible to use the assistance of trusted individuals who love the VIP.
 - 16- Worshipers leave the mosque five minutes after the VIP.
 - 17- For the Eid Prayer, it is recommended that the VIP leaves after the prayer and not wait until after the sermon, except if the VIP is the one giving the speech.
 - 18- All vehicles must be ready to leave immediately after the prayer.
 - 19- For emergency purposes, one vehicle must remain on at all times while the driver must pray next to it.
 - 20- If the VIP is to meet with someone at the mosque, a room must be reserved for such a meeting, and all the inspection procedures and rules of entry are applied.
- C- If the VIP is among the worshipers.
- 1- The VIP must pray in the first row.
 - 2- The protection team must pray directly behind the VIP, and the rest of the second row must be all security guards.
 - 3- Apply all the above mentioned rules as when the VIP is the Imam or the Speaker.

Praying outdoors:

- A- If still within the mosque perimeter, the same security procedures should be applied to guarding and inspecting the mosque. Frequently, the VIP in this case is accompanied by his protection team.
- B- If the prayer is to be performed in an open area, then the followings should be taken in considerations:
- 1- The area should be flat and open with no natural barrier around.
 - 2- Guards are placed in three circles all around the VIP: with the first circle being 25 meter from the VIP, the second 75 meter from the first and the third 100 meter from the second.
 - 3- It is preferred that the VIP is in the front, with his protection personnel behind him, and he should read shorter chapters.

AFGP-2002-000031-0518

- 4- Two cars are placed ahead of the VIP during the prayer for protecting him against any possible dangers from that direction.
- 5- The rest of the cars are placed immediately behind the last line of the praying crowd.
- 6- Guards of the first protection circle watch from above the cars.
- 7- Crew of the two protection cars at the front stand around the cars, in front of those praying.
- 8- If there is a natural barrier, guards must be placed above it.
- 9- If there is a river, guards must be placed on both banks.
- 10- It is preferred that there are only one, and maximum of two lines of prayers.
- 11- No strangers are allowed in during the prayer, and if they came to pray, they should be asked to keep behind the first circle of protection and behind the cars, and should be closely scrutinized - God knows best.

How-to-Kill Course

First Lesson:

This way of killing is difficult to understand and to apply as well. Although it is similar to strangulation where air to the lungs is constricted, it is rather different in that air is blocked from the neck and the throat, so it is a method of constricting air from the mouth and nose. This can be achieved by placing the hands forcibly upon the victim's nose and mouth until he dies, or by forcing his face down to the ground or applying a strong glue material on his face that prevents him from breathing until he suffocates.

In general, this is called "smothering", i.e., denying air to the victim where an intense congestion is noticed that prevents the bronchioles from opening thus causing suffocation. This could also happen in case of heavy weights or blow to the thorax, etc.

Other ways of smothering include tying the victim with a rope, or better a chain, around the chest directly on the lungs then tighten the rope until the victim's bronchioles are closed for good and he dies by suffocation. This is very much like the way boas kill their prey by squeezing it to death before it swallows it whole. Another, more sinister way to kill by smothering is through a sweet-throwing game that is (very well known in the West); as instead of the sweet, a strong fast-gluing material is thrown to the face of the victim so he could no longer breath while giving the impression to the people around that this is just a game; the one they are very familiar with! The victim can also be killed by placing the victim or at least his head in a strong plastic sack and tightly closing the sack. This method though needs two persons to undertake the execution,

AFGP-2002-000031-0519

it leaves no trace for the police to follow, and it looks like a suicide attempt. Drowning too is classified under this category of killing where the victim is pushed down in his own swimming pool or the nearest water body with his hands tied behind his back; the way many people commit suicide nowadays in the West where they tie their own hands so that impulsive movement by the hands cannot allow them to escape. This way of killing is also deceptive. Keep in mind that the rope must be thick and strong, not just a piece of cloth that the victim can easily untie and escape the attempt.

Second Lesson: (Poisonous Arrows)

Wooden pipes and their poisoned arrows most often remind us of tropical jungles with their primitive people who live far away from so-called civilization and technology. In fact, archery warfare had ended long time ago and become unfit with the modernity of 20th century man. However, this does not mean that arrows can no longer be used to kill eminent VIPs. Even today, some adventurers still get killed in Brazilian forests by poisoned arrows thrown by local people. Traditional arrows, unlike steel needles used today in assassination operations, were made from wooden materials and have proved more efficient than their modern counterparts for the following two reasons:

1. Wood is a better absorbent of poison than metal, thus a wooden arrow would contain a larger amount of poison when it penetrates the victim's body
2. Wooden arrows are easier to crack inside the target's body when trying to take them out with the small piece remaining in the body works very much like a bee sting, it releases poison into the body till the person dies. The poison used must be of a good, quick killing quality. Some of the poisons cause muscle relaxation, breathing muscles in particular, which leads to suffocation and death. By the way, it is worth mentioning here that poisoning a knife would serve a good use in that any simple injury could do a lot of harm to the target if not lead to his death. Now, since today's civilization does not permit the use of jungle-type wooden pipes used for food hunting in tropical forests, it has become necessary to find another way or rather tool (arrow-blowing tool) that does not draw people's attention. This modern arrow-blowing tool must have an ordinary yet familiar size and shape that would nevertheless serve the lethal purpose they are intended for. For example, an arrow-blowing tool could have the shape of a cigarette where the poisoned arrow or sting placed inside can be blown toward the target pointing particularly to the neck or the face. A stick is also a good tool for that purpose and can also serve as camouflage even though you can fake

AFGP-2002-000031-0520

limping or sickness. There is another way and which seems easy and does not attract attention. A can of (Pepsi) can serve the same purpose and it can be done as follows: A hole is made at the bottom of the can and a strong plastic pipe is passed through that includes the poisonous arrow or (poisonous needle). Then the can is filled in with the juice and sealed with a cover that contains a hole.

Third Lesson:**Killing by carbon dioxide (CO2)**

The killing tool in this method is a chemical material. For example, frozen, easy to carry carbon dioxide can simply be placed in a paper roll under the target's bed so that, when the target gets back home to take some rest after a whole bloody day of tyranny and oppression, the frozen poison starts to evaporate due to the rise in temperature. Since CO2 is odorless, the death seems to be of natural causes. Carbon monoxide (CO), on the other hand, has stronger effect than CO2 and has a much lower freezing temperature. It can be pressurized while in gaseous phase then mixed with ethylene (C2H4) or better yet with cuprous chloride and placed in a pressured bottled to be sprayed in the target's room. Apart from these two killing gases, liquidized oxygen or hydrogen (placed in a refrigerator to remain in liquid form) can cause the immediate freezing and death of the exposed target body; the head (that could not be decapitated) in particular should be targeted to cause immediate death.

Fourth Lesson:

- **Killing by an Adze**

Note the location of the blow: between the eye and the ear.

- The adze is an excellent weapon in close, man-to-man combat where the use of fire arms is undesirable.
- Hitting the target in the area referred to above directly can reach the cerebrum from below the skull, a little bit higher than the jawbone (contrary to the skull, this area is particularly weak).
- This adze (the front is curved downwards) acts as an ax and pick at the same time. It can even reach the heart through the upper bones of the chest (see the picture below) by just one hit. In fact, an adze hit is stronger and deeper than that of a knife and will certainly reach the heart more easily from the front.
- This kind of adze can be custom-made and has other uses as well such as digging, climbing, and dragging things, particularly the dead body to get rid of it. It was frequently used in World War I when breaking in enemy trenches.

AFGP-2002-000031-0521

Fifth Lesson: (Suicide Evidences)

Following are some evidences that make police think that the victim has committed suicide, for they are mostly frequent among those who commit suicide:

Evidence	Possibility
Weapon:	A hand-gun
Caliber:	0.22
Number of bullets:	Only one shot
Location:	In the place of death
Area of hit:	Furthest upper part of the forehead to the right (if the dead was right-handed) between the eye and the ear.
Sex:	Male
Race:	White (suicide incidents are rare among black people.)
Season:	Spring or autumn
Day:	Unimportant
Age:	40-60
State or country:	Subject to where the dead is. As far as the US is concerned, California is the state with the highest suicide rate.
The Strike (bullet):	In the mouth. It must miss the tongue so as to be considered evidence of a suicide.

Other suicidal indications can be a white paper inside the typewriter or on the table along with a pen to suggest that the dead were considering writing his will. We have mentioned before that the date of committing suicide is not usually an important consideration to those who commit suicide.

However, to ensure certainty of the killing, we had better use the following useful information:

In a warm sunny day, blood flows more easily in the human body and breathing is better maintained by the saliva and is lighter and quicker as there would normally be no hindrance to blood or air circulation. For this, a warm sunny day is the best time for killing by bullet or small arms.

On a cold windy day, blood is thicker and flows more slowly in the veins and arteries, and breathing loses the previously mentioned maintenance due to lack of saliva

AFGP-2002-000031-0522

in the mouth, thus breathing becomes relatively harder. It has been established that breathing problems are more likely to happen in cold and windy days. This is why it is the best time for killing by poison, smothering, and heavy blows.

Other considerations:

- In the first few days of the month (when the moon is a crescent) blood and air circulations are warm, therefore, shooting and stabbing are the preferred.
- In moony nights, blood flow is strong, breathing is easy, nerves and skin are tight. Therefore, shooting and stabbing are preferred.
- At the end of the month, blood arteries and vessels are relatively narrower and breathing is more difficult. Therefore, suffocation is preferred.
- These considerations should be brought to mind at the final stage of implementation phase after a precise plan is drawn up. This is for a more effective and certain delivery of the task.
- For an execution during an air trip, the killing tool will be smuggled inside a small radio set. It is so simple, easy to use and effective.

This tool is a pipe made of a strong grade of plastic or of fiberglass called fiber glass most often used for the outer cover of the car. Radio or TV (antenna) can be used too. Bring a flash light, break its glass and keep the remaining tube. Place two electric wires inside of it (turning ordinary detonator into an electric one). Then insert the flash light tube (with the wires in) into the main tube and seal the latter leaving the two wires coming out of the tube. After that, fill part of the tube (directly above the light bulb) with gun powder and place the bullet just above the gun powder. Before boarding the plane, place this tube inside a small radio set, and remember to bring with you an acidic chemical and an adhesive tape onboard the plane. Take the tube out of the radio set, take one battery from this radio set and affix it to the tube as shown in the image. Connect the first electric wire to the back of the battery, and connect the other wire right to the other end of the battery. This will be the electric trigger that with a simple press by a finger will close the circuit, heat the filament of the light bulb, and therefore set the gun powder off causing the bullet to propel towards the target's body quite silently without drawing passengers' attention. The projectile is a used 0.22 bullet with spiral marks on it to suggest that it was fired from a 0.22 caliber handgun.

The "Killing Scene" calls for the executor to pretend to have slipped or hit something suddenly while approaching the target causing him to get in direct contact with him, better yet if this takes place during a night flight

AFGP-2002-000031-0523

or while showing a movie onboard the plane when lights are turned off as it is (the case in long-haul flights to say Europe or America).

These are the ideal times. However, if this is not practically possible, then when distributing the meals where all passengers and crew are preoccupied and not very much attentive to every movement that could consequently lead later to the killer.

You must approach the target from behind, and when you intentionally bump into him, place a paper (a playing card) on the spot where you intend to strike, and at the same time, use the killing instrument and close the electrical circuit to shoot the projectile without any noise (since the gunpowder will ignite but not explode). The reason for the use of the card is to contain the maximum amount of smoke from the victim's body and that the tip of the barrel does not leave a mark on the body. After striking the target, continue walking to the bathroom and do not forget to take your personal items (shaving kit, cologne bottles, toothbrush, etc.) with you. One of these bottles should have already been filled with acid to melt the tube and wires then flush the ashes down the toilet and put the battery back into the radio set. This way, the killing of the target will have gone unnoticed up to the time of landing, and the executor should be able to distance himself of any involvement if the passenger or the police raise any suspicions.

Note:

This killing method can be used in any environment if the above conditions are met, such as on a bus, train, in a cinema, and even in the street.

Now, is the knife the only tool that can be used against a target??

Knife throwing is not without risk as the likelihood of failure to hit the target is very high.

Throwing a knife can injure only one area, and that is if the hit is successful. You will have to approach the target to push the knife further into the victim's body. Though some armies still train their soldiers on knife-throwing, the writer of this section believes that the art of knife throwing is strictly for movie actors and circus performers rather than a pragmatic reality, and that we should search for an alternative technique that can hit the target in any direction. So, let us forget about planting or embedding a knife into the target's body, but rather focus on what the writer calls "slashing".

It is okay if the knife actually penetrates the target's body but that is not the objective. The intention is that the knife makes a cut. What we mean here is a knife that stabs and cuts, and a technique that ensures throwing the knife from one place to another without fearing that it might miss the

AFGP-2002-000031-0524

intended target; the pointed part to the front, provided it is not hindered by, say, bushes in the forest. To accomplish that, there are a number of non-fire arms that can be thrown at the target from a distance.

The Silent War

It is a circular disk with a hole in the middle. There are many sizes and forms of this disk, and usually have an inner diameter of 5 to 9 inches, and a serrated outer diameter of 6 to 12 inches. The throwing method is similar to the instinctive throwing method; when thrown from left to right it will be in a horizontal position, if you are right handed. When it impacts the victim, it cuts through him instead of just imbedding in his body. If thrown properly, it could hit the target from a distance of 60 feet. There are other non-fire arms made to injure the target before assault. However, this weapon is designed to kill on the first hit. There is another small arm that looks different from 'Silent War' but used the same way and has the same effects as the latter. It is known as (Hunga-Munga,) and is identified by its densely serrated surface. Another variation of the weapon is called (Lawn Darts) which is a small arrow with sharp tips, and is thrown by hand. It is usually found in clubs and requires focus and proficiency.

AFGP-2002-000031-0525

Poison Production

1- Castor seeds:

The white paste extracted from castor seeds is considered one of the most deadly poisons; so poisonous in fact that 0.035 milligrams is enough to kill someone if inhaled or injected (castor seeds can also kill if chewed but the side effects such as dizziness, diarrhea, vomit and headache, take 12 to 36 hours to appear).

Method of obtaining and preparation:

Soak 2 to 3 ounces of castor seeds in 10 ounces of water and leave them for an hour, adding two teaspoons of alkaline substance used in washing). Take the beans out and wash them with water and leave them until they dry. Then, peel the beans, grind them while adding four times their weight of acetone and put the mixture in a glass jar or bottle. Then, transfer the contents to another bottle through a coffee filter. Wear a mask and gloves and squeeze out the acetone, then add a fresh portion of the same. Repeat this last step twice. The residue after washing will be pure poison.

2- Hemlock plant:

A plant from which a poison is extracted known as hemlock poison. The poisoning effect takes about 15 minutes to one hour after use (edible).

3- Tang oil tree:

The seed of this tree looks like Brazilian nut and it tastes good. One needs to eat 3 to 4 nuts to develop poisoning effects in a half hour.

4- Daphne (berry):

It is one of the strongest known poisons. One single leaf of it is enough to kill.

5- Yellow Daphne:

The seed is the effective element of this poisonous plant and can cause death in about an hour.

Alkali poison Substances

A- Tobacco: There is enough nicotine in three cigarettes to kill a person. Sixty to 70 milligrams of pure nicotine will kill a person within an hour.

AFGP-2002-000031-0526

- B- Yew Taxus:** This poison is extracted from the bark very much like nicotine.
- C- Monkshood: (Wolf strangler):** This is the strongest poison. 1 to 3 milligram of it is enough to kill within 20 minutes. The plant includes so many poisonous substances as it causes numbness in the hand that cuts it off.
- D- Potato sprouts.**
- E- Timber Hemlock.**
- F- Saffron crocus (Winter Crocus).**

How to extract and prepare alkali poisons:

Chop up the poisonous leaves and grind them in a blender. Fill a metal pot with about 1/3 isopropyl alcohol (rubbing alcohol). Let it strain and percolate for an hour. Let it boil until you have two ounces left in the container. These, two ounces or so are alcohol mixed with poison alkaline. Put this amount on a plate, and let the alcohol evaporate. The remainder on the plate will be very pure poison.

Chemical poisons:

- 1- Arsenide:** Less than 1 gram of it can kill a person, and its affects appear after an hour.
- 2- Cyanide:** 2 grams of potassium cyanide is enough to kill a person in less than 10 minutes. To prepare potassium cyanide, mix 8 parts potassium cyanide (potassium ferro chloride) under very high temperature until all vapors stop and the liquid gets transparent and turns into powder. This powder is the poison.
- 3- White phosphorous:** 400 milligrams of it can kill a man.
- 4- Phosphate ester (used as insecticide):** there are many commercial types of this material, such as:

Commercial name	Fatal dose
Tepp	100mg
Disyston	300mg
Guthion	300mg
EPN	400mg
Syston	200mg
OMPA	350mg

AFGP-2002-000031-0527

Commercial name	Fatal dose
Phosdrin	250mg
Trithion	900mg
Parthion	200mg
Methiparathion	250mg

5- **Sodium Fluor Acetate:** Lethal dose is 1 gm.

6- **Tetraethyl Lead:** Lethal dose is 150 mg.

7- **Mercury:** (Mercuric Chloride, Mercury Series, Arsenic Mercury, Mercury (II) Cyanide, Mercury (II) Fluoride, Mercury (II) Oxide). Lethal Doses is between 1 to 2 gm.

Poisonous gases:

- 1- **Hydrocyanic acid gas:** A very poisonous gas the effects of which emerge in minutes. It is used in execution chambers and is prepared by adding a strong acid to potassium or sodium cyanide. Soon after this addition, the place must immediately be evacuated. A sort of timing could be used in this operation.
- 2- **Phosphate gas:** It has the odor of garlic. To kill with it, the target's room is saturated with the gas so that when the target goes in, he will die in half a minute from inhaling the gas. The gas is prepared by dropping pellets of aluminum phosphate in sulfuric acid, calcium phosphate, zinc phosphate or hydrochloric acid.
- 3- **Arsine gas:** The most poisonous of gases, having an odor like onion. It is prepared by mixing one part of zinc powder with one part of metallic arsenide powder in a paper sack. And when we want the gas to release, we throw the said mixture in a container with highly concentrated acid. The time taken by the acid to dissolve the paper sack with the deadly mixture is enough for you to leave the place for safety.
- 4- **Carbon monoxide:** This is considered one of the best killing gases as it is colorless, tasteless and odorless. A few minutes of inhaling the gas will be enough to kill the target. The easiest way to prepare the gas is by smelting iron ore and potassium cyanide with 8 to 10 times its weight of a concentrated sulfuric acid.
- 5- **Nitrogen dioxide:** Killing by this gas is one of the best killing methods as 250 to 350 PPM of it leads to death. This trace of the gas cannot practically be detected and the deadly effect can only emerge in a matter of hours or even days. The gas is prepared by dropping copper filings in diluted nitric acid.

AFGP-2002-000031-0528

Poisonous drugs:

Heroin: 1g is enough to kill.

Morphine:

Codeine:

Datura:

Mandrake:

Albizia Lebbeck

Belladonna:

Poisonous drugs are extracted like alkali poisons and placed in capsules that can be taken through the mouth.

Fire-cracking poisons:

Picric acid: Fatal dose: 1 gram.

PETN: Fatal dose: 1 gram.

Nitroglycerine: Fatal dose: 2 gram.

T.N.T: Fatal dose: 2 gram.

R.D.X:

Nitrobenzene:

All these are poisons substances that can physically penetrate the body.

Some sabotage and killing methods:

- 1- Poisoning bullets:** So that the killing will happen no matter where you hit the target.
- 2- DMSO Method:** Some poisons such as T.N.T. and alcohols can penetrate the skin. However, with DMSO most poisons become able to penetrate the skin. DMSO (Dimethyl Sulfoxide) is one of the most efficient compounds in poisoning the human body. It is sold in pharmacies because it helps treat rheumatoid diseases, eyes, hemorrhoids, and toothache. If you cannot find it in pharmacies, fetch it at horse breeding farms because it is prescribed to horses too. A mixture of the poison with DMSO will make the poison immediately penetrate the body. This way, pencils and jewelry can be poisoned too so as to kill anyone who uses them.
- 3- Poisoned letters:**
Mix a quantity of DMSO with another of castor seed oil or other poisonous substances and spray the produced mixture on a letter or paper.

AFGP-2002-000031-0529

Secret Inks Course

Definition:

Secret inks are substances that are suitable for writing that are colorless and odorless when dry, and that can be made to reappear in their overt form using a specific method. Secret inks are divided into a number of types according to how they are made to manifest.

a- Thermal manifestation. Carbohydrates (starch, sugar, etc.), when dissolved in water, can be used to write without color or order. To make the writing appear, we expose it to heat (e.g., an iron or a hot plate). The writing then appears. These materials include fruit juice (apple, orange, lemon, vinegar). The juice should be diluted with water to avoid the faint appearance of color. Other substances that appear with heat are milk, sugar solution, soap solution, urine, and lemon salt. Aluminum chloride also provides a yellow color when heat is applied and can be used as a secret ink.

When cobalt oxide is dissolved in nitrous acid or hydrochloric acid, a colorless solution is formed which can be used to write. When the writing is exposed to heat, it appears blue. When breathing (exhaling) on it (exhalation contains water vapor), it becomes invisible again. It is reversible and useful in keeping message concealed. The use of ink that manifests with the application of heat has drawbacks in extremely hot countries.

b- Manifestation upon the application of water. Aspirin dissolved in alcohol can be used as a secret ink. To make the writing appear, we expose it to water for several minutes. The writing appears in a pure white color that differs from the color of the white paper on which the message is written. In this case, the paper has to be placed on a dark surface to read it clearly. To obtain the aspirin solution, take a pill of tamrin, or aspirin, or ascriptin, dimaspirin, or any other substance that contains aspirin (panadol does not contain aspirin). Grind the pill thoroughly and place two spoonfuls of alcohol on it. The aspirin dissolves in the alcohol and the acidic material precipitates. Write using this solution. After writing, send the message. The recipient of the message makes the message appear by placing it on a water surface for several minutes. If he wishes to keep the message secretly after it has been made to appear and read, he allows it to dry. The message disappears again because the process is reversible.

c- Application of chemicals: There are different types:

- 1- Writing with a solution of phenolphthalein. After the message dries, it is made to appear using any acid, which yields a red color.
- 2- Writing with a solution of iron sulfate (colorless). The message is made to appear with a solution of sodium carbonate (washing soda), which yields a blue color. It can also be made to appear by using a solution of potassium ferricyanide, which yields an orange color.

AFGP-2002-000031-0530

- 3- Iodine Vapors:** Writing with a pen that contains no ink, secret or otherwise, leaves an impression on the paper. When the paper is exposed to iodine vapor, the iodine vaporizes immediately from a solid into a gas. The writing appears clearly, because the paper fibers are affected by the pressure exerted on them by the pen. Therefore, iodine is considered a general detector of the presence of secret ink. To avoid this problem, the message can be ironed to eliminate the impression of the pen. In this way, the enemy cannot detect the message using iodine vapors if he attempts to do so; (be careful, because the heat of the iron can make several types of secret ink appear). This problem can be avoided by writing with a ballpoint pen, which does not leave a trace or scratch on paper (is used in engineering).

Instruments Used in Writing

- 1- Paper:** The paper must be of the absorbent type, because the writing will not appear on shiny (glossy) paper. The paper should not be of the type that permits the ink to bleed. The paper should be smooth. It should not contain anything that attracts attention, such as a fragrance, roses, birds, etc.
- 2- Writing pen:** Empty ink pen, quill, ballpoint pen, and toothpick without using pressure.
- 3- Silk or white cloth:** It is possible to write on the inside of a shirt, blanket, or jacket. The writing materials are kept in normal containers used for cosmetics, medicines, and primer powder. The message can be written between the lines of a normal message, on the margin, and in the spaces at the top and bottom of the page. A message can be written on the inside of an envelope and on specific pages of newspapers and magazines, e.g., 30, 32, 34, and 36. It should be expected that the enemy may uncover messages in secret ink. Precautions must be taken such as changing the shape of the envelope and type of handwriting so that our messages are not an obvious target for enemy examination.

Instructions for the Use of Secret Ink

- 1-** Place the stamps on the upper right corner of an envelope.
- 2-** There must be signs for writings; agreed upon signals between the two parties.
- 3-** Refrain from writing on the margins.
- 4-** Write only on a smooth surface, such as glass or Formica.
- 5-** Pay strict attention when carrying out this task.
- 6-** It is absolutely forbidden to write names in secret messages written in secret ink.
- 7-** All secret inks must be kept in brown bottles instead of clear ones, because it is affected by light.

AFGP-2002-000031-0531

- 8- All secret inks contain toxic substances (chemical inks).
- 9- It is preferable to use a complex type of ink that cannot be made to appear by one detector.
- 10- The ink should not be of the type that appears with the application of heat, because this will expose the operation to detection in the mail control room.
- 11- The locations of the message should not be disclosed by the pressure exerted by the pen or writing instrument. This requires skill in writing lightly without pressure and the good selection of the paper and pen to be used.

Substances Used in Secret Ink

- Sodium chloride, sodium sulfite, sodium nitrate, barium chloride, glucose.
- Liquid blood plasma, benzene detector, and oxygen water.
- Sodium hydroxide in distilled water, copper oxide, aspirin (excluding children's aspirin).
- Penicillin is also used for writing, several types of vitamins that are colorless, such as vitamin A1.
- Sugar + water and iodine detector. Solid iodine is used as a sublimation detector.

* One should stay away from silver and lead compounds, because they affect the secret ink.

Example: Method for making secret ink:

Solution A: 50 grams of magnesium chloride, 25 milliliters of distilled water.

Solution B: 10 milliliters of distilled water, 10 grams of potassium iodide (or potassium chloride), 0.4 grams of iodine. The solution is left alone.

- The function of solution A is to create viscosity on the surface of the paper.
- The function of solution B is secret writing.
- The quill is washed well before and after writing.
- Other types of ink are not written with it.

* An open (normal) message is written with dry ink or panicle, not with liquid ink.

* The secret message is written between the lines of the open message.

Factors That Affect Secret Ink:

- 1 Ultraviolet rays.
- 2 Natural light.

AFGP-2002-000031-0532

- 3 Anything containing silver and silver nitrate.
- 4 A special type of plastic strips.

Importance of Indicators of Writing in Secret Ink (Importance of Signals)

- 1- Whether or not the message is from the concerned person.
- 2- Whether or not the message is written in secret ink.
- 3- Whether the sender has written under pressure (having been arrested or compelled to write in secret ink).
- 4- Whether the sender is under surveillance and fears that he is monitored.

*Signs (signals) should be top secret, unclear and ambiguous.

Example: Writing (In the name of God, the merciful and the compassionate) can be written in a specific calligraphic style but, with the exception for the letter C and which can be written in a different style such as Ruq'ah Arabic script or the like whereas the signs or signals have been agreed upon by the two parties.

Disclosure of the Secret Ink

- 1- Iodine vapors.
- 2- Exposure to heat (ironing).
- 3- The use of chemical solutions: Brushes attached to each other in the form of a British Trident aircraft. The brushes are immersed in different solutions to cause the secret ink to manifest. They are past diametrically over the message to manifest any secret ink substances.

Secret Carbon

Definition: It is a tool used for secret writing. To be successfully used, the following must be observed:

- 1- Prior agreement between the two concerned parties.
- 2- The substance used for writing must be available.
- 3- The writing must be sparse and clear.
- 4- Writing is conducted on a surface that is as smooth as possible.
- 5- The writing should not appear prominently on the surface of the paper due to pressure.
- 6- The paper must be checked before it is sent.
- 7- The paper must be checked to ensure that there is no trace of secret writing.
- 8- Carbon paper leaves no trace like regular carbon.
- 9- The secret message is written on one side, and the open message is written on the other side.
- 10- The overt message is written with a ballpoint pen or pencil.

AFGP-2002-000031-0533

- 11- Fold the paper normally. Rip up the first paper, place it in the toilet, and flush the toilet.
- 12- After finishing a secret message, the secret message must be concealed by aerating it (i.e., destroying it), or it must be placed in a safe location, as must the secret ink tools.

Question: Which one should we write first, the secret or the overt?

- A- When using carbon paper, we write the secret message first.
- B- When using liquid, secret ink, we begin by writing the overt message with a ballpoint pen or pencil. We then write the secret message between the lines.

Sample of a Message Written in Secret Ink

This is a message that was seized from secret agent "Robin" among espionage messages which he received from his superiors in Brussels whom he was corresponding with. The number (2) appeared between the lines of the message after the paper was treated with a special substance to reveal the writing in secret ink.

Brussels, 12/2/1964

Dear Robin,

- 1- Regular script: Thank you for your recent message and the beautiful pictures that you sent us.
- 2- Secret ink: Good information was received from number 2, continue your work.
- 1- Regular script: Everyone is awaiting news of you as you travel on the ship.
- 2- Secret ink: Notify us immediately of the movement of any new units toward the front.
- 4A- Regular script: They are asking me whether your health has improved in the eastern ambience that you love.

Remarks Regarding Secret Ink and its Manifestation

1. Most counter-espionage in countries and organizations possess the means to make any invisible writing appear in any letter containing secrets. Therefore, most espionage organizations continuously seek new types of invisible ink. In order to protect their correspondence from being detected, they must change the ink substance their personnel employ, because the erroneous use of ink or code might mean the end of the life of a spy and his network.
2. All types of liquids—derived from animals, plants, or fruits—are used as secret ink. They are made to manifest using heat and ammonium chloride (ammonium salt).
3. The vapors of iodine dye make secret inks appear. This is done by placing the message in a glass container filled with iodine dye vapor. When the iodine dye settles, the traces of the writing appear

AFGP-2002-000031-0534

on the paper fibers. A chemical may emerge to show secret writing no matter what. Therefore, we see that this method is used only in normal circumstances, when counterespionage is lax. In conditions of stricter counterintelligence, it is used very sparingly, and in a way that ensures the arrival of the message to the recipient.

Fabrication of different Types of Secret Ink

1- Ammonia ink: Ammonia is a colorless gas with a pungent odor. It is highly soluble in water under normal pressure and temperature conditions. One cubic centimeter of water can dissolve several hundred cc of ammonia. 1 gram of water dissolves 0.8 grams of ammonia. Household ammonia used for cleaning purposes consists of ammonia dissolved in water. There are several types of ammonia ink.

- Invisible (Syrian) ink: It is made by mixing 1 part oil with 60 parts ammonia water and 100 parts water.

Method of application:

1- Whenever this type of ink is used, the ink must be shaken and turned upside down so that the oil does not float on the surface and leave a thin oily layer on the surface of the paper.

2- This ink is invisible when it dries.

3- To see the ink again after it has dried, immerse the paper in cold water.

4- When the paper dries, the ink disappears again

2- Secret blue ink: This ink is used by US Intelligence in the eastern countries. It consists of ammonia solution (in the state obtained from grocery stores). It disappears when it dries. It appears when it is moistened or sprayed with a solution of cobalt nitrate (the writing appears blue).

Inks That Manifest by Means of Ammonia

When several drops of ammonia solution are placed on a piece of cotton in a closed bottle containing a piece of paper containing writing in secret ink, the words appear clearly. Examples of this ink include the following:

3- Chinese red secret ink: It is used by Chinese Intelligence. It is made of a mixture of 1 part of each of the following:

AFGP-2002-000031-0535

- A- Phenolphthalein.
- B- Glycerin.
- C- Alcohol.
- D- Carbon tetrachloride.

When the ink dries, it is colorless. However, when ammonia is used as explained above, the ink becomes red. The ink disappears again when the ammonia evaporates.

- 4- **Israeli Light Blue Secret Ink:** This ink is made by dissolving 8 or less grams of copper sulfate in a pint of water, to which is added a small piece of sugar or gum to make it cohere. Upon drying, the color disappears. When the paper is treated with ammonia, the light blue color reappears. It disappears again upon drying.
- 5- **No.2 Israeli Light Blue secret Ink:** It is prepared by adding 124 grams of copper sulfate to a liter of distilled water to which 80 drops of sulfuric acid have been added.
- 6- **Turkish Black Secret Ink:** It is used by Turkish Intelligence (MIT). It is made by dissolving 80 grams of ferrous sulfate in 1 liter of distilled water to which several drops of sulfuric acid have been added.
- 7- **German Blood-Red Secret Ink:** This ink was used by German Intelligence in the World War. It is made by mixing 640 cc of distilled water with 350 cc of acetone, 4 grams of phenol phylene, and 4 grams of caustic soda.
- 8- **Austrian Black Secret Ink:** It is made using a solution of 10% concentration of mercury oxide Pruto-nitrate.
- 9- **Secret Red Ink called "Double Agent":** It is made by dissolving 135 grams of ferric chloride in distilled water containing 30 milligrams of concentrated hydrochloric acid. Then, it is diluted into 1 liter. If the ink does not become invisible, it is diluted until it becomes invisible. In order to make it visible again, sulfuric acid with potassium cyanide are placed in a bottle with a long neck, and the paper is placed on the opening of the bottle to make the ink appear.
Remark: This vapor is very toxic. When the ink is exposed to ammonia vapor, it disappears and does not show.

AFGP-2002-000031-0536

Simultaneous Use of Invisible and Visible Inks

The use of this type of ink makes it possible to make a visible message invisible and will be replaced with a hidden message, and these types are:

British black and blue secret inks are used for this purpose. This ink can be erased after writing and then restored. It is made as follows:

- 100 weights of water containing a bit of milk.
 - 3.5 grams of an alkaline solution comprising yellow Prussia potassium
 - 3.5 grams of manganese carbonate.
 - 3.5 grams of graphite
- * This ink is made to disappear with a rubber eraser.

It is restored using a solution comprising equal quantities of potassium bisulfate and ferrous alum.

Practical Secret Inks

Each of the following 15 inks is made to appear using only the particular substance that pertains to it:

1- Blue Secret Ink:

53 grams of iron and potassium cyanide mixed with 1 liter of water.

The ink is revealed using a diluted solution of ferric sulfate.

2- Light Blue Secret Ink:

A solution of copper sulfate.

It is revealed using ammonia water.

3- Navy Blue Secret Ink:

73 grams of cobalt nitrate in 1 liter of water.

It is revealed using a solution of concentrated ammonia.

4- Brown Secret Ink:

62 grams of copper sulfate in 1 liter of water.

It is revealed using 53 grams of ferrum and potassium cyanide in 1 liter of water.

5- Yemeni Red Secret Ink.

73 grams of cobalt nitrate in 1 liter of water.

It is revealed using 53 grams of ferrum and potassium cyanide in 1 liter of water.

6- Dark Red Secret Ink:

68 grams of mercury chloride in 1 liter of water.

It is revealed using 83 grams of potassium iodide in 1 liter of water.

518-B

AFGP-2002-000031-0537

7- Red Secret Ink:

27 grams of ferric chloride in 1 liter of water.

It is revealed using sodium cyanide sulfate.

8- Light Red Secret Ink:

1 gram of phenol ptyalin in 50 cc + 50 cc of water.

It is revealed using 159 grams of sodium carbonate in 1 liter of water.

9- Yellow Secret Ink:

68 grams of mercury chloride in 1 liter of water.

It is revealed using 1 gram of caustic soda in 1 liter of water.

10- Yellow Gold Secret Ink:

1 weight of potassium bromide + 1 weight of pure copper sulfate, mixed into half ounce of water.

The ink is revealed by heat.

11- Purple Secret Ink:

20 grams of phenol mono carbon acid.

The ink is revealed using 27 grams of ferric chloride in 1 liter of water.

12- Green Secret Ink:

6 grams of sodium chlorate in 1 liter of water.

The ink is revealed using 14 grams of copper sulfate in 1 liter of water.

13- Dark Green Secret Ink:

73 grams of cobalt nitrate in 1 liter of water.

The ink is revealed using 53 grams of ferrum and potassium cyanide.

14- Light Green Secret Ink (used to write on colored paper):

50 grams of copper chloride in 1 liter of water.

The ink is revealed using 70 grams of cobalt chloride in 1 liter of water.

AFGP-2002-000031-0538

15- White Secret Ink (written on black or dark paper):

61 grams of barium chloride in 1 liter of water.

The ink is revealed using a dilute solution of 3 cc of sulfuric acid in 12 cc³ of water.

Black Secret Kitchen Ink: It is made of strong (heavy) tea.

It is revealed using ferric ammonium sulfate.

Purple Red Secret Kitchen Ink: It is made by boiling a handful of rice in 0.6 liters of water.

Before the rice is fully cooked, the water is filtered and used as ink.

The ink is revealed using a solution of potassium iodide.

Black Human Secret Ink: It is made from a solution of tannic acid.

It is revealed using ferric sulfate.

Hitler's Secret Ink: A solution of sodium cyanide sulfate.

It is revealed using ferric chloride.

Heat-Sensitive Secret Ink: It is made from a solution of cobalt salt, copper salt, lemon juice, various other juices, milk, sugar solution, and urine.

Remark: The addition of preservatives to the juice has an adverse effect on revealing the ink by using heat.

The ink is revealed by applying heat using an oven, iron, electrical lamp, candle, or sulfur.

Black Ink: It is made from a solution of nitrate or mercury. It becomes black with the application of heat.

AFGP-2002-000031-0539

Blue-Green Ink: It is made from cobalt chloride in distilled water.

Brown Ink 1: 8 ounces of copper sulfate + 8 ounces of potassium bromide in 1 gallon of water.

Brown Ink 2: Ammonium chloride + 15 parts water.

Brown Ink 3: It is made from coffee beans

Brown Ink 4: It is made from grapefruit juice, cabbage, lemon, and artichokes.

Brown Ink 5: 30 grams of sodium chloride (table salt + 100 cc of water)

Brown Ink 6: It is made from vinegar.

Brown Ink 7: A strong solution of ferric ammonium sulfate (alum).

Brown Ink 8: Potassium chloride + water.

Brown Red Ink: Onion juice.

Tampering Detection Ink:

If you wish to know whether an undesirable person has read a paper using heat, you need to create a mark using the ink described below. This mark, if heated, will appear permanently and will not disappear. The ink for making this mark is made from equal parts of solutions of retinol + paratolydine + 8 drops of water + drops of sulfuric acid.

Ink that appears permanent by the application of heat:

100 parts alum + water; bring the mixture to boil, and then add 100 parts of white garlic juice to the boiled solution. The solution is then cooled. This solution is used as an ink. If it is made to appear by means of heat, it cannot be made to disappear again.

Red Ink:

It is made of cobalt nitrate.

AFGP-2002-000031-0540

Disappearing Ink: This ink disappears after writing. For example, signatures on contracts become non-existent after minutes.

Dark Brown Disappearing Ink: It is made of:

1 part lead sodium
1/10 part uranium acetate
1/10 part citrate
100 parts water
Several drops of ammonia salt
Several drops of gum Arabic
Sulfuric acid vapor
Diluted solution of nitric acid

Preparation method:

Dissolve the first 3 components in water. Then add a drop of ammonia solution until the solution becomes transparent. Then, mix in several drops of gum Arabic. In order to make the ink appear, expose it to sulfuric acid vapors. The ink will disappear again after several minutes. It can be made to reappear by washing it in a much diluted solution of nitric acid.

Blue Code Ink:

Preparation method:

Combine 1 gram of ferrum and sodium cyanide, 1 gram of ferric ammonium sulfate, and 2 teaspoons of water.

Method for revealing ink: Use a solution of 8 grams of sodium carbonate in 2 teaspoons of water and a piece of cotton moistened with this solution. Rub the cotton on the paper.

Using this ink, we can write words in ink similar in color to this ink and complete several hidden letters. When the secret ink is revealed, all of the necessary letters appear.

Black Secret Ink 1:

Preparation method: Boil 30 grams of tannic acid in 4 ounces of brandy. Add 30 grams of cupric sulfate + 30 grams of ammonia salt. Cool the mixture. Then add some gum. This ink disappears within 24 hours.

AFGP-2002-000031-0541

Black Secret Ink 2:

Preparation method: 30 grams of tannic acid + 2 ounces of nitric acid. After cooling, add some gum and some sulfuric acid. This ink disappears within a few days.

Secret Ink of Any Color: If sulfuric acid is mixed with any ink, the ink will disappear due to decomposition. If equal quantities ink and acid are mixed, the paper will decompose after several months.

Secret Blue Ink for Messages: It is sold in Paris as women's ink. It comprises a solution of iodine starch water (obtained by dissolving soluble starch in a tincture of iodine). This ink, along with all the promises in which it is written, disappears in 7 weeks.

Secret Ink on Glossy Paper: 1 part iodine + 1 part potassium iodide + 24 parts acacia tree gum + 100 parts water. The potassium iodide dissolved. Then, ½ of the water is added to it. Then, the iodine is added. Then, the rest of the water and the gum are added.

Secret Red Ink: 1 gram of phenolphthalein + 50 cc of ammonia.

Secret Ink No. 9: 5 parts tincture of iodine + 2 parts starch + 100 parts water. Boil roots in water and add tincture of iodine. This ink is suited for any type of paper.

Toxic ink: It is made from 9 grams of platinum chloride + 1 gram of iodide chloride in a smaller quantity of water which are then mixed together.

Remark: US, Russian, and Israeli intelligence carry this ink with them.

Russian "Heart Attack" Ink: The victim can be sprayed with an ink pen in his face. The ink comprises a solution of 100 percent hydrocyanic acid.

AFGP-2002-000031-0542

Quick-killing Ink: It is made by dissolving 33 grams of potassium cyanide in 1 liter of water. To use this ink, place drops of the ink in a coffee or tea to kill the victim quickly.

Incendiary Ink: It is made from a mixture of 1/3 potassium chlorate + 2/3 sugar. A lead tube is filled with sulfuric acid and closed at both ends by cork. The tube is placed over the mixture. When the sulfuric acid eats away the cork and a drop of the mixture in the tube falls into the mixture, a thermal explosion generates (about 2000 degrees Fahrenheit) of heat, which suffices to burn anything. The timing of this incendiary explosion can be regulated by the thickness of the cork.

Incendiary Bottle: It is made by dissolving silver nitrate in ammonia (carbohydrate) with a bit of Arabic gum or dextrose sugar. When this solution evaporates, a highly explosive substance, silver nitride, remains. This solution is placed in a bottle which is plugged with a plug that has an opening to permit the solution to evaporate. When the solution dries, it explodes in the presence of the gum or dextrose sugar. This bottle is placed where you wish to start a fire, adjacent to a heater. Next to it several pieces of soap are placed with gasoline to facilitate combustion.

Secret Bottleneck Ink: The bottle is filled with 1/3 sulfuric acid + 2/3 gasoline. The acid is placed on the gasoline, not vice versa, and the bottle is sealed with a cork. Dissolved 57 grams of potassium chloride + 114 grams of sugar in 2 liters of water, immerse an absorbent paper in it and saturate it, and then let it dry.. When ready, the bottle is placed upside down over the dry absorbent paper, and when the solution reaches the absorbent paper, it produces an incendiary explosion. Remark: This is a dangerous experiment in which caution must be exercised.

Secret Egg Ink: It is made from alum and vinegar. The message is written on the outside surface of a boiled egg. Several hours later, it appears on the white inside surface of the egg itself.

AFGP-2002-000031-0543

Elementary Laws of Demolition

Simplification of the laws for demolishing wooden buildings:

If we wish to cut, shear, or destroy any type of wood, we must be familiar with the types of wood. Wood is divided into 3 groups, weak, strong, and intermediate. Wood also is categorized according to whether it is dry or moist. Each type of wood has its fixed value according to the following table:

Table of the Fixed Value of Woods

Type of wood	Dry	Moist
Weak	0.8	1.0
Intermediate	1.0	1.25
Strong	1.06	2.00

Let us say that the charge required to cut = Type of wood desired to be cut x thickness of the wood x surface of the piece of wood/25.

- 1- Example: Given a wooden board with a length of 4 m, a width of 20 cm, and thickness of 3 cm. Find the weight of the charge required to cut the piece of wood. The piece of wood to be cut is of the weak, moist type:

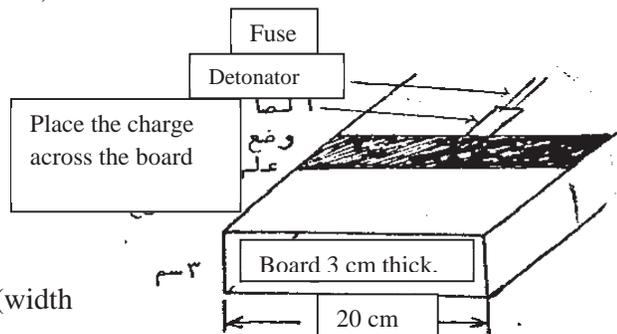
- Fixed value of the wood from the table for weak, moist wood: 1.

Thickness of wood to be cut is 3 cm.

Width of the wood to be cut: 20 cm.

Now, according to rule mentioned above:

- 1- We divide the value of the wood from the table, which is 1 x 3 (thickness of the wood) = 3.
- 2- Then, we multiply the product: 3 x 3 (thickness of the wood) = 9.
- 3- Then, we multiply the product: 9 x 20 (width of wood) = 180.
- 4- We divide the product: $180 \div 25$. According to the law, the result is 7.2 grams, which is the weight of the TNT charge required. Then, we place the charge along the width of the board. Detonation is then carried out.



- 2- Another example: Given a wooden board of the intermediate type of 15 cm wide and 4 cm thick, find the charge required to cut it. The wood is dry.

Charge = 1 (fixed value of wood from table) x 4 (thickness of the wood) x 4 cm (thickness of the wood) x 15 cm (width of the wood) \div 25cm.

AFGP-2002-000031-0544

Action:

- 1- Multiply the value of the wood from the table, which is 1 x thickness of wood = 4.
 - 2- Multiply the product: 4 x 4 (thickness of wood) = 16.
 - 3- Then, multiply the product: 16 x 15 (width of wooden board) = 240.
 - 4- Then, divide the result: $240 \div 25$ according to the law = 9.6 grams, the weight of the TNT charge.
 - 5- Place the charge longitudinally on the width of the wooden board. Then, conduct detonation.
3. Another example: Given a wooden board of the strong, dry type, 30 cm wide and a 5cm thick, calculate the charge required to cut it.

Action: The law states that the charge equals 1.6 (fixed value of the wood) x 5 cm (thickness of wood) x 30 cm (width of wood) x 5 cm (thickness) \div 25.

- 1- Multiply the value of the wood from the table: 1.6 x 5 (thickness of wood) = 8.
- 2- Then, multiply the product: 8 x 5 (thickness of wood) = 40.
- 3- Multiply the product: 40 x 30 (width of wood) = 1200.
- 4- Then, divide the product: $1200 \div 25$ according to the law = 48 grams of TNT, the weight of the charge required.

Remark: The following substitutions can be made to render the equation:

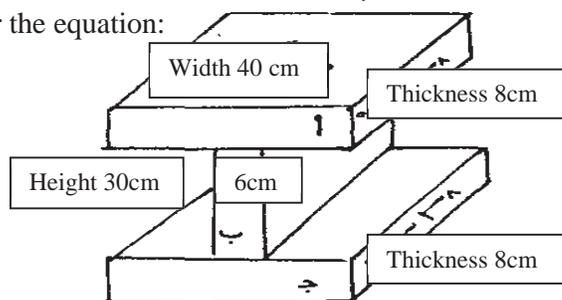
H = charge.

K = fixed value from table.

S = thickness.

ST = area to be cut.

Therefore, the law is: $H = K \times ((S \times ST) = 25)$.



- 4- Another example: Look at the following figure.

It consists of a strong, dry piece of wood in the shape of the letter “H” which is to be cut. How do we calculate the weight of the charge?

Action: First, divide figure into 3 sections, A, B, and C. Find the charge weight for each of A, B, and C. Then, add them together to obtain the total charge weight required to cut this object.

Weight of charge needed for section A:

H = charge.

K = fixed value of wood from table.

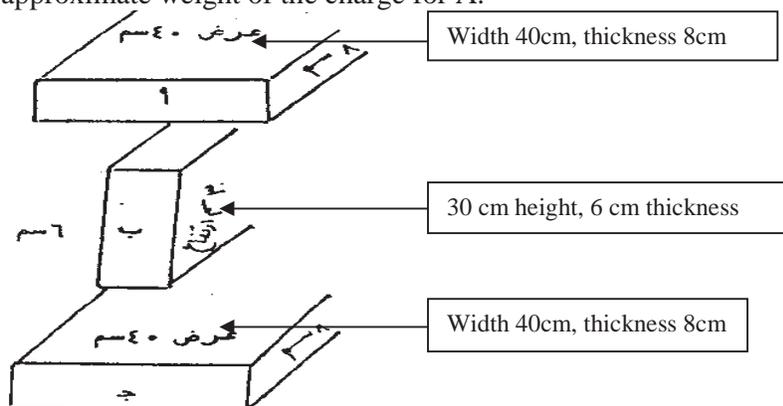
S = thickness.

ST = area to be cut.

AFGP-2002-000031-0545

Therefore, the rule is: $H = K \times ((S \times ST) = 25)$

Substituting, we say: We multiply the fixed value from the table, K, which is 1.6 x the thickness, S, which is 8 = 12.8. Then, we multiply the product: 12.8×8 (thickness) = 102.4. Then, we multiply the product: 102.4×40 (width) = 4096. We divide the product: $4096 \div 25 = 164$ grams = the approximate weight of the charge for A.



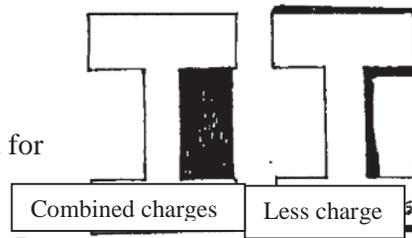
Weight of charge needed for Section B:

- 1- We multiply the fixed value of the wood from the table x thickness.
- 2- Thus, we multiply 1.6 (fixed value of the wood from the table) x 6 (thickness of wood) = 9.6.
- 3- Then, we multiply the product: 9.6×30 (width of wood) = 288.
- 4- Then, we multiply the product: 288×6 (thickness of wood) = 1728.
- 5- Then, we divide the product: $1728 \div 25 = 69.12$ grams, the approximate weight of the charge needed for Section B.

AFGP-2002-000031-0546

Weight of charge needed for Section C:

- 1- Multiply 1.6 (fixed value from table) x 8 = 12.8.
- 2- Multiply the product 12.8 x 8 (thickness) = 102.4.
- 3- Multiply the product 102.4 x 40 (width) = 4096.
- 4- Divide: $4096 \div 25 = 164$, the weight of the charge needed for Section C.



Now, we combine the charge weights needed for Sections A, B, and C:

$164 + 69.12 + 164 = 397.12$ grams, the total weight of the charge required to cut the piece of wood. The shaped charge is placed as shown in the following figure.

Very important remark: If the combined charge is placed as shown in Figure 2, the weight of the charge is doubled, i.e., $397.12 \times 2 = 804.24$ grams (weight of charge).

Rule for Cutting Round or Square Wooden Posts:

As stated above regarding the cutting of wooden surfaces, we must know the type and value of the wood. However, the law for cutting wooden posts differs from the previous law.

Example:

- 1- Given an intermediate type, moist wooden post with a diameter of 17 cm, we must find the weight of the charge required to cut it and the method for cutting it. We obtain the value of the wood from the table appearing above. The value in this case is 1.25.

The rule states:

Charge weight = coefficient of wood type from table x diameter of post cubed $\div 25$.

Thus, $1.25 \times 17 \times 17 \times 17 \div 25$

The charge weight = $96,141.25 \div 25 = 245.65$ grams, the weight of the charge needed to cut the post. Substituting letters for words in the aforesaid, we say:

H = charge.

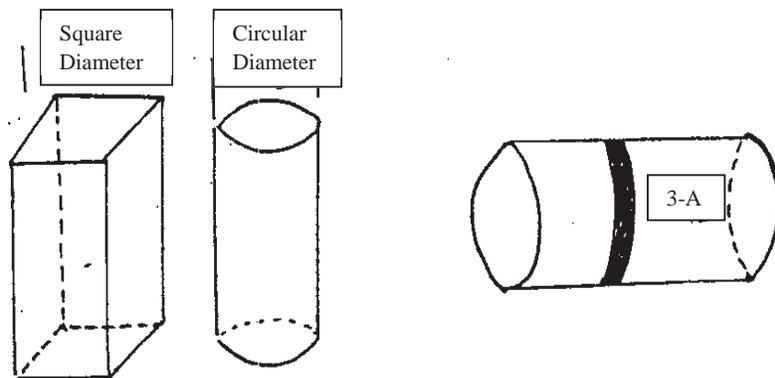
K = value of wood from table.

Q3 = cubic diameter.

Fixed law = 25.

Law for cutting wooden posts:

$H = (K \times Q3) \div 25$.



AFGP-2002-000031-0547

Another Example of the Cutting of Square, Wooden Posts

Given: Square wooden post of the strong, dry type with a diameter of 10 cm.

Find the charge needed to cut the post.

Law: $H = (K \times Q^3) \div 25$.

1. Find the coefficient of the wood from the table. It is 2.
2. Multiply the diameter of the square section by 3: $10 \times 10 \times 10 = 1000$.
3. Multiply the coefficient of the wood: $2 \times 1000 = 2000$.
4. Divide the product: $2000 \div 25 = 80$ grams of TNT, the weight of the charge needed to cut the square post.
5. Then, place the charge around the post and detonate.

Important remark: If we place the charge in a circular manner around a circular or square post, we reduce the charge weight by 2/3. The charge is placed in the shape of a scissors.

Example:

The first charge weighs 245.65. We place it around the post. We multiply: $245.65 \times 2 \div 3$.

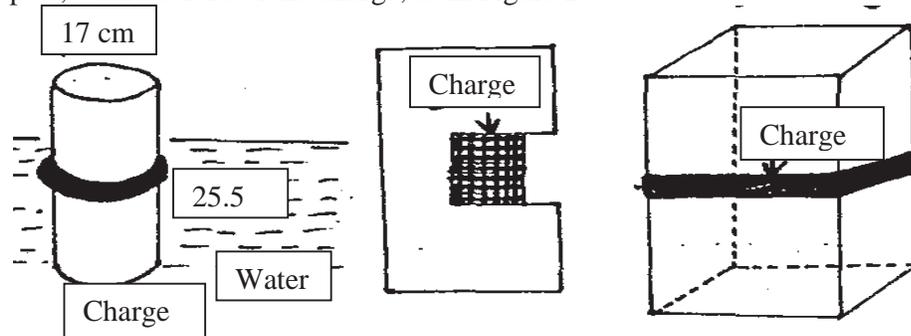
1. Multiply $245.65 \times 2 = 491.30$.
2. Divide the product: $491.30 \div 3 = 163.8$ grams of TNT, the weight of the charge required around the post.

Example – Fixed Charge:

1. Multiply the charge weight $(80 \times 2)/3$.
2. Multiply $80 \times 2 = 160$.
3. Divide the product: $160 \div 3 = 53$ grams approximately, i.e., the weight of the charge needed around the square post.

Important remark: If the wooden post is in water, only $\frac{1}{2}$ of the weight of the charge is required. In this case, we place the charge that is 1.5 x the diameter of the post on the underwater post. In other words, given a wooden post with a diameter of 17 cm, we place a 25.5-cc charge on the underwater post (Figure 1).

If we place the charge inside the post, i.e., we drill two-thirds of the diameter of the post into the post, we need 1/10 of the charge, as in Figure 2.



Example: The post that we wish to cut in the previous example

AFGP-2002-000031-0548

requires a charge weighing 80 grams. Thus, we need only 1/10 of the quantity of charge. In other words, we multiply $80 \times 10 \div 1 =$ only 8 grams of a TNT charge.

Concussion Charges

If we want to cut a wooden post from a distance, we need a very large blast wave. The law for calculating this wave is as follows:

Charge = fixed value from table $\times 30 \times$ diameter of post \times distance between the post and the charge, i.e., $H = 30 K \times Q \times R$. The distance between the post to be cut and the position of charge must be greater than double the diameter of the post.

Example:

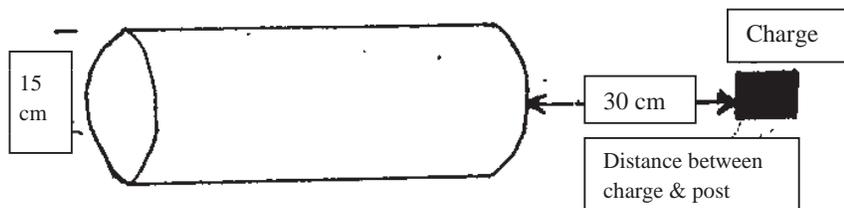
We want to destroy a dry, strong wooden post with a diameter of 15 cm with an impact charge. Find the weight of the charge required and the distance between the post and the charge. The distance between the post and the charge = the diameter (15) $\times 2 = 30$ cm, i.e., 0.3 m.

The rule: here, the calculation is in meters and the charge is in kilograms: 30×1.6 (value of the wood from the table) $\times 1.15$ (diameter) $\times 30$ (distance between the charge and post), which is double the diameter of 15 cm = .15 meter.

Multiply the product: $48 \times .15$ meter = 7.2.

Multiply the product: $7.2 \times 0.30 = 2.16$.

Multiply the product: $2.16 \times 0.3 = .648$ kilograms.

**Rule of uprooting trees:**

If we wish to uproot a tree from the ground, we must use a law that takes into account the diameter of the tree. The rule is as follows: 15 (fixed number) \times diameter of tree (at ground level).

Example: If we want to uproot a tree from the ground, we cannot measure its diameter. However, we can measure its circumference with a string for example. From its circumference, we can derive its diameter. To find the diameter, we use the following rule:

Diameter = circumference $\div 3.14$.

Example:

Given a tree with a circumference of 15.7 cm, find the diameter of the tree.

Diameter = $15.7 \div 3.14 = 5$ cm.

The law for uprooting a tree states:

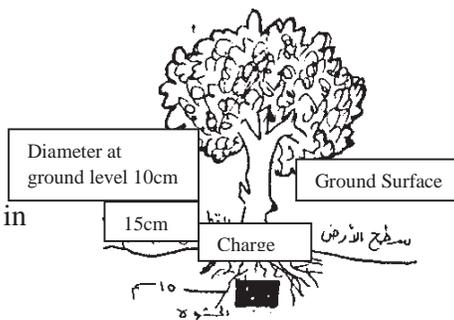
AFGP-2002-000031-0549

Charge weight = $15 \times 5 = 75$ grams of TNT. Therefore, the law of the charge weight = 15 (fixed number) x diameter.

Substitution:

$Q = \text{circumference} \div 3.14$.

If the tree diameter is 10 cm, the charge is placed as shown in the figure, i.e., 15 cm below the surface. $H = 15 \times Q$.



Cutting Metal Sheets

Metal sheets are split in two using the method of shearing with explosives. [Metal sheets with a thickness] under 2 cm and those with a thickness above 2 cm each have their own law:

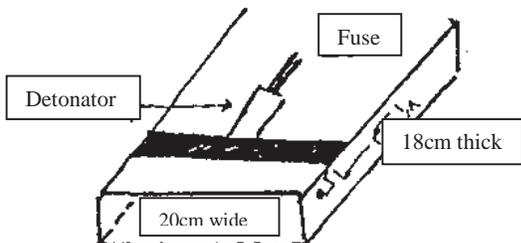
1. The law states: If the sheet is less than 2 cm [in thickness], the charge = 20 x the thickness x the width.

Example: A metal sheet with a width of 20 cm and a thickness of 1.8 cm needs to be cut. Find the charge weight required.

Law: Charge weight = 20 (fixed number) x 1.8 cm (thickness) x 20 cm (width) = 270 grams of TNT.

2. The law states that if the sheets are bigger than 2 cm, the charge weight = 10 (fixed number) x thickness x width.

Example: A metal sheet with a width of 13 cm and a thickness of 3.5cm must be cut. Find the weight of the charge required to cut it.



Rule: Charge weight = 10 (fixed number) x 3.5 (thickness).

Example: Metal sheet with a width of 13 cm and thickness of 3.5 cm. Find the charge weight needed to cut it.

Law: Charge weight = 10 (fixed number) x 3.5 (thickness) x 3.5(thickness) x 13 (width) = 1592.5 grams of TNT.

AFGP-2002-000031-0550

Cutting Hollow Steel Pipes

Example: Water pipes, gas pipes, petroleum pipes, etc.

All hollow pipes consist of metal sheets that have a width and thickness and are folded in a circular, rectangular form. In other words, the width is folded in a circular manner, and this is called the circumference. There are two laws for cutting metal pipes. One is for pipes with a thickness of less than 2 cm, and one is for pipes with a thickness greater than 2 cm.

A. If the pipe thickness is less than 2cm, the charge required equals $20 \times \text{thickness} \times \text{circumference}$.

Example: Find the charge needed to cut a steel pipe with a thickness of 1.6 cm and a circumference of 14 cm.

Solution: 20 (fixed number) $\times 1.6 \times 14 = 448$ grams of TNT, the weight of the charge required.

Then, we place the charge around the pipe, as shown in the next figure.



B. If the pipe thickness is greater than 2 cm, the law is: Charge weight = $10 \times \text{thickness} \times \text{thickness} \times \text{circumference}$.

Example: Find the charge required to cut a water pipe with a thickness of 2.3 cm and a circumference 21 cm.

1. Rule: Weight of charge = 10 (fixed number) $\times \text{thickness} \times \text{thickness} \times \text{circumference}$. The thickness of the pipe exceeds 2 cm.
2. Charge = 10 (fixed number) $\times 2.3$ (pipe thickness) $\times 2.3$ (pipe thickness) $\times 21$ (circumference).
3. Charge = 10 (fixed number) $\times 2.3$ (pipe thickness) = 23.
4. Then, multiply the product: 23×2.3 (pipe thickness) = 52.9.
5. Then, multiply the product: 52.9×21 (circumference) = 111.09 grams of TNT, which is the charge weight needed.

The rule, substituting letters for words is: H (charge) = $10 \times S$ (thickness) $\times S$ (thickness) \times circumference.

Very important remark: If the metal sheets are made of different types of metal, we multiply the product $\times 3$.

AFGP-2002-000031-0551

Shearing Steel Bars

Steel bars are also divided into two groups:

1. Steel bars with a diameter of less than 2 cm.
2. Steel bars with a diameter of more than 2 cm.

The rule states: If the diameter of the bar to be cut is less than 2 cm, the charge

A- Charge = 20 (fixed number) x diameter².

Example:

Find the charge needed to cut a solid steel bar with a diameter of 1.3 cm.

Law: Charge = 20 cm (fixed number) x 1.32 (diameter).

$20 \times 1.3 \times 1.3 = 33.8$ grams of TNT, the weight of the charge needed.

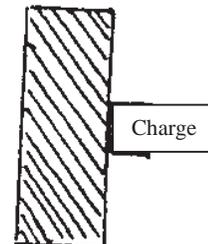
Here, we can substitute [the following equation] for shearing bars less than 2 cm [in diameter]: $H = 20 \times Q$ (diameter)².

Example: Find the weight of the charge needed to cut a solid bar with a diameter of 3.7 cm.

Charge weight = 10 (fixed number) x diameter x diameter x diameter.

Charge weight = 10 (fixed number) x 3.7 x 3.7 x 3.7 = 506.53 grams of TNT.

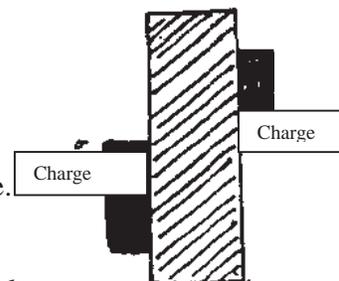
Here, we can substitute as follows: $H = 10 \times Q^3$.

**Shearing of hardened Cables (Steel Cables)**

The laws that apply to the cutting of solid bars also apply to the cutting of steel cables. For cables less than 2 cm in thickness, the law is $H = 20 [x] Q^3$. If the thickness is greater than 2 cm, the rule is $H = 10 [x] Q^3$. However, here, we need two charges to cut each cable. They are positioned as shown in the following figure.

Find the charge needed to cut a cable with a diameter of 5 cm.

Law: Charge = 10 (fixed number) x diameter x diameter x diameter (diameter³) = $5 \times 5 \times 5 = 125$ cm³. Then, we multiply the product: 125×10 (fixed number) = 1250 grams of TNT, the weight of each charge.



We need two charges as shown in the previous figure. In other words, $1250 \times 2 = 2500$ grams of TNT, which is the charge needed to cut the cable.

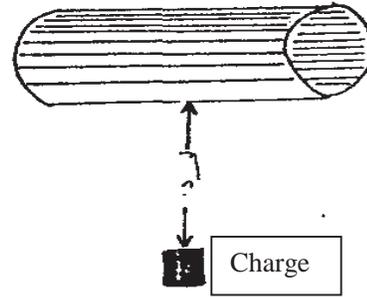
We place the two charges in the shape of a scissors, because the cable is flexible, to produce a recoil effect.

AFGP-2002-000031-0552

Cutting Steel Using a Concussion Charge

Just as we cut wood using a concussion charge, we can also cut steel using a concussion charge. However, the law is different. The law states: Weight of concussion charge for cutting steel = 3500 (fixed value) x thickness x area of cross section x distance of the charge/width of surface.

Example: Find the weight of the charge needed to cut a steel post with a diameter of 10 cm when the charge is placed at a distance of 20 cm from the post.

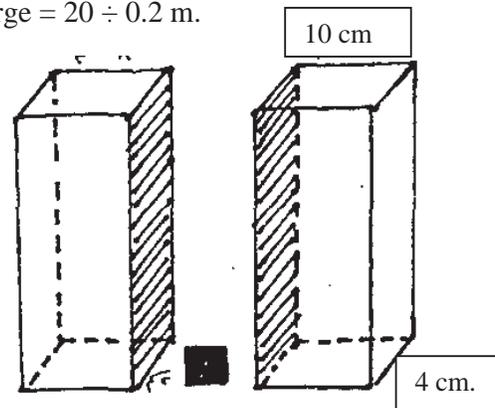


1. Diameter of post = 10 cm, i.e., $10 \text{ cm} \div 100 = 0.1$. The distance of the charge = 20 cm, i.e., $20 \div 100 = 0.2$ m.
2. Weight of charge = 3500 (fixed value) x 0.1 (thickness) x 0.1 (width) x $0.2 \div 0.1$ (width of surface).
3. Product = 14 kg of TNT, the weight of the charge. Here, we can render the equation with letters: Charge = H x 3500(fixed value). Thickness = S, width = T, surface facing the charge = L, distance between the charge and the object = R2.
 $H = 3500 \times S \times T \times R2 \div L$.

Example: Find the charge needed to cut two rectangular iron posts. The first post has a width of 10 cm and a thickness of 4 cm. The second post has a width of 8 cm and a thickness of 2 cm. The charge is placed in the center between the two posts. The distance between each charge and the post is 20 cm. The charge must explode in all directions with the same force. Here, we calculate only for the large post.

As the above figure shows, the side facing the charge is 4 cm (i.e. L), and thickness is 10 cm. Now, we convert centimeters into metric units. The distance of the charge = $20 \div 0.2$ m.

1. Its width: $10 \text{ cm} = 10 \div 100 = 0.1$ meter.
2. Its thickness: $4 \text{ cm} = 4 \div 100 = 0.4$ m.



535

AFGP-2002-000031-0553

According to the rule: Weight of charge = 3500 (fixed value) x width x thickness x distance of charge \div width. = 3500 x 0.1 x 0.4 x 0.22 \div 0.1 = 5.6 kg of TNT, the charge required.

Laws for the Demolition of Buildings

If a wish to demolish any structure, we must know the type of structure (e.g., whether it is it made of block, stone, cement and steel, etc.), because each structure has its own strength. The following is a table of buildings.

Remark:

T = building type coefficient.

Type of building	T
Adobe block	0.75 - 1
Block with cement	1.3
Stone with cement	1.4
Cement	1.5
Reinforced cement	1.8
Reinforced cement without the shearing of bars	5

Table showing charge placement

Name of Charge	Shape of Charge		Value of B		Demolition half-radius
	Without platform	With platform	Without platform	With platform	
External			9	5	R = S
Dovetailed			5	3.5	R = S
Internal			1.3	1.5	R=2/3 if the depth of charge is S +3
Buried			1.7	1.5	R = S

AFGP-2002-000031-0554

[TC: Blank page]

AFGP-2002-000031-0555

[TC: Blank page]

AFGP-2002-000031-0556

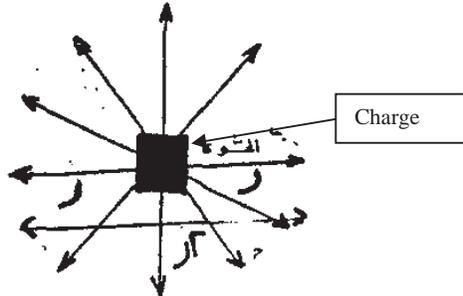
[TC: Blank page]

AFGP-2002-000031-0557

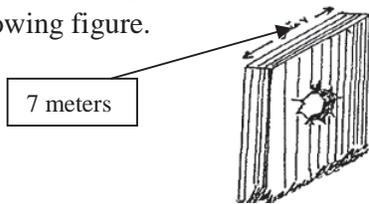
[TC: Blank page]

AFGP-2002-000031-0558

We previously learned that when a charge explodes, it does so in all directions with the same wave force and has limits, as shown in the figure below.



Let us say that the diameter of the blast produced by any charge = 0.2 from the center of the charge. Hence, we know that anything located within the path of the blast wave is subject to damage to the extent of the value of the blast. Therefore, we know to direct the blast waves toward any object to enable the wave to destroy the object. We wish to open an opening in a wall made of adobe blocks with a thickness of 30 cm, penetrating both sides of the wall as shown in the following figure.

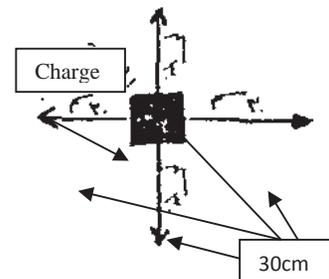


Remark:

In as much as the charge produces a wave in all directions, it will create an opening in the wall that is 30 cm to each side of the charge, i.e., 60 cm in width and 60 cm in length. If we wish to shear the same wall, i.e., bring it down, we must place the charge according to the previous law, and we must also know the quantity of charges that we need to bring the wall down.

Number of charges = length of wall ÷ 0.2 = the length of the wall (7 m as shown in the figure) ÷ 0.2 (thickness of the wall). Therefore: number of charges = $N = 7 \div 0.6 \text{ m} = 11$ charges approximately.

The weight of the charges required to bring down the wall is 11 x the weight of the first charge (0.243 kg) = 2.673 kg.



The length of the wall divided by the expanse of the blast wave equals slightly more than 11. This does not preclude toppling the wall. The wall is toppled by placing regular charges. There is another method for toppling the same wall involving a placement of a linear charge on the width of the wall. The law for this purpose is:

Full charge = type of structure (T) x type of cross section (B) x thickness of wall (R2) x length of wall [L] ÷ 2. In abbreviated form: $H = T \times B \times R2 \times L \div 2$.

AFGP-2002-000031-0559

Table of the Value of K and A Regarding Perforated Charges

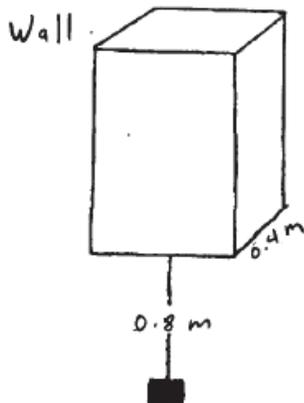
S = thickness of wall to be destroyed in meters.

A = Depth of hole in meters.

S	A	Type of structure			
		Block	Stone	Cement	Reinforced Cement
0.5	0.35	1.2	1.46	1.58	1.70
0.6	0.40	1.18	1.22	1.32	1.40
0.75	0.50	0.86	1	1.08	1.12
0.90	0.60	0.65	0.76	0.81	0.87
1-1.2	0.65-0.80	0.58	0.65	0.70	0.76
1.3-1.5	0.85-0.90	0.50	0.58	0.63	0.68
1.6-1.7	1.05-1.15	0.47	0.54	0.58	0.62
1.8-2	1.2-1.4	0.43	0.52	0.52	0.52

Impact Charges

Impact charges are employed to destroy buildings or installations when time is not available, because these charges are very costly. The law pertaining to these charges is: impact charge = 10 T (type of building found in table) x wall thickness x R² (distance of the charge from the wall), i.e., $H = 10 T \times S \times R^2$.



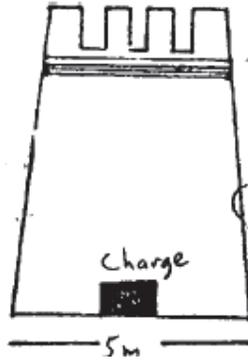
Remark:

Regarding the law pertaining to the destruction of halls and buildings all at once, if the structure is a post, we multiply the product x 1.3; if the structure is a prison, we multiply the product x 3; and if the structure is a command, we multiply the product x 6.

AFGP-2002-000031-0560

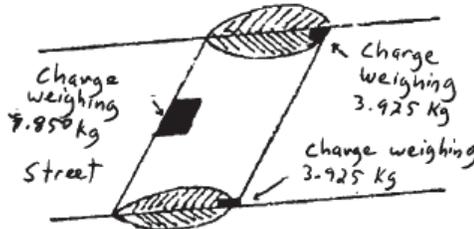
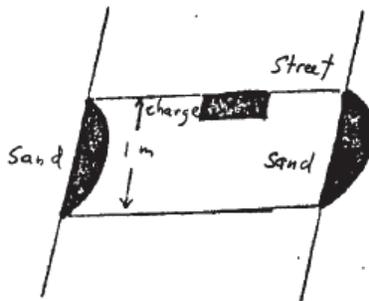
Destruction of Towers

If we wish to destroy a tower, the rule is: weight of charge required to destroy the tower = 5 kg of TNT per meter of the tower floor. The weight of charge to destroy a tower = 1 meter² x 5 kg of TNT.



Destruction of Halls and Buildings

A large hall or building comprising three floors can be destroyed if we use the following law: weight of charge = 0.35 (fixed number) x S² (thickness of wall squared) x size.



Destruction of Crossings

If we wish to destroy a crossing under a street, we must use the following law: Charge = 2 x size of crossing. We affix the charge inside the crossing as shown in the figure below. Then, we close the entrances of the crossing using sand, so that the charge becomes tamped. We then detonate the charge. If we are unable to close the crossing from both sides with sand, we must double the charge size. We place the charge as in the figure. We detonate the three charges simultaneously.

AFGP-2002-000031-0561

Demolition and Cutting Off of Streets

If we wish to cut off a road, we must know whether the road is made of cement, stone, clay, etc. We must obtain a fixed value for each road component. This value is called T, which is found in the table below. The rule states: charge = 35 x T (fixed value from table) x ½ radius of wave³.

Concentrated Charge = Number of charges = $L \div F$

Where L = width of road

F = 0.2, i.e., the diameter of the wave.

Type of soil	Road type coefficient (T)
Recently plowed land	0.3
Agricultural land	0.5
Moist sand	0.6
Sandy clay	0.8
Clay	0.85
Chalky land	0.95
Rugged, stony terrain	1.3
Granite	1.35
Basalt (black stone)	1.45
Cement	1.5

All of the laws which we used previously concern TNT. If we wish to substitute another material, we take the following steps:

Example:

We wish to replace a TNT charge weighing 1200 grams with C3:

1. One unit of C3 = 1.3 of TNT.
2. 1200 grams ÷ 1.3 of TNT

If we wish to use C4, the following steps are observed:

1. One unit of C4 = 1.34 of TNT.
2. 1200 ÷ 1.34 = 900 grams approximately of C4.

AFGP-2002-000031-0562

If we wish to know the diameter of any post, there are two methods:

A. $Q = \text{circumference} \div T$.

B. We can approximate theoretically by dividing by 3 to yield the approximate product.

Example: Find the diameter of a post with a circumference of 120 cm.

Solution: $120 \div 3 = 40$ cm approximately.

AFGP-2002-000031-0563

1. Detonation Chain

Definition: It consists of a number of explosions sequenced to achieve a good result. Explosives differ from each other regarding sensitivity to external effects. Some explosives are very sensitive to external effects such as flames, heat, friction, impact, and static electricity. Others are less sensitive, are not affected, and do not explode under the influence of friction or heat, but rather are ignited by flames and may explode due to striking. Still others are less sensitive to external influences and explode only under the influence of a strong detonation wave directed against them.

Hence, it is necessary to detonate less sensitive explosives by a more sensitive explosives in order to create a blast wave that sets off the less the sensitive explosives. Chemists have been able to gain knowledge of several explosives that are highly sensitive to external influences. These explosives are called igniting explosives. They provide a blast wave when they are exposed to a flame or a shock. This wave affects less sensitive explosives, generating a rapid reaction in their molecules and transforming them into a large quantity of gases that become kinetic energy, which is the purpose of explosives.

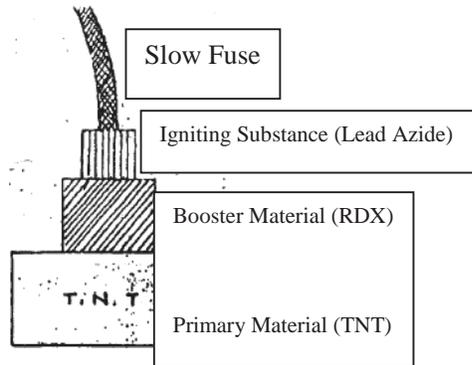
Highly sensitive explosives may not suffice to detonate a less sensitive substance. In this case, we need an explosive that helps the igniting explosive to detonate the less sensitive explosive (basic brisant explosives). The assisting explosive is called a booster explosive. It is less sensitive than the igniting explosives, but it provides a strong blast wave that affects the less sensitive brisant explosives.

Sensitivity means the degree to which an explosive is influenced by external influences or forces, and the degree of such influence or force that is required to set off the explosive. Less sensitive explosives are called basic brisant explosives. Highly sensitive explosives are called igniting explosives. Medium sensitivity explosives are called booster explosives.

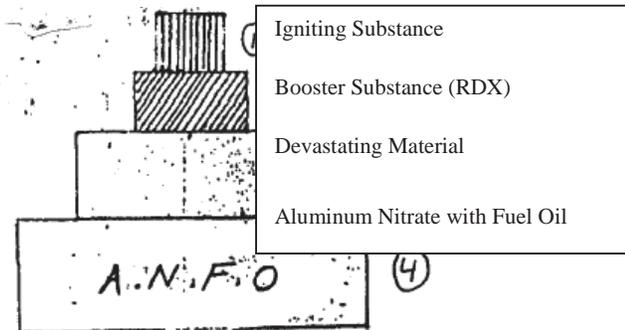
From the preceding, we conclude that, in order to set off any brisant explosive, there has to be a booster substance to set the explosion off. This booster substance must be set off by an igniting explosive, and the igniting explosive must have an external influence, such as flame, heat, or shock, in order to be set off.

AFGP-2002-000031-0564

Any devastating detonation is carried out in steps and chains, each behind the other, until the detonation and occurrence of an explosion (see figure below). This gave rise to the idea of detonators and the fabrication of detonators, which we will explain below, God willing. A detonator consists of an igniting substance and a booster substance that sets off the brisant materials.



There are several explosives characterized by extremely low sensitivity, such as aluminum nitrate (chemical fertilizer comprising at least 33 percent nitrogen). The presence of an igniting explosive and detonator explosive does not suffice to set them off. A brisant explosive is therefore needed. The brisant explosive is set off by a very strong blast wave.



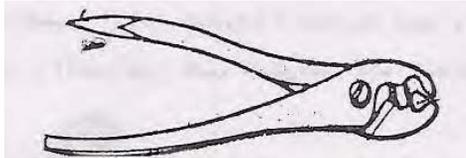
Blasting Tools

Blasting tools are employed to prepare charges, detonators, ignition fuses, and explosives. These tools are electrical, nonelectrical, and joint electrical and nonelectrical. Explosives may be set off by means of an electrical detonator with electrical wires, especially when electrical detonation circuits are used. Explosives may also be set off by a regular detonator with ignition fuses.

AFGP-2002-000031-0565

First: Tools used in non-electrical detonation:

1. Pliers. Pliers are used to cut ignition fuses, attach the ignition fuse to the detonator, and dig out locations for the detonator in explosives.



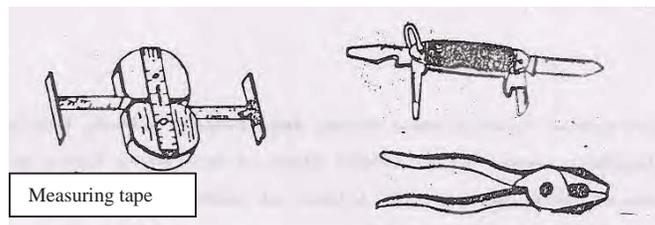
2. A plastic container for carrying detonators. The detonators are placed in special compartments inside the container.



3. A box for carrying explosives, fuses, and igniters exclusively. It is prohibited for detonators to be placed in this box.



4. A knife, pliers, and measuring tape. The knife is used to cut tape and electrical wires. The measuring tape is used for calculating distances and measurements.



4. Explosives:

- A. Blasting machine with 10 primers. It consists of an electrical generator to generate an adequate current (45 volts) to set off 10 electrical primers attached serially if its handle is turned fully.

The blasting machine is operated as follows:

1. Test whether the machine is operating. Push the handle a number of times until it functions easily before attaching the blasting wires.
2. Connect the wires well to their two poles and insert the handle in its place.
3. Insert your left hand inside the strap and pull the machine downward. Then, grasp the handle of the machine with the right hand and turn it forcefully clockwise until you reach the end of its holder.

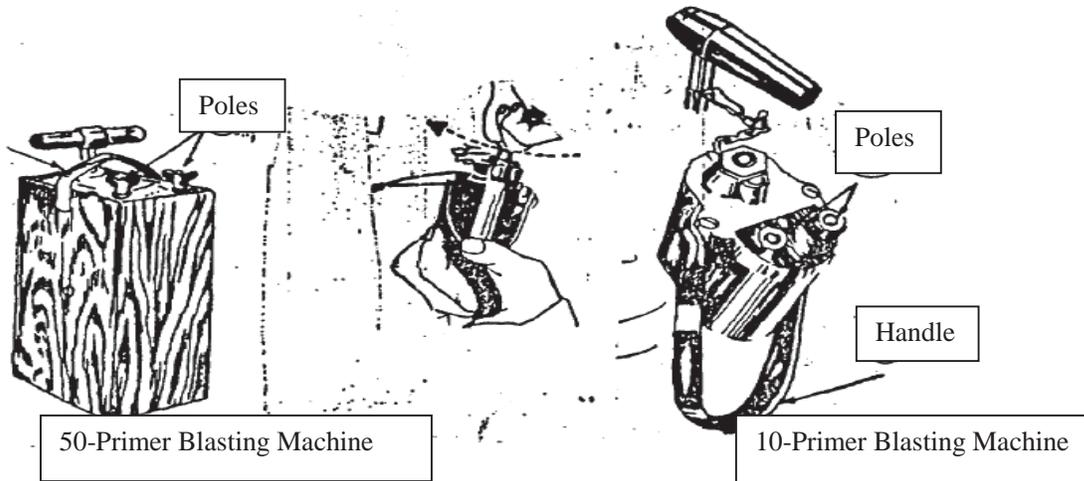
AFGP-2002-000031-0566

B. Blasting machine (50 primers) and its operation:

1. Push up the handle of the machine as far as possible.
2. Push the handle of the machine downward quickly to its maximum ambit.

There is a 100-primer blasting machine that is similar, the only difference being its weight.

Remark: Attach the wires (detonators) consecutively when using the blaster.



The pliers, wire cutter, adhesive tape, and plastic container containing the electrical detonators are all placed in a carrying case, such as a nonelectrical blasting tools carrying case. If you wish to carry batteries, do not place them in the carrying case if it contains electrical detonators.

Detonators**Blasting Caps**

These are employed to detonate high explosives. They are designed to be inserted into holes created especially to accommodate them in most demolition blocks and different shaped charges. They are also designed to detonate certain land mines. Military blasting caps are designed to set off less sensitive explosives, such as TNT, military dynamite, and Tetranol. Civil or commercial explosives can be employed to detonate more sensitive explosives, such as Tetryl and commercial dynamite in emergency situations. When using commercial primers, two primers are needed to detonate military explosives. It is difficult to mount such primers, because the hole designed in the charge does not accommodate them. Both types—i.e., military and

AFGP-2002-000031-0567

commercial—can be easily detonated due to their sensitivity. Therefore, they must be handled with care, protected from vibrations and high temperatures, and must never be compressed. Detonation primers must not be stored with other explosives, nor should they be carried in a vehicle carrying explosives except in compelling circumstances.

There are two types of primers: Electrical and Nonelectrical (regular).

Electrical blast detonators: They are employed when an electrical power source—e.g., a blasting machine or batteries is used. There are two types in service, military and commercial. The primary materials contained in them include: RDX, a booster (lead azide or mercury fulminates), an ignition substance, a wire that links the latter two components, a tungsten wire inserted in the ignition material, and a connecting wire insulated with wax.

Operating method: When the two ends of the wires coming out from the detonator are connected to the battery, the tungsten wire will glow, which ignites the ignition material, and the booster material (e.g., lead azide) is affected, it explodes and sets off the RDX, which leads to the explosion of the charge.

1. Maximum of 2.35 inches.
2. Connecting Assembly
3. Rubber
4. Plate
5. 2060
6. 2050
7. Connecting Wires
8. Linking Group
9. 62 Special (Hard Body Pipe)
10. [TC. Illegible]
11. Aluminum Alloy Bars
12. Basic Charge (RDX)
13. Intermediate Charge (Lead Azide)
14. Intermediate Charge (Lead Azide)
15. 62 Special
16. Rear Bridge
17. Ignition Charge

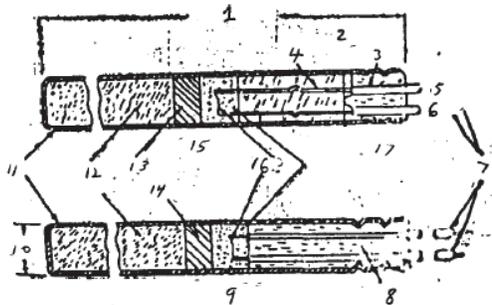


Figure 18: Electrical Blasting Primer

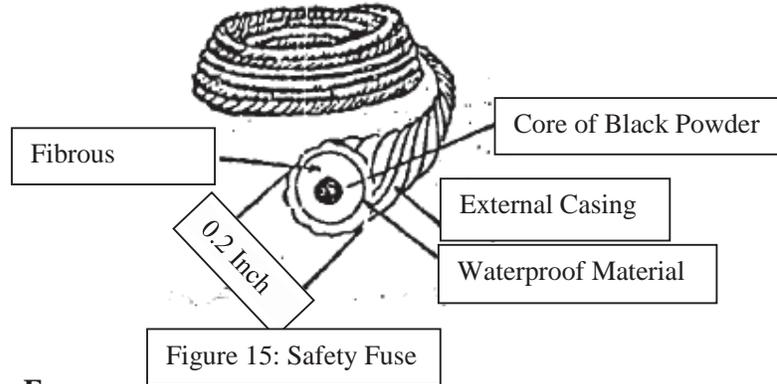
Detonation means and Systems

First: Slow timed fuses. The slow timed fuse is a means of transmitting a match or lighter spark to an electrical detonator or other explosive charge at a specific time to enable the person or persons conducting the detonation to move away to a safe distance before the explosion. There are two types of fuses, the safety fuse and the 700-m timed fuse. Both can be used for this purpose.

1. **Safety fuse:** This is the standard fuse. However, it is limited to use in general demolition. It comprises black powder tightly wrapped in several layers of fibers and waterproof material. It can be a number of colors. The most important color is yellow. The rate of ignition ranging from 30 to

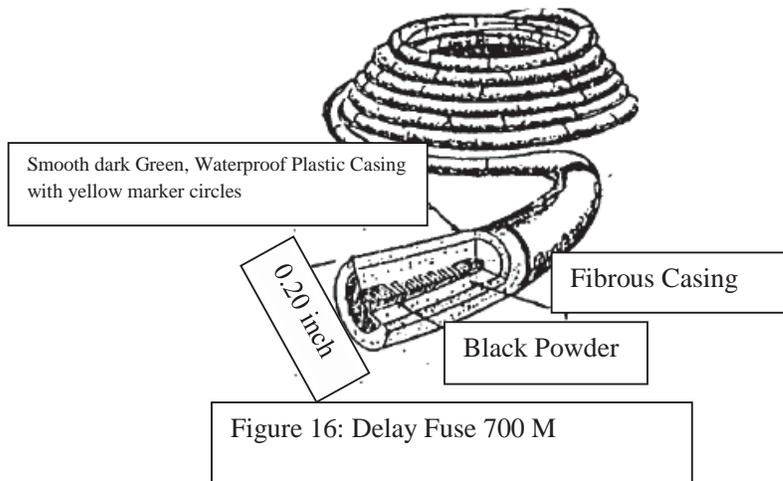
AFGP-2002-000031-0568

45 sec/ft. under different climates and weather conditions (exposure to the elements for more than 12 hours, major temperature changes, and the like). Rapidly combustible fuses should be selected. Therefore, each coil must be tested under water before preparing the charge. In cold polar weather, the outer casing becomes hard and breaks easily.



2. 700 m Timing Fuse:

This fuse is like the previously mentioned safety fuse. Either one of them can be employed in place of the other. The color of this fuse is dark green, and its diameter is 0.2 inches. The outer casing of the fuse is plastic. It is either smooth or wrapped in painted protruding rings one foot or 18 inches apart, and double protruding painted rings five feet or 90 inches apart to facilitate measurement of the desired lengths. The rate of combustion is 40 sec/ft to permit the person conducting the blasting to always move away using the method mentioned above. In cold polar climates, the outer casing of this fuse becomes hard and breaks easily.



3. There is a quick-burning fuse employed to set off regular detonators. It is used in ambushes to detonate from long ranges, and for booby traps. There are two types:

A. First type: It comprises twined threads covered by an insulating casing that contains smooth gunpowder.

AFGP-2002-000031-0569

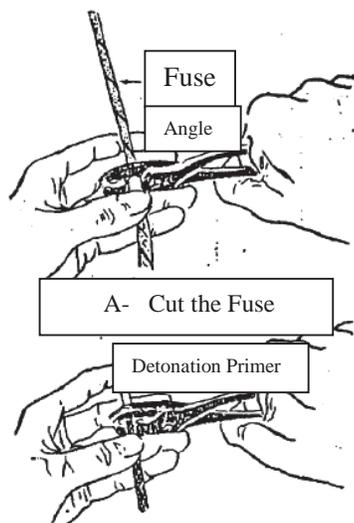
It is in the form of four threads. The rate of combustion is 30 m/sec. It is used in booby-traps and decoys. Same precautions as before mentioned should be taken.

- B. Second type:** It is orange and shaped like a slow fuse. However, the diameter of the tube is greater and the gunpowder grains inside it are like powder. The rate of combustion of this fuse is 60-90 cm/sec. This fuse is employed only in special operations, particularly booby traps. It burns under water.

Method to Ignite Regular, Non-electrical Detonators Using a Slow-burning Fuse

Execution method and mounting of detonator in preparation for demolition:

The non-electrical detonation method consists of an explosive charge that is prepared to explode by means of a non-electrical primer. The preparation materials include a non-electrical (regular) primer, which produces a blast that suffices to set off the explosives surrounding it. It also comprises a section of time fuse, which transmits the spark that sets off the primer. The system is set up as follows:



- A.** Cut off a length of six inches from the end of the timing (ignition) fuse and fire it to ascertain combustion. This is a precaution against moisture, etc. Then, cut off a length of at least three feet to test the burn rate using the (most precise method). The fuse is marked at intervals of one foot. Then its combustion rate is timed separately, and then the rate of combustion is obtained for the entire fuse.
- B.** Cut a length of timed ignition fuse sufficient to permit the person who will fire the charge to reach a designated location at a safe distance at a normal walk speed before the explosion. This cross-section of fuse must be level throughout the ignition fuse.
- C.** Take one primer from the primers box. Inspect it by holding it while keeping the open end pointed downward. Move it gently or strike the carrying hand with the other hand in a reasonable manner to remove any impediment or extraneous matter from the primer. (The primer must not be struck using hard object or against a hard object, nor may

AFGP-2002-000031-0570

- you blow on it or insert an object in it to remove foreign matter).
- D.** Hold the ignition fuse vertically, with the leveled cross section pointing upward. Then place the primer gently on top of it and push it down cautiously until the leveled cross-section makes contact with the primer charge to ensure that it detonates. The fuse should not be inserted forcefully into the primer. If its end is ramified or too large to be inserted easily, twist it between your thumb and other finger to reduce the size to fit the primer.
 - E.** After the primer is implanted in the fuse, hold the fuse between your thumb and third finger of your left hand. Place the index finger over the end of the primer to attach it to the end of the fuse and keep it on the primer using slight pressure.
 - F.** Place the second finger on the external end of the primer to guide the pliers. In this way, you can press on the open end of the primer with the pliers correctly, even in darkness.
 - G.** Use the pliers to press the fuse 1/8-1/4 inch from the open end. If you exert pressure near the packed edge, you might cause it to explode. Orient the primer outward, away from the body during the use of the pliers. Exert pressure again if necessary to improve weather resistance.

Remark:

- 1.** If the primer is to remain for a number of days before being fired, protect the link between it and the ignition fuse with an insulation compound or similar substance (although this compound is standard issue material, it is not considered completely waterproof; therefore, charges submerged under water are set off immediately after they are put in place).
- 2.** The first cut is at an angle of 90 degrees to facilitate the insertion of this end inside the detonator. The other end is at an angle of 45 degrees to facilitate the ignition process.
- 3.** We now place the end of the fuse cut an angle of 45 degrees on the end of the index finger, inside. Then, place the middle finger inside. In other words, the fuse is on the back of the middle finger. Then, place a matchstick on the end of the fuse cut at an angle of 45 degrees. The end of the matchstick is made to rest on the same index finger and is held in place by the thumb. Then, the matchbox is passed over the head of the matchstick. If the fuse does not ignite, this is due to bad attachment. The end of the fuse can be opened slightly until the gunpowder appears. We place another matchstick and ignite.

548-B

AFGP-2002-000031-0571

Pyrotechnic

Types of pyrotechnic:

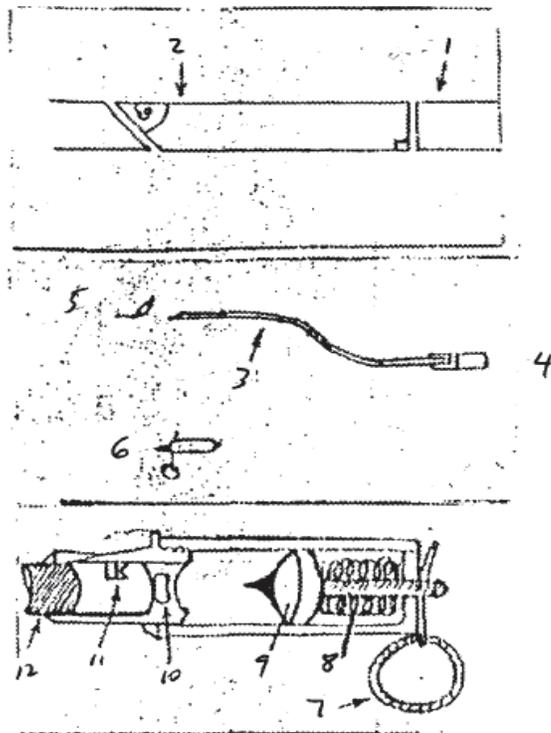
Pyrotechnic and their components:

1. Ignition method activated by being pulled. It comprises of: a pull cord, spring, pin, igniter, fuse holder, and fuse, as shown in the figure below.
2. Fuse.
3. Regular detonator.
4. Explosive charge.

The first fire is mounted in the charge as follows:

*We cut the fuse on the end prepared for placement of the fuse vertically in the detonator. We cut the other side at a 45-degree angle. The cutting is done with a sharp knife on a hard surface in one cutting motion. In other words, it is cut with a special crimper. However, in this case, it is not cut at an angle of 45 degrees. Then, we attach the fuse to the detonator by pressing on it with a special crimper. However, do not hold the detonator from the bottom. Rather, we hold the detonator on the side that is devoid of explosives. We insert the fuse into it on the side of the vertical cross-section, taking care not to press it with the teeth. This action is done away from the face. See the next figure. To ignite the fuse, place a match head on the fuse end that slants at an angle of 45 degrees. Then, place the match clip on the match head and give it a medium pull. It ignites the match, whose head is in the gunpowder of the fuse, igniting the gunpowder.

1. Detonator.
2. Fuse.
3. Fuse.
4. Detonator.
5. Igniter.
6. Igniter.
7. Pull ring.
8. Spring.
9. Pin.
10. Initiator.
11. Fuse holder.
12. Fuse.



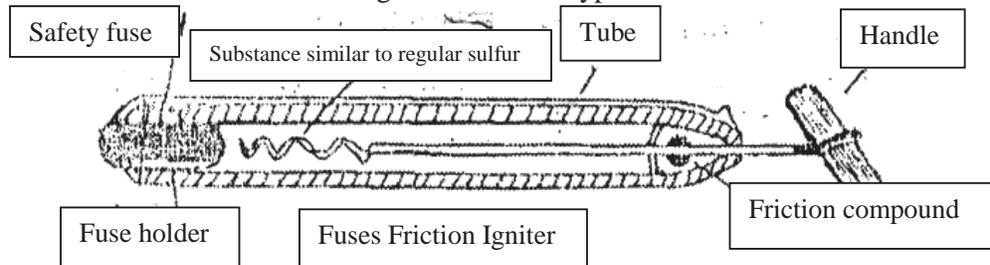
549

AFGP-2002-000031-0572

There are numerous types of igniters, including the following:

* **Friction igniter:**

It operates based on the principle of a regular matchbox, where you have a combustible substance and a friction causing material. When the handle is pulled out, the combustible substance ignites and then it ignites the fuse in the tube. The next figure shows this type of fuse:



Regarding terminal igniters, they include waterproof igniters, on which the fuse portal is protected by pieces of waterproof leather.

Secondly: Detonating cords (CORDTEX):

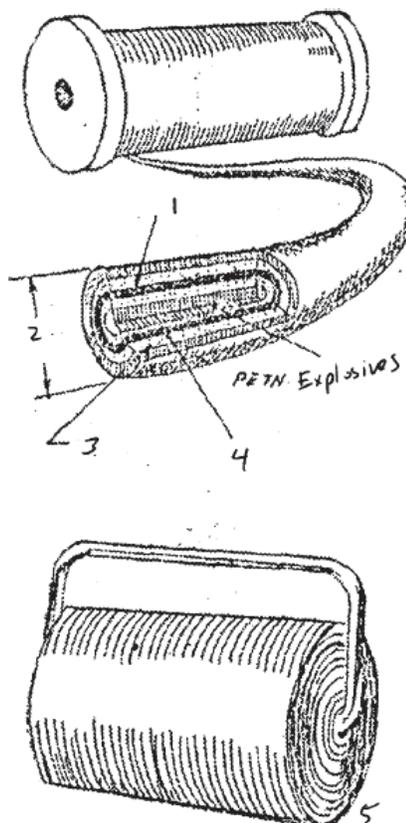
Features: This cord comprises PETN explosives in a fabric tube covered with a layer of asphalt followed by another cloth layer covered by a casing of a compound of wax strips or plastic. This cord conveys the blast wave from one point to another at a minimum speed of 5900 m/sec or 19,400 ft/sec. A cord of this type that is partially submerged can be fired from the dry side. It does not lose its explosive properties when it is exposed to low temperatures. However, the casing becomes solid and breaks when the cord is bent. Therefore, attention must be paid to this aspect when using the cord in very cold weather. The ends of the cord must be insulated with a waterproof compound, so that moisture and water do not affect its contents in underwater charges or charges left in a location for a number of hours before they are fired. Six inches are kept free. The rest of the cord is protected from moisture for 24 hours. When setting up the cord, you must avoid bending or folding it in a way that changes the direction of the blast to avoid a detonation failure.

AFGP-2002-000031-0573

1. Asphalt layer.
2. 0.235 inch.
3. Layer of cellulose-silk.
4. Cotton tube.
5. Reinforced detonation cord encased in a light rubber cover.

The detonating cord is characterized by the following:

1. Its burn rate is 5-7 km/second.
2. It burns slowly and can explode under the effect of weapons rounds.
3. It can be set off by the force of being tugged (15 kg) or by the force of a knock (15 kg).
4. It is set off by means of a detonator or explosive charge.
5. It is employed under water for a period not to exceed 10 hours.
6. It is employed to set off a number of charges simultaneously in exploding belts.
7. It must be protected from mechanical shocks, moisture, and fire to prevent it from being damaged.
8. If it is employed in humid weather, it must be insulated from the external environment using a strip of tape that is applied when the cord is connected to a detonator.
9. It is absolutely prohibited to expose it to strong sunlight for a long time without fear.
10. It is in the form of spools. The length of a spool of cord ranges from 100 to 250 meters.
11. It dispenses with the need to use a large quantity of detonators.
12. It operates by means of a blast wave.



Detonation cord strengthened with a thin rubber coating.

AFGP-2002-000031-0574

These cords are used to set off quick explosives, such as (detonators). We attach the cord around the charge, or we place the charge around the cord, or we insert the cord into holes inside the charge. There are a number of types and colors of detonating cords, including blue, brown, and red. These are military detonating cords. Yellow detonating cords are commercial ones. White is used in coal mines. To distinguish between the red, slow fuse and the red detonating cord, you must look at the substance inside the fuse. If it is black, this is an indication that it is gunpowder, i.e., it is a slow fuse. If it is white, it is an indication that it is an explosive. The following table shows the features of the detonating cord.

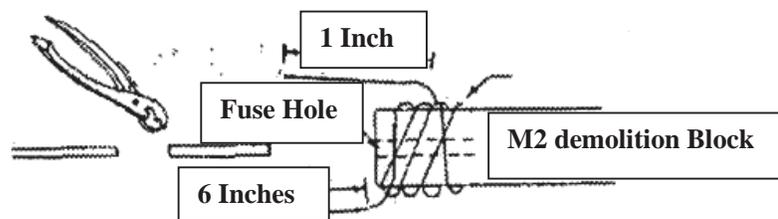
AFGP-2002-000031-0575

Preparation of Nonelectrical Demolition Blocks and Explosives Using a Regular Detonator and a Slow Fuse

First: Preparation of Blocks:

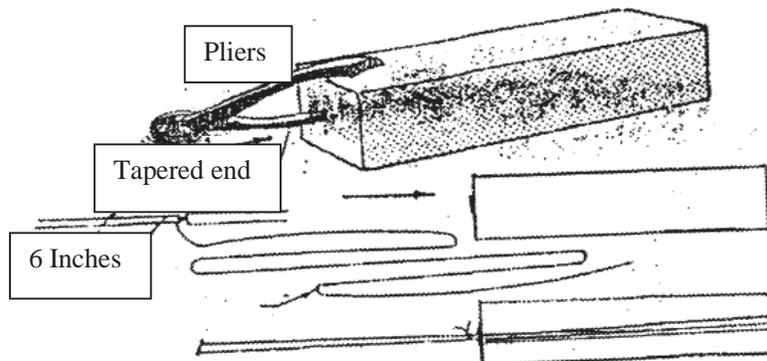
1. Their preparation will be as follows, if the demolition blocks contain toothed holes for the primer:
 1. Wrap a string tightly around the block, leaving a length of string of six inches on each end of the string after coiling the string around the block.
 2. Insert the primer attached to the fuse in the toothed primer hole.
 3. Tie the free end of the string around the time fuse to prevent the primer from separating.

See figure.



2. Without a primer hole:
 1. If there is no primer, hold in the demolition block, drill a hole at the end that suffices to receive the primer. To make the hole, use any instrument or one of the ends of the primer pliers.
 2. Insert the primer mounted on the fuse into the hole. Hold the fuse with the thumb and index finger above the hole, and separate the fuse from the explosives.
 3. Using a string with a length of 40 inches, make a semi-girth knot around the fuse, so that the knot is above the hole that has been made.
 4. Insert the primer again into the hole and wrap the long end of the string around the demolition block at least three times along the length of the long axis of the block. Make each wrap in the direction of the knots, with a half-wrap around the fuse, leaving the knot tight.
 5. Seal the knot around the fuse and above the hole with two semi-girth knots.

Remark: Do not attempt to insert the primer forcefully into a hole that will not accommodate it easily.



553

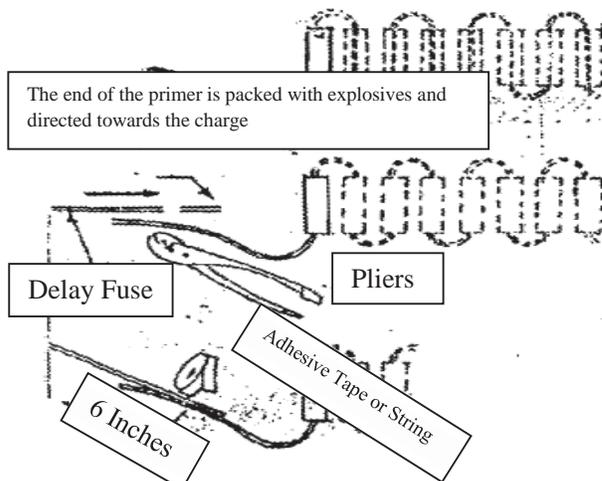
AFGP-2002-000031-0576

Second: Preparation of a Non-electrical Serial Charge:

This block is prepared non-electrically by attaching a nonelectrical primer at a point that is at least six inches from one of the free ends of the super quick detonating fuse, as shown in the figure.

Orient the explosive part of the fuse toward the demolition block.

The firing of the fuse sets off the super quick fuse, which in turns sets off the demolition blocks.

**Third: Preparation of nonelectrical Plastic Explosives:**

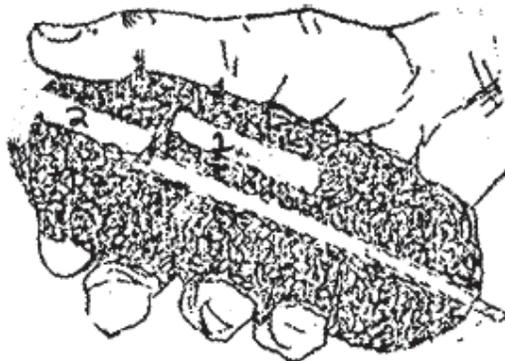
For nonelectrical preparation of plastic explosives that are extracted from their containers, knead them around the nonelectrical primer, which is placed directly in the fuse. The thickness of the explosives must be at least one inch from the end of the exploding part of the detonating primer and ½ inch from the sides of the primer to ensure detonation.

Fourth: Preparation of nonelectrical Dynamite:

Dynamite sticks can be prepared on either their ends or on their sides. Preparation on the end of the dynamite stick is carried out when an entire box is detonated or when the charge placed does not require packing.

A. Method for preparing the end of a dynamite stick:

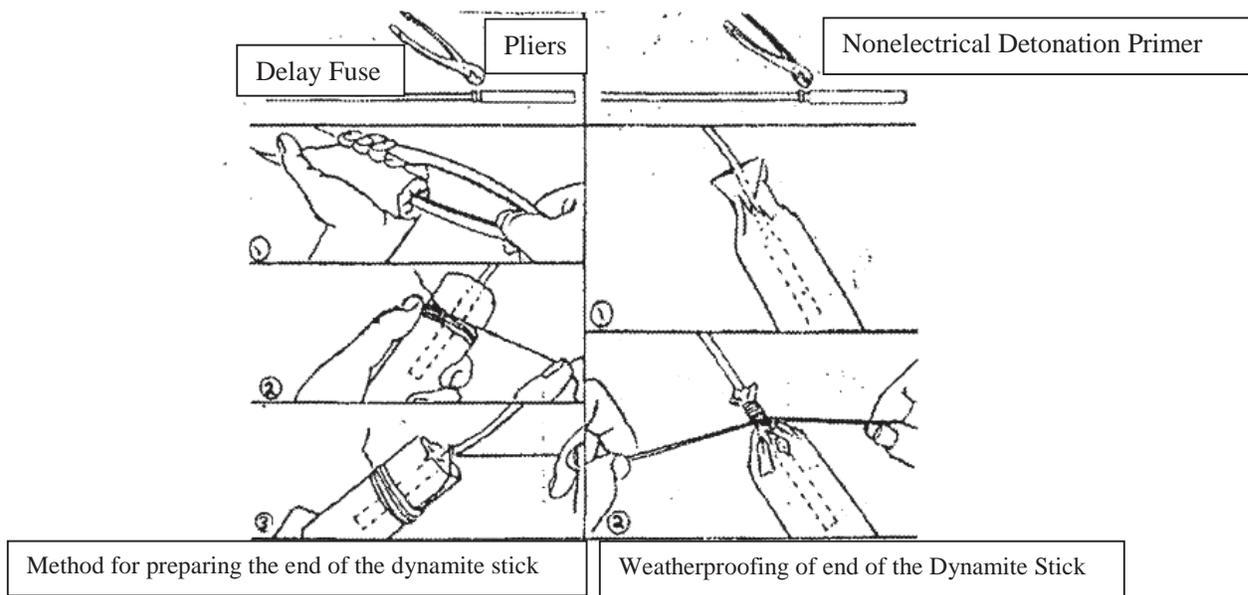
1. Make a hole inside the stick as shown in the figure.
2. Insert the primer mounted on the fuse.
3. Connect the primer and fuse tightly to the stick.



AFGP-2002-000031-0577

B. Method for preparing weather proofing:

1. Open the wrapping paper on the end of the stick.
2. Make a hole in the exposed dynamite.
3. Insert the primer mounted on the fuse.
4. Close the wrapping paper.
5. Securely attach the primer and the fuse using a string or a size of an adhesive tape.
6. Place a quantity of weatherproof compound.

**Fifth: Side Preparation of Dynamite Stick for a charge filled with stabilizer:**

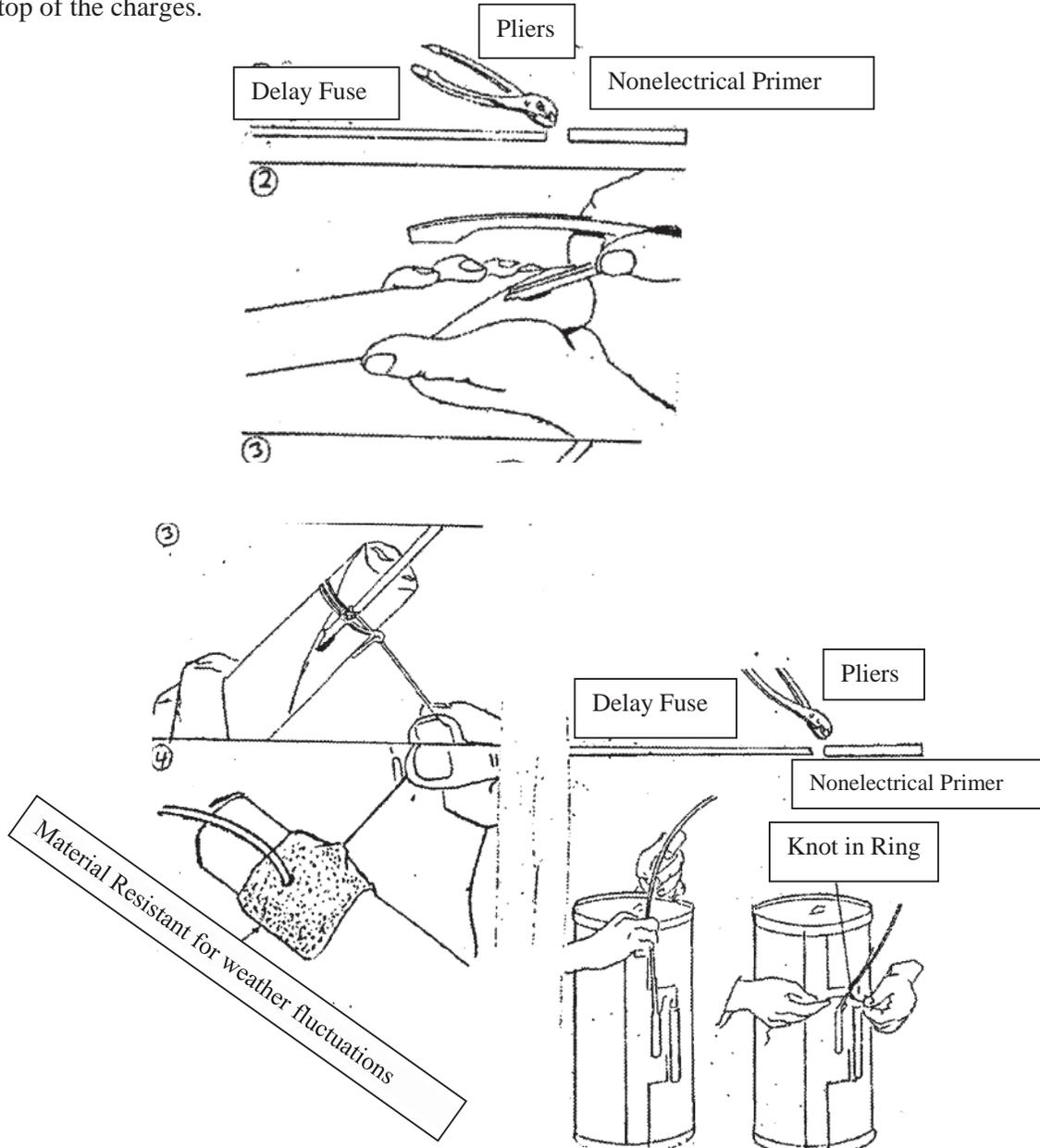
1. Bore a hole in the dynamite stick at a distance of approximately 1.5" from one of its ends.
2. Place the axis of the hole so that the primer, after it is inserted, will be approximately parallel with the side of the stick, and the explosive end of the primer will be in the middle of the length of the stick.
3. Insert the primer attached to the fuse in the aforementioned hole.
4. Wrap string tightly around the fuse. Then, turn the stick at least 2-3 times before tying.
5. Protect this setup by wrapping a string around the stick completely, bypassing the hole by a distance of 1 inch from both sides, to cover it. Cover the string by a waterproof substance.

Sixth: Nonelectrical Preparation of Nitramex and Nitramon Charges:

1. Place a primer mounted on a time fuse in the primer hole located on the side of the casing.
2. Tie a string around the fuse and then around the terminal on the charge casing, above the detonating primer.

AFGP-2002-000031-0578

Remark: To increase the certainty of detonation, it is recommended that a prepared block be placed on top of the charges.

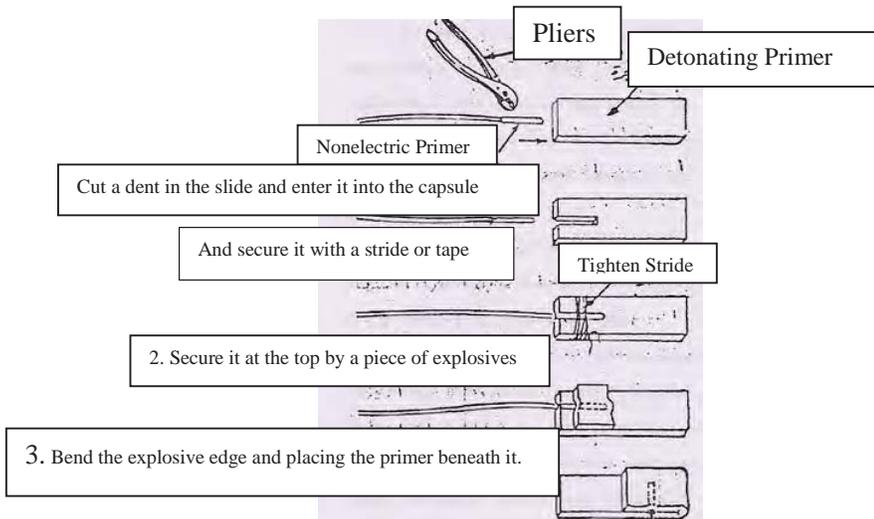


AFGP-2002-000031-0579

Method for Setting off Electrical Detonators

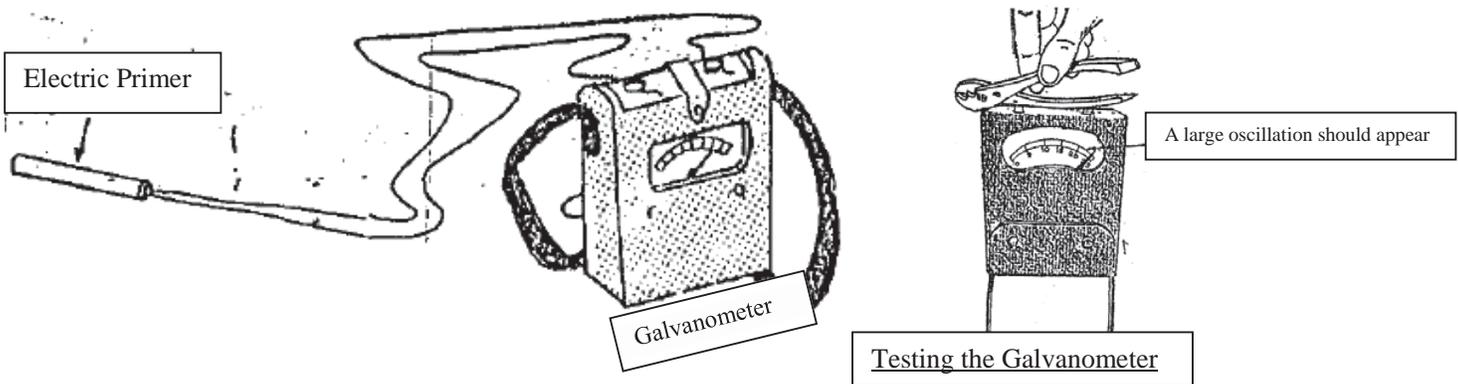
In this method, an electrical current produces a charge to set off a relay, which sets off the charge. The electrical charge moves from a power source through wires to set off the primer. The main components in this method are:

Detonating primer, detonation wire spool, and blasting machine. The procedure is as follows:



Test the primer:

1. Test the galvanometer with pliers or a wire as shown in the figure.



Make one of the primer wires touch one of the two poles of the test device (galvanometer), and make the other wire touch the other pole. If the device displays a reading indicating a passing current, the primer is good. Otherwise, the primer is not good and must be replaced.

Remark: During test, the explosive end of the primer should be pointed away from the body.

3. We now place the electrical detonator in the explosive. After moving away to a safe distance, we conduct the firing via the electrical detonator wires leading to the location of the blast. Attention must be paid to the amount of electricity, because the longer the wire is, the more electricity will be required (Voltage).

AFGP-2002-000031-0580

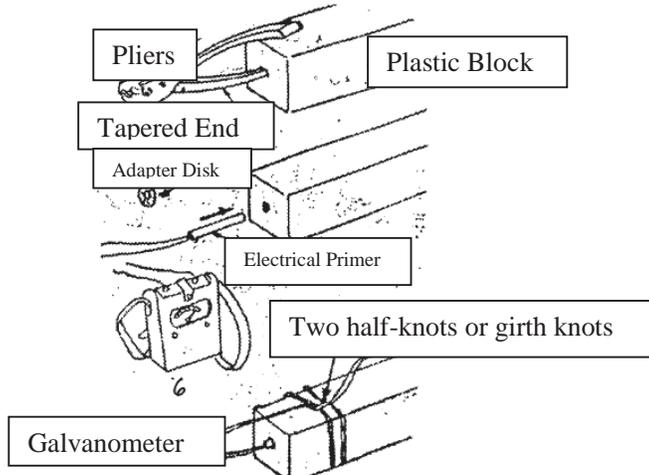
Preparation of Demolition Blocks and Explosives Electrically

First: Electrical preparation of demolition blocks: If there is a toothed hole for the primer in the demolition block, insert the electrical detonation primer inside the hole and tie the primer wires around the block with two half-knots or girth knots. Leave a short length of lax wires between the primer and the knot to prevent the pulling and the separation of the primer.

For blocks that do not have primer holes, the following steps are taken:

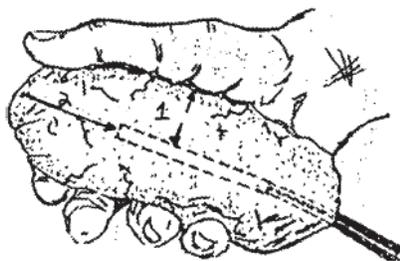
1. Make a hole at the end of the block that accommodates the primer using a sharp tool that cannot cause a spark, such as the tapered handle of the primer pliers.
2. Insert the primer in this hole. Tie the primer wires around the block with two half-knots or girth knots. To prevent the primer from exiting, always leave lax a portion of the primer wires between the primer and the knot.

Remark: Never attempt to insert a detonation primer by force into a small hole.



Second: Electrical Preparation of Plastic Explosives:

- A. Demolition blocks equipped with toothed primer holes or gaps are prepared.
- B. The plastic explosives are taken out of their boxes or wrappings and prepared electrically by kneading them around the electrical primer. The explosives must extend at least one inch beyond the explosive part of the primer and $\frac{1}{2}$ inch from the sides of the primer to ensure demolition.



558

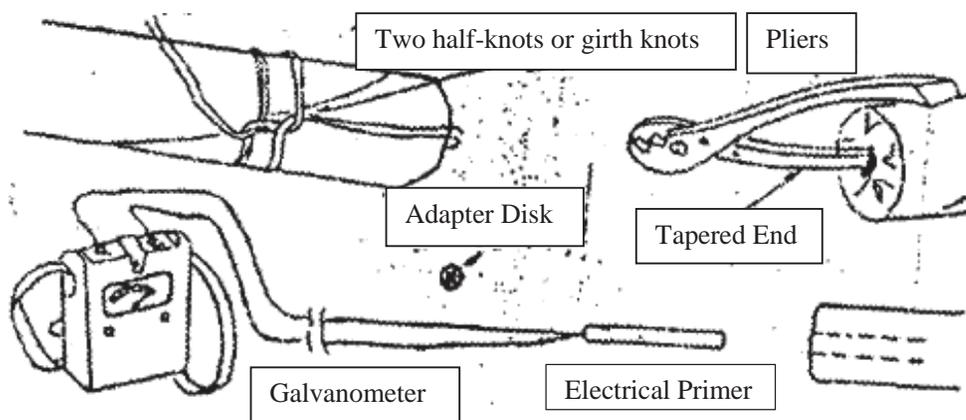
AFGP-2002-000031-0581

Three: Preparation of Dynamite Electrically:

A dynamite stick can be prepared on one of its ends or sides. The end of the stick is prepared when an entire box is destroyed or when the charge that is placed does not require packing.

A. Method for preparing the end of the dynamite stick:

1. Make a hole in the end of the dynamite stick as shown in the figure.
2. Insert the electrical primer into this hole.
3. Tie the primer wires around the stick with two knots (half-knots).

**Four: Electrical Preparation of Nitramex and Nitramon Charges:**

The primer is inserted in the hole that has been prepared in the charge, or the primer wires are tied around the small ring.

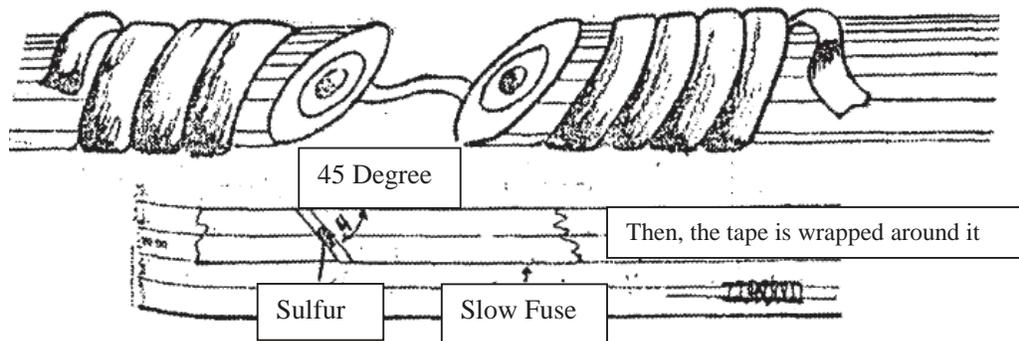
AFGP-2002-000031-0582

Fuse Connections

Slow Fuse Connections:

1. Connection of one slow fuse to another slow fuse: **First Method:**

- A. The ends of the two fuses are cut cleanly.
- B. The two ends are placed on each other so that the Royal Gunpowder in both fuses is in contact. One piece is opposite the other, as shown in the figure.
- C. The two sides are connected with a wire or strong string.



- D. For the best results, cut off a match head and place it between the two fuse pieces before tying them together, so that the match head is in contact with the ends of the two fuses. When the end of the other fuse is ignited and the combustion reaches the knot, it ignites the match head, which ignites the other fuse. This method has its shortcomings. If the two ends are not secured well, one end may slide away from the other, which prevents the transmission of the spark to the second fuse. Also, if moisture seeps into the connection, particularly if a long time lapses from the time the knot is made, the spark may not be transmitted.

Second method:

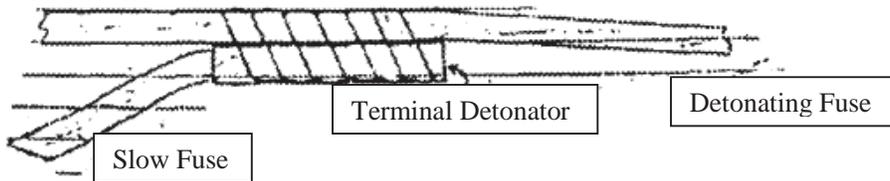
This method involves the use of plastic sticks, as follows:

1. The plastic stick is cut in length.
 2. The ends of the two fuses are cut cleanly.
 3. The two cleanly cut ends of the fuses are placed inside the plastic stick, near each other.
 4. When the end of the fuse is ignited and when the combustion reaches the other end inside the plastic stick, the plastic stick is ignited and it ignites the end of the other fuse, because the plastic burns intensely.
- Among the shortcomings of this method is that it produces intense flame and light. Therefore, this method is not employed at night.

AFGP-2002-000031-0583

2. Connecting a slow fuse to a super quick fuse: The same steps mentioned above are followed.
3. Connecting a slow fuse to a detonator (explosive): This connection is frequently used in demolitions. The requirement is to transform the ignition wave in the slow fuse into a blast wave in the detonator fuse.

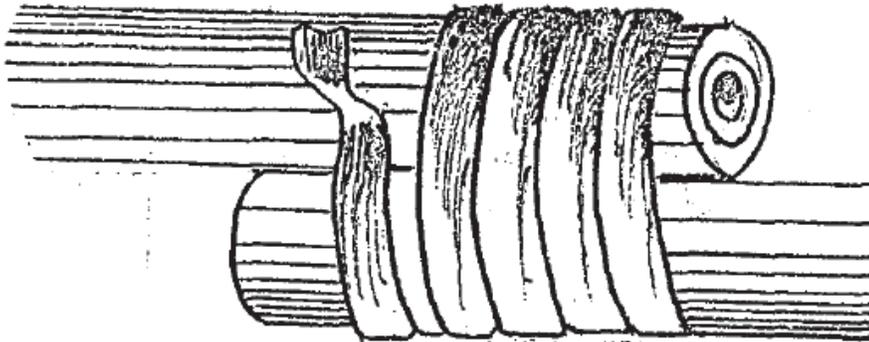
When connecting the slow fuse to a detonator, an intermediary must be used to transmit this wave. This intermediary is the detonator. We attach the two ends of the slow fuse to the detonator. The detonator is attached to the end of the detonating fuse with adhesive tape, string, or a wire wrapped along the length of the detonator, specifically on the end of the detonator charge, as shown in the following figure:



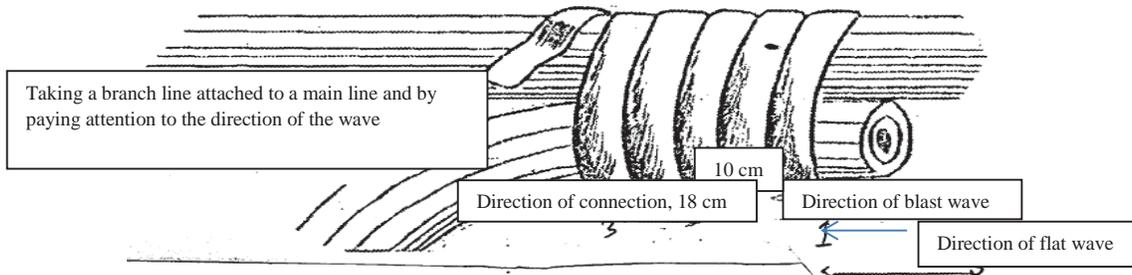
When the slow fuse is ignited, the ignition wave is transmitted to the detonator, which is set off, generating a blast wave that is transmitted to the detonating fuse attached to it.

Detonating Fuse Connections

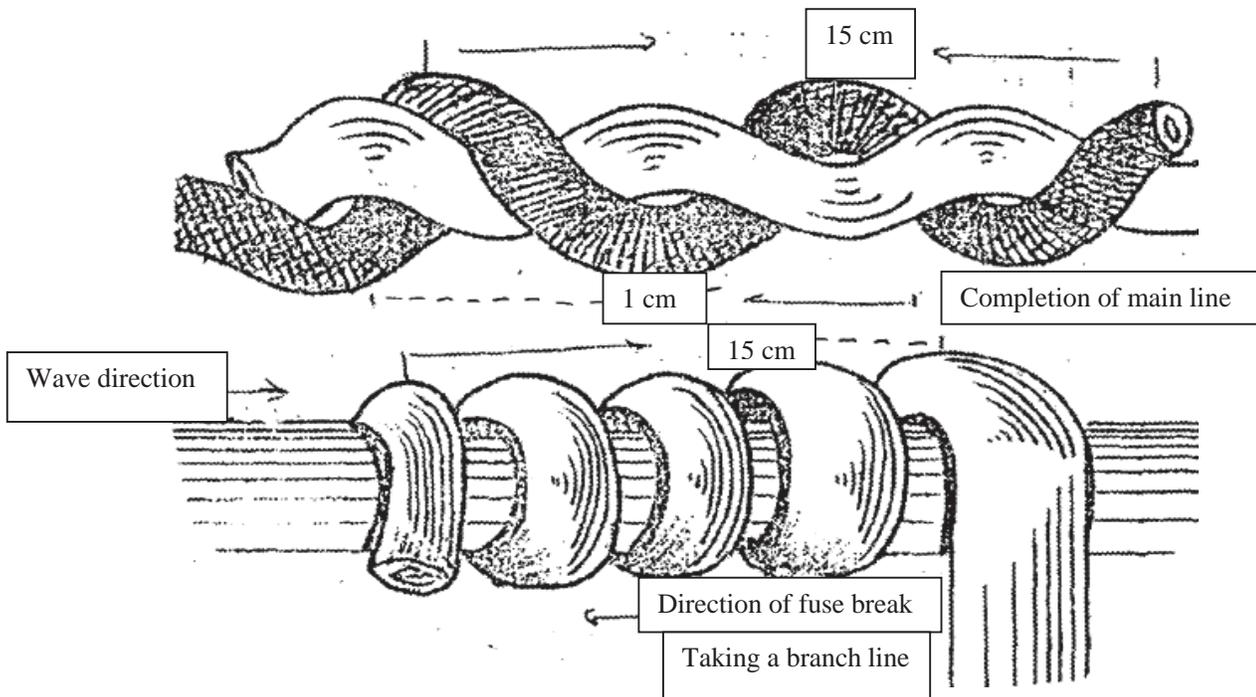
1. One detonating fuse is connected to another by means of contact. The area of contact must be at least 10 centimeters. The two fuses are attached together using adhesive tape or wire that is strongly tightened. A fuse is attached to another to supplement a main line or to create a branch line from the main line, as shown in the sketch below. Attention should be paid to the direction of a blast wave when you attach a branch line. If it is opposite the wave, the branch line will be cut off.



AFGP-2002-000031-0584



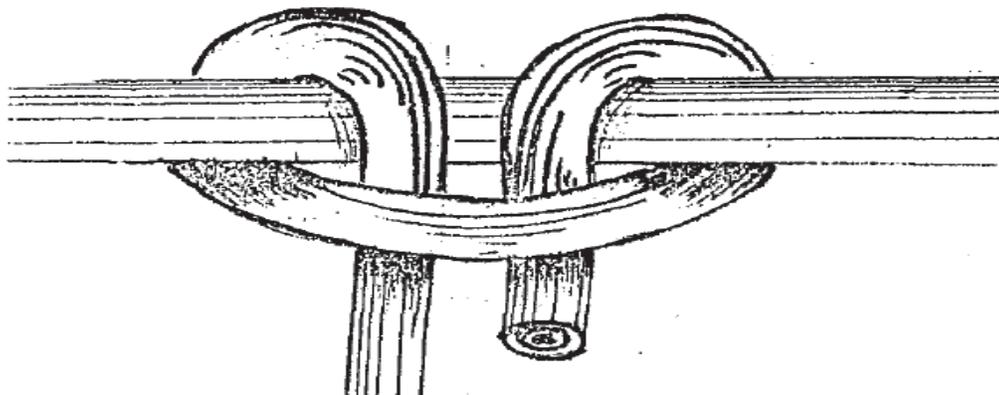
2. One detonating fuse is attached to another detonating fuse to create a branch line from the main line by breaking the cord. Here, we must be attentive to the direction of the blast wave to ensure that the attached connection is not opposite the blast wave. Otherwise, the branch fuse will be cut off. The figure below shows the complementing of a main line.



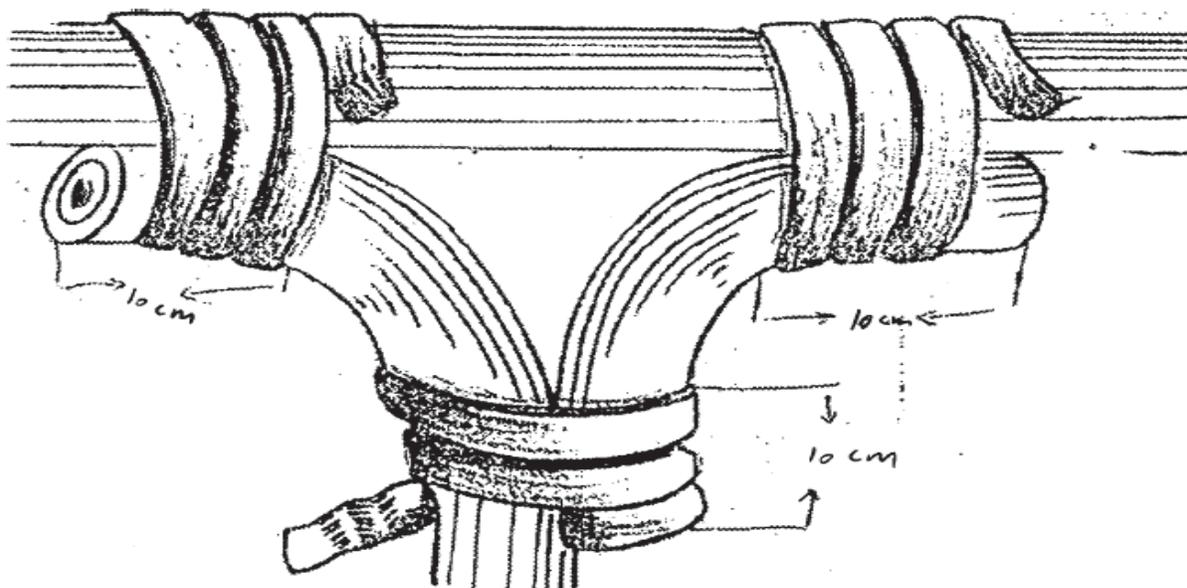
This method is used in cases of hasty action, when time is lacking, because the knot does not remain for long, quickly becoming undone. Another shortcoming is that the detonating fuse hardens under conditions of intense cold and can break if we are negligent.

3. Tree-leaf knot: It is used to create a branch line from the main line when the direction of the wave is unknown.

AFGP-2002-000031-0585

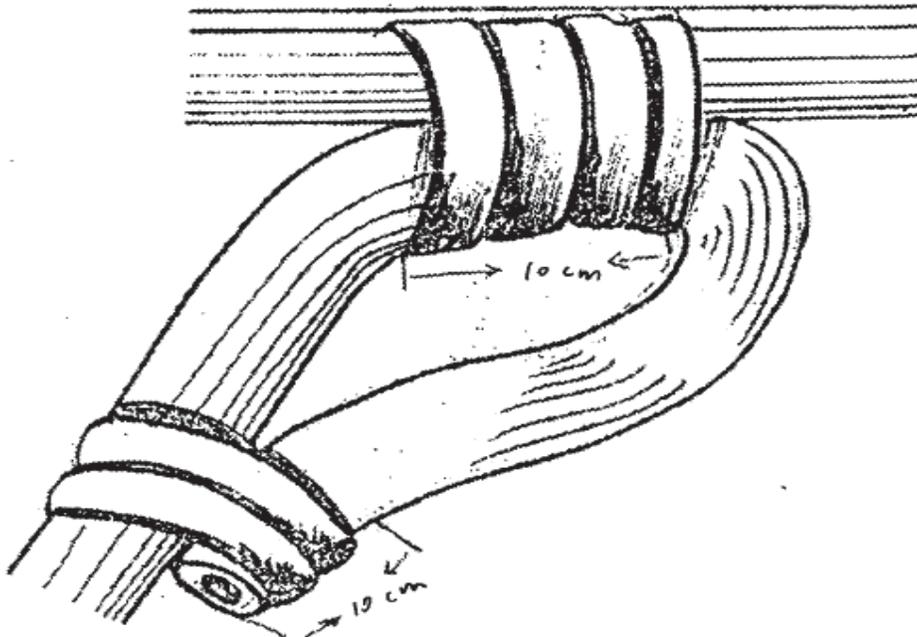


4.Y connection: It is employed to create a branch line from a main line when the direction of the wave is unknown. The area of contact between the parts must be at least 10 cm.

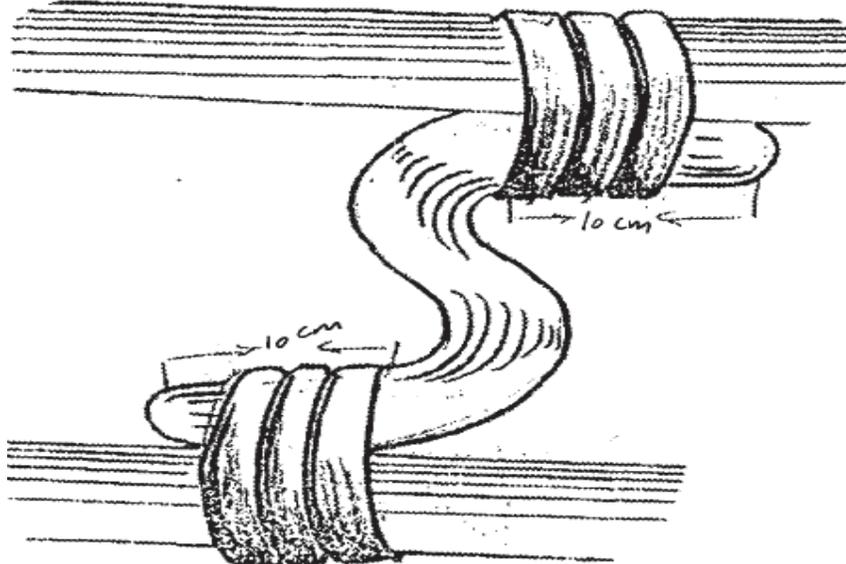


AFGP-2002-000031-0586

5. P Connection: It is also employed to create a branch from a main line when the wave direction is unknown. The area of contact must be at least 10 cm.

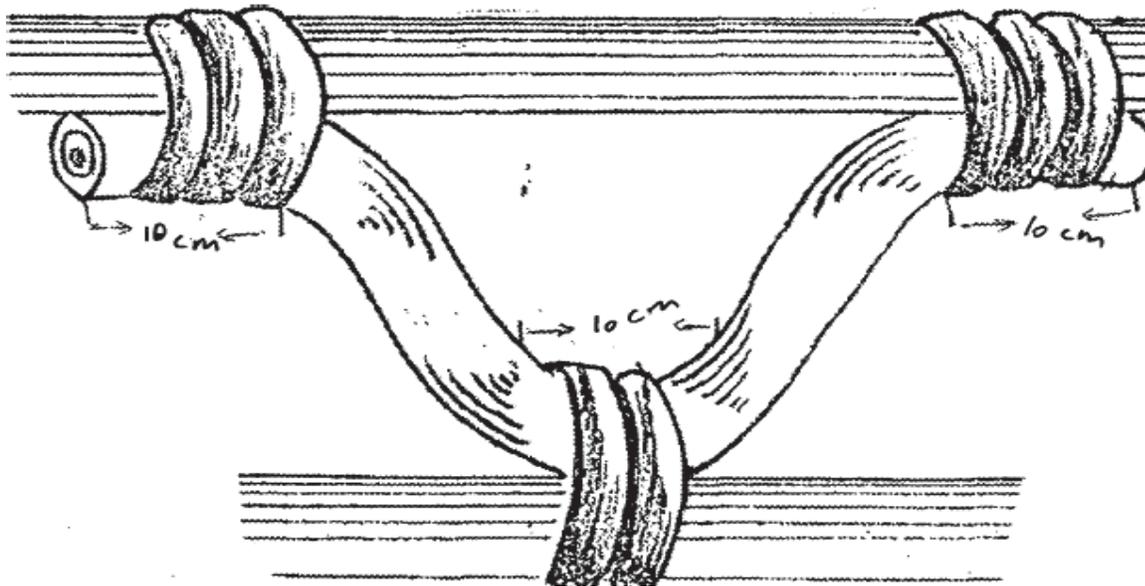


6. S Connection: It is used when the direction of the wave is known to connect one main line to another. A charge can be placed in this connection.



AFGP-2002-000031-0587

7. U Connection: This connection is employed when the direction of the blast is unknown in order to connect one main line with another main line. The contact distance must be at least 10 cm.



Preparation with a Super-quick Detonating Fuse

Materials:

- A. A detonating fuse is one of the most flexible means of detonating charges and the easiest means to set up. It is particularly suited to charges placed underground or underwater, as long as the detonating primer of the set-up remains above ground.
- B. Preparation using a super quick fuse requires a length of fuse and a means of detonation, i.e., either an electrical detonating primer that is set off by an electrical blaster or a non electrical detonating primer that is set off by a time fuse and lighter or ignition match. The detonating primer, whether electrical or nonelectrical, is attached to the super-quick detonating fuse by a piece of string, wire, or adhesive tape. The other end is usually wound around the demolition block. If the explosives must closely adhere to the target, a nonelectrical primer is placed at the end of the super-quick fuse using pliers. Then, the primer is placed in the primer hole located in the demolition block.

Preparation of Demolition Blocks:**1- General method**

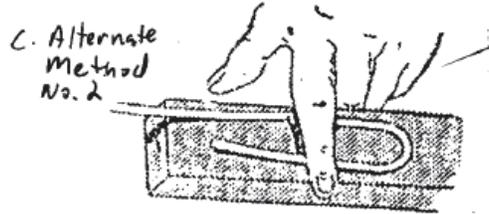
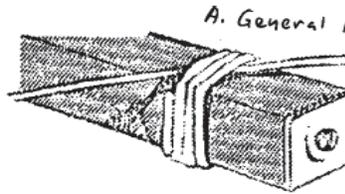
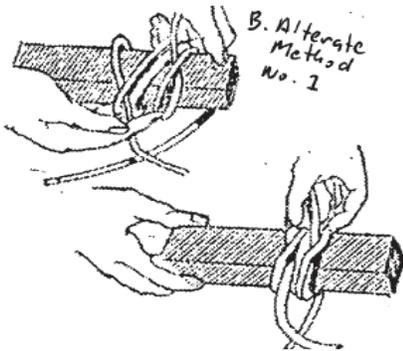
1. Place a piece of the detonating fuse with a length of 4 feet at an angle intersecting the demolition block.
2. Wrap the movable end three times over the section positioned at an angle and around the block itself in a fourth wrap. Insert the moveable end under the three wraps, parallel to the other end. Then, pull it, so that it is tightened securely.

AFGP-2002-000031-0588

3. Connect the electrical or regular detonation system to the fuse.

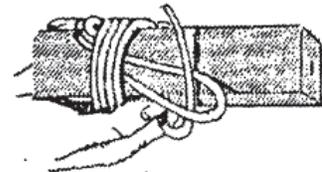
B. Alternate method number 1.

1. Attach the super quick fuse around the block (above the booster charge or set-up if you encounter a knot or stake knot) and make two additional wraps.
2. Connect the electrical or regular detonating system to the fuse.



C. Alternate method number 2.

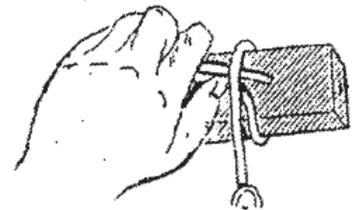
1. Place a ring of detonating fuse over the block.
2. Wrap the fuse 4 times around the block. Finally, pull the moving end through the aforesaid ring.
3. Tighten it until it is tight.
4. Connect the electrical or nonelectrical detonating system.



Remark: The alternate methods are suited to use with short lengths of detonating fuse.

Preparation of Dynamite:

If dynamite is employed in hole charges or trench charges, the dynamite can be prepared by placing a detonating fuse inside it after drilling three or four equidistant holes in the stick. Then, the fuse is inserted in these holes from the front and rear. Then, the fuse is fixed in its place by means of a knot, as shown in this figure.



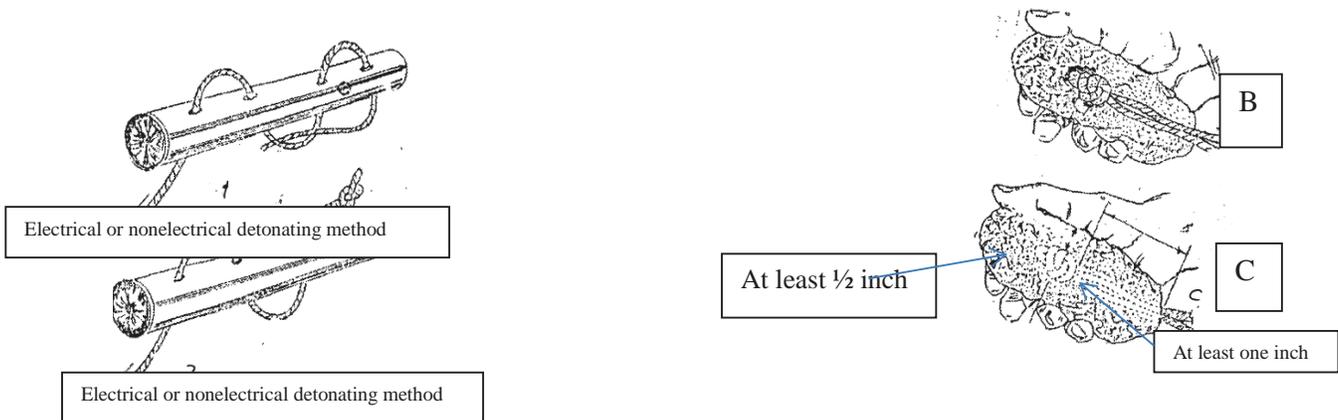
AFGP-2002-000031-0589

Preparation of Plastic Explosives

When C3 and C4 blocks are taken out from their boxes, they are prepared using the following method:

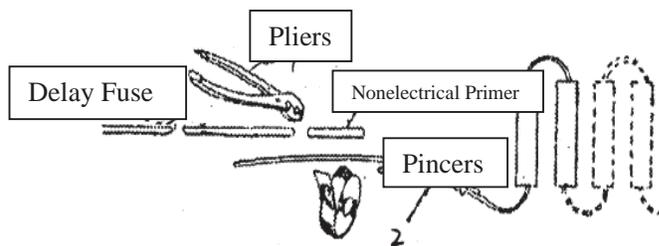
- A. Take a length of 10 inches from one of the ends of the fuse and tie it using a simple knot as shown in Figures B and C below.
- B. Knead the explosives around the knot, leaving at least ½ inch of explosives on the sides of the knot and at least one inch from the ends of the knot.

Remark: Another method is to cut the block lengthwise using a knife and then insert the fuse knot and attach it using adhesive tape or string, as shown in the figure.

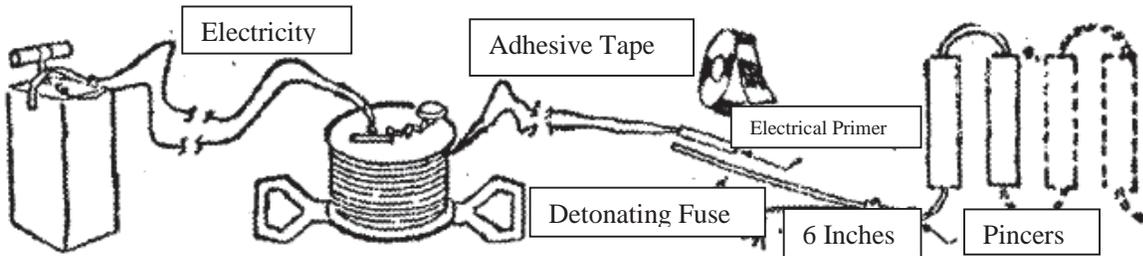


Preparation of M1 Serial Charge

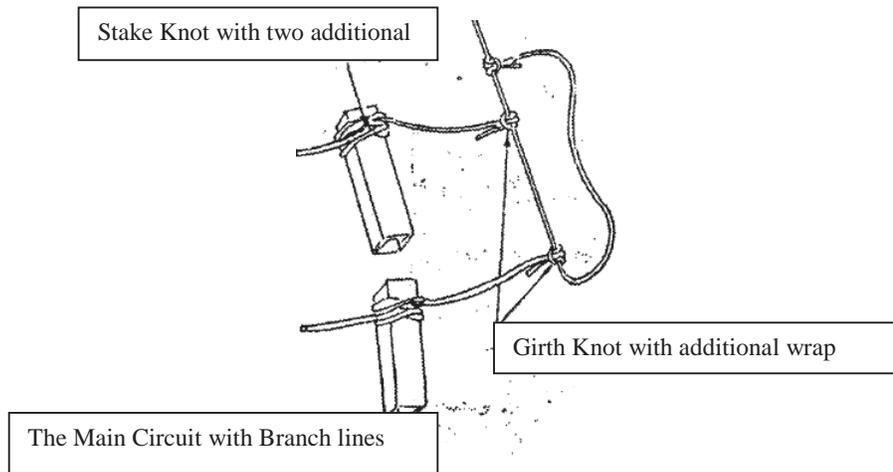
This almost ready-made charge contains a detonating fuse that connects its individual blocks. If a longer length is required, a detonating fuse is attached to a square knot using a special pair of tweezers. This additional length is detonated by means of an electrical primer and means of detonation or by a nonelectrical detonating primer, which is set off by a length of time fuse, lighter, or ignition match.



AFGP-2002-000031-0590



The main circuit brings the main line to the rear in the form of a circle and is connected to itself by means of a girth knot plus one coil. If this circuit is sufficiently long, an unlimited number of charges can be detonated. The main circuit helps make the detonation of the charges more certain because of the movement of the detonation wave from both directions. This causes the detonation of the charges, even if there is a break in one place of the circuit. The branch lines emanating from the main circuit must be at an angle of 90 degrees to the main line. There should be no sharp twists or folds. The angles must be obtuse. Any number of branch lines can be attached to the main circuit. However, connections to the main line should not be made where there is another braid or connection. The intersection of lines should also be avoided. If this cannot be avoided, make sure that points of intersection are separated by at least one foot. Otherwise, some of them will be disrupted, destroying and disabling the detonation system.



There are other types of detonating circuit cords.

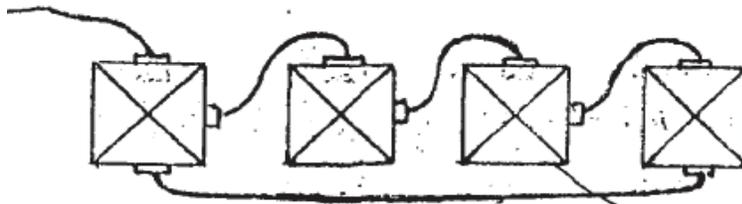
1. Serial detonation circuit:

All of the charges are placed on a single main line without any branches. The detonating cord is laid to the detonation locality, or a regular detonator is placed. A super-quick ignition fuse can be laid,

AFGP-2002-000031-0591

or an electrical detonator can be put in place, and wires extended to the blasting location or any safe distance.

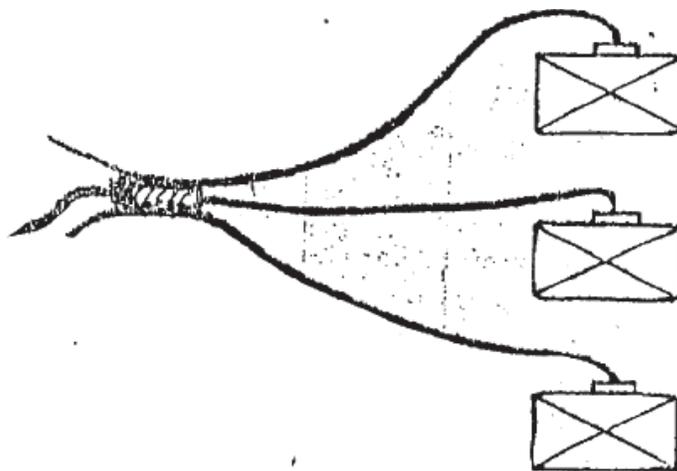
This circuit is laid in a location where the enemy is expected to pass, either on foot or in armored cars. The circuit is well camouflaged.



2. Detonation circuit branching out from a point:

The branches commence from a point and are distributed or spread on the ground according to the area of detonation. A regular or electrical detonator is placed between the branches at the point where they meet. The laying to the blasting location is completed with a super-quick ignition fuse or electrical wires.

Remark: If the number of branches exceeds 6, a stick of dynamite is placed with the detonator. The branches are wrapped around the stick of dynamite to ensure that all of them detonate.

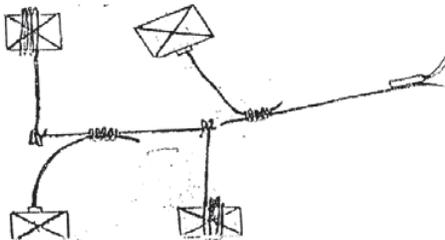


569

AFGP-2002-000031-0592

3. Detonation circuit using the tree branching method:

The main branch is laid, and other lines are made to branch off from it. Attention should be paid to the movement of the blast wave when creating the branches. A detonator is placed on the front of the detonating cord. A super-quick ignition fuse is laid if a regular detonator is used. Electrical wires are laid if an electrical detonator is used. Close attention must be paid to camouflage.

**Treatment of the Failure of a Super-quick Fuse To Detonate****A. When using the nonelectrical primer:**

If a regular primer fails to detonate, delay detonation for 30 minutes at least. Then, cut the main line of the fuse between the detonating primer and the charge. Then, attach another detonating primer to the detonating fuse.

B. When using an electrical primer:

If an exposed electrical primer attached to a detonating fuse does not explode, disconnect the electrical blasting machine and immediately commence an inspection. Inspect the detonation circuit for any breaks or contact. Replace the blasting machine with another blasting machine.

C. Failure of a detonating fuse:

If a fuse does not detonate after an exposed primer detonates, be it electrical or nonelectrical, begin immediately to inspect. Connect a new detonating primer to the fuse.

D. Failure of a branch line:

If the main line detonates, but one of the branch lines does not detonate, place a detonating primer on the branch line. Then, detonate it separately.

E. Failure of the charge:

If a detonating fuse line leading to a charge detonates, but the charge does not explode, take the following steps:

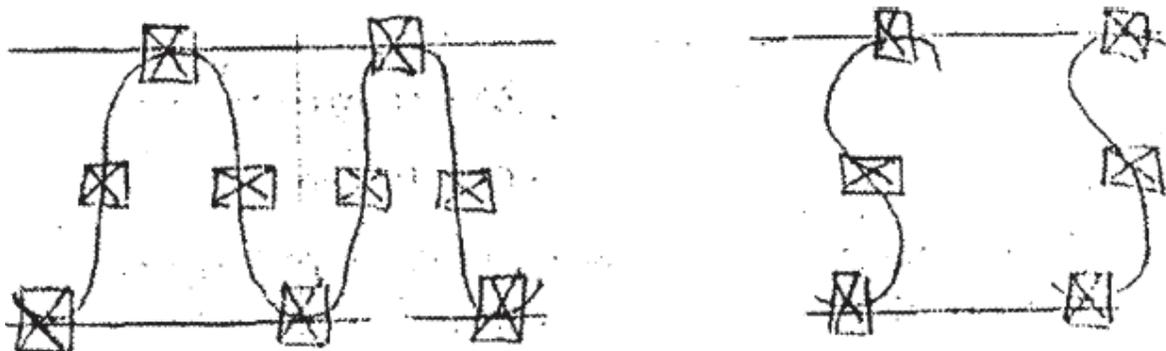
- If the charge is above the ground, delay inspections until you are sure that the charge has not burned.
- If the charge is below the ground, wait 30 minutes. Then, insert a new device.

AFGP-2002-000031-0593

- If the charge remains intact but has been spread out or scattered, reassemble the charge and put in place and prepare a new charge if possible. Try your best to collect all explosives that are scattered as a result of the failure, especially during training exercises.

4. Box detonation circuit:

This circuit is one of the best types of detonation circuits using a detonating fuse.



Remark: When creating a detonation circuit using a detonating fuse:

1. Inspect the fuse well before using it to ascertain its operability.
2. Inspect the electrical detonator used in the detonation process. Ascertain its operability. This is done using a galvanometer. The amperage must not exceed 0.5, so that the detonator is not set off.
3. Securely attach branch lines to the detonating fuse using tape. Insulate the ends of the fuse so that they are not affected by moisture and heat. This can be done using adhesive tape or wax.
4. Attach the charges well to the detonating fuse. Try to insulate them with insulation material if the circuit will remain on the ground for a long time.
5. The circuit is laid in the ground by digging grooves in the shape of the circuit. Then, the circuit is put in place according to the grooves. The grooves are then well camouflaged. If the circuit is laid in an area where infantry pass, the depth of the fuse and charges should preferably 20-25 cm underground. If armored cars and cars use the road, the fuse and charges are placed 30-40 cm underground.
6. Camouflage thoroughly but not excessively. Do not leave anything that would indicate the presence of pits or the laying of the circuit in the area, such as digging tools, adhesive tape, wire cutters, pliers, explosive containers, etc.

AFGP-2002-000031-0594

Electrical Detonation Circuits

Electrical detonation circuits are circuits in which a number of explosive charges are detonated simultaneously by means of an electrical current (by employing electrical detonators).

Requirements of Electrical Detonation Circuits:

First: Conductor Wires.

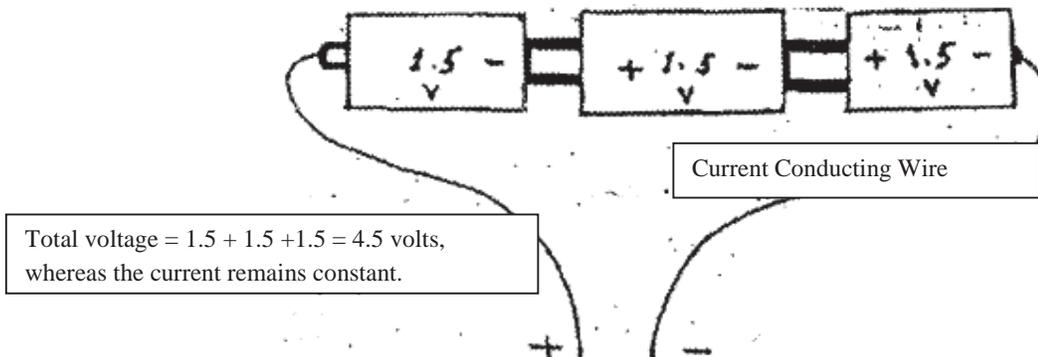
These wires are employed to connect one detonator to another in the electrical circuit, and to connect the circuit (detonators) to the electrical source. There are three types of transmission wires:

1. Military sappers wire. It comes in one or two strands. The cross section of a strand is (75) centimeters. The resistance of every 100 meters of wire length of a single strand is 2.5 ohms.
2. Military telephone cables: The outer diameter of such a cable is four millimeters. The resistance of every 100 meters of this cable is 7.5 ohms.
3. Regular wires: Their resistance varies depending on the diameter. Therefore, they must be measured with a (Voltmeter) or (Ohmmeter).

Second: Power Sources.

Are used to execute detonation and which includes the following types:

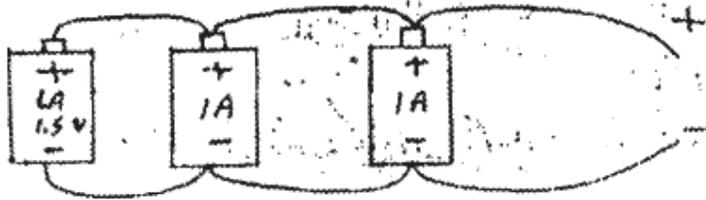
1. Batteries: Batteries generate a direct current (DC) and have a potential voltage ranging from 1.5 to 24 volts. Batteries can be combined using two methods:
 - A. **Serial connection:** In this case, the voltage is combined, and the amperage remains fixed. The method is as follows: The negative is connected to the positive. A current conducting wire is taken from each pole as shown in the sketch, yielding a volt value equaling the total.



- B. **Parallel connection:** In this case, the amperage is combined, whereas the voltage remains constant. The method is to connect to the negative with the negative and the positive with the positive. A wire is taken from both poles as shown in the sketch.

AFGP-2002-000031-0595

The total amperage in the sketch below is $1 + 1 + 1 + 3$ amps, whereas the voltage is fixed, i.e., it equals 1.5 volts.



C. Mixed (parallel and serial). This method is employed when the circuit requires more voltage and amperage. We combine the volts serially and the amps in a parallel manner.

Total volts = $1.5 + 1.5 + 1.5 = 4.5$ volts.

Total amps = $1 + 1 + 1 = 3$ amps.

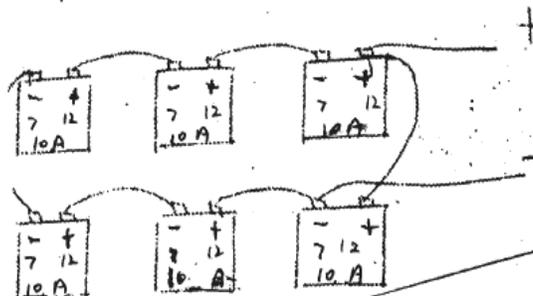
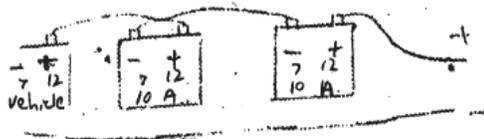
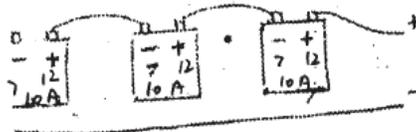
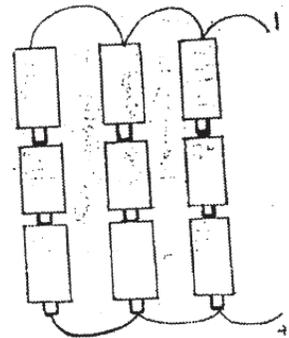
D. (1) - Combination of car batteries serially.

Total = $12 + 12 + 12 = 36$, while the amperage = only 10 amps

(2) - Combination of car batteries in a parallel way:

Total = $10 + 10 = 20$ amps, while the fixed voltage = 12 volts.

(3) - Combination of car batteries - mixed.



AFGP-2002-000031-0596

2. **Household Power:** It consists of alternating current with a potential difference of (110–220) and amperage (of 5-15 amps).
3. **Military blasters:** They provide approximately 1750 volts and (5-7) amps.
4. **Camera flash:** It provides approximately 1500 volts and (5-7) amps.

Third: Electrical Detonators:

An electrical detonator has a resistance of 2.5 ohms with a (2-7 M) length wire exiting from it. It can be used under water for a period of only ten days. The electrical detonator requires only (0.5) amps in order to set it off if the current source is batteries, and one ampere if the current is alternating, i.e., household.

Types of Detonation Circuits

1. Separate, Serial Circuit:

In this circuit, all the electrical detonators: are attached by a single line (serially). We must ascertain the voltage and amperage required in order to detonate the circuit. To calculate this, we must know the resistance of the entire circuit. It is known that a circuit contains main wires and wires that connect between the detonators. The resistance of the detonators themselves is also known. To ascertain this, we use the following law:

$$MK = M1 + M2 + NM3$$

Wherein:

MK = total resistance of the circuit.

M1 = resistance of the main conducting wires with the source at the beginning of the circuit.

M2 = the resistance of the wires connecting between the detonators.

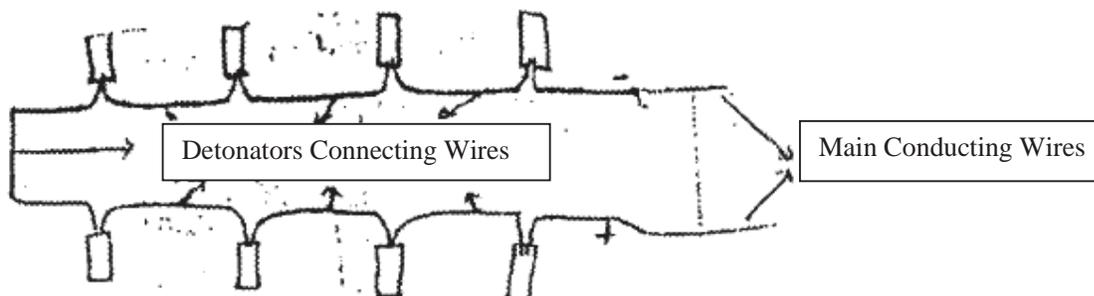
N = number of detonators.

M3 = the resistance of one detonator.

To ascertain the voltage, we use the following general equation:

Potential difference (f) = M (total resistance of circuit) x S (total strength of circuit).

1. Main conducting wires.
2. Wires connecting between the detonators.



574

AFGP-2002-000031-0597

In as much as the derivation of the resistance is known from the previous law, it remains for us to ascertain the current strength (amps).

If the circuit is a separate, serial circuit, we always need one amp of DC and 1.5 amps of AC, regardless of the number of detonators, because the amps are fixed in the case of serial connection. For example, given a serial circuit in which the length of the main wires is 200 meters from end to end and which contains ten detonators, where the length of the wires connecting between the detonators is 20 meters, and the type of wire employed is military sappers wire, find the voltage and amperage required to set off this circuit with direct current.

Solution:

We first calculate the amount of resistance according to the law ($MK = M1 + M2 + NM3$).

$M1 = (200 \div 100) \times 2.5 = 5$ ohms, because the resistance of 100 of this type of wire is 2.5 ohms.

$M2 = (20 \div 100) \times 2.5 = 0.5$ ohms.

$NM3 = 10 \times 2.5 = 25$ ohms, the resistance of the detonators.

$MK = 5 + 0.5 + 25 = 30.5$ ohms.

$S = 1$ ampere, the direct current which we require.

Potential difference = $30.5 \times 1 = 30.5$ volts, the voltage required to set of this circuit.

2. Dual Serial Circuit:

Where, the total resistance of the circuit is $M1 + M2 + (NM3 \div 2)$.

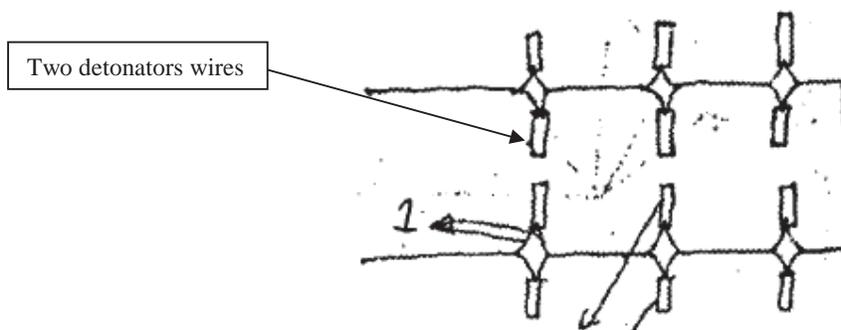
$M1$ = resistance of main wires.

$M2$ = resistance of wires connecting between the detonators.

N = number of pairs.

$M3$ = resistance of a single detonator.

In this circuit, we note that every two detonators are connected together in parallel fashion, whereas the pairs are connected serially.



575

AFGP-2002-000031-0599

[TC: Pagination of English translation reordered to accurately convey Arabic text]

Example: Of dual serial circuit: It is based on the main wires having a length of 100 meters from end to end, six pairs, and 20 meters of wires connecting between pairs. Calculate the voltage and amperage needed for the circuit, knowing that the wire employed is regular wire with a resistance of 5 ohms per 100 meters and the current to be employed is household current.

Remark: In the case of the dual serial circuit, we require 1.5 amps of direct current and 2 amps of alternating current, regardless of the number of pairs.

Solution: $M1 = (200 \div 100) \times 5 = 10$ ohms.
 $M2 = (20 \div 100) \times 5 = 1$ ohm.
 Resistance of pairs = $(6 \times 2.5) \div 2 = 7.5$ ohms.

We apply the law:

$MK = 10 + 1 + 7.5 = 18.5$ ohms.

Because we are using household current, we need only two amps, i.e., the potential difference = $18.5 \times 2 = 39$ volts, which is what we require for the circuit.

3. Circuit that Branch from a Point:

The law for this circuit is: $MK = M1 + \frac{M2 + M3}{N}$

Where:

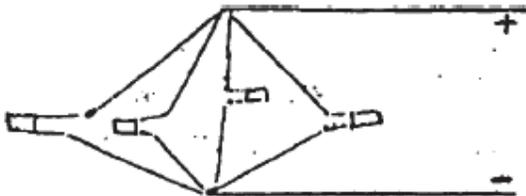
$M1$ = Resistance of main wires.

$M2$ = Resistance of only one branch.

$M3$ = Resistance of one detonator.

N = Number of branches.

In the case of branch conductors, each branch requires 1.5 amps of direct current and only 1 ampere of alternating current. In other words, the amperage increases, because the connection is a parallel connection, where the amperage is divided into the branches in the circuit.



To use this circuit, there are 3 requirements:

1. The lengths of the branches must be equal. No branch may be longer than another branch.
2. All of the detonators must be of the same type.
3. The branch wires must be of the same type. It does not matter whether the type of wire used for the main conductor wires is different.

AFGP-2002-000031-0598

[TC: Pagination of English translation reordered to accurately convey Arabic text]

Example: A circuit branching from a point with 3 forks, each fork contains a 20 meters long detonator. The main wires are military grade, and are 200 meters on each side. What is the voltage and amps needed to detonate the circuit if the current source is batteries?

Solution:

$$R1 = (200 + 100) \times 2.5 = 5 \text{ ohms.}$$

R2 = since the length of the forks is 20 meters, then each fork is 5 meters.

$$R2 = (5 + 100) \times 2.5 = .0125 \text{ ohms.}$$

R3 = 2.5 ohms – the resistance of one detonator.

N = 4 forks.

Then the total resistance is $= 5 + \frac{.125 + 2.5}{4} = 5.6$, which is approximately 6 ohms.

Sh = number of forks x 5 (direct) amps.

$$4 \times .05 = 2 \text{ amps}$$

Thus the voltage (V) = 6 x 2 = 12 volts.

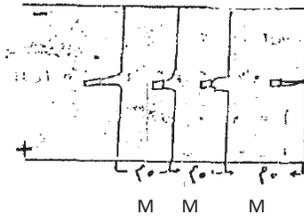
Thus we need 12 volts and 4 amps.

4- A circuit branching form several points:

Same as previous equation:

$$\text{Total resistance} = R1 + \frac{R2 + R3}{N}$$

Where the branching is as depicted in the diagram.



AFGP-2002-000031-0600

[TC: Pagination of English translation reordered to accurately convey Arabic text]

In order to use this circuit, there are some requirements for that:

1. We obtain four branches if we want to use the aforesaid law. More than four branches can be created. However, if more than four are created, we do not use the law to find the resistance, but rather an ohmmeter (device for measuring resistance).
2. The wires must be of a single type.
3. The distance between each branch must not exceed five meters.
4. The detonators employed must be of the same type. When we employ the law, we note that the distance between the branches must not exceed 5 meters, and the number of branches must not exceed 4.

5. Mixed Circuit (Serial – Parallel) Branching Off From One Point:

In this circuit, the detonators are linked serially and in a parallel manner, as shown in the figure below. More than one detonator is placed in each branch serially. To use this circuit, the number of detonators in each branch, and the lengths of the branches must be equal.

Law: $MK = M1 + \frac{M2 + N1 M2}{N2}$

Remark: For each branch, we always need one ampere of direct current and 1.5 amps of alternating current, where:

M1 = Resistance of main wires.

M2 = Resistance of the length of a single branch.

N1 = Number of detonators in each branch.

N2 = Number of branches.

Example:

A mixed circuit contains main wires with a length of 100 meters from end to end and 4 branches, each having a length of 10 meters. Each branch contains 3 detonators. The wire used is a regular wire with a resistance of 6 ohms per 100 meters. The current used is direct (batteries). Find the voltage and amperage that we require.

Solution: $M1 = 100 \div 100 \times 6 = 6$ ohms.

$M2 = 10 \div 100 \times 6 = 0.6$ ohms.

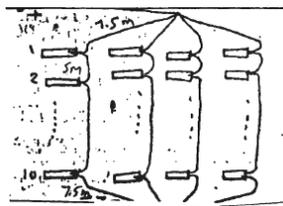
$N1 M2 = 3 \times 2.5 = 7.5$ ohms.

$N2 = 4$.

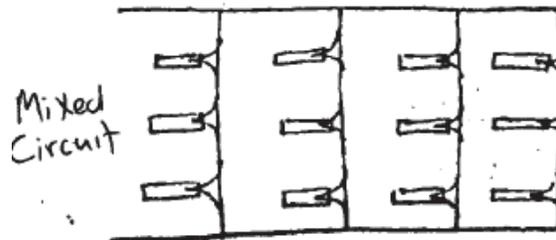
$MK = 6 + 0.6 + 7.5 + 4 = 8$ ohms approximately.

F (voltage) = Resistance \times (4 \times 1) = 32 volts.

In order to detonate this circuit, we require 32 volts and 4 amps



AFGP-2002-000031-0601



6. Mixed Circuit that Branches from a Number of Points:

We use the same aforementioned law regarding a mixed circuit that branches from a number of points, but with the following conditions:

1. The number of branches must not exceed four, unless an ohmmeter is available to ensure resistance.
2. The distance between one branch and another must not exceed five meters.
3. The wires must be of the same type.
4. The detonators must be of the same type.

Remarks Regarding Electrical Circuits

1. It is appropriate to use a single or dual connection when a high-voltage low-power source such as regular batteries is available.
2. It is appropriate to use branched connections when a high-power low-voltage current such as that provided by several military batteries is available.
3. It is appropriate to use a mixed connection when a high voltage high power source such as household current and mobile power stations—is available.
4. In all cases, the circuit must satisfy the equation $F = M \times S$.
5. It is prohibited to use electrical detonators of different types in a serially connected electrical circuit.
6. A circuit must be tested using bill buttons of 2.5 ohms resistance instead of detonators before using the circuit for detonation purposes.
7. Most military blasting machines, which are based on charging and discharging, are characterized by high voltage (1500 volts) and low amperage (1-7). Therefore, some of them can detonate up to 100 serial detonators and (5) detonators on branches.

AFGP-2002-000031-0602

8. Electrical circuit wires are buried to a depth of 25 centimeters underground to protect them from external elements. If these wires cross a road used by vehicles, they must be buried to a depth of 50 centimeters in channels. Attention must be paid to the moisture in the ground if the wires will remain in the ground for an extended period.
9. Wires are considered capable of being buried if the resistance of their insulation is greater than 3000 ohms.
10. Wires slacken by (10-15 percent of their original length).
11. After checking the strength of all electrical connections, insulate them with an adhesive tape.
12. For important targets, it is necessary to double the circuit, i.e., create two circuits that are separate from each other.
13. An electrical detonation network may not be placed closer than 200 meters from a power station, high-tension lines, electrified railroads, or high-power transmission centers.
14. The current source may not be connected to the main separating wire before the circuit is extended up to a safe distance.
15. When it is not possible to count the sounds of explosions produced by the detonation of a series of charges, the result is checked by one person and then only after 15 minutes has lapsed from the occurrence of the explosion.

Electrical Detonation failure**A. Prevent it from occurring.**

Designate a demolitions expert to be responsible for setting up all circuits. This person makes the connections and braids and ensures that:

1. All detonation primers have been put in place and connected to the detonation circuit.
2. All connections between primer wires, connecting wires, and detonation wires have been made with precision.
3. There is no contact between circuit wires.
4. There is no contact with the ground.
5. The number of detonating primers in each circuit does not exceed the capacity of the detonation power source (blasting machine).

B. Reasons for the failure of an electrical detonation.

Electrical demolition may fail for any of the following reasons:

1. Weakness or malfunction of the blasting machine.
2. The blasting machine is operated incorrectly.
3. Erroneous or disrupted connections resulting in contact in the electrical circuit, a disruption, or high resistance resulting in low current.
4. Inoperable detonating primers.

AFGP-2002-000031-0603

5. The use of an old type of detonating primer (J.2) (manufactured by various factories).
6. The use of a number of primers beyond the blasting machine's capacity.

C. Handling of an electrical detonation failure:

Burnt charges or delayed explosions pose dangers. Therefore, failed electrical detonations must be handled with maximum caution. The burning of charges may be caused by the use of an electrical or nonelectrical primer. The failure of charges equipped with a detonating fuse and electrical detonating primers is handled. If the charges are prepared electrically with a dual system and are underground, wait 30 minutes before attempting to inspect them to ascertain that they have not burned. If the charges dual type and are above ground, wait 30 seconds before inspecting them to discover the cause.

In other words, if an above ground electrical detonation fails, and the charges are not dual system, inspect them immediately. If the charge is underground and is not a dual type, carry out the following steps:

1. Ascertain whether the electrical wires are firmly connected to the blasting machine's terminals.
2. Attempt to set off the circuit two or three times.
3. Attempt to detonate once more using another blasting machine.
4. Disconnect the wires from the blasting machine and wait 30 minutes before attempting to inspect. Make sure the two ends of the wire are away from each other and away from the blasting machine before going to the location of the charge.
5. Test the entire circuit, including electrical wires, for breaks or contact.
6. If there is no error above ground, remove the packing from the charge with extreme caution to avoid striking the electrical primer.
7. Do not attempt to detach the supply assembly from the charge.
8. If no error appears up to a distance of one foot from the charge, place the electrical power assembly with two pounds (850 grams) of explosives at this point.
9. Disconnect the basic primer wires of the charge from the circuit.
10. Connect the new primer wires in their place.
11. Replace the packing.
12. Fire once more. The detonation of the new set-up will result in the detonation of the original charge.

Remark: In some cases, it may be preferable to drill a new hole within a distance of 1 foot from the old hole of the charge and with the same depth, to prevent the unexpected explosion of the old charge. A 2 pounds (850-gram) charge is placed in the new one, prepared, and then fired to destroy the previous charge.

AFGP-2002-000031-0604

Unexpected Explosion Due to Currents and Lightning

- A. Currents:** The detonation of electrical primers can be caused by a current originating from the transmission of radio devices. The following table shows the minimum safe distance from a transmitter to avoid the destruction of electrical detonators under the harshest conditions. Portable transmitters should not be within 150 feet of any electrical detonation primer or any other electrical blasting system. If the distance is less than the distances shown in the table, only nonelectrical primers should be employed.

Minimum Safe Distances for Stationary Transmitters

Transmitter Strength	Minimum Distance in feet
5-25	100
25-50	150
50-100	220
100-250	350
250-500	450
500-1000	650
1000-2500	1000
2500-5000	1500
5000-10000	2200
10000-25000	3500
325000-50000	5000
50000-100000	7000

- E. Lightning:** Lightning poses a danger to electrical and nonelectrical detonating primers. Lightning strikes cause the detonation of the primer, even if the lightning is far from the primer, because lightning produces powerful electrical currents on the ground, which set off the primer. The best way to avoid this is to remove electrical and nonelectrical primers from charges when electrical fields produced by lightning are expected.

Dual Detonation Methods**Reduction of the Risk of Failure in Demolitions**

- A.** The use of a dual detonation system greatly increases the chance of successful demolition. Frequently, the failure of demolitions during operations causes great loss of life. In training, such failures cause a loss of precious time and pose a major danger

580-A

AFGP-2002-000031-0605

to the persons responsible for demolitions. Therefore, it is essential to take every action possible to avoid any possible failure.

F. Generally, the failure of demolition circuits can be attributed to the failure of detonation and the charges themselves. Therefore, it is advisable to employ a dual detonation whenever time permits and the necessary materials are available. A dual system may comprise two electrical systems, two nonelectrical systems, or an electrical and nonelectrical system. The two systems must be completely separate from each other. Both or one of them must be capable of detonating the charges.

Dual Nonelectrical Detonating Method

This method comprises two, separate nonelectrical systems for the detonation of one or a number of charges. If two or more charges are to be set off simultaneously, we need two main circuits of detonating fuses, and we need to connect a branch line from each charge to one of these circuits.

Dual Electrical Detonation Method

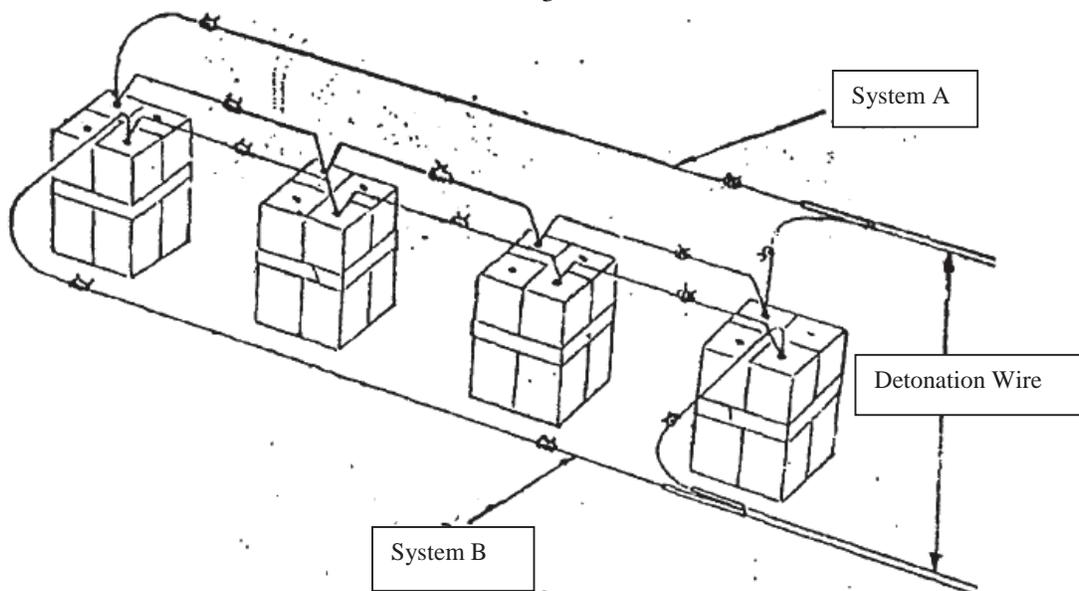
This method comprises two independent electrical circuits with an electrical primer in each charge. The charges are set off by either of the two circuits. This requires two electrical primer set-ups. This system shows more clearly. The detonation wires of the two circuits remain separate, so that a single bullet or piece of shrapnel from a bomb or projectile does not disrupt both of them. In addition, the firing points must be in two separate locations.

Dual Mobile Detonation Method

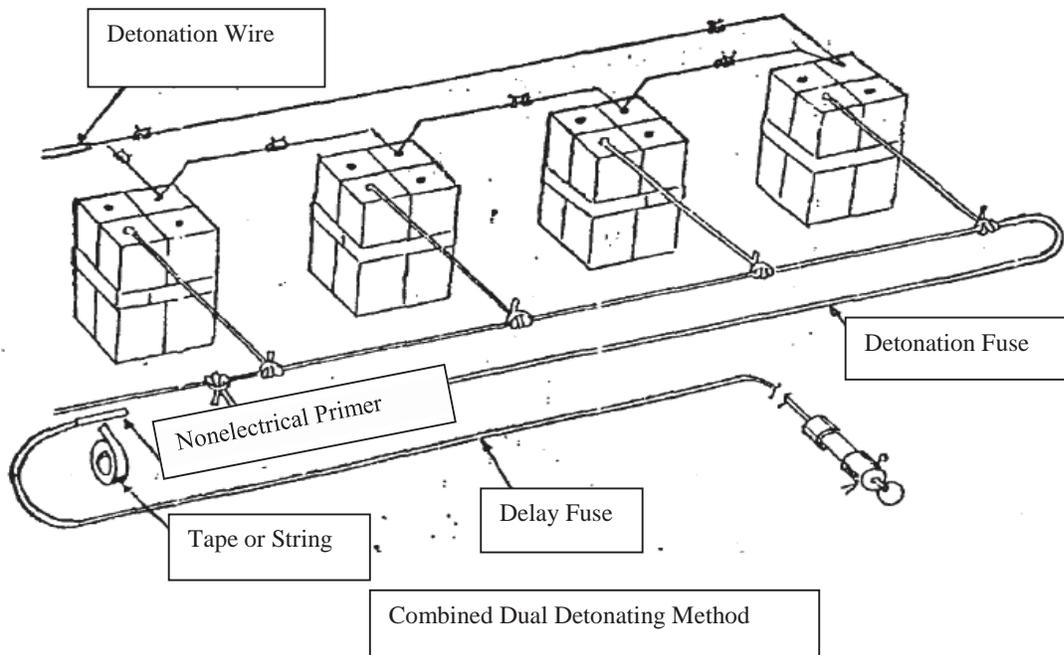
This method requires two circuits, one electrical and the other nonelectrical. Each charge is prepared electrically and non-electrically. These two circuits must be completely independent of each other. The nonelectrical system is set off first, followed by the electrical system.

AFGP-2002-000031-0606

3



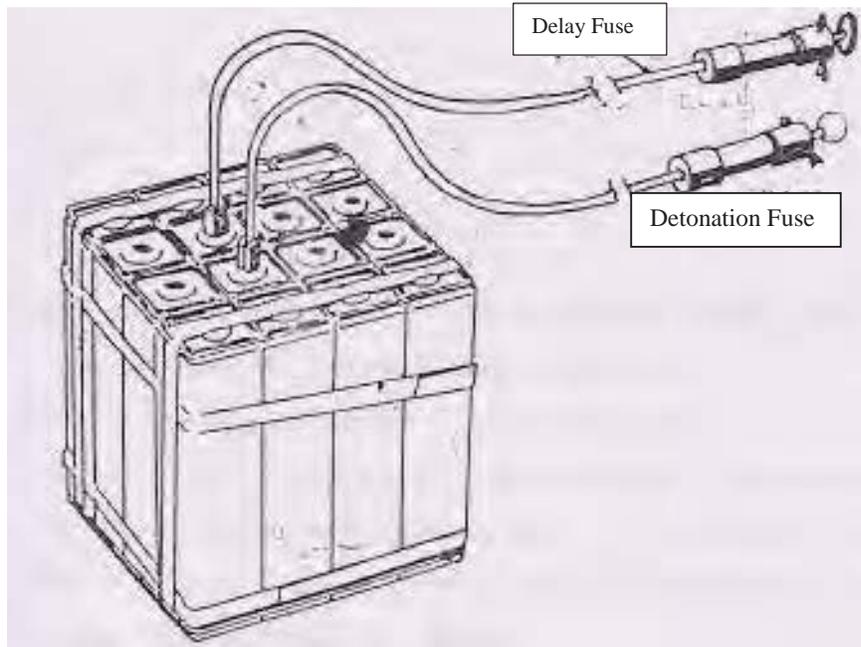
Dual Electrical Detonation Method



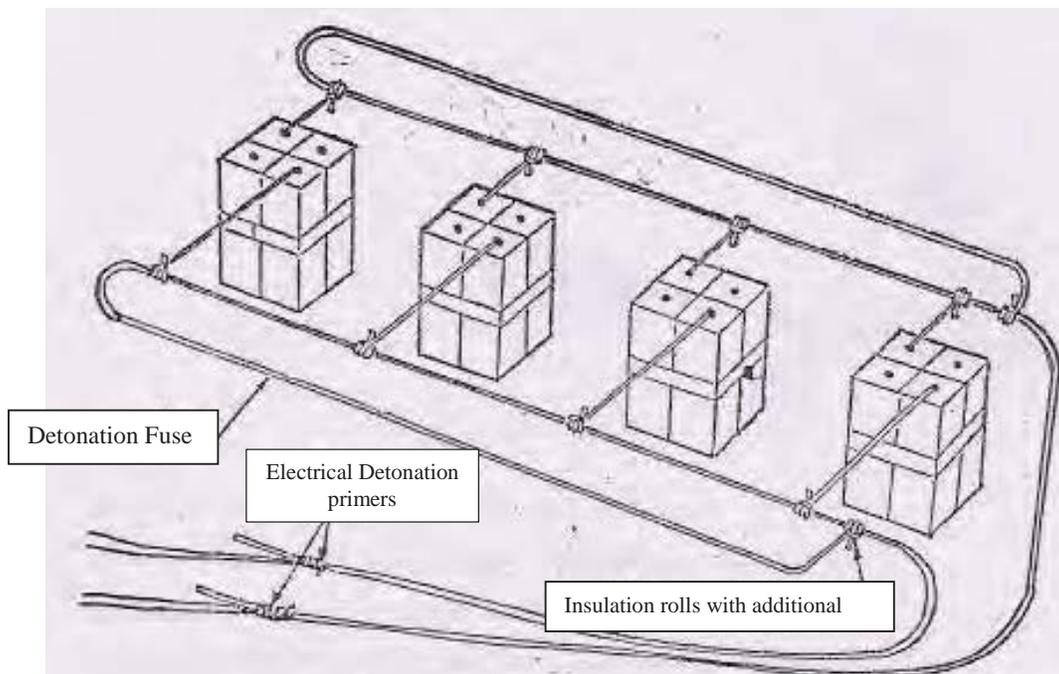
Combined Dual Detonating Method

582

AFGP-2002-000031-0607



Dual non-electrical detonation system



Dual Detonation with fuse using two main circuits

583

**MILITARY COMMISSIONS TRIAL JUDICIARY
GUANTANAMO BAY, CUBA**

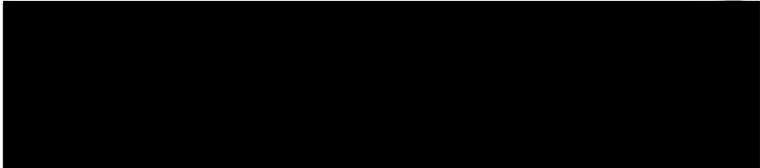
<p>UNITED STATES OF AMERICA</p> <p>V.</p> <p>ABD AL HADI AL-IRAQI</p>	<p>DECLARATION OF</p> <p></p>
---	--

1. I am fluent in written and spoken English as well as written and spoken Arabic.
2. I have taken the ALTA Language Services Translation Assessment and scored at skill level three or higher, which corresponds to professional performance.
3. I am familiar with the Arabic document bearing bates numbers AFGP-2002-000031-0608 to AFGP-2002-000031-0707, which is the Afghan Jihad encyclopedia.
4. To the best of my knowledge and belief, the English translation attached to this Declaration is a true and accurate translation from Arabic into English of the Arabic document described in paragraph 2 of this Declaration.

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed on: 07/30/2014

McLean, Virginia



HADI-1-017038

AFGP-2002-000031-0608

Rigging a car with explosives

Rigging a car with explosives

1. Rigging the engine

Necessary Tools

- Demolition Block, pull igniter, regular detonator and a slow fuse.

*Method

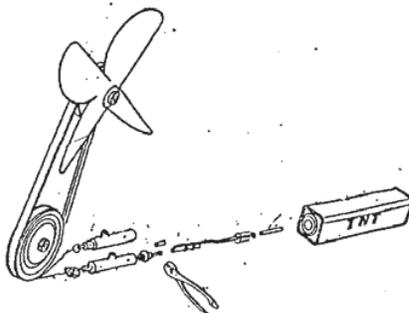
Connect the regular detonator to the charge then connect it to a fuse, whose other end is connected to a regular detonator attached to an igniter.

(Any type of igniter can be used e.g., M1, M5, etc.).

A trip wire is attached to the bottom of the engine block to make it difficult to detect it.

It is attached in the ignition. When the engine turns, the wire is pulled, releasing the pin and the igniter (or igniter safety if it is of another type), which strikes the detonator. The detonator ignites the detonator fuse, which sets off the second detonator in the charge.

Remark: It is advisable not to attach the wires to the fan, because it will be easily detected.



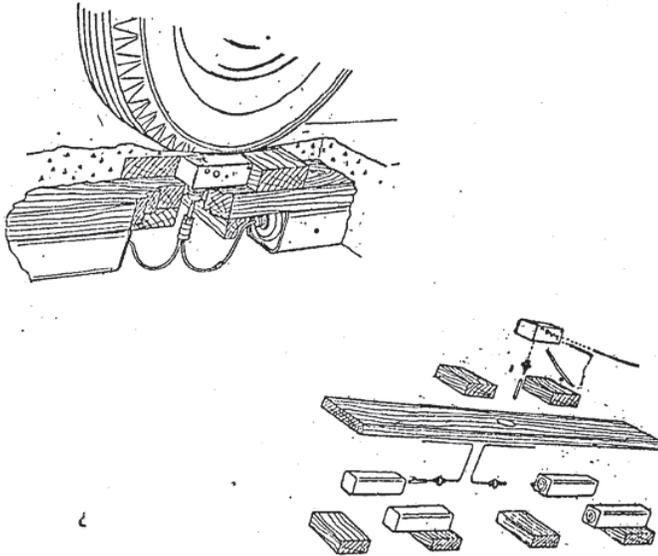
2. Booby trap Laid for Trucks or Cargo Vehicles:

- Insert a strong wire into the igniter's insertion hole.
- Remove the safety pin and replace it with a thicker wire.
- Fold both wires slightly so that they do not push outward.
- Assemble the primary base of the regular detonator and igniter.
- Assemble the demolition block, regular detonator, and the conductor that connects the block with the detonator. Connect the demolition block and detonator with the end of the detonator fuse.
- In a pit prepared under the passageway of the targeted truck, assemble wooden supports (calculate the weight of the charges in advance), the demolition blocks, and pieces of wood to protect the igniter (calculate the weight of the igniter).
- Remove the igniter pin.
- Cover the booby trap and camouflage it well.

584

AFGP-2002-000031-0609

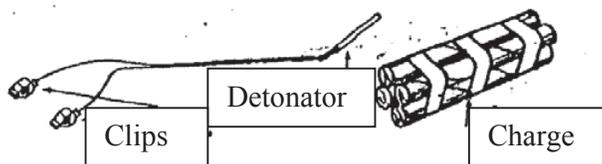
Remark: A demolition block is on each side of the main piece of wood. Both ends of the two fuses of the two detonators are connected to the detonator, which is connected to the igniter, as shown in the figure.



Electrical System:

- There is an excellent method for placing a charge attached to an electrical detonator with two connecting clips attached to the two ends of the detonator wires.
- These two clips are attached to connect the circuit to the circuit used when the key is turned, or they are attached to the vehicle heater, brake, etc.

When these components are moved or are used, current is transmitted to the two clips to set off the charge.

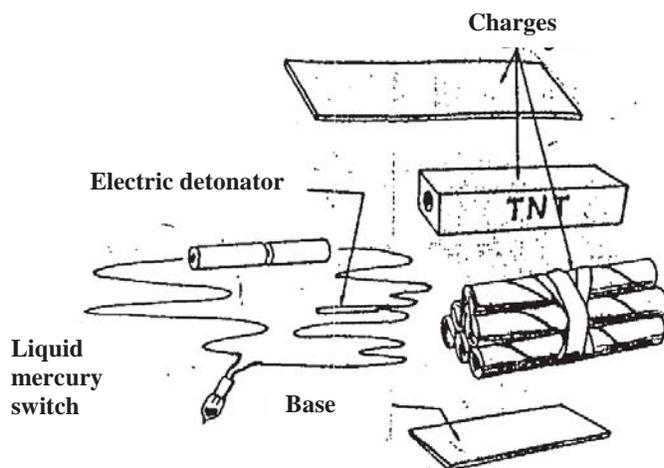


AFGP-2002-000031-0610

Car Body:

There is another excellent method which is to booby-trap the seats or any other place on the car body using a charge attached to a liquid mercury switch.

1. Assemble the charge, electrical detonator, and liquid mercury switch.
2. Place the booby trap in a specific location and test the circuit with a galvanometer.
3. Connect the batteries to the circuit by attaching them well with friction tape.

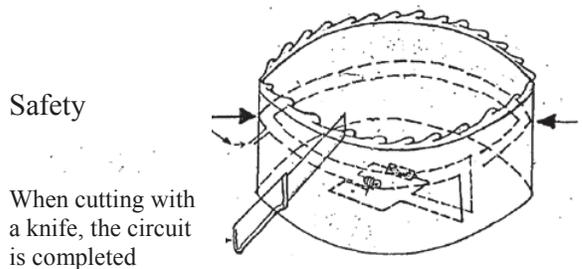


Warning:

Always test the circuit before placing the batteries.

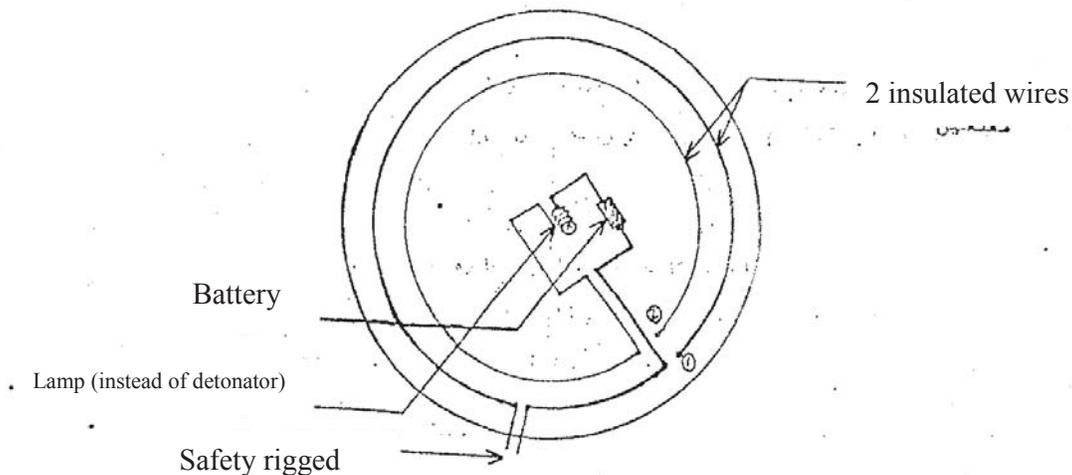
This booby trap can be assembled in a small container for use in the lining of the seat. It is also suited to other locations on the vehicle body.

Booby-Trapped Cake:



It is a top view of a piece of pastry if we cut it from the direction of the shown arrows in the figure.

AFGP-2002-000031-0611



***Method of operation:**

We wrap two wires (not covered with insulation) around the inside of a piece of pastry. One of the ends of each wire is connected to an electrical circuit, as shown in the figure above. The other two ends (1, 2) must be separate from each other. The figure shows a lantern and a detonator around which are explosives. The safety strings (booby trap safety) consists of two strings from the circuit. They are connected only when the electrical circuit is complete. Then, the detonator and explosive (electrical circuit) are placed in a cavity in the pastry and camouflaged well. When any attempt is made to cut a piece of the cake, the circuit is connected and the explosive is detonated (see the figure).

Booby-trapping of a Hair Brush:

Method of operation:

When an attempt is made to use the brush to comb the hair, the brush prongs touch each other. The electrical circuit is completed when any of the green line prongs touches its counterpart in the red line. Because the number of prongs is great, the chances of closing the circuit are great.

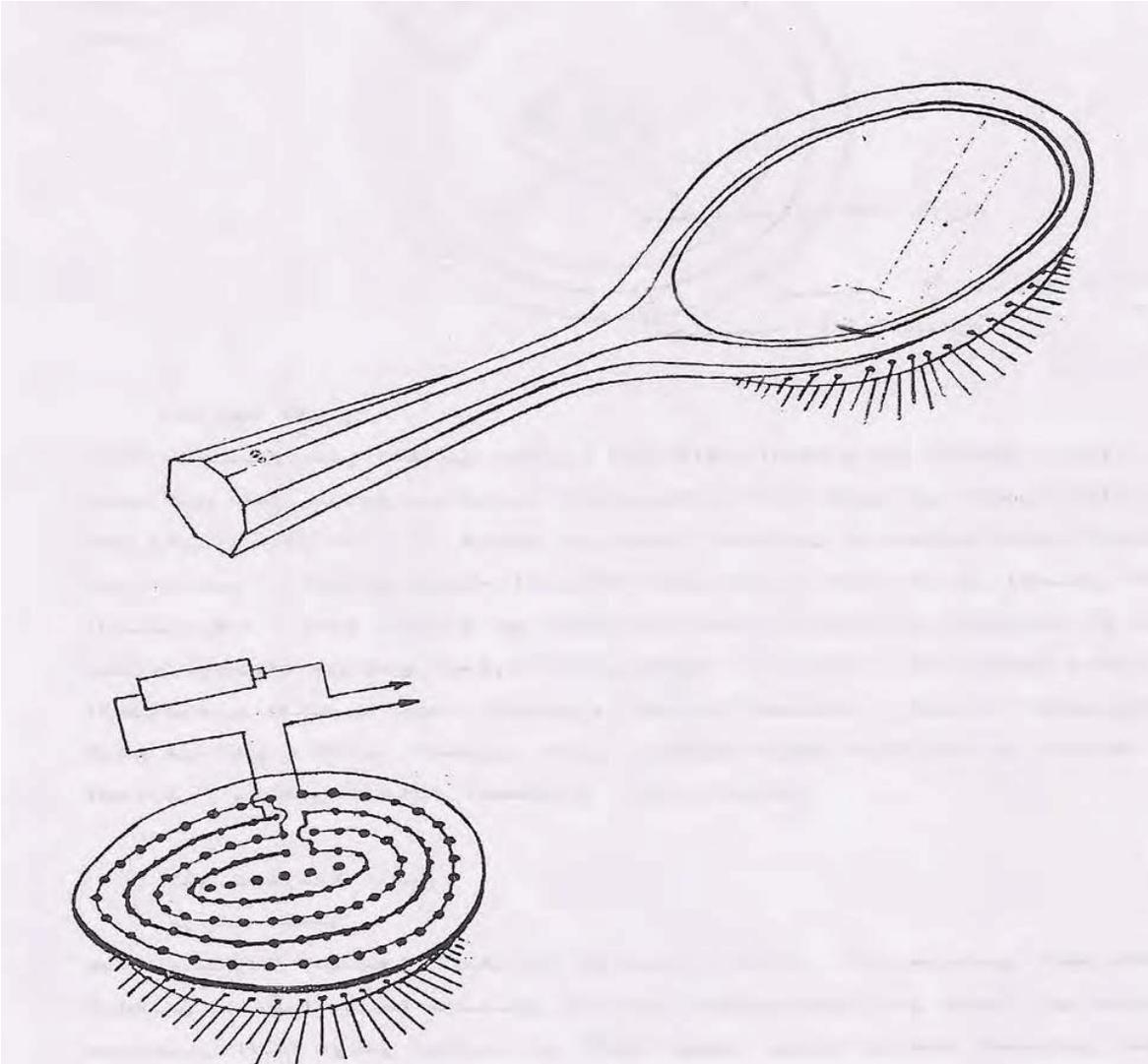
Remark:

The rubber part of the brush that holds the prongs is hollow in shape as shown in the figure. The batteries, detonator, and explosives can be placed in this hollow, which is restored to its original position.

- The thick line represents the negative pole of the battery.
- The thin line represents the positive pole of the battery.

AFGP-2002-000031-0612

- The black points represent the heads of the pins that are the brush prongs.



588

AFGP-2002-000031-0613

Booby-Trapping of a Helmet

1. A very thin metal wire is heated up and then inserted into the chin-strap lock, until the first part of it appears, as in Figure 2.
2. An iron plate is placed inside the lock and connected to a battery wire.
3. A thin metal wire is connected to the battery.
4. Method for inserting the wire in the strap.

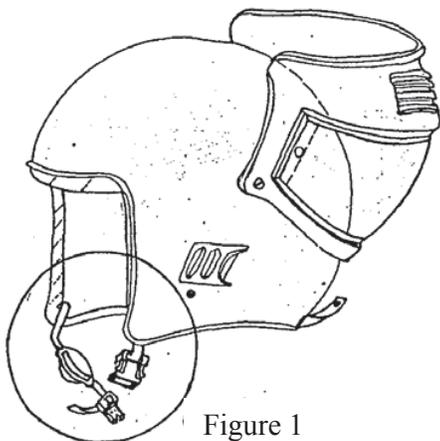


Figure 1

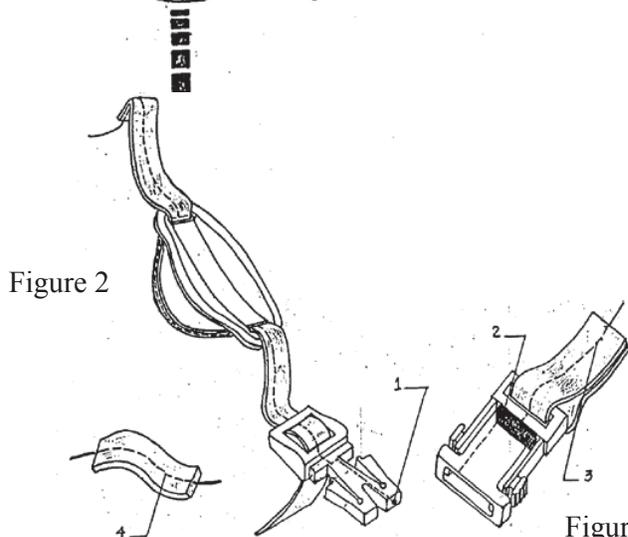


Figure 2

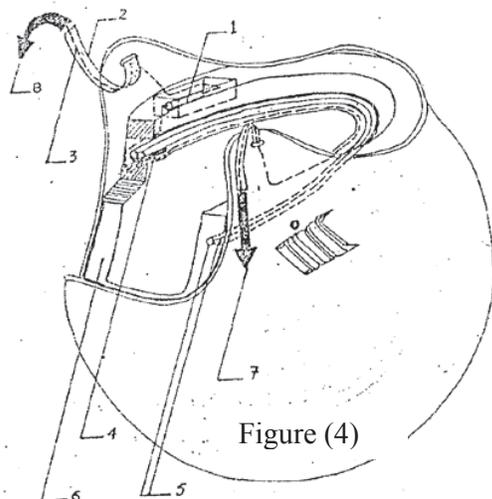
Figure 3

588-A

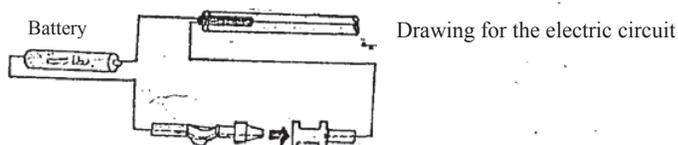
AFGP-2002-000031-0614

Operation Method

1. Battery.
2. Portion of the strap that attaches the helmet to the head has a very thin electricity-conducting wire that is passed through the layers of the strap with special attention paid to complete camouflage (so that the wire is not seen from the outside).
3. Very thin, electricity-conducting wire.
4. Electrical detonator.
5. Detonator fuses.
6. Thick white material with which lines the helmets' interiors (and also placed in boxes containing fragile items) to absorb shocks. The detonator fuse, battery, and detonator are attached so that they do not appear from the outside. Then, the interior of the helmet is covered by the cloth covering pertaining to it.
7. This arrow indicates the direction of the wire to the strap lock that attaches the helmet to the head (see figure).
8. This arrow indicates the direction of the wire to the lock of the strap that attaches the helmet to the head, i.e., to the other part of the lock (see figure).



Fuse detonator



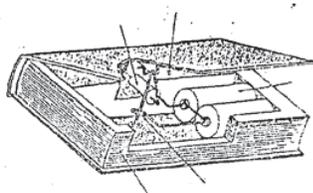
589

AFGP-2002-000031-0615

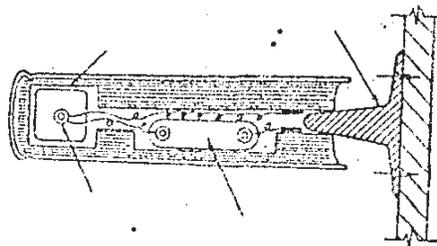
Booby Traps inside a Library:

A. Booby-trapping of books:

Russian method: This method was employed against German soldiers based on the Russians' knowledge that the Germans have a broad interest in books. The concept is extremely simple. The charge is connected to an electrical detonator placed inside a book whose pages have been carved out. The circuit wire is connected to the detonator. The other side consists of a strong wire shaped in the form of a knot at one of its ends. Passed through the knot is a second wire whose end also contains a horizontal knot, which does not touch the first one. The latter wire is attached in the book cover and connected to the other end of the detonator. When the book is opened, the two knots touch to complete the circuit and transmit the current.

**B.** British method: We present this method only to expand the horizon of those interested in booby traps. It is a complicated but easy to detect unless is placed inside an office or library, for example, wherein the enemy does not see the piece of wood that keeps the book open.

-When the book is pulled, the two metal plates (one plate is connected to a detonator, and the other is connected to batteries and a detonator) meet and complete the circuit to allow the conductance of the electrical current.



Advantages:

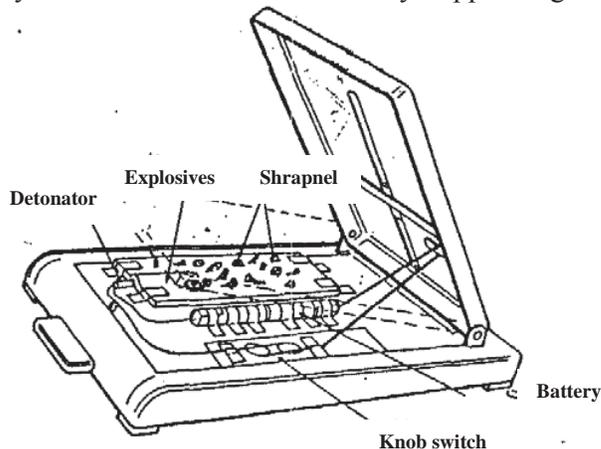
Knowing the enemy's desires and what tempts them constitute the basis for successful booby traps. Your booby traps should be based on such desirable objects. Do not spread your booby traps amongst too many objects that will not yield results. Rather, use objects that will attract the enemy and create a trap in which it will be easy for the enemy to fall in.

589-A

AFGP-2002-000031-0616

Booby-Trapping of Office Items:

Many items in an office can be booby trapped to great effectiveness.



1. Booby-Trapping of a Telephone Number Index.

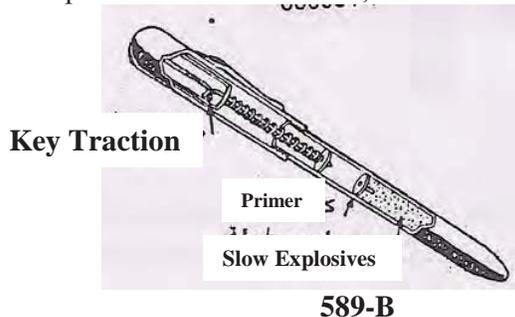
- Remove the paper from inside the case.
- Assemble the explosives plate, shrapnel, and electrical detonator.
- Expose the end of the electrical wires by unpeeling the insulation as a loop switch.
- Place the booby trap inside the index case, so that the movement of the shaft to a particular letter of the alphabet pulls the two loops toward each other.
- Use friction tape to insulate the inside of the index to keep it from touching the loops.
- Test the circuit with a galvanometer first. Then, install the batteries.

Warning:

The batteries must be well connected to the ends of the circuit wires and secured with friction tape to prevent them from moving.

Pen Trap:

A pen that is opened by turning is used. The tip of the pen is packed with explosives connected to a detonator and special type of primer. The pin presses on the spring and is held in place at the end of the pen by a wire that is folded at its bottom. When the pen is opened by turning, the pin is turned so that its fold is released from the fold of the wire. The compressed spring is released with force. It strikes the primer and the detonator, which sets off the charge.



AFGP-2002-000031-0617

Booby Trapping of a Stapler:

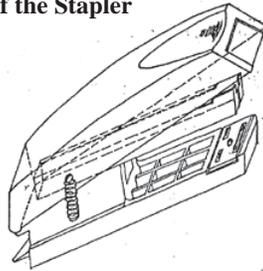
Remarks:

* The wires used must be coated with insulation material to prevent disruption of the electrical circuit.

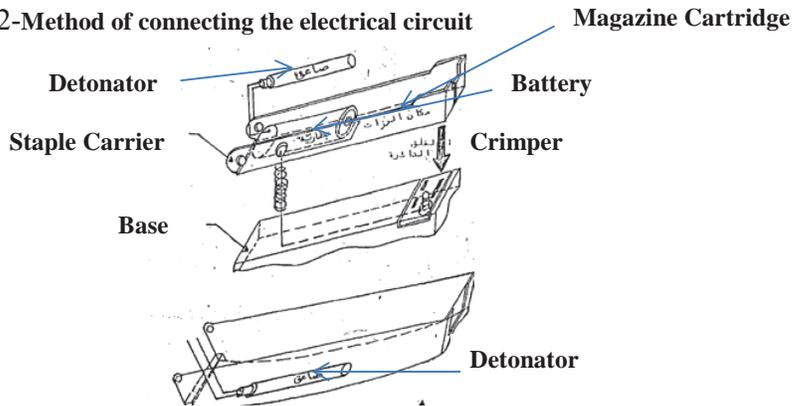
* A bit of plastic explosives (C4) can be placed around the detonator, though you must make sure to maintain the regular weight of the stapler, as any increase in its weight will arouse suspicion and fear.

* Full camouflaging must be observed. For example, select wires with the same color as the stapler. The external casing of the batteries should be removed to display the gray color of the batteries, which is similar to the color of the metal components of the stapler. However, insulation must be placed between this battery and the metal part.

1. External Shape of the Stapler



2-Method of connecting the electrical circuit

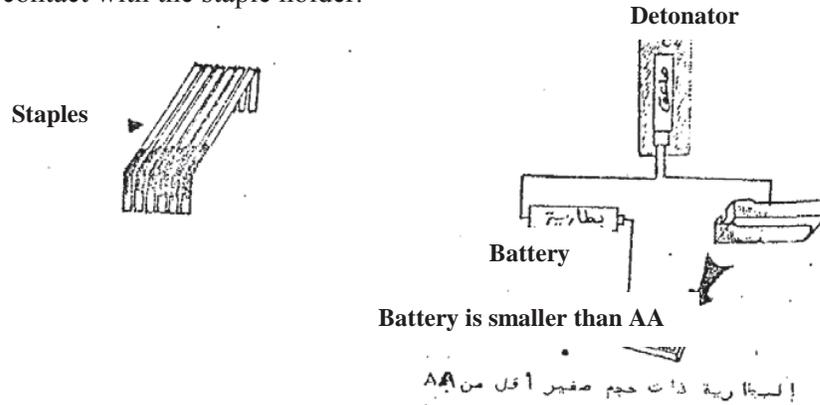


Attach the detonator to the upper part of the stapler (with explosives around the detonator).

AFGP-2002-000031-0618

Booby trapping method:

1. Place the detonator in the upper part of the stapler, as shown in the figure.
2. Place the battery in the central, metal part where the staples are placed. Fill the front part of this space with staples. The battery is placed in the rear part. See the figure.
3. Attach one of the detonator wires to the middle, metal part (staple holder). Attach the other wire to one of the battery poles.
4. The staple holder has a hole at the rear. The wire is made to emerge from it after it is connected to the other pole of the battery. Then, this wire is attached to the iron part of the staple base, which is the part on which the staples are folded when it is struck during the paper stapling process. See the figure.
5. The circuit is closed when any person attempts to use the stapler. The metal part (on the base) makes contact with the staple holder.



The battery used (see figure below) is smaller than an AA battery.

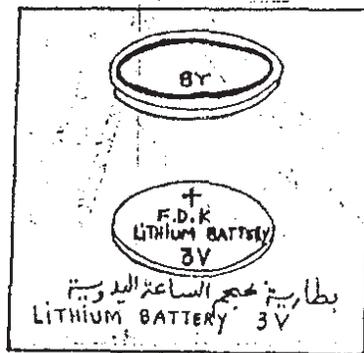
AFGP-2002-000031-0619

Booby-Trapping of a Stethoscope:

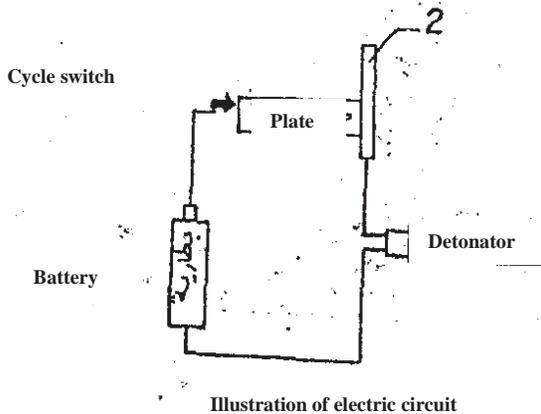
Method of operation:

1. The two ends of the stethoscope are (two metal tubes).
2. These metal components are connected by a metal plate. When the two ends of the stethoscope are separated for use (in the direction of the two arrows as shown in Figure 1), the plate comes in contact with the tip of the external wire through the top of the rubber tube, consequently closing the circuit (Figure number 3).
3. A metal wire is connected to the positive battery pole. (This wire must be insulated from the metal pole with an adhesive tape number 8).
4. Longitudinal section of rubber tube.
5. Rubber tube.
6. Small-sized, suitable battery in its location with high voltage.
7. Metal plate.
8. Piece of adhesive tape to insulate wire from metal tube.

Figure number 2



A watch size battery



AFGP-2002-000031-0620

Figure Number (1)

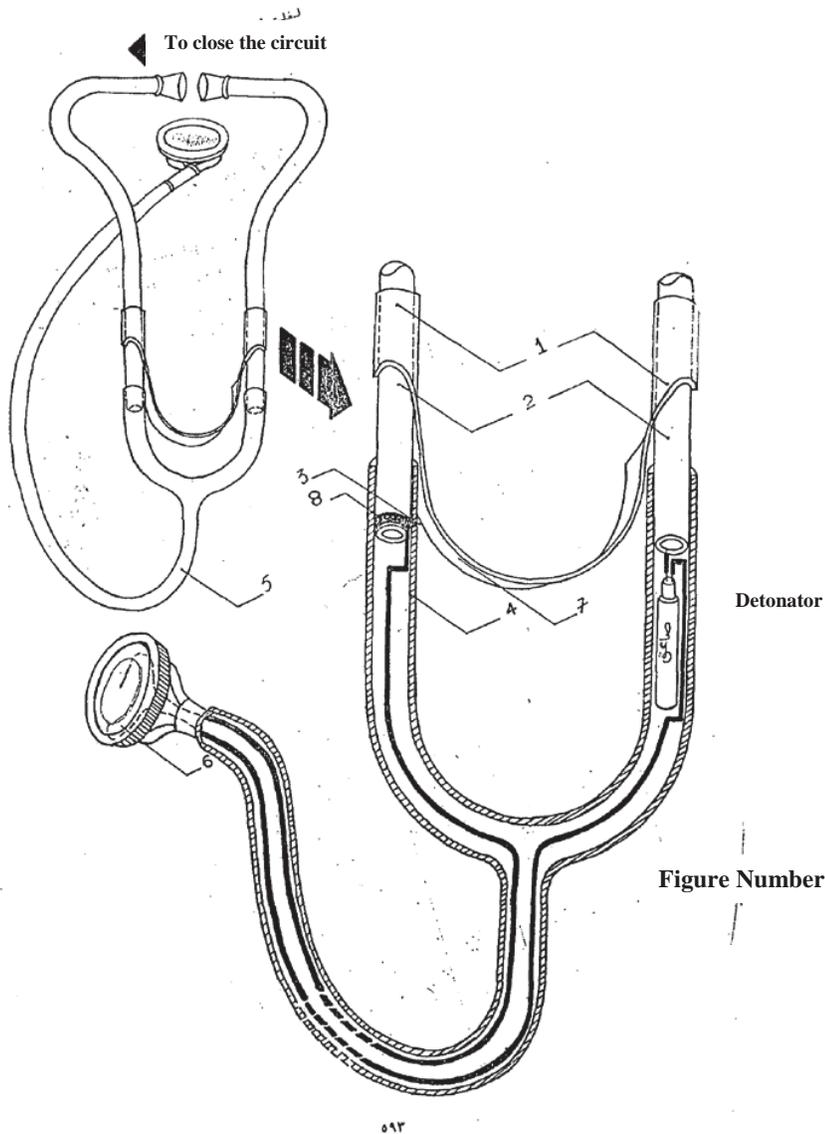


Figure Number (2)

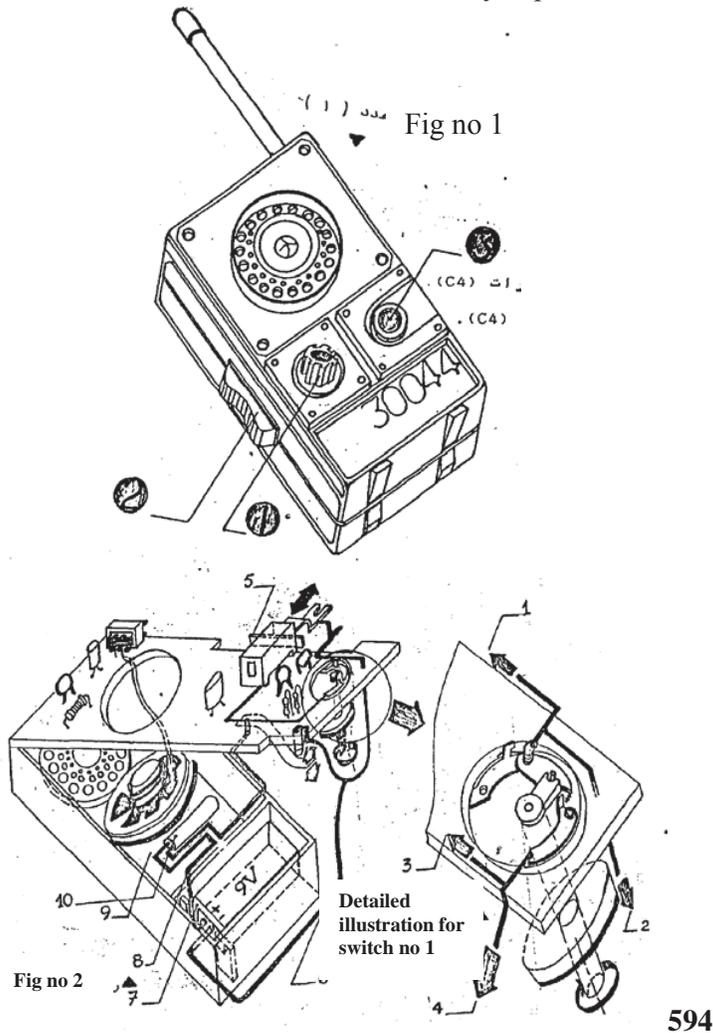
593

AFGP-2002-000031-0621

Booby Trapping of a Communication Device:

The following figures show the method for booby-trapping the three switches of a communication device.

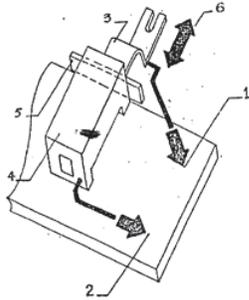
1. In the direction of switch no. 2.
2. In the direction of the negative pole of the battery.
3. In the direction of switch no. 3.
4. In the direction of the positive pole of the battery.
5. Metal plate attached to switch no. 2.
6. Encased metal wire connected to the negative pole.
7. 9-volt battery.
8. Encased metal wire connected to the positive (+) pole.
9. Device container. It can be filled with C4 explosives.
10. Electrical detonator surrounded by explosive material (C4).



AFGP-2002-000031-0622

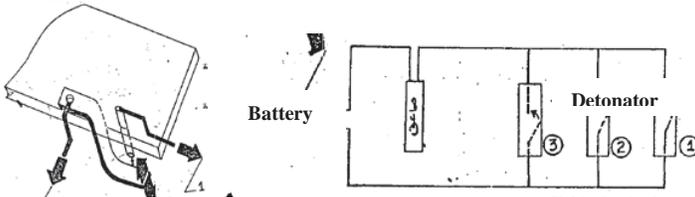
* Switch no. 2:

1. In the direction of the battery's negative pole.
2. In the direction of the battery's positive pole.
3. - 4 these two components are separated by insulation from the inside.
5. Metal plate that closes the electrical circuit upon contact with part no. 3.
6. Switch movement direction.



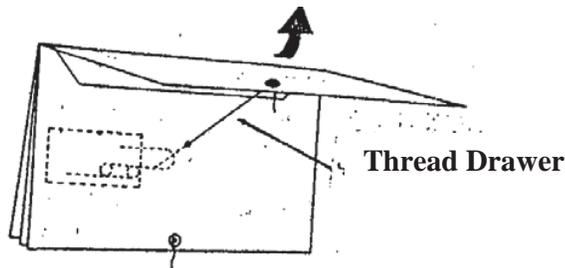
* Switch no. 3:

1. In the direction of the battery's negative pole.
2. Direction of switch movement.
3. In the direction of the battery's positive pole.



Booby-Trapping of a File Folder:

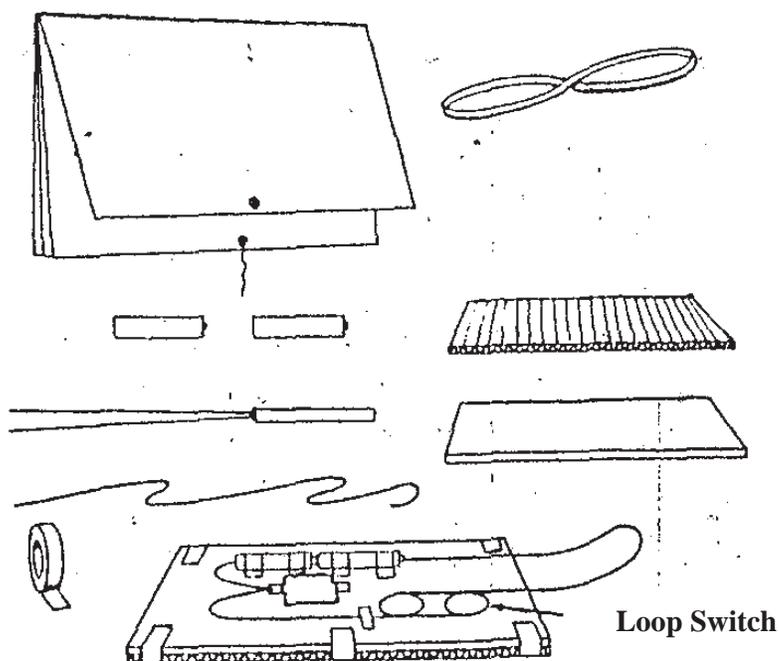
1. Remove the plastic insulation from the end of the detonation wires in order to install the circuit.
2. Turn the end of the exposed circuit wire into the form of two loops. Each loop is surrounded by the other circuit wire (insulated end). The two wires are 1/4 inch (6 mm) from each other and are flattened on the switch by pulling the two loops.



AFGP-2002-000031-0623

3. Test the circuit with the galvanometer first. Then, attach the batteries to the circuit.
4. Assemble reinforced cardboard, batteries, and electrical detonator, and a sheet of explosives.
5. Connect the end of the string to the switch (two loops), so that when it is pulled, the two loops are pulled together until they make contact.
6. Make a hole under the flap.
7. Securely attach the device on the folder. Then, make the string exit from the hole.
8. Securely attach the device under the flap so that it is concealed.
9. Close the envelope or folder with a rubber band.

* When the folder is opened, the string pulls the two loops toward each other to complete the circuit and conduct the current.



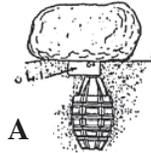
596

AFGP-2002-000031-0624

Field Booby-Traps

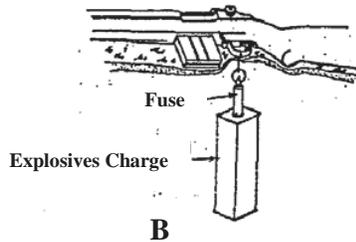
Detonation process occurs when rock is moved.

When the rock is moved, it initiates the detonation process, i.e., the safety of the hand grenade is released. The slow fuse begins to burn. It burns for (3-4) seconds and then an explosion occurs.



Booby-Trapping of a Sniper Rifle on the Battlefield:

The explosive charge is underground. Its igniter is attached to the trigger guard. When the sniper rifle is lifted, the igniter is released and the charge explodes.



Hanging Pack Deception:

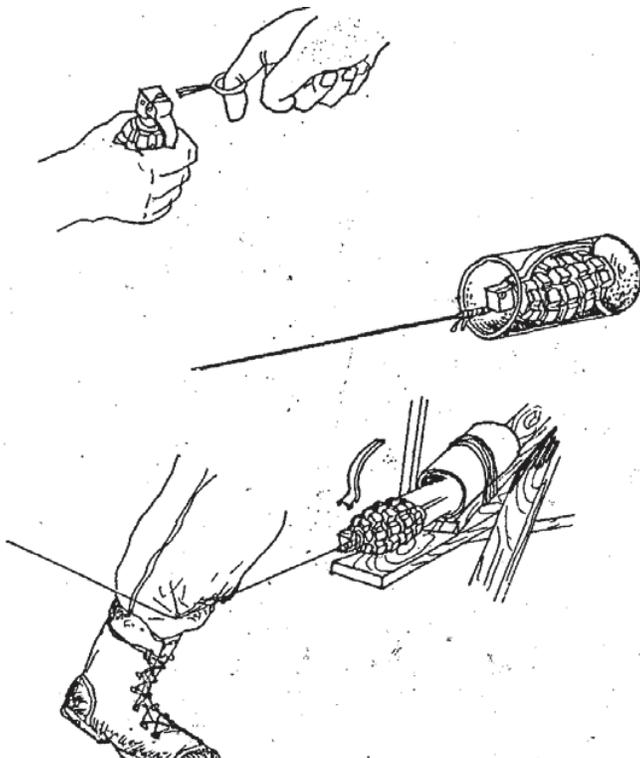
The pack attracts the soldier's attention. He attempts to find out what is inside it and to take it, especially if it is a bag of money or precious objects. The bag is a trap. It is connected by a rope to an explosive charge. When it is pulled, it releases the igniter and detonates the charge.

Remark: Objects which attract attention are the best objects for creating booby traps.



AFGP-2002-000031-0625

Several deceptive booby traps that involve the use of a hand grenade:



We can make a deceptive booby trap using a hand grenade. The enemy detonates the hand grenade himself. We remove the safety ring from the hand grenade. Then, we place the grenade inside a plastic or steel tube the same size as the grenade in order to secure the safety lever well. This prevents the pin from being released.

Then, we attach the tube well to a tree on the side of a road on which the enemy passes. We attach the hand grenade to a trip wire.

The other end of the wire is attached to a wooden stake or tree trunk on the other side of the road. When the enemy passes without paying attention, he pulls the wire, pulling the grenade out of the tube, which releases the safety lever. The pin is released, striking the primer and setting off the grenade.

AFGP-2002-000031-0626

**Another method for creating a booby trap using a hand grenade involves the removal of the safety ring in the grenade. Then, we place the grenade under a rock, so that the grenade is slightly above ground level and the rock is over the safety lever. When the enemy comes without paying attention, he hits the rock, releasing the safety lever and detonating the grenade (See Figure).



Remark: The figure shows a pit that accommodates the grenade inside the ground. The rock must not be too high relative to the ground level to avoid attracting the enemy's attention.

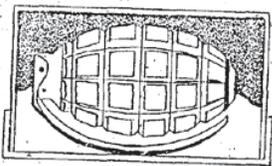
AFGP-2002-000031-0627

Hand Grenade Booby-Trap

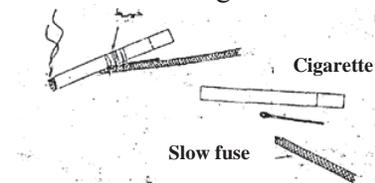
A hand grenade is taken. The safety ring is removed from it. The grenade is placed in a container and held in place from the bottom with pieces of cloth, paper, etc. It is placed so that the top of the container or package remains pressed against the safety lever.

When the container is opened, the safety lever is released by force of the spring, detonating the grenade within 3 seconds.

This method is best used in packages. A person delivers the package at the house of an enemy person. The deliveryman is disguised as a postman to avoid suspicion.



*The Use of a Cigarette to Delay the Detonation of a Booby-Trap.



The materials required are a cigarette, slow fuse, good matchstick, and string.

1. Check the suitability of the cigarette and slow fuse. Generally, a cigarette burns at a rate of one inch every 7-8 minutes.
2. Cut the end of the slow fuse at an angle of 45 degrees.
3. Join the slow fuse with the end of the match and attach them to the cigarette with the string. The location of the attachment to the cigarette will depend on the delay time desired.

Operating method:

When the cigarette is lit, the spark begins to move slowly through it. When the spark reaches the match, it ignites it. The match in turn ignites the slow fuse.

AFGP-2002-000031-0628

*Using a watch in Booby-Traps

1. Delay of one hour or less:

- A. Make a hole in the plastic or glass cover of the watch and attach one of the ends of the circuit to a screw from inside the hole, so that the minute hand can touch it.
- B. Attach the other end of the circuit to the casing.



2. Delay of 12 hours or less:

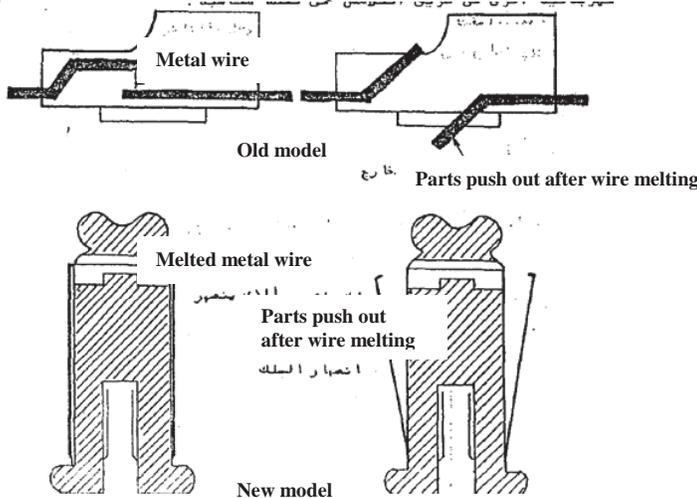
- A. Remove the minute hand.
- B. Make a hole in the plastic or glass cover. Attach a screw through it, so that the hour hand can touch it, and connect one of the ends of the circuit to the screw.
- C. Connect the other end of the circuit to the watch casing.

*Mail Fuse

This switch is used in a telephone exchange in a postal station as an irreversible fuse to activate warning systems in the event of a collapse and the breakdown of devices. In some countries, it is called a "grasshopper fuse."

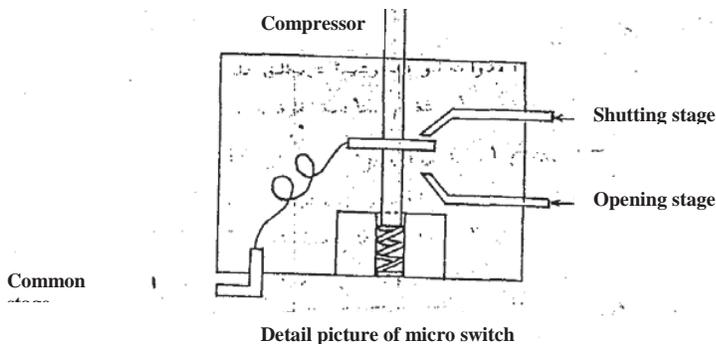
Fuse operating method:

When sufficient electrical current flows through the fuse (switch), metal wire inside it melts. Consequently, the internal spring pushes the components outward. Thus, any of the metal components can be used to complete another electrical circuit through contact at a suitable point.



AFGP-2002-000031-0629

The Micro Switch



Operating principle of this switch: It consists of a switch connected to an electrical circuit in an open state. The switch is closed by a specific method, completing the electrical circuit. The switch comprises a plastic container containing a compressor. The compressor is based on the force of a spring attached under it. In the middle of this compressor, there is a metal ring that conducts current. One of the ends of the current is connected to the ring. Two metal plates are attached to the wall of the container. Both can conduct to the other side of the circuit, depending on the operation of the switch itself, which is either by pressure or through the release of pressure. Thus, if the micro switch is turned on by means of any given method, the current runs through it and completes the circuit to detonate the charge.

Principle of the collapse of an electrical circuit

There are a number of conductors of electromagnetic power that have two ends for contact when electrical current runs inside the coil, and when the current is cut off or becomes weak and insufficient due to the weakness of the power source (battery), the connection points close (come into contact). In this way, the circuit is completed and the electrical current flows. These devices or set-ups are called electrical circuit collapse devices. These devices have two functions or fulfill two purposes:

1. **Anti-movement:** This involves the interruption or disruption of any part of an energy circuit (a circuit connected to a battery). There are a number of ways. The targeted person disrupts the circuit just as he connects another electrical circuit that operates based on one of the previously mentioned circuit principles.
2. **Timing or delay device:** When a battery is connected to this circuit, with time, it weakens and becomes unable to supply the coil with adequate current to maintain separate connection of contact. The life length of the battery can be prolonged or shortened

AFGP-2002-000031-0630

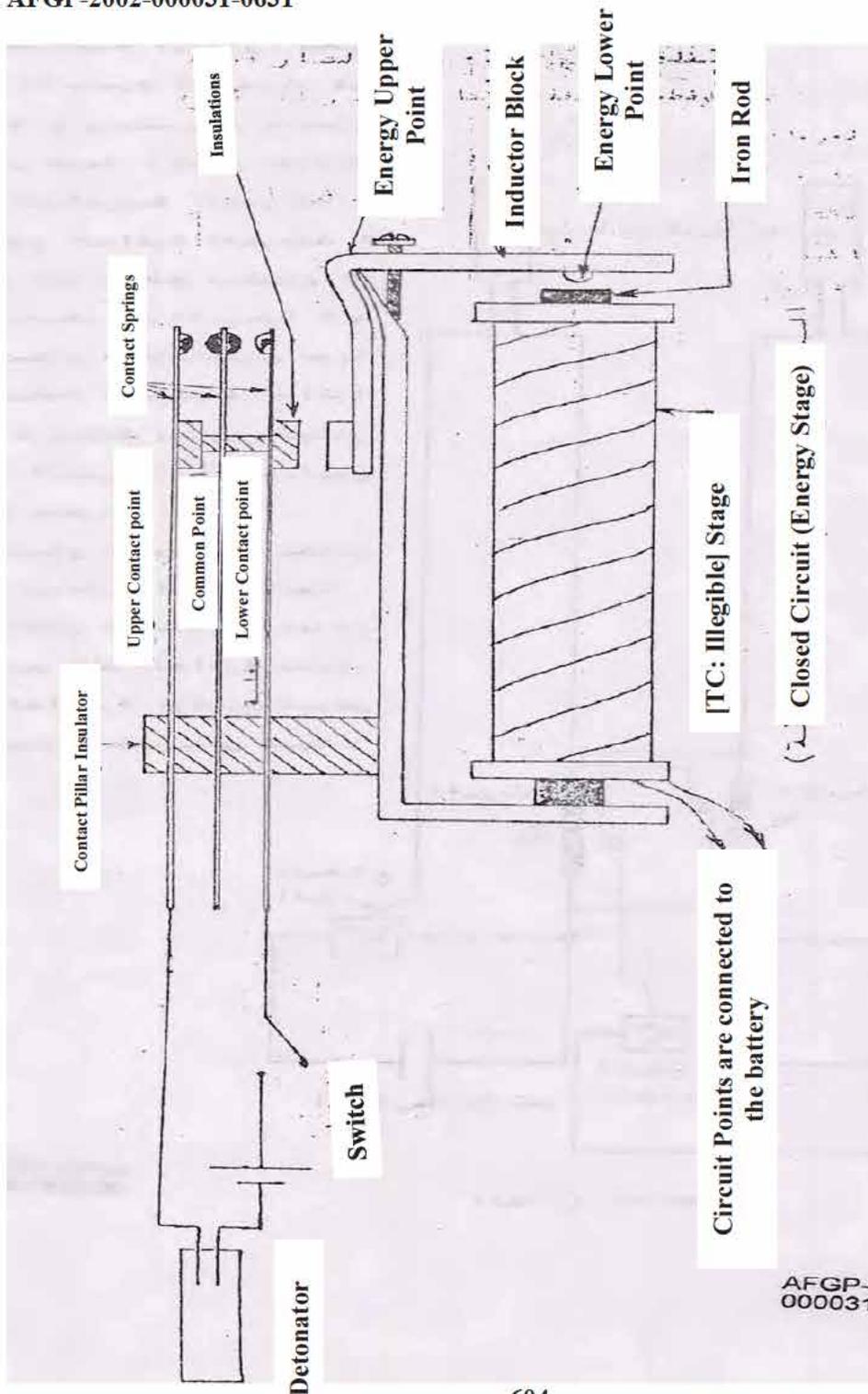
within certain limits by connecting suitable resistance in a series or parallel manner with the coil circuit respectively.

- To prolong the period, connect the circuit in series.
- To shorten the period, connect the circuit in a parallel manner.

The most widespread electromagnetic conductors are:

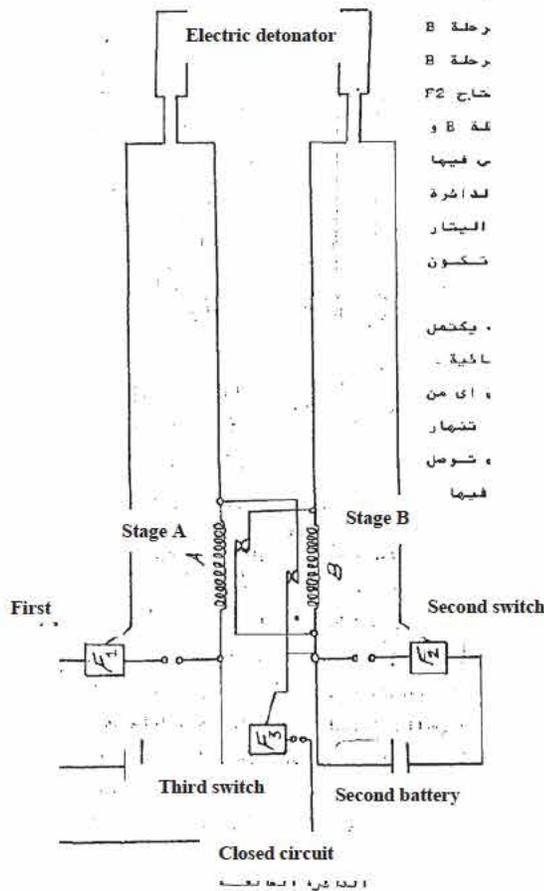
- Energy Relay: When the electrical current flows inside the relay coil, a magnetic field is generated in the iron rod in the core of the coil, in the hammer, and electrical armature inductor block. The bottom end of the block moves toward the iron rod. The upper end of the block attracts the lower contact point away from the common piece. The end of the detonator connects to the upper contact piece which is attached to the common piece, the insulated one from the lower contact piece because of its attraction to the upper end of the block. When the battery weakens and becomes unable to feed the coil with adequate current to keep the contact points separate, the lower contact piece again comes in contact with the common piece to complete the outer circuit, and the current flows so that the other end of the detonator connects directly to the battery pole. See the figure.

AFGP-2002-000031-0631



604

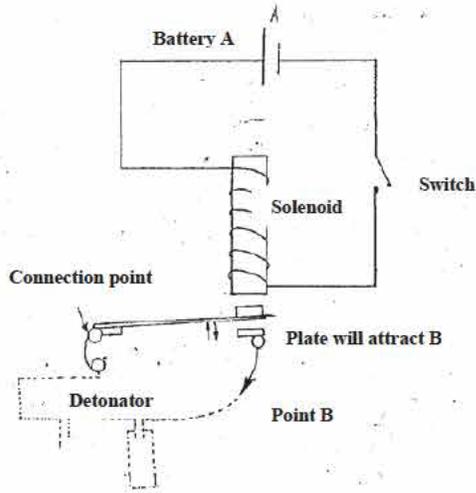
AFGP-2002-000031-0632



- Dual connection relay: When switch F1 is closed, the current flows in stage A, generating a magnetic field in it and attracting the upper point of relay stage B, so that relay circuit B is opened. Then, switch F2 is closed, so that the current flows in relay B, generating a magnetic field in relay B that attracts the lower piece of relay stage A, so that the current flows in relay circuit A and relay A is open...
- The closure of switch F3 completes the electrical circuit.
- When any wire in any of the two circuits is disconnected, the circuit collapses. This results in the connecting of the other parts of the circuit and flow of electrical current in the circuit.

AFGP-2002-000031-0633

*Solenoid:



This device consists of pieces of soft iron which are wrapped by electrical wires in the form of coils. When the electrical current flows in the coil, a magnetic field is generated. The magnetic field attracts moveable objects. Examples of the uses of these devices include the following:

- The solenoid and the car brakes: When the switch is closed, the current flows from battery A to the solenoid, generating a magnetic field in the coil. The coil attracts the middle part on the strip or spring connected to the contact points of the brake. One of the ends of the circuit is connected to point B. The other end is connected to the point that is attracted. When the current in the coil weakens and becomes incapable of generating a magnetic field sufficient to attract the piece, the piece returns to its normal place and comes in contact with point B, thereby completing the circuit and allowing the current to flow.

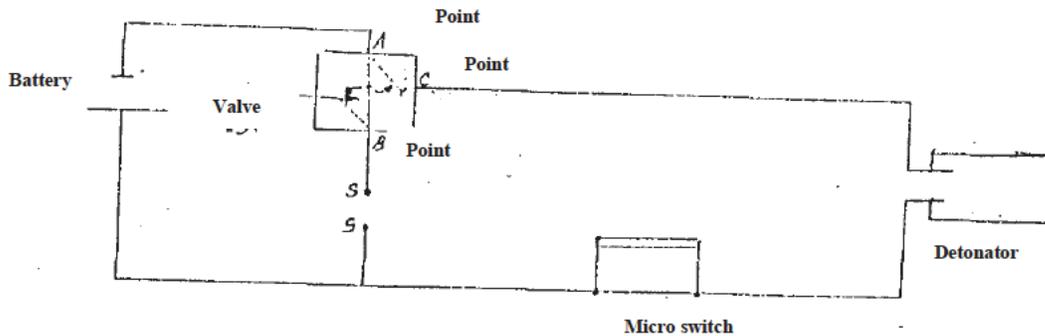
606

AFGP-2002-000031-0634

Valve with micro switch:

Generally, the valve is employed as a safety valve in explosive charges. It is connected to a simple electrical circuit as shown in the next figure. The following steps are taken:

- The micro switch in the electrical circuit is connected to the charge. The connection is anti-lifting in the event of opening, in the sense that the electrical circuit is connected to the common point and the closure point of the micro switch (see figure).
- When a metal object is connected to the contact armature (S-S), the electrical current flows from the battery through the valve, and from point A to point B, as shown in the figure.
- After the current flows, the metal wire in the valve melts, the metal components push outward, and the contact point A comes in contact with contact point C. Then, the circuit is broken in the contact armature, in the sense that the contact between point B and contact armature (SS) is eliminated and becomes outside the electrical circuit.
- When the micro switch is activated in a certain way, the current flows from the negative pole of the battery to point A, then point C, to the detonator through the micro switch to the positive pole on the battery, thereby completing the electrical circuit and allowing the current to flow.

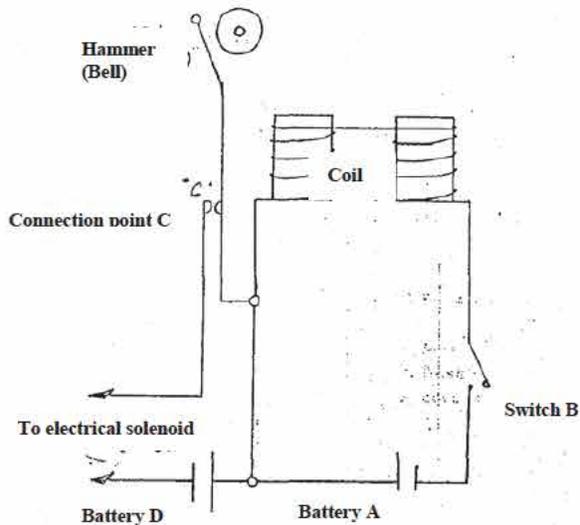


Electrical circuit in a doorbell:

Closed circuit:

- When switch B is closed, the current flows from battery A to the coil, generating a magnetic field in the coil, which attracts the hammer and separates it from contact point C. When the current from the coil weakens, the magnetic field in the coil weakens and becomes incapable of attracting the hammer. The hammer returns to its normal position, thereby coming into contact and connecting with contact point C. Then, current runs in the outer circuit from battery D to the electrical detonator after the circuit is completed.

AFGP-2002-000031-0635



*** ← Diode:

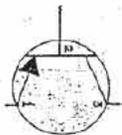
A semi-conductor material made of a number of materials in the form of pairs (two materials); whose atomic number and physical features vary.

1. It is connected using two methods: forward (+) →
2. Backward (-) → (+)

Transistor

It is also a semi-conductor made out of three parts:

1. Emitter
2. Base
3. Collector

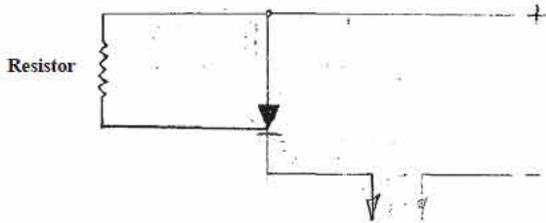


According to the number above, current will not flow from A to C unless it is connected to the (Base). The current moves from the EMITTER to the COLLECTOR if the current is connected to the BASE.

AFGP-2002-000031-0636

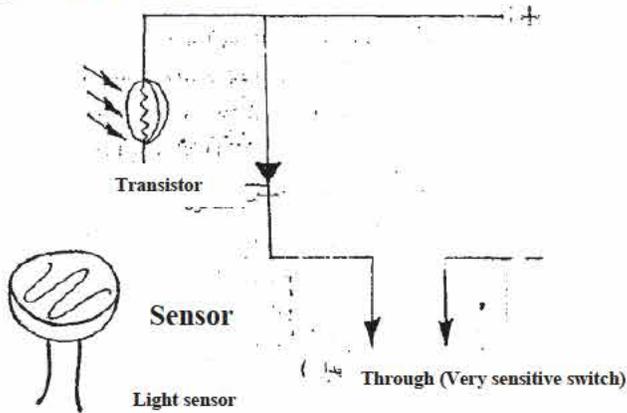
For more details, refer to the electronic books

****Heat sensitive switch**



Change the temperature using a very sensitive switch. This change lowers the resistance and the current voltage becomes greater than the cycle.

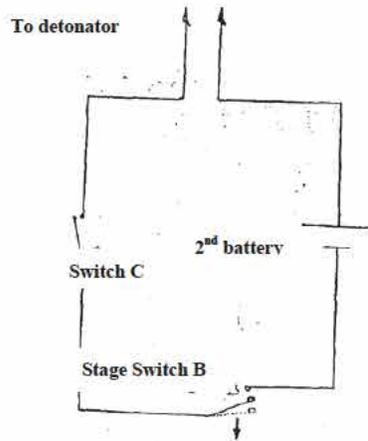
****Light sensitive switch.**



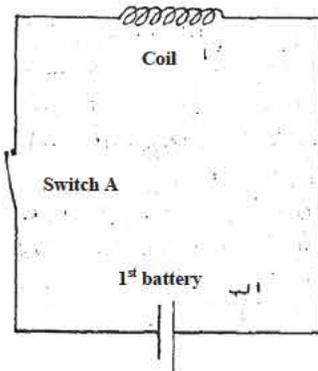
Light sensitive switch.

When the cell is exposed to light, the transistor will not conduct the charges to the detonator, and when the light is gone the charges pass and the circuit is completed.

AFGP-2002-000031-0637

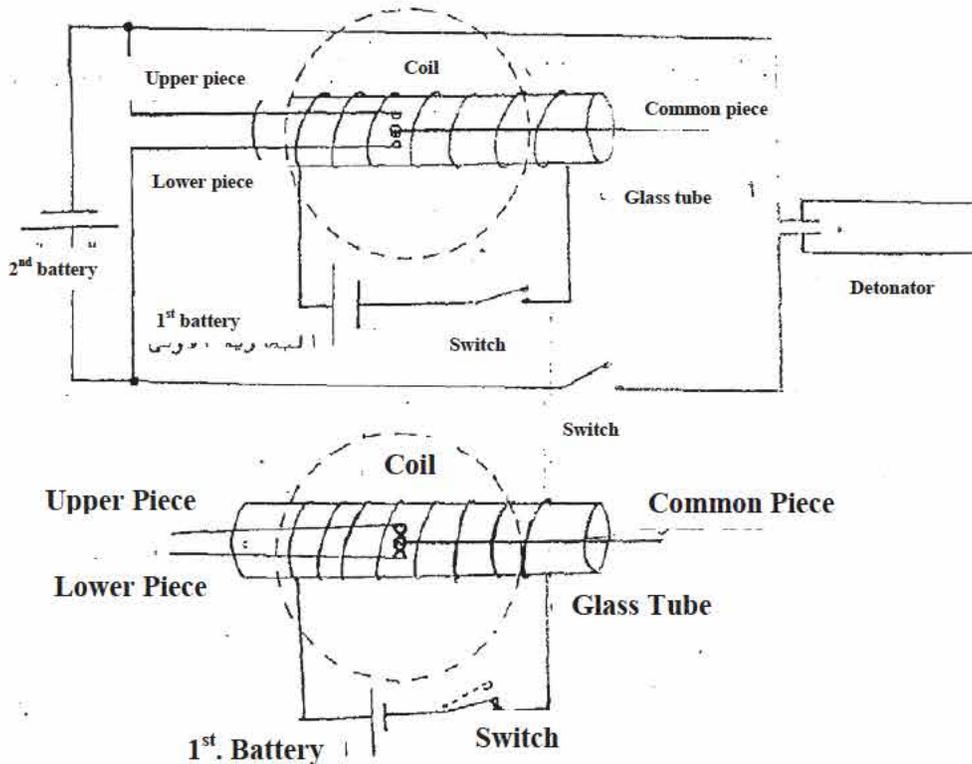


Simple electrical collapse



- When switch A is closed, perhaps manually, the electrical current flows in the circuit, and the coil generates a magnetic field in the coil, forcing relay contact point B to separate. When the current weakens, contact point B returns to its contact position and the current flows. Switch C is closed by a suitable method. The relays are also used in several devices controlled by radio.

AFGP-2002-000031-0638



The relay switch in this device is comprised of a small glass tube which is wrapped by a coil of electrical wires. Inside the tube, there is a number of contact groups (wires or chips) made out of metal. The contact group comprises a common piece, that is generally open (upper piece), and a lower piece that is generally close. When the current flows in the coil, it generates a magnetic field that attracts the pieces together.

The outer circuit is connected to contact groups, so that the circuit is shorted when the current flows in the relay circuit. When the current weakens in the relay circuit, it becomes insufficient to keep the contact groups in contact. When they separate from each other, the outer circuit is completed and the current flows in it (see figure).

611

AFGP-2002-000031-0639

Manufacturing

Explosives are dangerous substances. They differ from other substances in that it is impossible to control them or to predict the results if they explode or react with other substances. This requires extensive expertise and a strong scientific background. In short, the use of explosives requires qualified personnel, e.g., chemists and scientists. Never, never, never... attempt experiments, where we wonder what the result will be if one adds such and such a substance, one must beware of conducting such experiments or even thinking about them. Such experiments require expertise, a scientific background and adequate laboratory equipment. The least of the dangers resulting from playing with explosives include physical harm, disfigurement, and permanent disability...that is, if you or your loved ones are not blown up as result of such activity. Please, please, please pay attention and strictly comply with the instructions. Do not deviate from them at all. This will ensure your safety, the safety of the persons around you, and the safety of your environment.

Precautions before preparing any explosive materials

1. Read the experiment more than once and understand it well. Be familiar with the details and necessary procedures.
2. Conduct the experiment in a well-ventilated location or outdoors. During activity, do not stand in the windward, because some experiments result in toxic gases.
3. Have large quantities of water on hand during the preparation of the experiment. Do not be lax in this regard at all, because water sometimes stops a reaction. Water also thoroughly dissolves many explosives and assets. Therefore, we require an abundant quantity of water. The existence of a water faucet in the area suffices.
4. Quiet nerves and patience are needed during the conducting of the experiment, because many experiments require time, perhaps a protracted period of time in some cases.
5. Compliance with the well-known scientific principle in chemistry, namely that one always adds acid to water and not vice-versa.
6. Bring all of the necessary materials or all of the materials involved in the experiment. Thoroughly familiarize yourself with these materials sufficiently prior to conducting the experiment and also be familiar with their role in the experiment.
7. Strictly comply with instructions and steps in a step-by-step fashion. Proceed from one step to another only in accordance with the sequence of the steps of the experiment. Do not take this lightly if you wish to conduct an experiment safely. Otherwise, you will produce things that you will not be able to control, perhaps causing an explosion and harming yourself.

AFGP-2002-000031-0640

8. In the location where the experiment is conducted, always have first aid supplies as a precaution should errors occur during the conducting of the experiment.
9. The experiment should be conducted by a person who has a scientific or academic background, particularly in chemistry. This is the best way to ensure protection and prevent errors during the preparation process. If such a person is not available, it is important to comply with the steps to ensure a successful experiment and the safety of the persons involved.

Initial explosives

Introduction:

In 1799 AD, Howard, by accident, obtained mercury fulminate by treating mercury with nitric acid and ethylene. This discovery was of a major importance given the inability of black powder to transmit an explosion to the modern explosives that were discovered at the beginning of the age of organic synthesis, 25 years after mercury fulminate was obtained. Today, thanks to humanity's material advancement, we have more explosives than we did then, because gunpowder did not possess adequate energy to displace and destroy hard rock. If matters depended solely on gunpowder, it would not have been possible to execute the large projects of modern engineering. Nor would it have been possible to extract the majority of useful metals. Carbon is one of the least brittle metals that can be extracted using gunpowder because of its frangibility. However, the extraction of carbon using gunpowder is banned in all parts of the world, because carbon dust and the methane that it emits from mine gas, which is set off by gunpowder, producing dangerous, horrendous explosions.

Mercury fulminate and other chemicals and mixtures that we will treat here are exceptional in terms of their sensitivity. They do not explode when they come in contact with flame or are subjected to shock or extreme friction. Moreover, they transmit a blast to other explosives in contact with them.

The discovery of this feature of mercury fulminate, which is no less important than the discovery of mercury fulminate itself, is attributed to Alfred Noble, the man to whom the current technology of explosives is indebted.

During the 50 years preceding 1911, mercury fulminate remained the only primary explosive known and used for industrial and military purposes. In the beginning of the 20th century, the German General Staff began to be concerned about this primary explosive, which loses its sensitivity in moisture, causing many misfired cartridges.

Moreover, the preparation of this primary explosive required mercury, a raw material that Germany lacked. This could result in Germany losing the next war.

AFGP-2002-000031-0641

Therefore, the German General Staff stepped up research to discover another primary explosive that did not require the importation of raw materials and that was not affected by moisture. Both objectives were realized in the discovery of lead azide. This paved the way for the discovery of other primary explosives, some with operational importance, and others with scientific importance.

Structure of primary explosives

Many who have written about the clear relationship in other branches of chemistry between microstructure and the characteristics of material, especially in dye chemistry, have attempted to link explosiveness (Susceptibility Explosions) with structure. They have attempted in vain to analogize from chromogenic (color producing) or chromophoric (color bearing) radicals in paint to search for explosive elements (explosion producing) and explosive tendencies (explosion bearing) groups, in an attempt to link explosiveness with chemical instability. However, this has been shown in only rare isolated cases. Thus, unstable substances are not in explosives. By contrast, there exist extremely stable, explosive molecules, such as trilyte. Primary explosives are the only explosives that exhibit a clear relationship between explosiveness and structure.

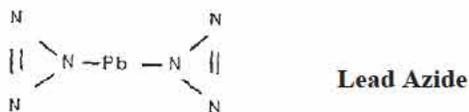
Primary explosives must meet the following two requirements:

1. They must be extremely sensitive, such that they ignite immediately and spontaneously when they touch a flame or hot substance, or are subject to a moderate shock or moderate friction.
2. They must be able to transmit an explosion to other explosives in contact with them.

The first condition requires a weak chemical stability. It thus requires, from the thermal, chemical standpoint, negative heat formation. In other words, the substance must absorb heat. If the substance disperses heat, the dispersed heat must be very low. Thus, we find that mercury fulminate absorbs heat. It has a heat formation equaling 63 calories. The same is true of Lead Azide, which has a heat formation equaling 106 calories.

All primary explosives share an unstable molecular structure, because the molecules of primary explosives are linear, very long molecules. In addition, they contain heavy metals that act in the same way as an additional, irregular weight placed in a wooden column with a large opening, as illustrated in the following formulas of primary explosives.

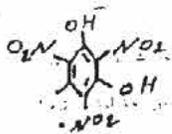
AFGP-2002-000031-0642



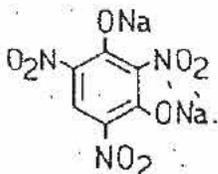
Sodium Azide has a short molecule that does not contain heavy metals, such as lead, silver, or mercury. It is thus unable to explode.

This stability is attributed to molecules that are twisted by internal tensions.

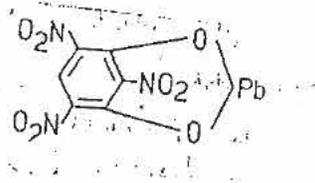
Trinitroresorcinol or Styphnic acid is an explosive, but not a primary.



The same is true of monovalent metal salts, such as sodium trinitroresorcinates, which contain a non-distorted benzene ring.



Bivalent metal salts, such as lead trinitroresorcinate, are primary explosives, because the benzene ring in them is available as a taut bow containing an arrow ready for launch, so that the two phenol oxygen atoms can bond with the bivalent metal.



AFGP-2002-000031-0643

Preparation of primary explosives

1. Mercury Fulminates.

Mercury fulminate appears in the form of needles that are smooth to the touch and yellowish white in color. Like all mercury salts, mercury fulminate is toxic. Its specific gravity is 4.43. It does not dissolve in cold water. It dissolves somewhat in boiling water. Its detonation temperature when dry is 180° C. It explodes instantaneously when it comes in contact with a hot object or is subject to shock or friction. Large crystals of mercury fulminate are much more sensitive than fine crystals. If water is added to the fulminate, many of the dangers of handling it are reduced. Thus, when 30 % of its weight is added to water, it becomes insensitive to friction and shock. If the quantity of water is less than that, only the portion knocked ignites instantaneously, without the reaction becoming sequential.

When moist fulminate comes in contact with oxidized metal, it decomposes slowly, especially when it comes in contact with the copper of primer housings or capsules, because the copper replaces the mercury, forming copper fulminate, which is much less sensitive to shock. This is the reason for (the misfiring) of old, moist casings.

If intense pressure is applied to fulminate, it becomes non-sensitive, as do all explosives. If the pressure exceeds 400 kg/cc, it becomes very difficult to make it ignite instantaneously through subjection to shock or fire. It does not ignite instantaneously by means of a fuse. Rather, it ignites by means of flash ignition like gunpowder.

Fulminate begins to decompose through the separation of the mercury in the form of small drops that are easy to see with a microscope. In these conditions, it is very dangerous and must be destroyed by immersing the materials that contain it in a concentrated solution of sodium hydroxide or ferrous sulfate.

Its detonation speed is 5 km/sec. It reacts with aluminum, which comprises non-exploding substances. It dissolves in acetone. Mercury fulminate can be stored under water, unless there is a fear of freezing, in which case, it is stored under a mixture of water and alcohol. Mercury fulminate has been tried many times and it is very effective. Its chemical formula is $\text{Hg}(\text{ONC})_2$. It is used as a primary explosive in the production of detonators and blasting caps and as bullet and projectile primers together with other substances, such as picric acid, RDX, or PETN.

Mercury fulminate is not used alone in demolition operations, because its destructive force is too weak and inadequate for this purpose.

AFGP-2002-000031-0644

Material needed for fulminates preparation

1. Concentrated nitric acid (90-98 %). This chemical can be obtained from urine and stool analysis centers, blood analysis centers, some pharmacies and chemical warehouses, and university and school laboratories. When this substance is in a concentration of 98 %, its color tends toward yellow. At concentrations of 60-75 %, it is colorless like water.
2. Ethyl alcohol with a concentration of 90 percent (spirit) or medical alcohol (ethanol). Ethyl alcohol, such as spirit, can be obtained from pharmacies and university and medical laboratories. Ethanol alcohol can be obtained from analysis centers, hospitals, and university and school laboratories.
3. Mercury can be obtained from thermometers and laboratories. It is toxic. It can have a number of colors. It is best to use mercury with a silver color.
4. Several laboratory instruments, such as thermometers, cups that can bear high temperatures (Pyrex) that are graduated, a glass stirring stick, filter paper, and a filtering device. These items can be obtained from stores that sell laboratory instruments.
5. Pure water devoid of impurities. Regular water can be used, provided it is pure. A heat source is also needed.

Preparation method

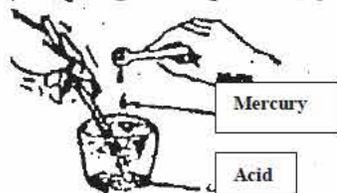
1. The metal solution comprising mercury and nitric acid is prepared by placing 19 cc of pure water into a glass container and then adding 75 cc of nitric acid with a concentration of 85-98 % to the water to dilute it. (Make sure to add the acid to the water and not vice versa, because adding the water to the acid will produce a large increase in the temperature. If the nitric acid is not concentrated i.e., 65-80 %, there is no need to use water with the nitric acid.
2. Dissolve 1 cc of mercury into the diluted nitric acid. Then stir. The dissolving process may take some time. However, it is essential for all of the mercury to dissolve. If all of the mercury does not thoroughly dissolve, the result will be affected. During the dissolution process toxic, reddish vapor will ascend. It is NO₂ toxic gas.
If the mercury takes time to dissolve, the solution can be heated with an indirect flame with stirring after heating.
3. After all the mercury has dissolved in the diluted nitric acid; one will note that the color of the solution is orange greenish. In some cases, the color will be dark green. Now place 113.5 cc of alcohol into a heat-resistant container. Then pour the aforesaid solution slowly and carefully into the alcohol.

AFGP-2002-000031-0645

After pouring, we heat the new solution with an indirect flame to a temperature of 85° C. However, our measure is not the solution reaching 85° C, but rather the ascension of white vapors, which may occur before or after 85° C is reached. As soon as the vapors began to rise, remove the solution. At this stage, the vapors are rising. Be alert to the fact that the resulting gas is nitrogen, which is combustible. If the reaction is strong after adding the mercury solution to the alcohol, suppress the reaction by pouring a small quantity of alcohol into the new solution.

4. During the reaction process, you will note that the mercury fulminate begins to settle at the bottom of the container. After the reaction is completed, let it settle for approximately 30 minutes. Then, filter the solution through filter paper. The granules contain acid traces that must be removed. This is done by adding distilled water to the granules when they are on the filter paper. Do this a number of times until the acid traces disappear. To ascertain that they have disappeared, inspect the granules on blue litmus paper. If the color changes to red, this means that some of the acid remains.
5. After the acid traces have been removed, dry the granules at regular room temperature (20-25° C) but not under sunlight. Then, store this substance in a cool, dry place away from any spark or flame that might affect it. Protect it from shock and friction, because it is very sensitive. The color of the granules will be crystalline gray. This means that they are pure, God willing. Otherwise, they contain impurities, but can still be used.

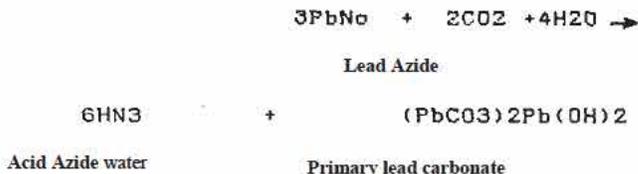
صون محفوظ علی سوانب وند



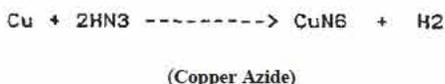
2. Lead Azide

Lead azide is a white, crystalline substance that is not soluble in cold water. It dissolves in boiling water at a rate of 0.5 gram per liter. Its specific gravity is 4.3. The sensitivity of lead azide varies considerably depending on the size of its crystals. It may be the most common explosive that enjoys this key characteristic. If we allow a solution saturated with azide to cool slowly, we obtain large, highly sensitive crystals. If we cool the solution quickly, the crystals that form will be microscopic and much less sensitive. Azide is not affected by moisture at all. It does not attract moisture. Therefore, it ignites instantaneously, even if it contains 50 percent water. If it is moist, it becomes much less sensitive than fulminate. In very cloudy weather, the carbon water decomposes, because the moist carbon gas displaces (the nitrate hydric acid), forming base lead carbons according to the following equation.

AFGP-2002-000031-0646



As soon as the nitrate hydric acid forms, it affects the copper of the primer housing.



Copper azide is dangerous to handle because it is extremely sensitive. Therefore, the azide is packed into aluminum primer housings.

Under the effect of light, the lead of lead azide precipitates, returning to its crystalline form. In this case, its color changes from white to gray, and its strength will differ depending on the duration of its exposure to light and the intensity of light. If lead azide is exposed for a protracted period to sunlight or ultraviolet light produced by a quartz lamp, it will explode.

In addition, lead azide can be destroyed by immersing items that contain it in a large quantity of sodium acetate or ammonium acetate.

The detonation velocity of lead azide is 0.53 km/sec. Its detonation temperature is 245° C. It reacts with copper to form copper azide, which is more sensitive and dangerous to handle.

Therefore, it is best to use it in aluminum tubes. Lead azide dissolves in acetone.

Uses of Lead Azide:

Lead azide is used to ignite a detonation. It is therefore an input in the fabrication of detonators and primers for projectiles, rounds, etc. When it is employed in projectile detonators and primers, it is preferable to add a catalyst such as RDX and PETN to increase the effectiveness of the detonator.

Materials required for preparing lead azide.

- A. Sodium azide, which can be obtained from chemical stores and medical laboratories.
- B. Lead nitrate.
- C. Pure, distilled water. This can be obtained from pharmacies. Or, water can be distilled by condensing it after boiling and vaporizing it.
- D. Filter paper, which can be obtained from bookstores and laboratories.
- E. Glass flasks graduated in different sizes. These can be obtained from stores that sell laboratory instruments and from laboratories.
- F. Wooden rod.

AFGP-2002-000031-0647

G. A small scale.

Preparation method:

1. Place 25 g of sodium azide in a glass container. Then, add approximately the same volume of pure water. Mix thoroughly using a glass rod or glass thermometer until the sodium azide crystals are well dissolved.
2. Place 75 g of lead nitrate in another glass container. Then, add approximately the same quantity of water. Blend and stir well using a thermometer until the lead nitrate is well dissolved.
3. Add the sodium azide solution to the lead nitrate solution. Note that the reaction occurs immediately. Lead azide granules form and precipitate at the bottom of the container.
4. Filter the granules through the filter paper to eliminate the residue of the solution, which is sodium nitrate NaNO_3 . Then, wash the granules with a quantity of water (1/2 cup approximately, the equivalent of 120-150 cc) when the granules are on top of the filter paper.
5. Let the granules dry at normal room temperature (20-25° C). Do not prepare them under sunlight, because this will cause them to explode.
Store the lead azide in glass or plastic containers, and keep the containers away from flame, heat, and static electricity, because they are very sensitive to the aforesaid.

Reaction Equation: $\text{NaN}_3 + \text{Pb}(\text{NO}_3)_2 \rightarrow \text{Pb}(\text{N}_3)_2 + 2\text{NaNO}_3$ **3. Silver Azide:**

Usage: Silver azide is employed as a detonation catalyst. It is employed in the production of detonators and primers for projectiles and rounds.

Required Material:

1. Sodium azide: It can be obtained from chemical stores and laboratories.
2. Silver nitrate: It can be obtained from chemical stores and laboratories.
3. Glass containers.
4. Pure, distilled or regular water: It can be obtained from pharmacies or prepared.
5. Thermometer or glass rod for stirring + filter paper and filtering container.

Preparation method:

1. Place 25 g of sodium azide in a container. Add the same amount of distilled water. If distilled water is unavailable, use regular water. Mix and blend thoroughly with a thermometer.

AFGP-2002-000031-0648

2. Place 75 g of silver nitrate in another container. Add the same amount of distilled water (or regular water if distilled water is unavailable). Mix well.
3. Add the prepared sodium azide solution to the silver nitrate solution. Note that a reaction occurs immediately, and silver azide granules precipitate on the bottom.
4. Filter then wash the granules while they are on the filter paper. Then, filter them and dry them at room temperature 20-25° C.
Keep in a glass or plastic container far from heat, flame, and shocks.

4. Copper Azide.

It is a catalyst used in the production of detonators, capsules, and rounds.

Material needed to prepare copper azide:

1. Sodium azide, which can be obtained from chemical stores and laboratories.
2. Copper nitrate, which can be obtained from chemical stores and laboratories.
3. Distilled or regular water.
4. Glass containers, filter paper, filtering container, and thermometer or glass rod for stirring.

Preparation method:

1. Place 25 g of sodium azide in a glass container. Add the same amount of water. Mix thoroughly.
2. Place 75 g of copper nitrate in another glass container. Add the same amount of water. Mix well.
3. Add the first solution, the sodium azide, to the copper nitrate solution. Note that a reaction occurs immediately, and granules of copper nitrate precipitate. Now, filter them through the filter paper. Then, wash them and dry them at room temperature (20-25° C).

Keep the preparation in glass or plastic containers far from flame, heat, friction, and shocks, because it is extremely sensitive to these factors, even more sensitive than other catalyst substances.

5. Concentrated Salt: (mixture of explosive salts)

This substance is a catalyst explosive. It is sensitive to shock, heat, and friction. It is used in the fabrication of detonators that contain a catalyst substance, such as RDX or picric acid. It also used in capsules and weapons rounds.

AFGP-2002-000031-0649

Needed Material

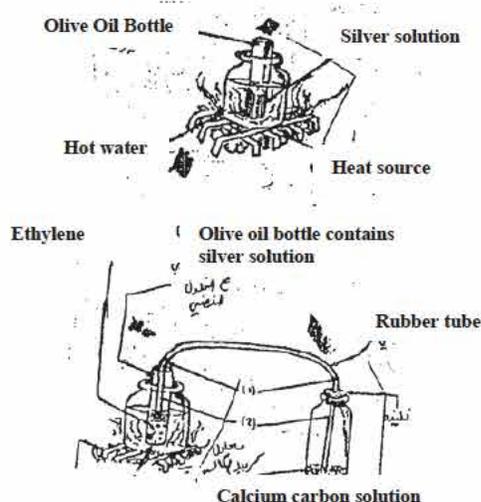
1. Nitric acid with a concentration of 90 percent, which can be obtained from laboratories.
2. A piece of silver with a diameter of approximately 5.8 inches.
3. Calcium carbide (acetylene), which can be obtained from vehicle repair and plumbing shops.
4. Rubber plastic tubing, approx. 1/4 in. inside diameter.
5. Filter paper.
6. Heat-resistant (glass) containers with a suitable plug having a hole drilled to accommodate the entry of the tube into it.
7. Small spoon.
8. Glass container.
9. Heat source.
10. Long, thin container.
11. Adhesive tape.
12. Water.
13. Alcohol.

Preparation method

1. Mix 2.25 tsp of nitric acid and 1.5 tsp of water in a glass container by adding the acid to the water.
 - Remark: We use the water in the preparation process to dilute the nitric acid if the concentration of the nitric acid is 85-98 %. If the concentration is 60-80 %, there is no need to add water.
 - Warning: Nitric acid affects the skin and clothing. If nitric acid falls on your hand, wash your hand with water immediately and beware of the gas rising from the acid. This gas affects the body. It is toxic. It is preferable to wear special gloves, which can be purchased in stores that sell chemical and laboratory supplies. Masks that prevent inhalation of the toxic vapors should also be worn.
2. Dissolve a piece of the diluted nitric acid. The solution will turn green.
It has been noted that it is occasionally important to heat the glass container containing the substances until we obtain the full dissolution of the piece of silver (use indirect heat for a short period).
3. Pour the solution into a glass tube. Then, place it in a flask containing hot water (hot water bath). Granules will form in the solution. Heat the solution to dissolve the granules.
4. Continue heating. After the granules dissolve, add 10 tsp of calcium carbide to a second glass container. Also add 1 tsp of water. After the reaction begins, add 1 tsp of water. Then, connect the two with a tube as shown in the figure.
5. Boil the acetylene through the solution for 5-8 minutes. Brown vapor will come out and white shell will appear in the silver solution.

AFGP-2002-000031-0650

6. Remove the solution or silver mixture from the heat or allow it to cool. Filter the mixture through filter paper into another bottle. Green crystalline granules will appear on the filter paper.
7. Wash the solid granules on the filter paper by placing 12 tsp of alcohol directly on the filter paper on the solid granules. The color of the solution in the container will change to green.
8. Place the solid white granules on white filter paper to air dry.
-Warning: Be careful to handle the explosive granules with extreme caution. Do not subject them to friction or shock. Keep them away from friction and temperature. Store them in a dry, cool place.



6. Acetone peroxide.

Acetone peroxide is a catalyst explosive prepared with hydrogen peroxide, acetone, and sulfuric acid. It is used in the production of detonators containing a booster, such as RDX or sulfuric acid. It is also used in capsules for projectiles and rounds.

Material needed

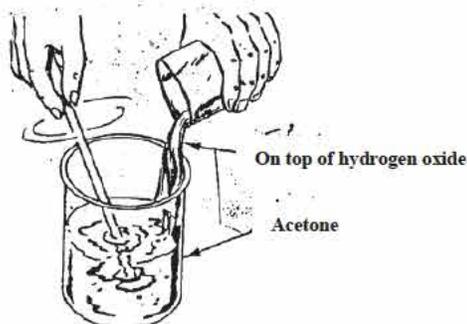
1. Hydrogen peroxide. It is sold in pharmacies and is present in medical laboratories and universities. It is used as a disinfectant, especially in the ear.

AFGP-2002-000031-0651

2. Acetone: It can be found at pharmacies and beauty salons. It is used as a solvent for many substances, including nail polish.
3. Sulfuric acid: It is present in hospitals, laboratories, and vehicle repair shops. It is used in the filler of batteries, etc. In this case, it is not concentrated. To concentrate it, boil it until white vapor is given off. In this way, we obtain sulfuric acid with an acceptable concentration.
4. Glass pipette + graduated glass containers + thermometer + ice, salt, and water + filter paper + large container.

Procedure:

1. Mix 30 mm of acetone with 50 mm of hydrogen peroxide in a glass container and stir well.
2. Cool the mix created in the first step by placing it in a large vessel containing a mixture of water, ice, and salt.
Note: Because the inside container is light, one must make sure that it is stable and does not fall over inside the large container.
3. Cool the solution resulting from this step or leave it until the temperature reaches 5° C.
4. Add 2.5 mm of concentrated sulfuric acid to the mixture created in the previous step. Do so gradually, drop by drop, using the pipette while stirring with the thermometer. Keep the temperature between 5-10° C. If the temperature begins to rise above 10° C, stop adding the sulfuric acid. Then, continue stirring until the temperature drops to 5° C. Then, continue adding sulfuric acid until the 2.5 mm of acid has been completely added.
5. When the sulfuric acid has been completely added, continue stirring for another 15 minutes.
6. Leave the mixture resulting from step 5 inside the solution containing the ice, water, and salt for 12-24 hours, or move the inside container containing the mixture and place it in a box containing ice and leave it for 12-24 hours.

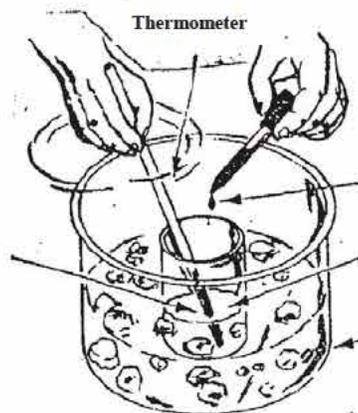


AFGP-2002-000031-0652

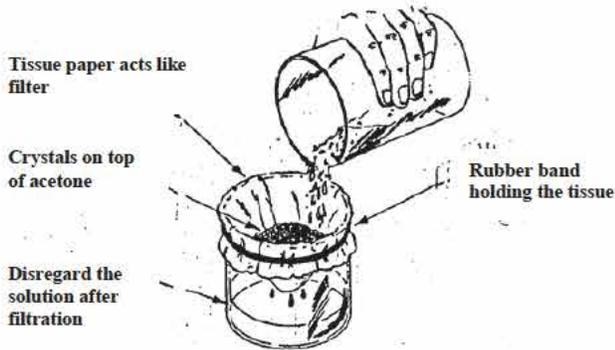
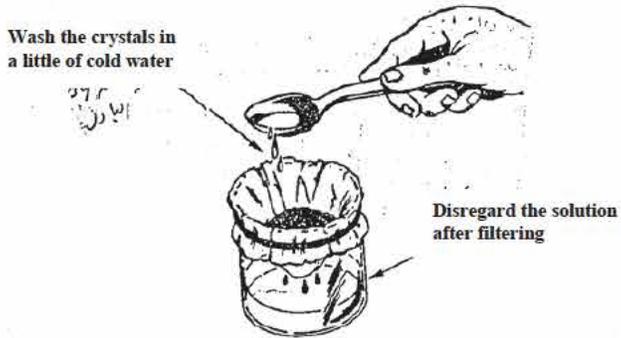
7. After about 12 hours, white crystals will begin to precipitate in the solution on top of the acetone peroxide. The precipitation process should be completed 24 hours after it starts. Warning: At this point, the mixture is explosive. Keep it away from shocks, friction, flame, and sparks.
8. Filter the mixture through paper towels in order to obtain hard crystals on the paper towels.



Crystals on top of acetone oxide appears after (24) hours from storing inside a crushed ice box



AFGP-2002-000031-0653



AFGP-2002-000031-0654**7. Lead picric: [C₆H₂ (NO₂)₃]₂Pb:**

This substance is used in the fabrication of detonators and initiators with a booster similar to it, such as picric acid or RDX. In other words, it is employed as a catalyst explosive.

Material needed:

1. Lead monoxide. This can be prepared or obtained from plumbing shops and laboratories.
2. Picric acid. This can be prepared or obtained from chemical stores.
3. Methanol alcohol. This can be obtained from paint stores. It is used in solvents and antifreeze.
4. Wood or plastic rod.
5. Large glass container.
6. Teaspoon.
7. Scale.
8. Various containers (broad flat container + glass containers).
9. Heat source.
10. Distilled water.

Procedure:

1. Place 2 g of lead monoxide in a separate container and place 2 g of picric acid in another container.
2. Place two tsp (10 mm) of alcohol inside the large glass container. Now, add the picric acid to the container. Then, stir the mixture using the rod.
3. Now, add the lead monoxide to the mixture and stir continuously.

Remark: At this moment, the mixture is considered a primary explosive. Therefore, be on guard to avoid vapors immediately after adding the substance.

4. Now, continue stirring the mixture until all of the alcohol rises and evaporates. After a while, the mixture will thicken.
5. Continue stirring to stop lumps from forming and the reaction of the mixture ceases. A white powder appears with a few lumps remaining.
6. Be very careful so that the new white granules do not adhere to, and dry on, the interior wall of the container. Due to this danger, beware against the substance drying completely inside the container.
7. Now, pour this substance (lead picric) into a flat pan to air dry.

AFGP-2002-000031-0655

8. The mixture can be dried by placing it in a warm bath, not boiling bath, for approximately two hours.
8. D.D.N.P
(D.D.N.P) is a primary explosive employed in the production of detonators. It is used as catalyst explosive with picric acid and RDX.

Material needed.

1. Picric acid. It can be obtained from laboratories.
2. Pulverized sulfur. It can be obtained from agricultural stores.
3. Sodium hydroxide. It can be obtained from laboratories and chemical stores.
4. Sulfuric acid (diluted). It can be obtained from car repair shops. However, it must be boiled (to allow white gas to escape). It should preferably be obtained in concentrated form from laboratories.
5. Sodium nitrate or potassium nitrate. It can be obtained from laboratories or prepared in a laboratory.
6. Water.
7. Heat-resistant bottle (Pyrex).
8. Wooden or glass stirring rod.
9. Glass measuring instrument.
10. Teaspoon.
11. Regular spoon.
12. Filter paper.
13. Pipette.
14. Heat source.
15. Containers.
16. Adhesive tape.

Preparation method:

1. Take two cups. Place 0.5 g of sodium hydroxide in one cup. Mix it with two tsp or 30 milliliters of warm water.
2. Dissolve one spoon or 3 g of picric acid in the water and sodium hydroxide. Store it until step number five.
3. Fetch another cup. Place in it $\frac{1}{4}$ tsp (1 ml) of water. Add to it $\frac{1}{2}$ tsp or 2.5 g of sulfur and $\frac{1}{3}$ tsp (2.5 g) of sodium hydroxide.
4. Place the solution (water + sulfur + sodium hydroxide) on heat source until the color changes to dark red. Remove the mixture from the heat source and allow it to cool.
5. Add, in three portions, the solution of sulfur and sodium hydroxide to the picric acid with the sodium hydroxide mixed in step number two. Continue stirring while pouring. When finished, allow the solution to cool.
6. Filter the mixture through filter paper into another container. Red granules will appear on the filter paper.

AFGP-2002-000031-0656

7. Dissolve the red granules in $\frac{1}{4}$ cup or 16 mm of boiling water.
8. Remove the solution and filter it through filter paper as in Step No. 6. Get rid of the granules that appear on the filter paper.
9. Using an (eyedropper), very slowly add the sulfuric acid to the filtered solution until the color changes to orange and then brown.
10. Add $\frac{1}{2}$ tsp (2.5 g) of sulfuric acid to the solution. Then, let the solution cool.
11. Fetch another container and dissolve $\frac{1}{4}$ tsp (1.8 g) of potassium or sodium nitrate in $\frac{1}{3}$ cup (80 ml) of water in the container.
12. Add this solution to the orange-brown solution in one portion while stirring. Leave the solution alone for 10 minutes. The solution's color will change to light brown.
Warning: At this moment, the solution is a primary explosive. Keep it away from fire and flame.
13. Filter the solution through the filter paper. Wash the granules by pouring 4 tsp or (20 ml) of water over the filter paper.
14. Leave the granules for 16 hours to dry.
Warning: The explosive granules are sensitive to shock, friction, and fire. Keep them in a tightly sealed container.

Remark:

The drying time can be shortened to two hours by placing the granules in a warm bath, as explained above.

9. Preparation of Nitrogen Tri-iodide:

It is considered as the most dangerous explosives and it is the composition of Tri-nitro nitrogen iodide. It is extremely strong and very sensitive to friction.

Preparation method:

1. Add a small quantity of iodine powder and then 20 cm³ of concentrated ammonia hydroxide. Do so extremely slowly, until the red, tarnish granules precipitate in the container.
2. Filter the precipitated material through filter paper. Then, wash it first with alcohol.
3. Dry for use.

Nitrogen tri-iodide must be kept wet because, when it dries, it becomes extremely sensitive to friction and can be set off by the light touch of a hand.

AFGP-2002-000031-0657

Part two

Triggering explosives

Triggering explosives are primary explosives. However, some of them are not used alone in the demolition process but; they are incorporated in the fabrication of detonators to trigger the primary explosive, because their explosive power is greater. Some triggering explosives are employed in demolition. They are considered primary demolition explosives. Boosters, such as RDX, are also incorporated in the fabrication of detonators.

Triggering explosives are distinguished from other primary explosives by the fact that they are less sensitive to external influences but have stronger destructive force. They are called triggering explosives, because they act to boost and facilitate primary explosives in the detonator to set off the main explosives such as TNT, because primary explosives alone may not suffice to set off the main explosive. When the primary explosive is set off, a blast wave is transmitted to the booster explosive and then to the main explosive. Triggering explosives include:

1. RDX.
2. Picric acid.
3. PETN Explosives.
4. HMTD.
5. DDNP and other substances.

1. RDX:

RDX is a main demolition explosive that is highly effective. At the same time, it is considered a booster explosive that is incorporated in the fabrication of detonators. RDX is fabricated from main demolition explosives such as (C3 and C4), as well as other substances. RDX is sensitive to shock. It does not ignite when it comes in contact with fire. Its detonation temperature is 197° C. It detonates at a rate of 8387 m/sec. It does not absorb moisture. Its energy is 1.6 that of TNT. RDX is white in its pure form, which is crystalline granules resembling salt.

RDX can be prepared in two methods:

1. Extraction from C4 explosive.
2. Preparation in a laboratory.

1. Preparation of RDX from C4: Needed Materials:

1. Gasoline
2. C4 Explosives
3. Two, large-neck glass containers.
4. Filtration paper – toilet paper.
5. Glass or wooden rod for stirring
6. Distilled water
7. Glass container or ceramic (like clay jar)
8. Large container
9. Heat source
10. Tea spoon
11. A cup
12. Adhesive tape

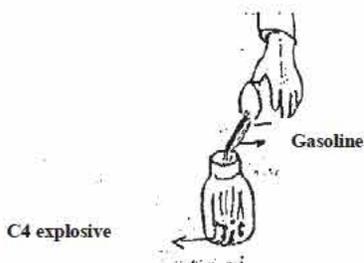
AFGP-2002-000031-0658

Preparation method

1. Place about 15 g of C4 (about 1.5 spoons) in one of the two containers. Add to it 240 cc of gasoline (benzene).

Remark:

This quantity can be doubled to obtain a bigger result. For example, (use about 8 liters of gasoline and one cup of C4).



2. Using the rod, stir the mixture until the C4 breaks down into small granules. Leave the mixture for ½ hour to settle, without stirring.
3. Then, stir and mix again using the rod until small, white granules appear and begin to settle on the bottom.
4. Filter the mixture by pouring it into another container through filter paper. Then, wash the granules trapped on top of the filter paper with ½ cup (120 cc) of gasoline. Get rid of the rest of the liquid, because we do not need it.
5. Now, dry the granules at regular room temperature (20-25° C). Then, keep the granules in a tightly closed container.

2. Preparation of RDX in laboratory using chemical materials.

Required Materials

1. Hexamine Tetramine (Potrubine). These substances can be obtained from laboratories and chemical stores.
2. Ammonium nitrate (with a percentage of nitrogen greater than 33 %).
3. Nitric acid with a concentration of 90-98 %.

Preparation method

1. Place 5 g of hexamine tetramine in a glass container. Add to it 48 g of ammonium nitrate. Mix well.
2. Place the container in an ice bath and begin adding 57 cm of concentrated nitric acid in intervals very gently while stirring.

AFGP-2002-000031-0659

Do not allow the temperature to exceed 15° C.

3. After adding the nitric acid and stirring thoroughly, we place the container on top of an electrical warmer or on a flame, but not directly. Raise the temperature to 80° C. Keep the mixture on this heat for half an hour. Do not allow the temperature to exceed 81° C or to go below 79° C. Use of a temperature regulator is preferable. Otherwise, use an electrical warmer to fix the temperature. In this case, when the temperature reaches 81° C, remove the container immediately. When the temperature drops to 79.5° C, place the container on the warmer. Continue this process for ½ hour.

Warning:

- A. During heating, vapors damaging to the eyes and body if inhaled will escape. You must stay away from these vapors and be cautious. It is preferable to wear a facemask that prevents the gas from being inhaled or coming in contact with the eyes
 - B. When heating and stabilizing the temperature for the period of ½ hour, do not stir the solution, because this is the stage in which the RDX precipitates and stirring will cause the granules to dissolve into explosive gases, especially if the cup is moved abruptly.
4. After stabilizing the temperature for half an hour, wait until the temperature drops to 20° C and it is possible to use a cold-water bath and which means, placing the container in another cold water container.
 5. The RDX pellets will be clear now. The remaining liquid, ammonium nitrate, dissolves in acid.
 6. The RDX crystals are influenced by acid residue. To balance them, filter the crystals through filter paper. Then, place the crystals in another container and add to it a solution of sodium carbonate with a concentration of 5 percent (the solution comprises 5 g of sodium carbonate dissolved in 100 cc of water). The sodium carbonate is added very carefully in intervals, so that the reaction occurs. During the adding process, a noise will be produced. This is the sound of the reaction occurring as a result of the balancing.
 7. In order to ascertain whether the crystals are balanced or not, use yellow detection paper called PH paper (paper for measuring the hydrogen strength in the solution). Red appears if it is acid, blue if it is base, and brown if it is balanced. Do not place all of the base solution at once. Rather, do so in intervals using the PH detection paper. If the color of the paper is brown, stop adding base solution.
 8. After determining that the crystals are balanced, heat the solution until most of the base solution which we have added vaporizes, but not all of it, so that the RDX pellets do not fuse. (If all of the base solution evaporates spontaneously,

AFGP-2002-000031-0660

you will notice the presence of a viscous liquid consisting of melted RDX. Do not pour it).

9. We now place the cup containing the crystals in a container containing cold water, so that the RDX precipitates well. We dry it and then store it in a tightly sealed container. The RDX can be stored for a period of months. RDX is sensitive to friction and shock. However, it is not as sensitive to heat as to be ignited. Caution must be exercised when storing and carrying it.
 - Add drops of nitric acid to complete the formation of RDX.

RDX can be purified as follow.

1. Fetch an empty jar (container). Fill up two-thirds of it with acetone. Heat it and then place it in a container containing with water heated to a temperature of 70-80° C. Add the RDX with a spoon, one spoonful at a time, until all of it dissolves in the acetone.
2. When most of the RDX has dissolved in the hot acetone, leave it alone until it returns to room temperature (25-30° C). Leave it for one hour.
3. After one hour, the RDX pellets reappear. Filter and then dry them.

Storage

1. The purified RDX is kept in a glass container that is tightly closed with a cover. It can be stored for a number of months.
2. RDX is not sensitive to heat and shock. However, it is sensitive to friction. Therefore, precautionary measures must be taken when packaging or carrying RDX.

Remark:

The quantities used in this experiment allow us to obtain 1.5 oz. or 45 g of RDX.

Preparation of Picric Acid explosive
(Aspartic Acid-Melinite) Tri-nitrophenol

Picric acid is considered high explosives. It can be employed as a main charge if prepared in quantities. It can be used as a booster in detonators with primary explosives. In other words, it is a booster. It has other uses. It is employed in the preparation of some explosives such as DDNP, which is a preparation of picric acid salt.

To prepare picric acid, we use aspirin pills containing phenol, sulfuric acid, alcohol, and potassium nitrate.

Required Materials:

1. Aspirin pills (contains phenol)

AFGP-2002-000031-0661

2. Regular alcohol with a concentration of 95 percent (ethylene).
3. Concentrated sulfuric acid. (It can be obtained from car battery stores, or battery water can be heated until white vapors are given off).
4. Potassium nitrate.
5. Water.
6. Filter paper/toilet paper.
7. Large, wide container (basin).
8. Glass or wooden rod.
9. Numerous glass containers.
10. Glass or ceramic container with a wide opening.
11. Cup.
12. Teaspoon.
13. Large tablespoon.
14. Heat source.
15. Adhesive tape.

Preparation method:

1. Crush (pulverize) 20 aspirin pills inside a glass container. Add 1 tsp of water to the container. Then, blend the mixture using the rod.
2. Add ½ cup of alcohol (100-120 cc) to the aspirin pills. Continue stirring well.
3. Pour the aforesaid mixture into another container through filter paper. Get rid of the hard substance that has settled on top of the filter paper - we will not need it.
4. Pour this filtered solution into a glass container with a large opening.
5. Make a warm water bath for this solution, so that all of the water and alcohol evaporates from the solution. A white powder will settle on the bottom of the container.
6. The water must be hot but not boiling, i.e., within 80° C.
7. Now, pour 1/3 cup (80 cc) of concentrated acid into one of the glass containers. Add the white powder to the acid.
8. Heat the new mixture inside a basin of hot water for 15 minutes. Then, remove the container from the hot bath. The color of the solution becomes something between yellow and orange.
9. Add 3 tsp (15 g) of potassium nitrate in three portions to the yellow solution formed previously. Stir during the addition of the nitrate. The color of the solution will become red and then changes to yellow or orange color.

AFGP-2002-000031-0662

10. Allow the mixture to now cool gradually as you continue to stir.
11. Now, place about 1-1/4 cup of cold water into a container. Then, pour the previous solution over it while continuing to stir well.
12. Pour the solution into another container through filter paper. The yellow pellets will be trapped on top of the filter paper. Then, wash the trapped pellets using 2 tablespoons of water.
13. Dry the yellow pellets by placing them in a glass container. Then, place the container inside a basin of hot water for 2 hours as described above or under hot air. Get rid of the remaining solution, as it is not needed.

3. (T.A.C.C.) Tetraminecopper (II) Chlorate.

Chlorate is a primary explosive. It can be fabricated from sodium chlorate, copper sulfate, and ammonia. This explosive is used in the same way as RDX and sulfuric acid, i.e., it is incorporated in detonators.

Required Materials:

1. Sodium chlorate
2. Copper sulfate. It can be obtained from experimentation or from home construction warehouses.
3. Ammonia hydroxide
4. 95% of Pure Alcohol.
5. Wax – mud – tar.
6. Water.
7. A narrow opening bottle – A bottle of Coke.
8. Rubber Band
9. Teaspoon
10. Mixing container
11. Heat source
12. Filtration paper
13. Container (pot)
14. Adhesive tape
15. Cup

Preparation Method:

1. Measure 1/3 tsp (2.5 g) of sodium chlorate. Place it inside a bottle with a wide mouth. Add to it 10 tsp of alcohol.
2. Place the bottle with the wide mouth inside a container holding hot water. Add 1 tsp (4g) of copper sulfate to the mixture. Heat the mixture for only 30 minutes before it reaches the boiling temperature while continuing to stir.

Warning: Keep the solution away from flame and fire (heat).

Remark: Maintain the volume of the solution by adding a quantity of alcohol equaling approximately the amount that vaporizes every 30 minutes.

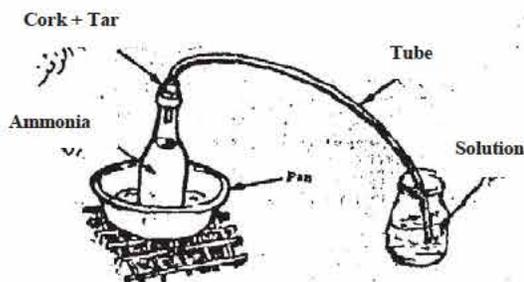
3. Remove the solution from the hot water and allow it to cool. We will observe that the color of the solution will change from blue to light green.

641

AFGP-2002-000031-0663

Filter the solution using filter paper into another wide-mouth container, and store the solution so that it is ready for Step (6).

4. Add 1 cup (250 cc) of ammonia to the thin-mouthed glass container. Place a tube inside the neck of the bottle, so that the tube extends approximately 4 cm into the bottle. Seal the tube well using wax, clay, or preferably pitch if any is available. This is done if a regular bottle, such as a cola bottle, is used. However, there are bottles with thin-neck used specially in laboratories, with a good seal lever.



5. Place in the bottle a long tube that extends into another bottle that contains the alcohol chlorate – sulfur solution (Step No. 3). Heat the bottle containing the ammonia using a container that holds hot water, without letting it boil, for a period of 10 minutes.
6. Boiling (explosive) ammonia gas moves through the tube to the solution of chlorate, alcohol, and sulfur. This process occurs in approximately 10 minutes, until the color changes to light green to dark blue. Continue transferring the rest of the gas from the solution for a period of 10 additional minutes.

Warning:

At this moment, the solution is still a primary explosive. Keep it away from fire, temperature, and flame.

7. Remove the solution from the container. Reduce the quantity or volume until 1/3 of the original volume remains through evaporation in the free air or in an air conduit.

Remark:

Pour the substance into a flat container to expedite evaporation.

8. Filter the solution using filter paper inside a wide mouth bottle to filter out the crystalline pellets. Then, wash the pellets with 1 tsp of alcohol. Then, leave the pellets for 16 hours.

AFGP-2002-000031-0664

Warning

The explosive is sensitive to shock, friction, and fire. Keep it in a tightly sealed container.

4. Preparation Method of (H.M.T.D.)

H.M.T.D is a primary explosive. It can be prepared from hexamine, hydrogen peroxide, and citric acid. This explosive is employed as a primary explosive in the fabrication of detonators with a booster such as Picric Acid or RDX.

Required Materials:

1. Hexamine (tetramine) (protoprin) (methenamine). These items can be obtained from pharmacies.
2. Hydrogen peroxide (hair straightener and hair lightener).
3. Citric acid, which is lemon salt. It can be obtained from stores.
4. Containers, bottles, cups.
5. Filter paper.
6. Teaspoon.
7. Large container.
8. Water.
9. Adhesive tape.

Preparation method

1. Place 9 tsp of hydrogen peroxide into a container.
2. In three portions dissolve 2.5 tsp of crushed hexamine into the hydrogen peroxide.
3. Let the solution cool for 30 minutes by placing it inside a container holding cold water.
4. In five portions, dissolve 4.5 tsp of crushed citric acid into the solution of hexamine and hydrogen peroxide.
5. Leave the solution alone until solid pellets appear on the bottom of the container.

Remark:

The precipitation of the pellets will take 8-24 hours. At this time, the mixture is a primary explosive. Therefore, keep it away from fire and flame.

6. Filter the mixture through filter paper into another container until you obtain the pellets.
7. Wash the pellets by placing 6 tsp of water directly on them over the filter paper. Get rid of the liquid inside the paper.
8. Place these pellets inside a container to dry.

Warning:

Handle this explosive with extreme caution. Do not expose it to shock or friction. Protect it from fire and friction. Store it in a cool, dry place.

This experiment, using the aforesaid weights, yields 5.2 g of explosives.

AFGP-2002-000031-0665

(PETN) explosives

The PETN substance is the abbreviation for Pentaerythritol Tetranitrate. It was first produced in 1894. It is one of the most powerful explosives. It was prepared in Germany based on scientific chemical research, by nitrating pentaerythrite in concentrated nitric acid to produce an explosive. When experiments were conducted with respect to this explosive, it provided a high detonation speed, high density, and high stability, which made it possible to handle it and use it for military purposes.

The problem faced at the time was the absence of substances that could reduce the mass production from the raw part of pentaerythrite. Thus, the early substance was used only in laboratory experiments until WWII.

In WWII, PETN was used in bombs, rockets, etc. Germany produced approximately 1440 tons of this substance a month.

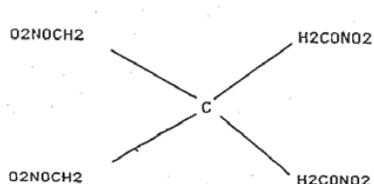
Chemical and physical characteristics

- A. PETN is a white crystal that feels like powder in its pure state.
- B. It melts at 140° C.

Boiling temperature:

- 160° C under pressure of 2 mm of Mercury.
 - 180° C under pressure of 50 mm of Mercury.
 - 200° C under pressure of 760 mm of Mercury.
- (Air Pressure at Sea Level)

* The molecular structure of PETN is as follows:



Volumetric ratio of Nitrogen in the material = 17,722%
This corresponds to the military specifications of PETN.

644

AFGP-2002-000031-0666

Production of PETN

It can be produced by different methods and the steps can be summarized as follows: -

1. Nitration:
This is done by adding pentaerythrite to a specific quantity of nitric acid at a specific temperature and the precipitation of a raw PETN occurs after a sufficient time.
2. Wash the resulting substance in distilled water until it is acid free. Then, filter and dry well.
3. Crystallization:
This is done by adding second time the PETN substance to a warm acetone. Then, pour the precipitate into cold water.
4. Wash the pure PETN in distilled water a number of times. Then, filter and dry well.
5. The PETN is now ready for use.

Detailed presentation for preparation method

Required Materials:

1. Two pans or two containers for heating purposes with measurements of about 10 x 10 cm.
2. One or more glass stirring rods.
3. Cylindrical, heat-resistant glass container with a capacity for about 4000 ml and volume graduations.
4. Heat-resistant, graduated test tube.
5. Thermometer.
6. Large-size filter paper.
7. Glass funnel.
8. One or two plastic buckets.
9. A plastic or wooden spoon (used to handle crystals).
10. A number of containers for drying purposes, shaped like a frying pan or (a tray).
11. A glass, long, heat-resistant, cylindrical, graduated container (large-size, graduated test tube), about 1000 cm.
12. Paper cups.
13. A mask or glasses to protect the eyes and face from acid during work.
14. Rubber gloves to protect the hands.

Required Chemical Materials:

The below mentioned amounts is appropriate to produce 500 ml of PETN substance. If we want to change the quantity, then this will depend on the concerned person.

1. 600 cc of pure nitric acid with a concentration of (98%). (Do not use acid with a low concentration).
2. 250 cc of high-density pentaerythrite.

AFGP-2002-000031-0667

3. 1500 cc of pure acetone.
4. A spoon of sodium carbonate, pure (powder).
5. Approximately 800 cc of distilled water.
6. 30-40 gallons of regular water (household tap water).
7. A set of red litmus paper to detect and test for the presence of acid (to check the PH in the acid range of 7 to 14).
8. A set of blue litmus paper to detect and test the (PH) level within the acid range of 0-7.
9. A quantity of crushed ice.
10. These materials can be obtained through chemical or pharmaceutical companies.

Preparation Method:

Nitration steps:

1. Take a container with a 1000-cc capacity (the long container). Place in it 600 cc of nitric acid. Make sure to wear a mask on the face and eyes as well as gloves.
2. Place the container containing the acid into the large container. Secure it well in the center.
3. Place the crushed ice around it to the level of the acid. Pour regular water on the ice until it reaches the 700 cc mark on the side of the large tube. (Be careful not to allow any water or ice to fall into the acid and change its concentration).
4. Position the thermometer, attaching it securely to the wall of the tube using a clamp, so that the mercury chamber is slightly below the level of the acid. Make sure that the thermometer is clear and easy to read.
5. Gently place the glass rod inside the nitric acid.
6. Place a warming plate on a heat source that has just been extinguished. Use the heat distributed on the container without directly exposing the container to flame.
7. With both hands, carry all of the components gently and carefully and place them on the heating plate.
8. Use the graduated test tube to measure 250 cc of pentaerythrite in a paper cup. You may need two paper cups.

* Next Stage preparation:

9. Start stirring the acid carefully with the glass rod, keeping the burner turned off.
10. Look at the thermometer. When it drops to 10° C, slow the circulation and start pouring the pentaerythrite bit by bit by from the edge of the paper cup until it begins to simmer.

AFGP-2002-000031-0668

When the temperature begins to rise and reaches 20° C, stop immediately and wait for the solution to cool to 10° C. Then, add the pentaerythrite using the same method until you have poured 250 cc without the temperature exceeding 20° C.

Now, move the thermometer and stirring rod. Then, remove the small container from the large container and place it aside for 4-5 minutes until the reaction subsides.

Final Stage:

- 11.** After 4-5 minutes, the crystals mixed with the acid will settle at the bottom of the container. The crystals will be yellow to white and with an acid layer on top of them.
 - * Take the container and cause the acid to rise very slowly without taking with it the substance that has precipitated on the bottom.
 - 12.** Fill the plastic bucket with two gallons of distilled water (if the house water is pure and not treated with chemicals, it can be used directly).
 - 13.** Pour the PETN with the remaining suspended acid into the bucket, stirring with the glass rod.
 - * Now, stir the contents in the bucket again for 15 seconds using the glass rod. Wait until the PETN settles.
 - * If a layer of foam appears on the surface of the bucket, stir the surface of the water with the glass rod until a spectral film remains on the surface and the crystals settle on the bottom.
 - 14.** After the crystals settle, take the blue litmus paper and place it in the bucket. You will note that its color changes to red, indicating that a small quantity of acid remains. Therefore, the precipitate must be washed again. Pour the water from the bucket without the precipitate being poured out with it. Then, repeat Steps 12, 13, and 15.
 - 15.** Take another piece of blue litmus paper and test the water to ascertain whether it contains any trace of acid. Repeat this process until you see no trace of acid on the blue litmus paper.
 - 16.** Now, pour out the water from the bucket, taking precautions so that the granules are not poured out as well.
 - 17.** Place filter paper in the glass 1000-cc funnel. Collect the crystals that have precipitated. Place them on the filter paper inside the funnel and leave them there for 30 minutes until the water is completely gone.
 - 18.** Take the substance and spread it inside a container, such as a tray, in the form of a thin layer, so that it dries fully over a period of several days. After that, the substance will be in the form of white, smooth crystals.
 - 19.** Keep the substance in another glass container to continue with the following steps, and then wash the containers so that they can be reused again.
- * Recrystallization of PETN.

AFGP-2002-000031-0669

20. Place 1 tsp of sodium carbonate in a long, graduated test tube. Add to it 88 cc of distilled water. Stir it until the carbonate dissolves fully. This process is intended to balance the solution so that any acid or alkaline traces disappear from it. It becomes balanced quickly, (because the carbonate reacts with the acid quickly, and no trace of it remains).
21. Fill the large container with a capacity for 4000 cc with 1500 cc of acetone. Place the glass rod in it. Place the container on top of a heating plate. Place the thermometer in the container.
 - * Begin to stir with medium speed. Turn on the burner. During this step, the temperature of the acetone must be kept between 50-60° C.

Remark:

The acetone becomes combustible at 55° C and is very dangerous. Be careful to keep the acetone away from any direct heat source.

22. Add 2 tsp of PETN to the acetone. Allow the PETN to dissolve fully. Then, the temperature will drop gradually. When the temperature reaches 50° C, take two additional spoons and pour them into the acetone. Wait for a second until the temperature drops to 50° C. Then, wait until the temperature of the solution rises to 60° C. Repeat this process until all the PETN are dissolved.
23. Stabilize the temperature of the solution at 55° C to begin the process of balancing the solution.
24. Bring red and blue litmus paper.
25. Fill a graduated test tube with the sodium carbonate that was dissolved in step (20).
26. Add 10 cc of the sodium carbonate solution to the acetone solution mentioned above.
27. Now, place the blue litmus paper in the mixture. If the color turns to red, add 10 cc and so on, repeating the process until you obtain a blue color.
 - * Now, check using red litmus paper. If it turns blue, the solution is balanced. At this point, turn off the heating switch.
28. Immediately fill a bucket with two gallons of cold water. Pour into the water the contents of the mixture and stir it well. Newly formed, pure, clean PETN crystals will form and precipitate quickly.
29. Inspect the water in the bucket with red paper and blue paper. You will find that there is no reaction. If the blue paper changes to red, a reaction is occurring and which means that, there has being a mistake done and it will be necessary to repeat the procedures again since you cannot succeed by proceeding further.
30. Now, wash the PETN precipitate to rid it of the acetone. We repeat the previously mentioned washing step (12 through 17) until the acetone odor is gone.

AFGP-2002-000031-0670

31. After the precipitations of the granules, pour water on them and place them to dry the moisture from them until the percentage of water is 5-10 percent of the volume of the granules.

32. The final PETN will not feel moist when you rub with your fingers. Do not rely on simply touching it.

When the PETN dries, it will be ready for use. It should be kept in a cool and dark place.

Part Three
The High Intensity explosives

1. Trinitrotoluene (TNT) Explosive:
C₆H₂(NO₂)₃CH₃
TNT is also scientifically known as: Trilita.

TNT is the most famous military explosive. It is commonly used in most countries of the world. It has multiple uses in military and civilian fields. TNT is a solid. One of its good features is that it can be dissolved at 82° C or less, down to 71° C. It can therefore be poured into projectiles with different shapes and shaped according to the material that will contain it.

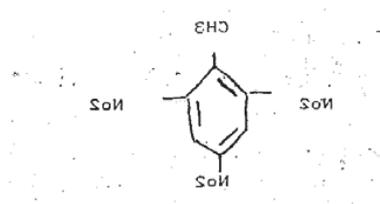
In its pure form, TNT is white tending toward a somewhat yellowish color. It has low sensitivity to shock (0). Its detonation speed is 7000 m/sec. Its detonation temperature is 288° C. It has a bitter taste. It does not react with metals. It is not affected by moisture. It does not dissolve in water. It dissolves in alcohol and acetone in a water bath at a temperature of 81° C. When you wish to dissolve it, place the quantity to be dissolved in a glass container. Then, place this container in a basin of warm water heated to 71 or 81° C in the case of very pure TNT. Then, pour it into the desired place. Leave it for a while. It will return to its solid state.

TNT is produced in a three-step nitration toluene process. (Nitration is the insertion of an NO₂ group into any chemical compound).

1. Toluene of Nitration into Mononitrotoluene (MNT).
2. Toluene of Nitration into Dinitrotoluene (DNT).
3. Toluene of Nitration into Trinitrotoluene (TNT), which is the last stage that yields TNT, God willing.

* Chemical Structure of TNT

AFGP-2002-000031-0671



Preparation Method:

Required Materials:

1. Toluene: It is a colorless liquid with a distinctive odor. It boils at 110° C and melts at 93° C. It does not mix with water. It is ignited by the flame of a smoker. It is used as a solvent for many organic substances. It can be obtained from university and school laboratories, medical laboratories and chemical stores.
2. Nitric acid with a concentration of 90-98 %. It can be obtained from hospitals and from urine, stool, and blood analysis centers and laboratories, or by preparing it in a laboratory as explained below.
3. Sulfuric acid with a concentration of 90-98 %. It is obtained from laboratories and hospitals. Sulfuric acid in vehicle repair shops is not good sulfuric acid and is not concentrated. If sulfuric acid cannot be obtained from other sources, the sulfuric acid obtainable from vehicle repair shops can be employed, but only after boiling it until it gives off a white vapor. Sulfuric acid should not be boiled directly, but rather in a warm water bath.
4. Temperature regulator. If a temperature regulator is not available, a heat source such as an electrical warmer and several heat-resistant glass containers used in laboratories can be employed. These items are sold at laboratory instrument stores and are available at laboratories. A thermometer and glass rods for stirring are also required.
5. Pure, cold water.

Preparation Method:

1. Prepare two cups that are separate from each other. Each cup should contain a certain percentage of sulfuric and nitric acid and water. We should be able to distinguish between the two cups.
 - a. First cup: Place in it 1 cc of water. Then, add to it 16.7 cc of nitric acid and 45.6 cc of sulfuric acid. Then, place it aside until it is used.

Remark:

If the two acids are concentrated (85-98 %), add the aforesaid percentage of water. If the two acids are not concentrated (65-80 %), there is no need to add water and we dispense with it, because the purpose of the water is to reduce the concentration of the two acids.

AFGP-2002-000031-0672

- b.** Second cup: It contains 11.2 cc of nitric acid and 7 cc of sulfuric acid.
2. This is the start of the first stage, i.e., preparation of the mononitrotoluene, where we will be taking 5.6 cc of the mixture in the first cup and place it in a glass container. Then, we place the container in another, large container containing ice (ice bath).
 3. When the temperature of the aforesaid solution drops to 5-10° C, add 11.4 cc of toluene carefully to the solution while stirring slowly.
 4. After pouring the toluene, slowly stir the solution for a bit. Then, remove it from the ice bath. Begin warming it to 50° C while stirring. This is done by placing the container on top of an electric tabletop stove (beware of placing it directly on fire).
 5. When the temperature reaches 50° C, we add 28.4 of the mixture in the first cup, keeping the temperature from exceeding 50° C.
 6. After pouring the 28.4 cc of the mixture in the first cup, raise the temperature to 55° C and keep it there for 10 minutes. Begin to count the 10 minutes when the temperature reaches 55° C.

Remarks:

- a.** If a temperature regulator is not available, fix the temperature for 10 minutes on an electric tabletop stove. Thus, if the temperature reaches 55.5-56° C, remove the container. If the temperature drops to 54.5° C, place the container on the burner again, and so on, for 10 minutes, making sure that temperature does not exceed 53° C or drop below 54° C. If these limits are exceeded, the experiment will not be affected significantly if the limits are not exceeded again. However, try to pay close attention, so that the limits are not exceeded more than once.
 - b.** Always pay attention to the thermometer and measure the temperature of the solution slightly below the surface of the solution and not at the bottom of the solution (container). The temperature that should always be measured when heating any solution is the surface temperature, because the reaction occurs at the surface for the most part.
7. After 10 minutes of regulating the temperature of the solution, you will note an oily layer forming on top of the mixture. Lower the temperature now to 45° C. Then, remove the oily layer and get rid of the remaining acid. We thus complete the mononitrotoluene stage.

Remark:

Before removing the oily layer, it is preferable to place the solution in a slender container. This makes it possible to remove the oily layer completely, as the oily layer will be clear given the small surface area.

AFGP-2002-000031-0673

8. Now, we begin the stage of preparing the dinitrotoluene. Add 18.3 cc of the mixture in the first cup to the oily liquid. Do so carefully and slowly, without stirring (the oily layer). At the same time, increase the temperature to 83° C. Then, fix the temperature for ½ hour. As mentioned above, start calculating the ½-hour period when the temperature reaches 83° C.
9. After ½ hour, lower the temperature to 60° C and keep it there for ½ hour. After ½ hour, you will note the appearance of an oily layer. Remove it using a pipette and get rid of the acid. We thus complete preparation of the dinitrotoluene.

Warning:

We can use the dinitrotoluene (acid remaining after the removal of the oil layer) to prepare C3 explosive. Or, we can add to the dinitrotoluene ammonium nitrate with aluminum in the following proportions: 20 percent aluminum + 80 % dinitrotoluene. This yields a usable explosive inasmuch as the dinitrotoluene is an explosive. However, it has weak sensitivity.

10. We now begin to prepare the final stage, which is trinitrotoluene TNT. We add 18.3 cc of concentrated sulfuric acid to the oily layer while increasing the temperature to 80° C, but no higher. The sulfuric acid must be done carefully and slowly without stirring.
11. When the temperature reaches 80° C, add 18.3 cc of the mixture in the second cup while keeping the temperature at 80° C. Do not increase the temperature. Add the mixture in the second cup carefully, slowly, and without stirring.
12. After adding the contents of the second cup, increase the temperature to 104° C. Then, keep the temperature at 104° C for 3 hours.

Remark:

As above mentioned, if a temperature regulator is unavailable, use an electrical tabletop stove. In this case, pay close attention to keep the temperature from rising above 104.5° C or 105° C. If the temperature exceeds 104.5-105° C, remove the container until the temperature drops to 103-103.5° C. The temperature should go no lower than 103- 103.5° C. Then, place the container again on the warmer. We proceed in this manner, keeping the temperature from exceeding 105° C and going below 103° C. If the temperature exceeds these limits spontaneously, we do not desist from completing the experiment, as this will not affect the experiment significantly. However, try not to exceed these limits if possible, because any repetition will affect the result of the experiment.

13. After the temperature has been fixed for a period of three hours, we lower it to 100° C and then will be fixed for 30 minutes.

AFGP-2002-000031-0675

It is not possible to remove them using the aforesaid method. In order to remove them in each of these three stages, place the remaining acid mixture, which is primarily composed of concentrated sulfuric acid, in 200 or 300 cc of very cold water. Because of the reaction the nitric acid, you will note the appearance of a significant quantity of congealed substance. Remove it with a spoon or by filtering. Add it to the first quantity and continue the experiment.

654

AFGP-2002-000031-0676

Nitroglycerin

The Swedish scientist Alfred Nobel (1833-1896) discovered nitroglycerin. He was also the first to produce dynamite, which consists of nitroglycerin with inert substances that reduce sensitivity. Then, Alfred Nobel discovered multiple types of dynamite. God willing, treat the types of dynamite in the explanation of the nitroglycerin preparation process. Nitroglycerin is prepared in two ways. The first uses glycerin, and the second uses alcohol (methanol).

- Preparation of Nitroglycerine Using Glycerin

Required Materials:

1. Sulfuric acid with a concentration of 90-98 %. It can be obtained from laboratories, hospitals, and chemical stores.
2. Nitric acid with a concentration of 90-98 %. It can be obtained from analysis centers, hospitals, laboratories, and chemical stores.
3. Glycerin. It can be obtained from pharmacies. It is used as skin oil.

Preparation Method:

1. Place 5.2 cc of concentrated nitric acid in a heat-resistant glass container. Then, place the container in an ice bath until the temperature reaches 15° C.
2. When the temperature reaches 15° C, begin to add 15.6 cc of sulfuric acid to the nitric acid. Do so carefully at intervals. The temperature must not exceed 20° C. Stir while adding.
3. After adding all of the sulfuric acid, bring the temperature down to below 10° C. Begin to add 2 cc of glycerin, drop by drop. You can stir, but do so extremely carefully.

Remark: Measure the temperature of any solution at the surface. In other words, (the mercury chamber should be just below the surface of the solution).

4. After adding all of the glycerin, stir carefully for five minutes. An upper layer of nitroglycerin will appear.
5. Place in a container 5 cc of sodium carbonate with 100 cc of pure, cold water. Then, use an eyedropper to remove the nitroglycerin layer. Place it in a base solution, so that it becomes balanced. Repeat this step 2-3 times, because the nitroglycerin will be unstable if any acid remains.
6. Remove the nitroglycerin layer using an eyedropper. Place the nitroglycerin in a clean, tightly sealed glass container.

655

AFGP-2002-000031-0677

Method for Preparing Nitroglycerin Using Alcohol (Methanol)

Required Materials:

1. Concentrated nitric acid.
2. Concentrated sulfuric acid.
3. Methanol alcohol. It can be obtained from pharmacies, construction supply stores, and laboratories.

Procedure:

1. Place 16.5 cc of nitric acid in a container. Place the container in an ice or cold water bath until the temperature reaches 15° C.
2. Now, add 24 cc of concentrated sulfuric acid carefully. After pouring all of the acid, wait until the temperature reaches 10-15° C as you stir.
3. After the temperature reaches 10-15° C, add 15.5 cc of methanol alcohol carefully and slowly at intervals of about 1 cc per 30 seconds. Do so slowly while stirring very slowly.
4. At this stage, be very careful if the solution boils as a result of the intense reaction, drop immediately in cold water. If the temperature exceeds 28°C, add more ice. If the temperature exceeds 33-75° C, cover the solution or pour it into cold water lest an explosion can occur.
5. After pouring all the alcohol, continue stirring for 30-40 seconds.
6. Leave the solution in a cold bath for 5 minutes. Then, you will observe a layer of nitroglycerin clearly. It is the top layer.
7. With the help of a pipette, we will remove the nitroglycerin layer and place it in a clean glass container.
8. Prepare a base solution comprising 5 cc of sodium carbonate and 100 cc of cold water. Then, add the nitroglycerin to the solution while stirring, until the traces of acid are eliminated from the nitroglycerin. Then, remove the nitroglycerin layer. Keep the nitroglycerin in a sealed, glass container. Cotton can be saturated with nitroglycerin and tightly sealed to preserve the nitroglycerine for a period exceeding 24 hours. The basis of the fabrication of dynamite is nitroglycerin, because dynamite consists of nitroglycerin to which other substances are added to reduce its sensitivity. Dynamite has a number of states in which it is dangerous: when it is solid and when it sweats, when oily drops appear on the surface of the dynamite explosive. To avoid these dangers, scientists involved in the fabrication of explosives were able to find solutions. We will treat these solutions when we present the types of dynamite employed.

AFGP-2002-000031-0678

Fabrication of Dynamite

Nitroglycerin is a liquid that is highly sensitive to external influences. Therefore, it is difficult to use as an explosive when it is in a liquid state. Inert substances must be added to reduce its sensitivity and facilitate its handling according to the following types and percentages:

1. 32% nitroglycerin + 28% sodium nitrate + 29% ammonium oxalate + 10% bone + 1% cotton.
2. 26% nitroglycerin + 33% potassium nitrate + 41% bone.
3. 40% nitroglycerin + 45% sodium nitrate + 15% bone.

The preparation process is carried out by mixing the aforesaid percentages with each other. This is done carefully. There are easier ways to prepare simple dynamite, namely to spread out a layer of cotton and then saturate it with nitroglycerin. The cotton saturated with nitroglycerin can be kept by sealing it. When it is employed, it is packed into a pipe or is placed in a glass container with iron balls surrounding it. It is set off by a regular or electrical detonator.

4. A dynamite and which is not subject to solidification: 66.4% nitroglycerin + 16.6% nitroglycerin + 5% collodion (nitrocellulose) + 10% sodium nitrate + 2% sawdust; Dynamite not subject to sweating: 75% nitroglycerin + 8% dinitrotoluene + 5% nitrocellulose (collodion) + 10% sodium nitrate + 2% sawdust.
5. Gelatin dynamite: 62% nitroglycerin + 2.5 % nitrocellulose + 27% potassium chloride + 7.5% sawdust + 0.5% calcium carbonate.
6. Safety dynamite and it is used in coal mines. According to the laws in force, it should be used in mines because; the temperature resulting from the explosion of any other type of dynamite could affect the mine.
 1. 29% nitroglycerin + 70% ammonium nitrate.
 2. 20% nitroglycerin + 1% nitrocellulose + 55% ammonium nitrate + 22% sodium chloride + 2% cellulose.

Destruction of Dynamite:

Frozen dynamite can be destroyed or reactivated. Dynamite that is sweating must be destroyed. Dynamite in which the nitroglycerin has been disturbed and has become acid must also be destroyed.

Sweating occurs when one sees oil spots on the paper cartridge case. Other signs include the damaging of the explosive. You can also press laboratory filter paper onto the brown packaging paper. Oily spots that appear on the paper indicate sweating, and the dynamite must be destroyed.

AFGP-2002-000031-0679

If the oily spots are visible with the naked eye, the disturbance is extremely dangerous and the dynamite must be destroyed immediately.

Acidification can be ascertained by placing blue litmus paper in contact with the explosive. The changing of the color of the paper to red indicates acidification. The intensity of the color and the speed with which it forms is directly proportional with the acid disruption. The acidic dynamite must be destroyed however weak the acidity is.

Dynamite is destroyed in the open air and as follows.

Sifted sand or soil is spread in the shape of a (terrace) that follows the wind direction, with a semi-inclined cross section with a height of 10 cm. The length of the upper base must be slightly greater than the length of the explosives. The explosives are placed on this sand or soil terrace, without pressing, after their covers are removed, so that they touch each other well. They are ignited on the downwind side with a slow fuse (without a detonator) after all persons present have withdrawn to a safe location, which must be beyond the physical boundaries of the wave's effect.

Dynamite burns in the open air regardless of how spoiled the dynamite is. If the wind direction changes, the flame of the explosives that have not burned heats up to a temperature that is higher than the detonation temperature and the dynamite explodes spontaneously. Therefore, it is advisable to act cautiously according to the instructions stated above to avoid unpleasant consequences.

The paper covers of the cartridges should be burned taking the same precautions mentioned above. Each cover is attached to another cover using adhesive paper. The covers are arranged on a wire like a barbeque skewer.

A large number of papers contaminated by nitroglycerin can pose the same danger as that posed by the explosives themselves, although the danger area is much smaller. If for some reason the cartridges cannot be destroyed, they should be immersed in a concentrated solution of caustic sodium. In this case, there is no need to remove the covers, although they should be opened sufficiently to facilitate the entry of the solution. After three or four days, they can be stirred. They must be stirred cautiously, because may be some nitroglycerin in the cartridges remained without the saponification process. Stirring is accomplished with a stick or wooden spatula to form a thin porridge. Stir daily. After three or four days, check for the presence of excess sodium and (whether the center is extremely alkaline using red litmus paper). Then the porridge can be poured into a river, irrigation ditch, or salt waterway.

Preparation of Tetryl

Tetryl is employed as a booster for the detonation of medium-effect explosives such as TNT. It is therefore incorporated in the fabrication of detonators.

Required Materials:

1. Dimethylaniline: It can be obtained from laboratories. It is used in the production of paints.

AFGP-2002-000031-0680

2. Concentrated sulfuric acid.
3. Concentrated nitric acid.

Preparation Method:

1. Place 3.6 cc of dimethylaniline in 19.5 cc of sulfuric acid. Do so slowly while stirring. Be careful to keep the temperature from exceeding 30° C. Stir well to dissolve the aniline and acid. Test the solution to determine whether the aniline has dissolved completely in the acid by placing a small quantity of the solution in water. If the water becomes cloudy, this indicates that the aniline has not dissolved well. In this case, continue stirring. Check again to determine whether it is well dissolved.
2. Now, bring another glass container. Place in it 12 cc of nitric acid. Add to it 3.2 cc of sulfuric acid. Do so carefully.
3. Place the first container (containing the aniline + sulfuric acid) in an ice bath. Wait until the temperature is less than 15° C. Then add the second container (containing the sulfuric and nitric acid) to it carefully. Stir continuously, keeping the temperature from exceeding 15° C.
4. After adding all of the contents of the second container to the first container, remove the container from the ice bath. Begin to heat until a temperature of 40° C is reached using indirect flame. Upon reaching this temperature, remove the container immediately from the warmer and place it in the ice bath immediately, because, if the temperature exceeds 40° C, a reaction may occur, and the temperature may rise immediately to 300° C.
5. After removing the container and placing it in the ice bath, lower the temperature to 20° C.
6. When the temperature of the solution reaches 20° C, add all of it to another container holding 200 cc of cold water. The tetryl granules will precipitate. Filter then dry the granules at room temperature (20-25° C). Then, store them in a sealed glass or plastic container.

Preparation of Tetryl:

Take 3 cc of dimethylaniline. Place it in a cup. Pour 50 cc of 98 % sulfuric acid on it, keeping the temperature from exceeding 25 ° C, which requires creating an ice bath.

Then, stir well to ensure good dissolution. Place a drop of solution in pure water. If the water does not become murky, good dissolution has been achieved.

Take 50 cc of nitric acid. Place it in a cup. Cool it well. Begin to add a mixture of nitric acid, taking care to keep the temperature from exceeding 30° C. Then place on the mixture a quantity of very cold water. You will note that the mixture becomes yellow orange.

Mix well then filter through filter paper. Then dry the tetryl granules.

AFGP-2002-000031-0681

Remark:

- * At the final stage of the precipitation of tetryl, the substance will often collect in a pasty mass. If this occurs, continue stirring vigorously. You will note that the pasty substance changes into granules. Continue the experiment with filtration then drying.
- * If the tetryl granules do not form well, filter again. Then, let the liquid stand for six hours. Then, filter it again to obtain the greatest possible quantity from the experiment.

Nitromethane Liquid explosive

In 1945, nitromethane liquid was discovered as a result of experiments conducted on liquid mononitromethane and which resulted to the explosion of several rockets in their launchers.

- * One of its primary characteristics is that it is a liquid. Consequently, it has a regular density. Regular density is one of the main factors that affect its use as an explosive. The more a solid explosive is compacted, the greater its density becomes. At high densities, a solid explosive loses its ability to detonate under the effect of a regular detonator. Thus, solid nitromethane's sensitivity to detonation diminishes the higher its density is.
- * There are other important points concerning density. Most solid explosives have a maximum detonation speed at a certain density. If the density is increased beyond that certain density, the detonation speed will diminish. Regular density is a very important issue, especially when preparing improvised, manual charges in a certain way or when preparing other charges, such as shaped charges. In order for these special charges to be effective, the explosive must reach maximum detonation speed quickly and regularly.

Solid explosives must be packed cautiously inside the container in order to maintain a suitable density (because of the formation of spaces), whereas liquid explosives can be poured.

- * Liquid explosives have an additional characteristic, in that they retain their form, either as pure liquid or liquid tinted (with food coloring).

- * (Nitromethane)

It is one of the safest, cheapest organic liquids. It has a medium boiling temperature. In view of its detonation and chemical stability, it can be ignited by a flame with a low degree of danger of explosion. It is relatively insensitive to shock at regular temperatures. However, its sensitivity increases as the temperature rises. When exposed to a test shock (being dropped from a height of 2 m), a nitromethane charge weighing 2 kg exploded.

660

AFGP-2002-000031-0682

Compared with nitroglycerin and which exploded under similar circumstances when it was dropped from a height of 35 centimeters.

Nitromethane with a low degree of sensitivity will detonate only when a very strong detonator is employed to set it off. It cannot be detonated using a No. 8 detonator (2 g of mercury fulminate). However, it can also be detonated by adding 1-8 g to tetryl. (Nitromethane's non-sensitivity to boosted detonation is the main reason for which it is not regarded as a variable explosive).

Nonetheless, by adding certain compounds, nitromethane can be rendered more sensitive to detonation by a No. 8 detonator. This is accomplished by employing compounds with a strong ammonia base, such as ammonia water (household glass cleaning fluids) aniline, ethylenediamine, or triethylamine. It has been found that these substances increase sensitivity strongly when one of them in the amount of (5-6 % of the weight) is mixed in. When sensitive nitromethane detonates, it is quite evident that it is a strong explosive. The resulting force is 22-24 percent stronger than TNT, i.e., 1.24, and the detonation speed is 6200 m/sec, compared to 6900 m/sec for TNT.

The destructive force depends on numerous factors, and not just detonation speed. Nitroglycerin is (1.4-1.8) times stronger than TNT. It has a detonation speed of 7700 m/sec. When nitromethane is mixed at a percentage of 95 percent with ethylenediamine in the amount of five percent, a completely colorless (water-like) fluid is produced. This fluid can be handled much more safely than any other commercial or military explosive. It is called PLX.

In 1965, another liquid explosive, (AEREX), was produced in the US Special Forces Command. It consists of a mixture of 94 percent nitromethane and 6 percent aniline. In other words, (1/16) gallon of aniline is added to 1 gallon of nitromethane. Liquid nitromethane explosives are prepared easily by mixing a sensitive substance with the nitromethane. After mixing, (the explosive can be poured through water and then detonated after it settles on the bottom), as its density is heavier than that of water, so that it settles on the bottom. In other words, pour it into containers. Place the filled containers in a basin of water as a safety factor to prevent the liquid explosive from knocking directly on the bottom during pouring. You should not get rid of this substance by pouring it down the drain, because there is a possible danger of an explosion occurring given that the explosive is heavier than water, it will settle in the drainage ditch, and will not be carried away with the water.

AFGP-2002-000031-0683

Nitromethane Liquid Explosives

- A. Ethylene liquid: It can be obtained from laboratories. It is toxic. It is more effective with nitromethane.
- B. Ammonia liquid: It is used to clean glass.
- C. Ethylenediamine liquid: It can be obtained from laboratories.
- D. Nitromethane with ammonium nitrate (solid nitromethane).
- E. Nitromethane with saw dust.

Following are details of the preparation method

- A. Nitromethane with aniline, or ammonia liquid, or ethylenediamine.
 - 1. Place 100 cc of liquid nitromethane in a glass container. Add to it 5 cc of liquid ethylene, or liquid ammonia, or ethylenediamine.
 - 2. Stir until the solution is well mixed. It is then ready for use. Store it in a glass container with a tight seal.

Another method involves adding an idolizer to the nitromethane directly at the time of the detonation (without storage). Then, place a detonator in the liquid and detonate.

B. Nitromethane with sawdust:

- 1. Take 2 g or 20 g of sawdust after sifting with a fine sieve. Place it inside a container. Then, pour on it 1 gram or 80 g of liquid nitromethane. Stir until well mixed.

For usage, place the substance in an iron pipe. Seal the two ends leaving a space for the detonator inside the explosive, or place the mix in a glass container with steel fragmentation balls.

C. Solid nitromethane:

- 1. Place 160 g of fine ammonium nitrate (powder) in a glass container and pour over it 14 g of nitromethane without stirring.

Remark:

When pouring the nitromethane over the ammonium nitrate, do not allow the ammonium nitrate to move or shift from its location.

- 2. Seal the glass container well and leave it for 3-5 minutes until the ammonium nitrate absorbs the nitromethane thoroughly. Then, seal well until use, because the ammonium nitrate absorbs water vapor from the air, which affects the effectiveness of the explosive.

Warning:

Ammonium nitrate should always be kept well sealed, because it is a high absorber of atmospheric moisture.

AFGP-2002-000031-0684

If ammonium nitrate is exposed to moisture, it can be placed in a broad glass container, which is then placed on an electrical warmer. It is important for direct flame not to be applied to the container if flame is employed. The container is kept on the warmer for a period of time, until the ammonium nitrate granules are free of moisture.

Naphtha explosive (explosive benzene) H.T.H

This explosive can be fabricated from calcium hypochlorite (H.T.H) and gasoline. This charge can be set off using a detonator.

Required Materials

1. 7% calcium hypochlorite H.T.H (swimming pool disinfectant).
2. Gasoline.
3. Mixing Container.
4. Stirring stick.
5. Measuring container (cup, spoon).
6. Storage container.
7. Detonator (blasting cap).
8. Strong metal tube.

Preparation Method:

1. Place 32 g or 27 parts per weight of calcium hypochlorite in 1 g or one part benzene weight in a container. Then, mix and stir inside the container.
2. Mix the mixture well and slowly with a wooden stirring stick.

Method of Employment:

1. Place the mixture in a strong steel pipe, wherein the pipe is completely sealed and the explosive blast becomes powerful in the presence of its fragments.
2. Insert the detonator into the pipe and close the open end of the pipe by extracting the fuse using the cap.

Remark:

Do not press the mixture forcefully downward into the pipe. Do not turn the pipe upside down while the explosive is inside it.

Nitric acid / Nitrobenzene (Hellhoffite)

It can be prepared by nitration of benzene + nitric acid and it is easy and safe to prepare. It is more powerful than TNT.

Required Materials:

1. Nitric acid (can be prepared or can be obtained from car battery stores. It is 90% concentrated and its specific weight is = 1.48).
2. Mononitrobenzene (nitration of benzene) or (nitrobenzene) and which can be obtained from pharmacies under the name (Al Mirban Oil) or it can be obtained from stores that sell chemicals, or from factories.

AFGP-2002-000031-0685

It is use as a solvent.

3. Acid-resistant volume measurement container (glass, ceramic).
4. Acid-resistant mixing rod.
5. Blasting cap.
6. Wax.
7. Metal pipe with one cover and adhesive tape.
8. Bottle or jar.

Procedure

1. Add a volume (1 cup) of mononitrobenzene to two volumes (two cups) of nitric acid in a bottle or jar.
2. Mix the ingredients well using the acid-resistant rod.
3. Now, the explosive is ready to employ if it is packed into a pipe. Then, the detonator is inserted without immersing it in the liquid explosive. The liquid explosive can also be placed in a glass container. Ball bearings can be placed inside the glass container, or the container can be surrounded with fragmenting metal.
- For storing, it should be kept in a tightly sealed container.

Carbonite explosive

This explosive is a moist mixture that can be made from aluminum powder combined with tetrachloride or tetrachloroethylene. This mixture can be detonated with a blasting cap.

Required Materials

1. Aluminum powder. It can be obtained from paint and building supply stores.
2. Carbon tetrachloride or tetrachloroethylene, from pharmacies + the materials used in fire extinguishers.
3. Stirring rod made of wood.
4. Measuring container.
5. Measuring cup.
6. Storage container.
7. Blasting cap.
8. Cylinder, pipe, cylindrical container.

* Preparation Method:

1. Take two parts aluminum powder (2 Parts) and one part (1 Part) of carbon tetrachloride or tetrachloroethylene liquid. We place the powder in a mixing bowl and we add the liquid to the powder while stirring with a wooden stick.
2. Continue stirring until its viscosity becomes like honey.

AFGP-2002-000031-0686

Caution:

When adding the liquid to the powder, an odor or gas will escape from it. This gas should not be inhaled, because it is dangerous and toxic.

3. Store the explosive in a (waterproof) and moisture-proof container until it is due to use, because the mixed liquid will explode quickly if it is not confined or tightly sealed.

Remark:

The mixture will detonate in this manner in period of 72 hours.

Method of Employment:

1. Pour the mixture into an iron pipe or tightly closed pipe opened at one end. If a pipe is unavailable, use a cylinder can.
2. Insert the blasting cap until the detonator's head appears on the surface.

Observation:

If the pipe cap is well sealed, it will increase the effectiveness of the detonation.

Urea nitrate explosive

Urea nitrate can be a major source of explosive ordnance. It is easy to prepare from nitric acid and urine and can be set off with a blasting cap.

Required Materials

1. 90% Nitric Acid.
2. Urine from humans or animals.
3. Two 2-gallon containers for heating and a glass or ceramic measuring container resistant to nitric acid.
4. Filter paper.
5. Aluminum powder.
6. Heat source.
7. Measuring container.
8. Water.
9. Adhesive plastic.
10. Detonator.
11. Pipe (cylinder).

Preparation Method

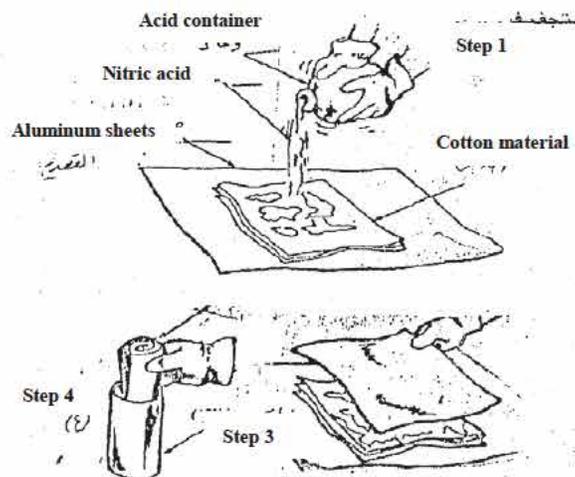
1. Boil a large quantity (10 cups) of human or animal urine on a heat source until the urine is reduced to 1/10 of its original volume.
2. Filter the urine into another container and get rid of the material that settles on the filter paper.
3. Slowly place 1/3 cup of nitric acid on the filtered material. Leave the mixture alone for one hour.

AFGP-2002-000031-0687

4. Filter the mixture obtained in step number 2. Crystalline urea nitrate will appear on the filter paper.
5. Wash the urea nitrate by pouring water directly over the paper.
6. Take the urea nitrate off the filter paper and we allow it to dry to for approximately 16 hours.

Note:

The drying time may be reduced to two hours if you place the crystalline urea nitrate in a warm container for drying.



Usage Method

1. Pour the crystalline urea nitrate inside a steel pipe that has one open end.
2. Insert the blasting cap into the urea nitrate. The device is ready for detonation.

Note:

This explosive can be more powerful if it is mixed with aluminum powder at a rate of 1 cup of aluminum powder for every four cups of urea nitrate. Tightly close the pipe to increase the effect of the explosion.

Note:

In step number 5, when you wash the urea nitrate by pouring water over the filter paper, you will note that the granules dissolve completely. These granules can be washed over a cup. If they dissolve, leave the substance until the water evaporates and the granules appear.

666

AFGP-2002-000031-0688

Cellulose Acid Explosive

This type of explosive acid can be fabricated from nitric acid and white paper or cotton cloth. This explosive can be detonated with a blasting cap.

Required Materials

1. Nitric acid.
2. Paper on which nothing is written.
3. White cotton cloth.
4. Acid resistant volume measuring container (glass or ceramic).
5. Tin sheets from the market.
6. Protection gloves.
7. Blasting cap.
8. Wax.

Preparation Method

1. Put the gloves on your hands.
2. Spread out the paper or linen cloth on a sheet of tin. Pour the nitric acid over the paper until the paper is saturated with the nitric acid. To pour, use an acid-resistant measuring container, such as one made of glass, ceramic, or wood.

Caution:

The acid will burn the skin and destroy clothing. If any acid comes in contact with the skin, wash quickly in water and do not inhale the acid.

3. Place, over the paper saturated with acid, a piece of white paper or linen. Repeat step 2.
4. Roll up the tin sheet containing the paper saturated in acid and insert it in an acid resistant container.

Note: If the container has already been used, remove the sheets using two pieces of wood and place it in a new container.

5. Wipe the detonator with wax so that it does not react with acid.
6. Insert the blasting cap in the center of the rolled-up plates. Allow 5 minutes before detonating the charge.

AFGP-2002-000031-0689

Liquid Astrolite Explosive

Astrolite A and G are considered the most powerful non-nuclear explosive and it has been widely referred to, as the highest detonation velocity liquid explosive in the world. Both types are safe to handle. They have multiple uses. Both explosives are exceptional in that they can be mixed or prepared from non-ignitable elements in the field or at the preparation site. This facilitates the supply of these elements, increases safety, and removes suspicion. This family stems from rocket fuel technology. It was discovered in 1960 by a researching rocket propellant fuel group, which proved its effectiveness and strength, and which is always used to blow up rockets on the launching pad.

* Astrolite explosive is formed as follows:

When mixing ammonium nitrate + hydrazine rocket fuel.

This process involves transforming the ammonium nitrate into a watery solution in liquid. Large quantities of ammonia gas are released, and a new chemical compound forms. It is (hydronium nitrate). It remains in the solution.

This will produce a clear liquid called (astrolite G). When fine aluminum powder is added through a No. 100 (fine) or finer mesh to the astrolite G, (astrolite A-1-5) is formed.

Ingredients Relative Proportions are as follows:

Astrolite G is a mixture of two parts of ammonium nitrate and one part of hydrazine.

Astrolite A-1-5 comprises 20% (of the mixed weight) aluminum powder, 67% ammonium (2 parts) (before the mixing with the hydrazine), and 33% (1 part) anhydrous hydrazine.

The aluminum powder does not react with the two main components. However, it remains in the solution to provide additional force for the explosion when it is detonated.

A No. 8 blasting cap can be employed. However, because this detonator is relatively weak, the total force of the explosion is weaker.

The enormous explosive force is caused by:

- The fact that the astrolite is based on the (NH₂) amino group, which makes it produce hydrogen and nitrogen gases. These gases expand with greater force than the gases resulting from hydrocarbon explosives.

668

AFGP-2002-000031-0690

The following points must be taken into account during preparation.

1. The anhydrous hydrazine itself causes corrosion and is combustible. Therefore, it must be kept away from heat. It is mildly toxic.
2. If it is used, it must be used in a well-ventilated area. Swallowing, inhaling, or touching the substance is damaging to the body, skin, and eyes. If some of it spills, wash the area quickly with a quantity of water, especially if it spills onto the skin. Remove contaminated clothes and wash them well in water and detergents. If some gets in the eyes, the eyes must be washed with water for 15 minutes.
3. Ammonium nitrate is an oxidizing agent. It must be kept away from flame and moisture.
4. Explosive mixture: It is less toxic than anhydrous hydrazine. However, it must be handled gently. It is relatively insensitive to shocks. Therefore, it can be used in different environments (it can be transported).
5. It is advisable to wear rubber gloves when handling and preparing anhydrous hydrazine.
6. The mixing container must be sufficiently large, because the chemical reaction bubbles strongly, and bubbles and foam can exit over the edge of the container. Therefore, it must be added very slowly so as not to cause a sudden spillover.
7. The person who conducts the preparation process should avoid bending over the reaction container, so that he does not inhale the ammonia gases that are released during the reaction.
8. After adding all of the hydrazine, continue stirring for 5 additional minutes.

A small quantity of solid sediment may appear. This sediment is inert and non-reactive and does not affect the explosive.

Field tests in sand and desert has shown that (A-1) has exceeded the gelatin explosives which is 60 % concentrated in a ratio of 3-5 times more; and it is also more powerful than T.N.T. in a ratio of (2) double.

It is also known that (A-1) is 40 times safer than nitroglycerin and under the same conditions. If (astrolite A-1-5) detonates, it produces a crater that is 3 times the size of the crater produced by C4 and 1.5 times larger than the size of the crater produced by PBXN-1, a military explosive. Astrolite G is not like A-1. It represents a new trend in war ordinance.

The revolutionary applications of (astrolite G) are great. Perhaps the army will be compelled to review its overall treatment.

Astrolite G has a detonation velocity of 8600 m/sec, compared to 7700 m/sec for nitroglycerin and 6900 m/sec for TNT.

AFGP-2002-000031-0691

The detonation velocity of astrolite A-1 is 7800m/sec.

** Astrolite G has an unusual characteristic.

The possibility to be absorbed easily in the soil and still retain its full explosive characteristics and there is no other explosive with such characteristics.

In a field test, it was poured onto the ground. It appeared like an oily or watery spot on the soil. It was detonated 4 days later, even though the sand was moist and the weather was rainy.

It has a number of uses and applications like:

- * Ground Mine Liquid Explosives:

By pouring it directly over the ground and evened out on the ground and then detonated with a regular or electrical detonator that is buried in the soil, on the surface, or connected to a booby trap. Because of its high detonation velocity, a small quantity of astrolite G can be used in such a liquid landmine. 30 gm suffices to kill or cut off a leg. The force of the explosion will be upward and is able to kill personnel or disable a light vehicle.

670

AFGP-2002-000031-0692

Flour Explosives

This is a simple explosive that can be prepared from flour and RDX. It can be used in different ways and forms. It consists of flour powder mixed with water. It can be used as a plastic explosive. It can be used in another form, such as a cake or biscuit.

Required Materials:

1. RDX explosive.
2. Flour.
3. Large sheet of wood.
4. Wooden cylinder for grinding.

Preparation Method:

1. Place a spoon of RDX on a broad wooden board. Use the wood cylinder to grind the RDX crystals into a powder with the smoothness of flour.
Note:
In the grinding process use only the wooden cylinder. Do not use wooden boards, because a wooden board generates friction and shock, which may lead to a detonation.
2. Mix 80% RDX powder with 20% flour inside a container and leave the mixture for 5 minutes until it is well mixed.
3. This explosive mixture can be stored in a waxed container for a long time. The mixture can be stored in flour bags for camouflage purposes and left for 5 minutes.

Method of use:

1. Flour explosives are more effective than military TNT and easier to detonate, because a blasting cap can be placed in it easily.
2. To use it as a plastic explosive, mix 4 parts flour in 1 part water. The mixture resembles military C4. A blasting cap is placed in it.
3. Following are instructions for baking explosive powder so that it resembles a cake or biscuit.
 - A. To be prepared as cake, the following materials will be required:
 - 3 cups of explosive flour.
 - 2 spoons of baking powder (leaven) (Sodium Carbonate).
 - ½ spoon of salt.
 - 1 cup of milk + 1 egg + 2 spoons of butter.

AFGP-2002-000031-0693

Note:

This mixed cake can be left or placed on a cake (tray) and baked completely until no abnormal trace remains. Then, place under a temperature that is fixed so that the temperature does not exceed the detonation temperature of RDX, which would cause the cake to explode. The cake is toxic and is not to be eaten or tasted.

B. To render explosive flour into the form of a biscuit, follow these instructions:

- 3 cups of explosive flour.
- 2 teaspoons of baking powder (leavening) (sodium carbonate).
- 3/8 teaspoon of salt.
- 2 teaspoons of (Fat) butter.
- 85 milliliters of water.

When finished, the biscuit will look like an ordinary biscuit and have the same taste.

However, it is a very toxic biscuit and should not be tasted or ingested. This explosive substance can be used as a plastic explosive. In this case, it should be moist and pasty and stored inside a plastic container that protects it from the air.

Explosive Paper

Paper can be saturated with a solution of PETN (extracted from a detonating cord), acetone - and mineral oil. If we have any irregular shaped for specific papers such as, the daily newspaper or a book and if they are saturated with the explosive solution and then dried in the sun, wherein, it can be placed near a target without any suspicion.

Required Materials

1. PETN -extracted from a detonating cord.
2. Acetone.
3. Mineral oil.
4. Mixing container.
5. Large container.
6. Large plate.
7. Newspaper.

Preparation Method

1. Using a scalpel, cut a detonating cord and remove the PETN and which is packed in it. Extract about half a pound (1/2 kilogram approximately) of PETN. 100 feet of detonating cord can be extracted.
2. Fill the large container with acetone and heat it until the acetone becomes tepid. This is done by placing the container of acetone inside a wide container containing hot water. Do not place the hot water on a heat source.

AFGP-2002-000031-0694

3. Slowly and bit by bit, add the PETN to the acetone with a spoon, while stirring with a stick. Stir the solution until the PETN dissolves in the acetone. Add more PETN until it is no longer dissolves in the acetone and even if more than 5 minutes of more stirring is needed. It will be dissolve in about one third of a pound of PETN and with one pound of acetone.
4. Add approximately 2% mineral oil to the solution. This mineral oil will dissolve the crystalline granules of the PETN, which will re-crystallize when the acetone and mineral oil is detonated. Necessary and good safety measures will be taken with the paper after it absorbs the solution and after it has dried.
5. Pour the solution into a broad container. Then, put in the sheets of non-glossy paper and let them set for in the solution for 30 minutes so as to become saturated with it.
6. After saturating the paper for 30 minutes, remove it from the container and allow it to dry for at least 24 hours. Do not dry the paper inside an oven. After the paper dries, 50% of the solution will be invisible to the naked eye. It is a highly effective explosive that saturates the paper.

Employment Method:

1. Simply, insert a blasting cap into the paper and then detonate it.
2. If the pages of the newspaper are rolled up, a blasting cap and cord can be inserted into the middle of the newspaper. The newspaper can be easily carried and placed next to the target. Several sticks of dynamite can be placed inside a large-size newspaper and then detonated.

AFGP-2002-000031-0695

Part Four
Propellant explosives

Black powder:

Historical background:

Over time, man has come to avoid hand-to-hand combat with his enemy, because, in most cases of such combat, it is not the most intelligent or even the bravest and manly man who prevails, but rather the stronger man who possesses raw power. Therefore, in every level of age, skill, and intelligence, hard work has been applied to keep the enemy at a distance during the battle. Hence, the invention of the sling, the bow and arrow, the catapult, etc... These primitive means made it possible to initiate a battle from afar. However, they did not suffice, because of their limited effective range and low rate of launch, to prevent an archenemy from arriving to engage in hand-to-hand combat.

Gunpowder and the subsequent emergence of the art of making firearms and ammunition and then the invention of portable firearms enabled the Europeans to colonize the world.

Incendiary compositions similar or identical to black powder were used in fireworks by the Chinese before the Common Era. The Emperor (Fei Tei) used black powder in the year 85 and in his campaign against the Tatars. However, it is clear that the Chinese were not familiar with black powder when the Europeans reached their shores. They were amazed when artillery trials were conducted before them in Peking in 1665 AD.

Legend has it that black powder was discovered by a German monk named Berthold Schwarz, i.e. Berthold the magician, a chemist born in Fribourg. In 1313 AD he created a mixture of saltpeter and combustible materials in a metal mortar. He covered the mortar with a chamber. When a spark was introduced to the mortar, the heavy cap and projectile were launched forcefully.

This legend, even if it is true, does not prove that (Berthold) is the true discoverer of the explosive force of gunpowder because, the Arabs had used this force in Spain a long time before. Although this legendary figure is memorialized in a statue in (Fribourg), there is certainly no documentary proof that he invented gunpowder or that he even existed. If we listen to the rigorous historian, we must accept that the Arabs invented or were at least the first to use gunpowder.

The Abbasid period was one of enlightened culture. It may be that the knowledge of Chinese fireworks reached the Arabs through the Indians, who had knowledge of fireworks. The Arabs used these incendiary mixtures in their wars with the kings of Spain.

AFGP-2002-000031-0696

Historical treatises on Spain state that in 1118 AD the Arabs used devices called (thunder) to defend (Zaragoza) when it was besieged by Alfonso I.

It is also stated that the Arabs used incendiary "thunder" projectiles to defend (Neibla) when Alfonso X besieged it in 1257.

The Arabs of (Al-Gezira) were skilled in the use of artillery, using (thunder) extensively against attackers. The Arabs used large pieces of iron the size of a large apple.

After Al-Gezira fell in 1344 AD, the knowledge of gunpowder and the use of artillery spread throughout Europe, as Pope (Clement VI) declared a Crusader war, for which he called upon the European armies from different countries. The mixture of sulfur, potassium nitrate, and charcoal became the only explosive used by man for the next 100 years for warfare and civilian purposes. In 1340-1344, the first explosive mixture was known and spread in Europe as the black powder and which continues useful to date after more than six centuries; competing at the same time with thousands of combinations and compositions that organic fabrication advances placed in the service of pyrotechnics. Black powder continues to be used and will remain in use for several specific civilian and military purposes for a long time, because it appears to possess specific characteristics that make it difficult for any other mixture to gain superiority over it. This is a source of pride. Black powder is used in particular for filling slow matches and safety fuses for civilian uses. It is also used to initiate the detonation of gun projectile charges and chemical bomb explosives in military uses.

As it was said earlier, black powder is good mix of sulfur, nitrogen, a nitrogen compound or saltpeter (potassium nitrate), and charcoal.

This qualitative compound has a following to quite some extent. If we were to pretend that the current state of knowledge and technology did not exist, and if we assigned a committee of the most famous brilliant scientists to test a mixture similar to black powder, it is very likely that such a committee would fail to invent the compound produced by an unknown chemical pioneer in ancient Chinese culture.

The ingredients have been tested to the degree that whenever science advances and specialists attempt to replace them with other ingredients, they have failed quickly or have been struck by setbacks, as happened in 1788 AD, when Berthelot replaced potassium nitrate with a more powerful, cheaper salt; resulting in the discovery of chlorate and caused a number of premature explosions. Among these setbacks was the destruction of Berthelot's grinder in his workshop.

AFGP-2002-000031-0697

This subsequently compelled the French Government to issue a law prohibiting this substitution. Other countries also adopted the prohibition. Current chemistry had its beginnings in the experiments that have accumulated over the centuries in the king's grinders. All countries produced black powder monopolistically. The charcoal produced from fresh, young wood in hanging containers at a very low temperature, which was used to make black powder, is none other than what we now call "active charcoal," which has numerous scientific and industrial applications.

Wood dry distillation has been useful in obtaining raw ethylene alcohol and acetic acid so; with the fabrication of black powder, became the messenger that led to the dry distillation or the destructive distillation of coal and then mining coal and tar.

Potassium nitrate rarely occurs in nature. The preparation of potassium nitrate, called nitro, became the conversion or transformation of the first purely chemical fabrication undertaken by man (fabrication of soap by the ancient Egyptian culture). This transformation was effected by destroying the balance in the reaction $\text{NaOH} + \text{KNO}_3 \rightarrow \text{KOH} + \text{NaNO}_3$.

The primary substances are sodium nitrate (available in abundance in nature) and caustic potash, which is extracted from the ashes of ground vegetation.

The recent grinding technology that we see today for grinding cement, super phosphate, etc...and for milling cereal and seed mixtures is one of the many industries emanating from the fabrication of black powder.

Black powder is but a type of explosive mixture. The carbon in it is fuel. The nitrate salt is the igniter. With these two substances alone, we obtain an explosive mix. However, this mix has a number of shortcomings, which are as follows:

1. These two components tend to separate from each other, even if they are compacted, due to their inability to cohere.
 2. The mixture strongly attracts moisture, which is a characteristic of vegetal charcoal. This characteristic becomes more pronounced when the charcoal is present with nitrate, which results in the liquefaction and disturbance of the mixture.
 3. The mixture is characterized by irregular flash ignition at variable rates.
- All of these shortcomings can be avoided if sulfur is one of the components of the mixture.

AFGP-2002-000031-0698

In this case, sulfur is the fixing agent, playing the following tripartite role:

1. It acts as cement, holding together the mixture and giving it a solid, compact consistency.
2. It renders it impermeable, so that the charcoal does not attract moisture.
3. It regulates combustion.

Although we said that black powder has been known since the battle of Al-Gezira in Spain, its use was limited during the next three centuries to military purposes. Then, in 1627, a mineworker from Tirol, whose name is not mentioned by history, made a black powder charge and placed it in a hole that he had made in a rock. Thereafter, the use of gunpowder spread quickly. It was used not only in mines, but also in building roads, tunnels, and creating conduits for drilling for water. The use of black powder was dangerous. It led to many accidents, such that the word (danger) always came to mind when one heard the word (explosive).

The situation remained the same until 1831, when the Englishman Bickford invented the safety fuse or slow match, which is also based on black powder and still used today.

Military black powder comprises six parts sodium nitrate, one part sulfur, and one part charcoal.

In other words, its composition is as follows:

75% potassium nitrate

12.5% sulfur.

12.5% charcoal.

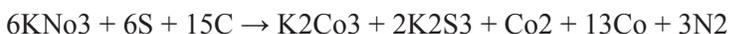
This composition is frequently used in mines, as the powder used for civil purposes is frequently the same as that used for military purposes. However, black powder used in mines is prepared in the following proportions to make it more economic, give it more specific volume, and make it less powerful:

62% potassium nitrate

20% sulfur

18% charcoal

In this case, its explosive reaction is of the following type:



Good mining gunpowder should have standard, homogenous, dry granules. It should not freeze and should not leave traces of dust on the hands. It should not be used in a moist state, because moisture diminishes its power. However, drying it by exposing it to sunlight in large areas will restore to it its original characteristics.

Because of this characteristic, black powder has long been used in many weapons. However, black powder should be handled only after taking the necessary precautions.

AFGP-2002-000031-0699

Black powder is generally employed in the form of fine pellets. It is usually employed compressed to increase the density of the charge to better remove rocks. In this case, it is employed in the form of bricks or cylinders drilled into a channel through which a fuse is passed.

There are a number of ways to prepare black powder using oxidizing agents. The substances comprising black powder are mixed directly after they are ground without using solvents such as alcohol.

There are a number of types of black powder. Their type depends on the substances used to make it.

First: without using solvents.

1. 75% potassium nitrate + 15% vegetal charcoal + 10% agricultural yellow sulfur. The method of preparation is to grind each substance separately until it becomes a powder. Then, mix the substances in a new container. In this way, the black powder becomes ready for use.
2. 75% potassium chlorate + 12.5% vegetal charcoal + 12.5% agricultural yellow sulfur. Each substance is mixed separately and gently, especially when the potassium chlorate is ground. The grinding must be done with extreme care, because the substance is sensitive to friction and heat. After grinding each substance, mix them gently. The black powder is then ready for use.
3. 75% potassium nitrate + 12.5% vegetal charcoal + 12.5% agricultural sulfur. The two methods mentioned above are employed.
4. 70.4% potassium nitrate + 10.2% sodium sulfur + 19.4% agricultural sulfur. The first method mentioned above is employed.

Second: Employment of solvents (Ethyl alcohol + water) with heating

The proportions used in this method are the same as those mentioned for the first method, with an increase in the percentage of ethyl alcohol and water. God willing, we will now explain a method for preparing black powder which involves using potassium nitrate and obtaining a percentage of the weight (in grams) and the other substances (by using chlorate and barium nitrate) using the same method.

Preparation Method

Required proportions

22.5 gm of potassium nitrate + 4.5 gm of organic charcoal + 3 gm of agricultural yellow sulfur + 15 cc of distilled water + 65 cc of ethyl alcohol (ethanol + alcohol)

Note:

If you wish to increase the quantity, you have only to double the amounts or multiply them by a specific number according to the desired quantity.

1. Grind each substance separately and gently.
2. Begin to mix the three quantities together while stirring gently.

AFGP-2002-000031-0700

3. Now, start adding $\frac{1}{2}$ of the required quantity of water (7.5 cc while stirring until the mixture becomes well mixed. Then, add the rest of the water).
4. Now, begin the heating process. Heat until bubbles starts appearing. (Be careful not to allow the mixture to boil. Maintain its moistness by stirring during heating).

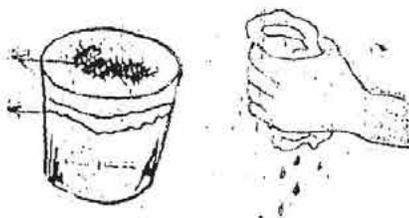
Note:

Make sure that none of the mixture is on the wall of the container during heating so that it does not become exposed to combustion.

5. After the bubbles appear, remove the mixture from the heat source and pour it immediately into (65 cc) of alcohol while stirring. Then, leave the new mixture alone for 3-5 minutes.
6. Now, filter the mixture by pouring it over a piece of cloth. Then, wring out and get rid of the liquid.
7. Immediately dry in sunlight. The more you delay drying, the less effective the black powder will be.
8. The black powder is now ready for use.

Black powder granules

Piece of cloth for filtration



679

AFGP-2002-000031-0701

Red or white gun powder

This type of powder is used in weapons and projectiles as a propellant. It can be prepared easily and safely.

Required Materials:

1. Potassium nitrate: Can be obtained from laboratories or by preparing it in a laboratory.
2. Granulated white sugar.
3. (Powdered) ferric oxide: Can be obtained from agricultural stores or laboratories. If it is not available, it is not essential to the experiment.
4. Heat source + wooden stirring tool + metal screen.
5. Distilled water.

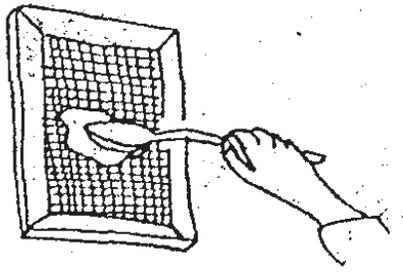
Procedure:

1. Place 480 cc of sugar in a heat-resistant glass container (or metal bucket). Add to it 560 cc of potassium nitrate. Then, pour 840 cc of pure water over the mixture.
2. Place the container containing the sugar + potassium nitrate + water over a moderate flame. Stir and mix well until the mixture dissolves thoroughly in the water.
3. If ferric oxide is available, add 30 cc of it to the mixture, increasing the temperature slightly. Let the mixture boil gently while stirring.

Note:

The mixture takes on the color of the ferric oxide.

4. Continue stirring the boiling mixture until the volume of the mixture is reduced to $\frac{1}{4}$ of its original volume.
5. After the mixture is reduced to $\frac{1}{4}$ of its volume, note that its consistency is thick.
6. Remove it and pour it over a metal (aluminum) sheet and spread it out on the sheet.
7. Subject the mixture to sunlight until it dries well, stirring until it is well dried.
8. To obtain red powder in the form of pellets, rub the substance bit by bit over a piece of screen. Then, subject the pellets to sunlight until they dry thoroughly. Now, they are ready for use. If ferric oxide has not been added, the solution will be white.



AFGP-2002-000031-0702

Smokeless gun powder (Nitrocellulose)

This substance is employed as a propellant charge in some projectiles.

Required Materials:

1. Cotton from a pharmacy.
2. Concentrated nitric acid: It can be obtained from analysis centers, hospitals, and laboratories.
3. Concentrated sulfuric acid.

Procedure

1. If the cotton is not medical cotton, we boil it for ½ hour in a solution of sodium hydroxide (caustic soda) with a 2-percent concentration (2 cc of sodium hydroxide + 100 cc of pure water). After the ½ hour has lapsed, we remove the cotton and wash it in warm water. Leave it until it is to be used. If the cotton is medical cotton, there is no need for this process.
2. If the two acids are highly concentrated, i.e., 85% to 98%, place 20 cc of pure water and add to it 250 cc of sulfuric acid, keeping the temperature from exceeding 25°C (by placing the container containing the mixture in an ice bath). After all of the acid has been put in, add 250 cc of nitric acid, keeping the temperature from exceeding 25°C. If the two acids are not concentrated (65%-80%), there is no need to add water.
3. Now, we start adding the cotton to the mixture in small pieces, stirring well.
4. Wring out the cotton using the stirring instrument to get rid of the remaining acid. Then, wash the pieces of cotton in boiling water for 25 minutes five times. The cotton can be placed in a cooking pot. Boil for ½ hour. If any trace of acid remains, place the cotton in the sodium carbonate solution with a concentration of 2%. Then, dry under sunlight or in a room. It is ready for use.
5. If one wishes to form nitrocellulose, dissolve it [the cotton] in a quantity of acetone. Stir until you obtain the thickness of paste. Then, dry. It is ready for use.

681

AFGP-2002-000031-0703

Bullseye low-high explosive

Bullseye explosive is a high-low explosive that can be prepared simply by using smokeless (bullseye) gunpowder.

Required Materials

1. Bullseye (smokeless powder).
2. Blasting cap (detonator).

Method of use:

1. To use as a low explosive, pour the powder into a metal pipe and place a time fuse inside it. The metal pipe when ignited will fragment, sending off fragments traveling at a velocity of 600 feet per second.
2. To use as a high explosive, place the powder inside a metal pipe. Insert the blasting cap (detonator). When detonated, the pipe will fragment, sending off fragments traveling at a velocity of up to 20,000 feet per second.

Slow material, high explosive

It can be fabricated from highly combustible, double-base materials, such as the powder used as a charge in odorless pistol ammunition. This propellant is used to repack pistol bullets. It contains a sensitive mixture of nitroglycerin.

Resources: gun shops

Required Materials:

1. Odorless mixture used to pack pistol bullets.
2. Blasting cap or compound detonator and a time fuse.

Method of use as a slow explosive:

Pour the powder into a steel pipe capped on both ends. Then, ignite with a time fuse, (which can be a detonation cord). When a steel pipe is employed, it will explode into a number of pieces that will travel at a velocity of approximately 600 ft. /sec.

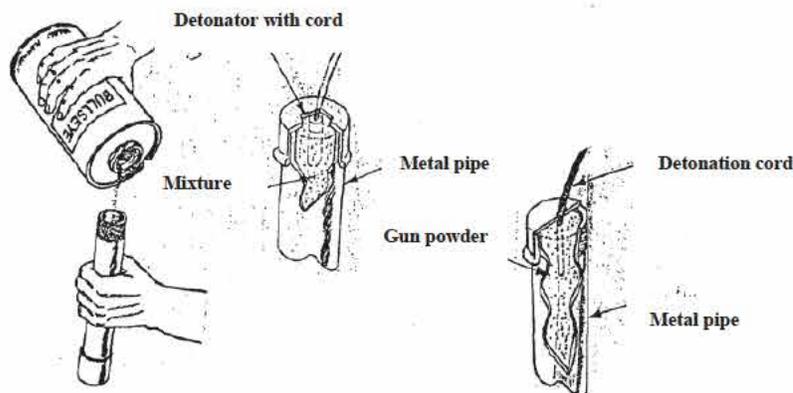
Method of use as a high explosive:

Pour the charge into a steel pipe capped on both ends. Then, place a blasting cap inside the charge, directly below the surface. When the pipe explodes, it will break into small pieces traveling at a velocity of 20,000 ft. /sec.

AFGP-2002-000031-0704

Remark:

The nitrocellulose and nitroglycerin (double-base) mixture is a propellant that can be detonated using a blasting cap. When detonated, it yields powerful results that are more powerful than the TNT used for military purposes. This material can be used to strike hard targets.



Dust Explosives (Dust Initiator)

The explosion initiator initiates common material to produce dust explosions. It can be produced quickly and safely.

This type of charge is good for the dusting of enclosed areas such as rooms and buildings.

Required Materials:

1. A flat can with a diameter of 3 in (8 cm) and a height of 1.5 in (3.75 cm), similar to a tuna can.
2. Blasting cap.
3. Explosive, preferably plastic, e.g., C4.
4. Aluminum (in the form of wires, sheets, powder, and scraps).
5. Large nail (4 in) (10 cm).
6. Wooden rod with a diameter of ¼ inch (6 mm).
7. Flour, gasoline, and aluminum (powder).

AFGP-2002-000031-0705

Work Procedures:

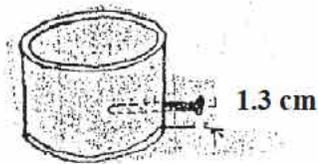
Using the nail, make a hole in the side of the can that is 1/2 inch (1.3 cm) above the bottom of the can. Turn the nail upward and downward to enlarge the hole until it accommodates the blasting cap. Now, place the wooden rod inside the hole, so that the end of the rod is at the center of the can.

Place the explosive so that it surrounds the wooden rod on all sides until it is 3/4 in (2 cm) from the upper edge of the can.

Now, remove the wooden rod.

Now, place the aluminum metal on top of the explosives inside the can.

Now, place the blasting cap in the cavity made for it. Place a cardboard or wooden disk on top of the aluminum metal to facilitate carrying and transporting the can without the substance falling out of it.

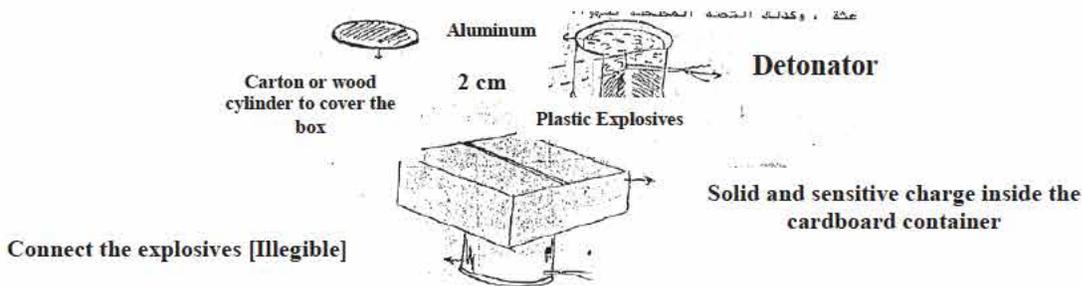


Usage method:

A unit can initiate a charge comprising 5 lbs. of flour (2.5 kg) + half a gallon + 2 liters of gasoline.

- 2 lbs. of aluminum powder (1 kg).
- Place this charge inside the cardboard container (solid material). Place the gasoline inside a plastic bag or plastic milk carton, or inside a glass bottle.
- Place the cardboard carton containing the charge directly over the can containing the initiating explosives.
- When the quantity explodes, it can convulse the air and destroy an installation that is 2000 cm³ ft. in size (10 x 10 x 20 ft.).

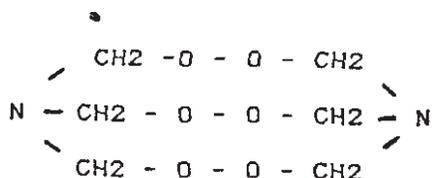
For larger installations, larger quantities of initiator explosives and charges are needed to convulse the air.



AFGP-2002-000031-0706

Explosive Mixtures

All nitrate esters and nitrogen derivatives are explosives, as are many types of chemicals that do not contain the functional group NO₂. Hexamethylenediamine tri epoxy is a primary explosive in addition to being an explosive.



The same is true of fulminates, azides, and esters.

Usually, these explosive substances (excluding trinitra and sometimes nitrlina) are not employed alone, but are rather mixed with other explosives or with passive particles.

The components of these mixtures do not detonate when they are separate. Rather, they can be detonated when they are together.

There are endless possibilities in the field of mixtures. The number of such mixtures, the theoretical number, is huge and could not be contained by a complete encyclopedia. Rather, one must resort to the libraries of specialized research centers to collect and sort the features of various chemicals in advertising material issued by the factories that produce these substances. As was stated, the main importance of these mixtures is that they suit our needs. One cannot change the heat properties of different types of explosive chemicals. However, one can do so with respect with mixtures by planning them and preparing them so that they apply fully to the special problem that must in each case be solved through resorting to explosives.

From the preceding, one can understand that the logical classification of explosive mixtures is as follows:

- A. Mixtures comprising the passive particles.
The typical example is black powder or regular powder resulting from the thorough, mechanical mixing of sulfur, potassium nitrate, and carbon. None of these elements by themselves is an explosive.
- B. Mixtures comprising active and passive substances, such as penthrite or oxygen inhibited with Montana wax.
- C. Mixtures composed of elements, each one of which is an explosive in its own right, such as dynamite resin or gelatinous nitroglycerin (which is nitrocellulose jelly with a low degree of nitration with nitroglycerine), and a primary mixture comprising two parts azide with three parts trinitroresorcinol.

AFGP-2002-000031-0707

Non-explosive elements in mixtures

As was stated previously, an explosion at the chemical level is the combustion of gaseous products. This combustion has (a reaction speed) that suffices to render negligible the heat that is lost to the surrounding environment during the reaction after the entire mixture of fuel and igniter or oxidizer fulfills the conditions mentioned above for an explosive mixture.

It is practically impossible to enumerate the fuels used in explosive mixtures, since it is difficult to find a substance that has not been used yet. Charcoal, sawdust, flour, starch, naphthalene, kerosene, sugar, etc... are among the most widely used substances.

1. Oxidizers: The most commonly used oxygen salts (oxysalts), which are oxidizers, are hypochlorite and nitrate. The most commonly used hypochlorite is ammonium hypochlorite $\text{NH}_4 \text{ClO}_4$ and potassium hypochlorite KClO_4 .

Potassium chlorate KClO_3 is the one used. The nitrates used are potassium nitrate, KNO_3 , and ammonium nitrate, NH_4NO_3 . It is noted that sodium salts are generally not used even though they are much less costly.

The most potent oxidizer if compared weight to weight is potassium salts. This is because the atomic weight of sodium is 33, whereas that of potassium is 39. The quantity of active oxygen in 1 molecular weight of sodium nitrate with a molecular weight of 85 grams is 48, which is the same amount in 1 gram molecular-weight of potassium nitrate weighing 101 grams (the percentage of active oxygen in this case is 56.471 in sodium nitrate and 47.52 in potassium nitrate).

Sodium salts are not used because they attract moisture. Moreover, mixtures containing them are difficult to keep. They are also more sensitive and dangerous to handle.

Hence potassium chlorate is rapidly affected by friction; therefore, the mixtures in which it is used must be inhibited.

Ammonium nitrate is considered as the most powerful oxidizer in explosive mixtures. It does not require an inhibitor. Rather, it itself acts as an inhibitor. When nitrate ammonium is mixed with penthrite for example, it lowers its sensitivity and to improve its latency, and greatly lowers its detonation temperature.

686

MILITARY COMMISSIONS TRIAL JUDICIARY
GUANTANAMO BAY, CUBA

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

V.

ABD AL HADI AL-IRAQI

DECLARATION OF

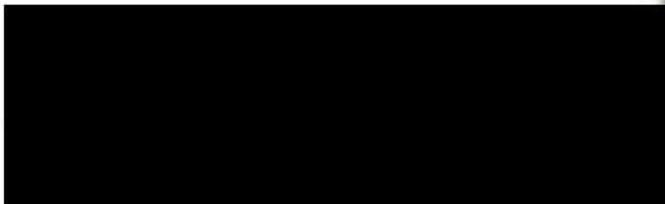


-
1. I am fluent in written and spoken English as well as written and spoken Arabic.
 2. I have taken the ALTA Language Services Translation Assessment and scored at skill level three or higher, which corresponds to professional performance.
 3. I am familiar with the Arabic document bearing bates numbers AFGP-2002-000031-0708 to AFGP-2002-000031-0807, which is the Afghan Jihad encyclopedia.
 4. To the best of my knowledge and belief, the English translation attached to this Declaration is a true and accurate translation from Arabic into English of the Arabic document described in paragraph 2 of this Declaration.

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed on: 07/30/2014

McLean, Virginia



HADI-1-017239

AFGP-2002-000031-0708

Ammonium nitrate is the most powerful oxidizer in explosive mixtures. It does not require an inhibitor. Rather, it itself acts as an inhibitor. When nitrate ammonium is mixed with penthrite for example, it lowers the penthrite's sensitivity, improves its latency, and greatly lowers its detonation temperature. Therefore, it is the primary component in the safe explosives used in coal mines, where the air is charged with mine gas.

The only negative characteristic of nitrate is that it attracts moisture. This requires storing explosives that contain nitrate away from moisture. For this purpose, it is best to place nitrate in paraffin-coated cartridges in tightly sealed containers.

2. Fixatives: Fuel and an igniter alone are not sufficient to achieve an explosive mixture. Other materials designed to inhibit or accentuate certain characteristics or to facilitate storage are also generally required.

Many crystalline explosives are abnormally sensitive to friction between the crystals comprising them. They must therefore be packed in a lubricant with suitable surface tension and the ability to adhere to form a continuous wafer that covers the crystals and prevents friction between them. This process is known as inhibition in the terminology of the science of explosives.

Inhibitors are lubricants prepared for this purpose, such as Montana wax, which we discussed earlier in our treatment of dynamite. Chlorate is inhibited with castor oil, mineral oil, etc.

In many cases, a sensitive explosive is inhibited by mixing it with another, less sensitive explosive with the ability to cohere adequately. Trilita is used extensively for this purpose. It also inhibits oxygen or penthrite charges in war factories. We previously said that nitrocellulose breaks down, releasing nitrogen oxides. These oxides intensify the decomposition reaction because of their acidic nature. This is the traditional example of self-mediating reactions. Thus, unless special precautions are taken, nitrocellulose, black powder, and the compound explosives comprising them begin to slowly react with the passing of time. The reaction intensifies, leading to an explosion. This danger can be avoided by absorbing the nitrocellulose vapors as soon as they form. Substances that are designed for this purpose--which include diphenylamine, methyl biphenyl urea, and urethane, etc.--are called fixatives. They are also used in explosives that do not contain nitrocellulose to perform roles to similar to the role played by amines in explosives.

3. Metals and Metal Compounds: Many military grade explosive mixtures contain aluminum. It is not advisable to use this element in civil explosives because of its high cost. Moreover, it is dangerous to use aluminum in coal mines because it increases the detonation temperature.

Some other metal compounds are used. They include calcium silicide, which is used in some explosive mixtures such as zeolite, which is an explosive mixture whose fuel is ammonium nitrate and calcium silicide.

AFGP-2002-000031-0709

Remarks on the Fabrication of Mixtures:

1. Ammonium nitrate salts are crystals that are highly absorptive of moisture. Therefore, they should be kept in a moisture-resistant container, e.g., one made of glass or plastic.
1. In order to use ammonium nitrate salts, the percentage of nitrogen must be greater than 33%.
2. Grind each substance separately before mixing. After the substances are ground, mix slowly to prevent friction.
3. Dry the ammonium nitrate at 50° C using indirect heat if the ammonium nitrate is moist.
4. Potassium chlorate is ground gently with extreme caution to avoid the generation of friction and heat, because potassium chlorate is sensitive. It should be mixed with other substances gently.

Ammonium Nitrate Explosives

Note:

When using ammonium nitrate, the percentage of nitrogen must not be less than 33%.

- A. Ammonal Mixture: 40% ammonium nitrate + 60% TNT.

Preparation Method:

1. Melt the TNT at 71° C. To do so, put the TNT in a glass container that is highly resistant to heat. Then, place the container on top of an electrical warmer or over a flame. However, do not place the container directly over the flame. Rather, place a plate under it. When the temperature reaches 71° C, note that the TNT is starting to melt. There are several types of very pure, special TNT that require a temperature of 81° C in order to melt.
2. Add the ammonium nitrate that has been ground into powder to the TNT while stirring gently.
3. Pour the new mixture into a pipe or the container to be used in the explosion. Leave a space for the detonator. After a period, note that the ammonal explosive has hardened into a solid and is ready for use.

There are other percentages of the ammonal mixture, which are:

- A. a. 72% lead nitrate + 28% TNT.
- B. b. 60% ammonium nitrate + 40% TNT.
- C. c. 60% TNT + 35% potassium nitrate + 5% ammonium nitrate.

The preparation method is the same as the method described above, i.e., it involves melting TNT and then adding the substances to the TNT. The mixture is then left to solidify. The ammonal mixture has greater destructive force than TNT and produces a high degree of heat.

2. Ammonal mixture: 85% ammonium nitrate + 10% aluminum + 5% vegetal coal.

AFGP-2002-000031-0710

3. Dynamol compound: 88% ammonium nitrate + 12% fine sugar or sawdust.

Procedure: The procedure is to mix the substances in the aforementioned percentages after grinding each substance separately. A regular blasting cap is used. Note: The ammonium nitrate readily absorbs moisture. It should therefore be kept in a tightly sealed container, particularly after the aforementioned substances are added to it. Otherwise, its strength will diminish and it may not detonate.

4. ANFO mixture:

a. 90% ammonium nitrate + 10% vehicle fuel oil.

b. 88.2% ammonium nitrate + 8% aluminum powder + 3.8% automotive fuel oil.

Procedure: Grind the ammonium nitrate finely. Then add the aforementioned substances to it. Mix well. The mixture is packed into a fragmentation container. A blasting cap is used for detonation.

5. 64% ammonium nitrate + 15% TNT + 21% sodium chloride (table salt). Melt the TNT. Then add the aforementioned substances to it, mixing well. The mixture is ready for use after it solidifies.

6. 30% gelatinous nitroglycerin + 26.5% ammonium nitrate + 3.5% calcium nitrate + 40% sodium chloride (table salt).

a. Gelatinous nitroglycerin (dynamite gum) consists of 12% nitroglycerin + 0.5% nitrocellulose + 87.5% ammonium nitrate.

7. 4 parts ammonium nitrate + 1 part aluminum powder. Mix well. The mixture should be stored in a tightly sealed moisture-resistant container, such as a bottle. To employ the mixture, place it in a fragmentation container and detonate using a blasting cap.

8. 16 parts ammonium nitrate + 1 part oil fuel (equal percentages of automotive oil and gasoline). Mix well. It is ready for use. To store, keep it in a moisture-resistant container.

9. 86% ammonium nitrate + 6% citric acid + 8% aluminum powder. Pack the mixture into a pipe and detonate using a blasting cap.

10. 79% ammonium nitrate + 10% dinitronaphthalene + 10% sodium chloride (salt) + 1% sawdust. Detonate with a blasting cap.

11. 93 grams ammonium nitrate + 7 grams of coffee. Mix the two substances well. Detonate the mixture using a blasting cap after filling it into a metal container that will produce fragments.

AFGP-2002-000031-0711

II. Chlorate Explosives (Potassium Chlorate + Sodium Chlorate)

They consist of a mixture of chlorate and substances that facilitate ignition according to the main equation for fabricating mixtures, which is:

80-88% oxidizers + 12-20% incendiary substances = explosives.

Oxidizers include chlorate. There are other substances, such as the nitrate group, which includes ammonium nitrate, potassium nitrate, potassium permanganate, and other oxidizers.

The chlorate group is sensitive to friction and heat. This is especially true of potassium chlorate. Therefore, the substances must be handled with care and caution, especially when grinding them.

Potassium chlorate is sold in pharmacies and chemical stores. It and other oxidizers can also be found in laboratories.

Potassium Chlorate Explosives:

1. 75% potassium chlorate + 25% sugar.

Grind the chlorate until it is fine. Do so gently. Avoid friction during grinding, because the chlorate is sensitive and may ignite. Never crush chlorate in an electrical grinder. Now, grind the sugar by itself until it becomes fine. Then mix the two substances together. The mixture is ready for use. It is detonated with a blasting cap. The mixture can be detonated without using the blasting cap by placing it in a pipe that is closed on both ends and has a place on it only for the insertion of a slow match. The ignition of the mixture produces gases that generate a high degree of pressure, which fragments the pipe. This is known as a mechanical explosion.

2. 50% potassium chlorate + 50% sugar.

A mixture with these proportions is considered a combustible substance. The substance is employed in the production of fuses, as will be explained below, God willing. Place the mixture in a tightly closed pipe and insert a slow match inside the pipe. When the fuse is ignited, high pressure will result, leading to the fragmentation of the pipe. The preparation process involves grinding the chlorate and sugar separately. Then they are mixed. The mixture is ready for use. It is kept in a moisture-resistant container.

3. 88% potassium chlorate + 12% Vaseline:

Or 9 parts chlorate + 1 part Vaseline, or any gelatinous petroleum substance. Grind the chlorate. Then add the Vaseline to it. Mix well to form a paste,

AFGP-2002-000031-0712

until the mixture becomes homogenous. The mixture is now ready for use. Pack it into a pipe. Place a blasting cap. To increase the effect, close by the ends of the pipe. When storing, store the mixture in a moisture-resistant container.

4. 88.5% potassium chlorate + 8.5% gasoline + 3% sawdust or 8.5 parts chlorate + 1 part gasoline or kerosene + 0.5 part sawdust.

Mix the three substances together thoroughly. The mixture is ready for use. Another method involves delaying the pouring of the kerosene until the time of use. Pour in the kerosene and leave the mixture for 3-5 minutes until it becomes saturated with the chlorate.

5. Potassium chlorate with nitrobenzene explosive.

Nitrobenzene is very toxic. Therefore, this experiment should be conducted in the open air. Do not inhale the nitrobenzene. Do not let this substance come in contact with your skin or eyes. If it does, wash the point of contact with a large quantity of water.

Nitrobenzene is sold in pharmacies under the name Mirbane oil, which is used as a solvent. It can also be found in chemical stores and laboratories. Chlorate with nitrobenzene is a powerful explosive.

It is employed instead of dynamite or TNT in a percentage of 50%.

To prepare, place one part or 20% weight of nitrobenzene in 4 parts or 80% weight of potassium chlorate. Mix well. Then, store in a moisture-resistant container, such as one made of glass or plastic. The pouring in of the nitrobenzene can be delayed until the time of employment, at which point the nitrobenzene is poured and the mixture is left for 3-5 minutes until it is well saturated. Then, it is detonated using a blasting cap.

6. Chlorate and agricultural yellow sulfur explosive:

Place 7 parts potassium chlorate powder in a container. Then, place 1 part sulfur on it. Mix gently and extremely slowly, because the mixture is very sensitive to friction. Store the mixture in a moisture-resistant container until use. Detonate with a blasting cap.

Sugar can be added to this mixture in the following proportions:

2 parts potassium chlorate, 1 part agricultural sulfur, and 1 part fine sugar. Then, place the mixture inside a pipe. Detonate using only a detonation cord alone without using a blasting cap. The pipe must be tightly sealed, except for the hole for the insertion of the fuse.

7. 70 grams of potassium chlorate + 10 grams of coffee + 10 grams of sugar + 10 grams of aluminum powder. Mix the materials well and gently. They are then ready for use. Detonate using a blasting cap.

AFGP-2002-000031-0713

8. 70% potassium chlorate (powder) + 10% sugar + 10% agricultural sulfur + 10% vegetal or wood coal. A small quantity of automotive oil can be mixed in to make the mixture somewhat pasty. Mix well.

This mixture can be detonated using a blasting cap or slow match. However, the pipe must be tightly sealed on both ends, except for the hole for the exit of the fuse.

9. 80% potassium chlorate + 20 grams of agricultural yellow sulfur + 10 grams of sugar. The materials are mixed thoroughly with extreme care. Detonate with a blasting cap.

III. Explosive Comprising Sodium Chlorate with Sugar or Aluminum:

1. Sodium chlorate with 2 parts sugar. Mix well. The mixture is ready for use and is detonated using a blasting cap.

2. Sodium chlorate with aluminum. Thoroughly mix 3 parts sodium chlorate with 1 part aluminum. The mixture is then ready for use. It is detonated using a blasting cap.

IV. Potassium Permanganate with Aluminum:

Mix 2 parts potassium permanganate (after it is ground) with 3 parts aluminum powder. Mix well. To use, pour the mixture into a container that fragments. Detonate using a blasting cap. Potassium permanganate is used to disinfect fruit and vegetables. For this reason, it can be purchased from agricultural supply stores.

2. 67 grams potassium permanganate + 33 grams of black powder + a drop of glycerin if available. Glycerin is sold in pharmacies as a skin moisturizer, e.g., Vaseline. Mix the materials thoroughly. Then, place them in a closed pipe with a small hole for the insertion of only an ignition fuse. When the mixture ignites, it produces a high degree of pressure inside the pipe, causing the pipe to explode. A blasting cap can be used for detonation to provide better results.

V. Potassium Nitrate:

1. 78% potassium nitrate + 4% agricultural yellow sulfur + 4% vegetal coal + 4% automotive fuel.

After grinding each material separately, mix them. The mixture is ready for detonation with a blasting cap once it has been packed into a pipe.

2. 75 grams of potassium nitrate + 10 grams of coffee + 5 grams of agricultural yellow sulfur + 10 grams of sugar.

AFGP-2002-000031-0714

Mix the materials together. Pack them into a metal container. Detonate with a blasting cap. The container should preferably be tightly sealed to produce a better effect.

3. 70 grams of potassium nitrate + 5 grams of agricultural sulfur + 10 grams of vegetal coal + 10 grams of aluminum powder + 5 grams of smooth sugar. Mix the materials and detonate the mixture using a blasting cap.

VI. Sodium Nitrate: 1 part sodium nitrate + 2 parts aluminum powder + 1 part silicon. Mix the substances. Detonate with a blasting cap.

VII. 100 Grams of Silicon + 4 Grams of Aluminum Powder. Mix the substances and detonate them using a blasting cap.

VIII. Gun Powder Mixtures:

1. 80 grams of black powder + 20 grams of aluminum powder. Mix the substances and detonate with a blasting cap.

2. 80 grams of Sultani [TC: **Phonetic**] powder (the red powder mentioned in connection with propellant explosives) + 20 grams of aluminum powder. Mix the substances and detonate with a blasting cap.

Preparation of Some Materials Used to Prepare Explosives

I. Potassium Nitrate:

Potassium nitrate (saltpeter) can be extracted from a number of sources. It can be used to prepare nitric acid, black powder, and other substances. The extraction process yields 1-10% of the weight of the substance from which the potassium nitrate was extracted, depending on the fertility of the soil.

Materials used:

a. About 3.5 gallons (14 liters) of nitrate (nitrogen) bearing soil. This substance can be obtained from the following sources:

1. Soil containing old, decomposed vegetable or animal matter.
2. Old cellar or farm dirt floors.
3. Soil from old graves.
4. The foundations of old buildings made of decomposing stone.

b. 1/2 liter of fine wood ashes (sawdust), which can be obtained from:

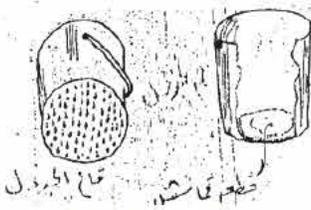
1. The white powder of completely combusted wood ash.

AFGP-2002-000031-0715

2. Completely burned paper.

Procedure:

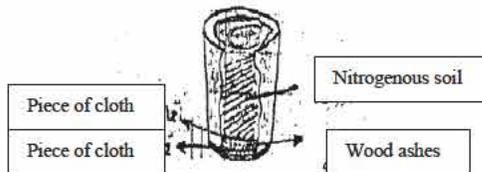
1. Fetch a bucket. Punch holes in its bottom. Then place a piece of cloth over the bottom on the inside.



Bottom of bucket Piece of cloth

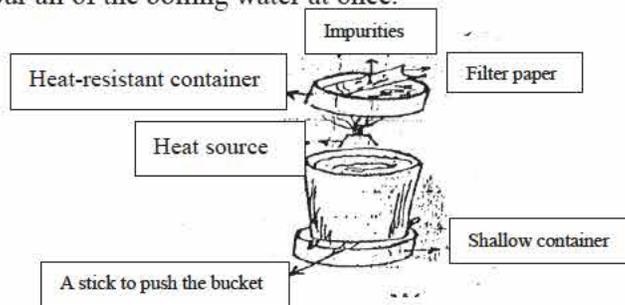
2. Now, spread a thin layer of wood ashes on the piece of cloth. The layer should have about the thickness of the cloth. Place another piece of cloth over the ashes.

3. Now, fill the rest of the bucket with nitrogenous soil.



4. Now, place the bucket over a shallow container (basin).

5. Boil water then pour a bit at a time over the soil. Watch until the water passes through the holes in the bottom of the bucket into the basin. Then, pour more water and so on. Ascertain that the water passes through all of the soil during pouring. Let the water collected in the basin sit for 1-2 hours. Note: Do not pour all of the boiling water at once.



AFGP-2002-000031-0716

7. Now, boil the solution over fire for two hours. Salt granules will appear on the bottom. Remove them whenever they form using a piece of filter paper, spoon, etc.
8. When the liquid has boiled down to half its original volume, remove it from the fire. Then let it sit and cool for ½ hour.
9. Now, add alcohol in the same measure as the volume of the remaining solution.
10. Pour the solution into another container through filter paper. White crystals will precipitate on top of the filter paper. These are potassium nitrate crystals with some impurities.
11. To purify the potassium nitrate, dissolve it in the smallest possible quantity of water boiling on top of a heat source. Remove any salt crystals that remained undissolved in the water.
12. Continue boiling the solution until all of the water vaporizes and dry crystals remain on the bottom.
13. Spread the precipitated crystals over a clean surface and allow them to cool and dry well. You now have pure potassium nitrate crystals.

II. Nitric Acid:

Nitric acid is used to fabricate and prepare many explosives and chemical timing devices. It can be prepared from a mixture of potassium nitrate and concentrated sulfuric acid.

Materials Required:

1. Potassium nitrate, as prepared above in No. (2) or obtained from drug stores. Obtain two parts per volume (2 cups).
2. Concentrated sulfuric acid. The substance can be obtained from car battery stores or construction material stores. Obtain 1 part by volume (1 cup).
3. 2 bottles with a narrow neck.
4. Pot or frying pan.
5. Heat source.
6. Adhesive tape (nylon but of cellophane).
7. Paper or cloth rags.

Note:

- a. When you obtain sulfuric acid that is not concentrated, heat it over a light flame until you see white fumes appear. Be careful not to inhale fumes.
- b. The volume of nitric acid prepared in this fashion is the same as the amount of potassium nitrate.

AFGP-2002-000031-0717

Procedure:

Place the potassium nitrate inside a bottle. Add to it the sulfuric acid.

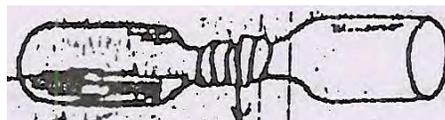
The volume of the mixture should not exceed $\frac{1}{4}$ of the volume of the bottle. Mix until a paste forms.

Note: Sulfuric acid burns clothing and skin. If any spills, rinse immediately with water. Sulfuric acid fumes are also very harmful.



Mixture of Potassium Nitrate and Sulfuric Acid
Less than $\frac{1}{4}$ of bottle's volume

2. Connect the necks of the two bottles together using paper or a piece of cloth. Make sure that there is no access for air to infiltrate the connection.



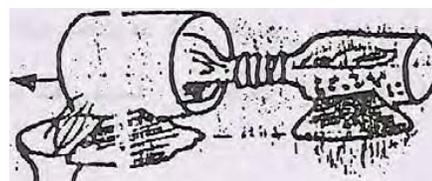
Compound Bottle necks are connected tight

3. Prop the 2 bottles on rocks or soil, so that the empty bottle is slightly lower than the bottle containing the mixture, so that the nitric acid that will form in the empty bottle will not go back into the other bottle.



Cold water, red fumes [TC: illegible]

4. Light a fire under the bottle containing the mixture. Begin stirring the fire around all of the edges of the mixture. When red fumes begin to emerge, start pouring cold water over the empty bottle. The nitric acid will begin to form shortly thereafter in the empty bottle.



A container with sand around
the compound bottle

Note: Do not overheat or overcool the bottle containing the mixture. For safety sake, it is best to place the bottle containing the mixture inside a metal container and then fill the empty space around the bottle with sand, so that heating is indirect.

5. Continue step No. 4 until no red fumes remain. If the nitric acid that forms is impure and contains many floating impurities, pour the acid into another clean bottle and then repeat steps 2, 3, 4, and 5.

Note: Nitric acid, like sulfuric acid, damages the skin and clothing. Therefore, if some spills on clothing or the hands, wash immediately with water. Keep the nitric acid that is extracted in a bottle or smooth ceramic container.

AFGP-2002-000031-0718

III. Preparation of Copper Sulfate (Phenatyndra)

Copper sulfate is required to prepare the explosive TACC [Tetramer copper (II) chlorate].

Materials Required:

1. Pieces of copper or copper wire.
2. Diluted sulfuric acid (can be obtained from vehicle batteries).
3. Potassium nitrate or nitric acid with a concentration of 90%.
4. Alcohol. 5. Water.
6. Heat-resistant glass container (Pyrex).
7. Filter paper. 8. Container (dish).
9. 8-gallon container.
10. Cup. 11. Wooden stirring stick.
12. Container for stirring. 13. Heat source. 14. Teaspoon.

Preparation Method:

1. Prepare 10 grams of copper in a pint-sized container. Add one cup (240 milliliters) of non-concentrated sulfuric acid to the copper pieces.
2. Add 12 grams of potassium nitrate to the sulfuric acid and copper. The potassium nitrate can be substituted by sulfuric acid, as sulfuric acid provides for a purer experiment.
3. Place the mixture in a pot (container) containing moderately tepid water until the mixture is almost boiling, at which point the color of the mixture will turn to blue.
Note: The third stage produces toxic gases. It should therefore be conducted in the open air.
4. Pour the hot blue solution into another container. Keep the copper inside. Permit the solution to cool to room temperature. At this point crystalline pellets will appear at the bottom of the container.
5. Slowly and cautiously get rid of the liquid. Then, grind the pellets using a wooden stick until they become a powder.
6. Add ½ cup (120 mm) of alcohol to the powder while continuing to stir.
7. Filter the solution using filter paper until you obtain crystalline pellets on the filtered paper. Then, wash the crystals with alcohol three times and filter them, each time using 120 ml of alcohol.
8. Allow the air to dry the copper sulfate for two hours

AFGP-2002-000031-0720

[TC: Pagination reordered to correct error in original document]

Note: The drying time can be reduced to ½ hour by placing the crystalline pellets in a warm water bath.

IV. Sodium Chlorate:

Sodium chlorate is a strong oxidizer used to manufacture explosives. It can substitute for potassium chlorate.

Sources:

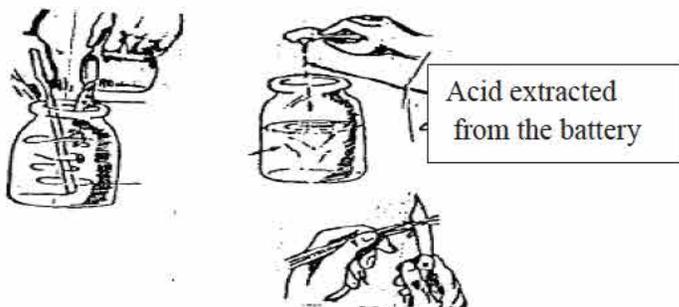
- Dry battery 2.5 in diameter and 7 in long.
- Car battery.
- Grocery store, sea.

Materials Required:

- 2 rods of carbon or lead.
- Salt or seawater.
- Car.
- Sulfuric acid (diluted).
- 2 wires, 3/64 inches in diameter, insulated, copper, 6 feet long.
- Stick, string, spoon.
- 7-gallon glass jar [read 1-gallon glass jar].- Trays, cup, heavy cloth.
- Knife, large basin or tray.

Procedure:

1. Mix ½ cup of salt in a 1-gallon glass jar with 3 liters of water.
2. Add 2 spoons of acid extracted from a car battery to the solution and stir vigorously for 5 minutes.
3. Remove or strip about 4 inches of the insulating material from around the ends of the wires.

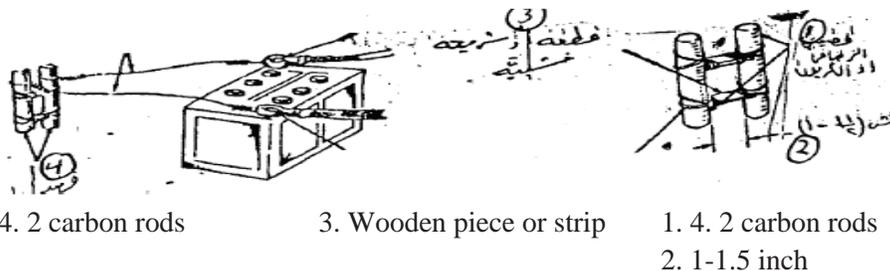


AFGP-2002-000031-0719

[TC: Pagination reordered to correct error in original document]

4. Using a knife and a stick, make two strips of wood with dimensions of about 1 x 1/8 x 1.5. Attach the two pieces between the two carbon or lead rods, so that they are 1.5 inches apart.

5. Connect the ends of the two wires to the car battery and the other ends to the two lead or carbon rods.



6. Insert the two lead rods about 4.5 inches into the saline solution.
7. Place the car gear in neutral. Then, turn on the car. Depress the accelerator 1/5 of its full range.
8. Run the car [with accelerator] in this position for two hours. Then, turn it off for 2 hours.
9. Repeat this process for 64 hours while maintaining the same level of the acid and salt solution in the glass jar.

Warning: This arrangement produces a voltage difference that may be dangerous to humans. Do not touch the wire heads while the car is running.

10. Turn off the car engine. Then, remove the rods from the glass jar. Then, disconnect the wires from the battery.
11. Filter the solution through the heavy cloth in a flat basin or large tray, leaving the sediment at the bottom of the jar.
12. Provide an opportunity for the water in the filtered solution to evaporate at room temperature for about 16 hours. The residue after evaporation is sodium chlorate with about 60-percent purity, which suffices to form an explosive.

Heavy cloth.



AFGP-2002-000031-0721

Preparation of Potassium Nitrate (KNO_2) or Sodium Nitrate ($NaNO_2$) and Lead Monoxide
This substance is required in the preparation of many explosives. The following materials are required. They can be obtained from stores that sell pipes and from pharmacies.

Materials Required:

- Lead (pieces or filings).
- Potassium nitrate or sodium nitrate ($NaNO_3$ or KNO_3).
- Methyl alcohol (wood alcohol).
- Iron pipe with end cap.
- Iron rod or screwdriver.
- Paper towels.
- Two jars.
- Metal basin.
- Heat source, scale, cup, water, and pan.

Procedure:

1. Mix 12 g of lead with 4 g of potassium nitrate or sodium nitrate in a jar. Then, place the mixture in an iron pipe, as shown in the figure below.

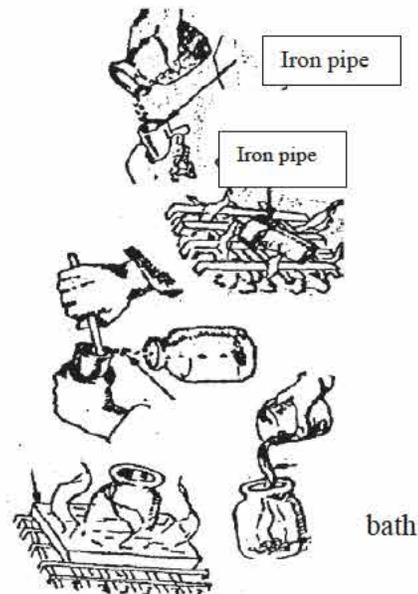
2. Cap the two ends of the pipe and heat the pipe in a bed of hot coals or with a blowtorch for 30-60 minutes. The mixture's color will change to yellow.

3. Remove the pipe from the heat source. Let it cool. Then, transfer the yellow material formed inside the pipe to another glass jar.

4. Add $\frac{1}{2}$ cup or 120 ml of methyl alcohol to the yellow material.

5. Heat the glass jar containing the mixture in a warm water bath for 2 minutes (heat until you notice a reaction between the yellow substance and the alcohol). The solution will become darker or black.

6. Pour the solution through the paper towels into another glass jar. The material remaining on the paper towels is lead monoxide.



AFGP-2002-000031-0722

Lead Oxide:

7. Remove the lead oxide and then wash it twice through the paper towels. Each time, use ½ cup of hot water. Then, air-dry the lead monoxide.
8. Place the jar containing the liquid from Step 6 in a hot water bath as in Step 5 and heat the solution until all of the solution evaporates. The powder remaining in the jar after evaporation is potassium nitrate or sodium nitrate. (NaNO or KNO₂).

Molotov Cocktails and Incendiary Bombs

I. Molotov Cocktails [Gasoline Bombs]:

Molotov cocktails are used to ignite fires. They contain combustible materials that cause major fires if they fall on a location that facilitates combustion. There are two types of Molotov cocktails, old and new. The difference lies in the preparation method. The new method is considered better than the old method. When using Molotov cocktails, the bottle used should preferably break easily. Otherwise, it may not break when it falls.

The materials used in Molotov cocktails include substances that combust rapidly and slowly. It is preferable to include a viscous substance to facilitate continued burning.

Proportions of materials used to prepare a Molotov cocktail:

1. 65% gasoline or kerosene + 35% fuel oil.
2. 65% gasoline or kerosene + 35% Polystyrene (white substance used to package tape recorders, etc.).
3. 65% gasoline or kerosene + 35% grated vegetable or industrial soap.
4. 30% gasoline or kerosene + 30% fuel oil + 20% acetone or toluene, which is employed in the preparation of TNT + 10% calcium hydroxide.
5. 55% gasoline or kerosene + 20 ethyl alcohol + 20% vegetable oil + 5% rubber.
6. 65% gasoline + 35% egg white.

Molotov cocktail Preparation Method:

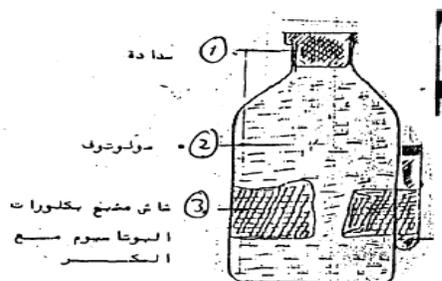
1. In the old method, the bottle is filled with the substances used according to the aforementioned proportions. The bottle is sealed tightly using a piece of cork or a regular cap in which a hole is made for a coarse flax string or rectangular piece of cloth, one-third of the length of which is inside the bottle and the other third of which is outside the bottle. The string or cloth is saturated with solution.

AFGP-2002-000031-0723

To use, we ignite the flaxen string and then throw the bottle toward the enemy. When the bottle breaks, the material spreads on the ground as it burns.

b. Preparation of a Molotov cocktail using the new method: Fill the bottle with the aforementioned substances according to their proportions. Seal the bottle tightly. Fill a small, thin glass tube with concentrated sulfuric acid H_2SO_4 . Seal it tightly to prevent the acid from exiting when the bomb is thrown. Attach the tube to the exterior of the bottle. Wrap gauze tape saturated with potassium chlorate and sugar around the tube.

Note: The potassium chlorate and sugar are used in the following proportions: one part potassium chlorate to one part sugar with a bit of hot water to dissolve the two substances. Place the gauze in the solution until it absorbs all of the solution. Expose the saturated gauze to sunlight until it dries well. Then, wrap it around the bottle as shown in the figure.



1. Stopper.
2. Molotov.
3. Gauze saturated with potassium chlorate and sugar.

The sulfuric acid reacts with the chlorate and sugar to produce a flame and extreme heat; when the bomb is thrown, the bottle containing the acid breaks. The acid reacts with the chlorate and sugar solution, generating high heat, which ignites the contents of the bottle.

II. Incendiary Bombs:

Napalm, which is used to assemble incendiary bombs, comprises a number of different types of metal soap, which is regular soap whose composition includes aluminum. This soap mixture comprises caustic soda to which any vegetable oil containing oleic acid is added. Potassium sulfate and aluminum sulfate are also added. After the product precipitates and dries, phenyl phenol is added to prevent oxidization and spoilage of the napalm. Everything is mixed with gasoline. The resulting substance is gelatinous. Magnesium may be added to increase the thickness of the fuel and produce a higher temperature upon combustion.

Incendiary bombs may be in the form of small bombs or large bombs weighing up to 1000 pounds that are ignited by means of a small explosive bomb attached to them.

AFGP-2002-000031-0724

This type of large incendiary bomb propagates a flame that can cover an entire soccer field. An attack employing incendiary bombs can result in the outbreak of large fires. If napalm touches the skin, it produces burns and lacerations. Napalm, like chemical weapons, is banned internationally.

There are many types of incendiary bombs, such as phosphorous (white phosphorous) bombs and others. All incendiary bombs of various types are, like chemical weapons, banned internationally.

L. F. Fieser, a professor of Bio-Chemistry at Harvard University in the United States, supervised the invention of napalm in 1942. He is a Zionist professor who helped transfer this technology to Israel.

Napalm incendiary produces extreme heat. Napalm is composed of the following substances: A mixture of melted vegetable soap + aluminum sulfate (alum) + Alfa Naphthols. Most of this mixture is made up of vegetable soap. The following proportions can be used:

70% vegetable soap + 15% aluminum sulfate (alum) + 15% Alfa Naphthols.

It is possible to dispense with the Naphthols if it is unavailable. In this case, the proportions would be 80% vegetable soap + 20% aluminum sulfate (alum). Place the ingredients over a flame. Stir until they become well mixed. The napalm is ready for use.

To prepare for use, place 6% napalm in a bottle. Place on top of it 94% gasoline or 50% gasoline + 50% grated vegetable soap. The ignition method is like that used for a Molotov cocktail, i.e., one uses a flax string or gauze saturated with a solution of potassium chlorate and sugar with sulfuric acid.

III. Sodium Incendiary Bomb:

It consists of a metal container that holds small pieces of sodium and a glass tube that is tightly sealed and easy to break, containing water.

Note: After inserting the sodium and the tube containing the water inside the container, close it tightly. It is preferable to close it with gears.

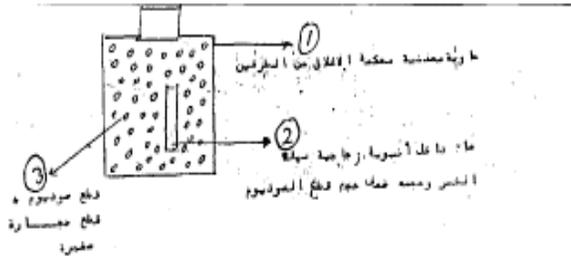
Method of Employment:

Throw the bomb toward the target. When the bomb hits the target, the glass tube will break due to the presence of stones. The water will react with the sodium pieces, which generates extreme heat

AFGP-2002-000031-0725

and gases, leading to the explosion of the container by means of a mechanical explosion. The container fragments and sets the target on fire while affecting the surroundings with fragments.

Warning: Sodium pieces should always kept away from water and moisture. The best method is to keep or place them in a glass container and pour gasoline over them until they are submerged.

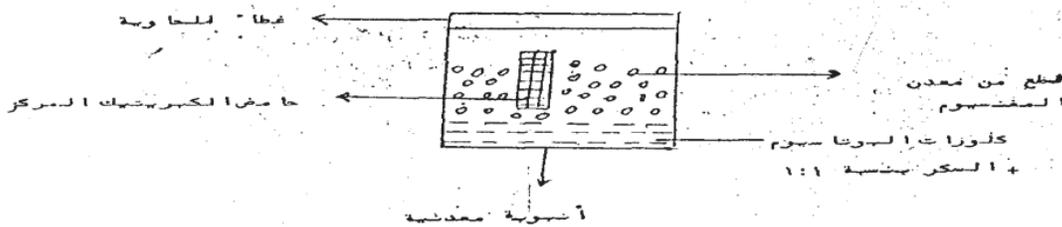


1. Metal container tightly sealed on the two ends.
2. Water inside a glass tube that breaks easily. The volume of water is double that of the sodium pieces.
3. Sodium pieces + small pieces of stone.

IV. Magnesium Incendiary Bomb:

Place a mixture of potassium chlorate and sugar in a ratio of 1:1 inside a metal container. Then, add a quantity of magnesium in the form of small pieces. Select a glass tube that will break easily. Place concentrated sulfuric acid in the tube. Then insert the tube in the metal container. Close the container. When the container is thrown at the target, the glass tube will break, and the acid will react with the chlorate, sugar, and magnesium, producing extreme heat and the intense diffusion of gases, which generates strong pressure inside the container, leading to the explosion and fragmentation of the container and the burning of the target.

Warning: Magnesium pieces should be kept away from moisture inside a tightly sealed glass container.



1. Pieces of magnesium.
2. Potassium chlorate + sugar in a ratio of 1:1.
3. Cap on container.
4. Concentrated sulfuric acid.

AFGP-2002-000031-0726

V. Thermite Bomb:

This bomb contains a mixture of ferric oxide, aluminum nitrate, aluminum powder, magnesium powder, and fuel oil. It is detonated with a blasting cap to produce extreme heat exceeding 1000 degrees. If the aforesaid materials are placed inside a pipe, the explosion will also produce fragments.

Preparation Method:

1. Grind 160 g of ferric oxide until it turns into smooth granules. Grind 20 g of ammonium nitrate in another, new container, until it is as smooth as powder.
2. Place the ferric oxide powder in a container. Add to it the ammonium nitrate, 54 g of aluminum powder, 20 g of fuel oil and, preferably, 30 g of magnesium powder if any is available. Mix these materials thoroughly.

Note:

- a. The materials must be mixed quickly because the ammonium nitrate is very absorptive of moisture. Leaving it for a period without mixing it means that it will lose some of its explosive force. Ammonium nitrate is usually kept in moisture-resistant containers, such as glass and plastic containers.
- b. The mixture is kept in a moisture-resistant container.

Method of Employment: The mixture is poured into a metal container, which is sealed tightly. A hole is created for the insertion of the blasting cap and a slow match. The match is lit and the bomb is thrown toward the enemy. It is preferable to place a quantity of potassium chlorate and sugar in a ratio of 1:1 on top of the mixture.

AFGP-2002-000031-0727

Blasting Caps Manufacturing

I. Fabrication of Regular Blasting Caps:

Blasting caps are generally made of thin metal tubes, or glass tubes, or plastic tubes. If a metal tube is used, it is preferable to use aluminum or copper.

Blasting caps contain an igniting substance and a booster substance. We have already gone over the method for fabricating these substances. Igniting substances used in the fabrication of blasting caps include lead azide or mercury fulminate. Boosters include RDX, PETN, picric acid, and other substances covered in Section 2.

If a metal tube made of aluminum or copper is used, it must be compatible with the type of substance, as mentioned above [and as shown in the following]:

- a. Lead azide: Thin aluminum tube.
- b. Mercury fulminate: Thin copper tube.

Procedure: Prepare the tube (whether metal, glass, or plastic) by placing in it approximately 1 g of RDX. Tamp the RDX slightly. Do so slowly and with extreme caution. Then, add on top of it 1 g of lead azide or mercury fulminate, taking into account the type of metal as mentioned above, or add any other igniting substance as mentioned above. The blasting cap is now ready for use.

Note: If a booster substance is unavailable, use only the igniting substance. However, in this case, increase the quantity to approximately 3 g. Generally, when fabricating any blasting cap, it is highly essential to test it with a primary explosive to ascertain whether the quantity is sufficient.

Note: After placing the booster substance inside the tube (or, in the absence of a booster substance), it is preferable to mix the igniting substance with a bit of dough, gum, or starch and water. Do this slowly and gently, so that the granules of the igniting substance cohere inside the blasting cap and do not spill out when the blasting cap is moved.

II. Fabrication of Electrical Blasting Caps:

Electrical blasting caps are considered better than regular blasting caps, because the detonation time can be controlled precisely using electrical blasting caps. We normally use electrical blasting caps in most electrical booby trap actions.

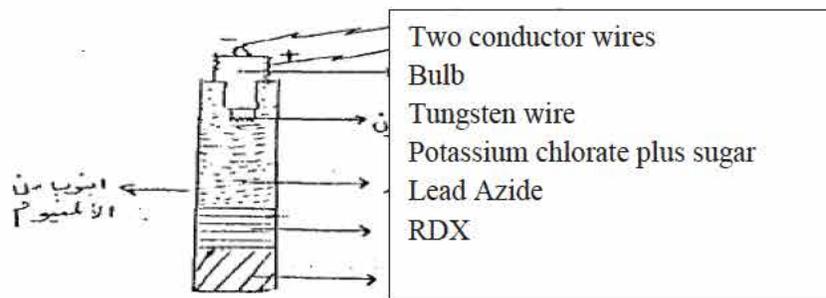
AFGP-2002-000031-0728

There are two methods for fabricating electrical blasting caps. One is to convert a regular blasting cap into an electrical blasting cap. The other is to fabricate a complete electrical blasting cap.

1. Conversion of a regular blasting cap into an electrical blasting cap: Prepare a quantity of potassium chlorate and sugar in a ratio of 1:1. Then pack a regular blasting cap with this mixture. Then, fetch a small light bulb. Break the glass being careful to preserve the tungsten wire intact (the thermal wire). Insert the small bulb into the chlorate and sugar mixture, so that the tungsten wire is inside the mixture. Connect the bulb to two electrical wires. Connect the two ends of the wires to the poles of the bulb (negative and positive). Secure the bulb, but do so very gently, so that the tungsten wire does not break.

2. Fabrication of electrical blasting caps that are not based on a regular blasting cap: Prepare an aluminum or copper tube, depending on the type of igniting material, or a glass or plastic tube. Place within it first the booster substance, i.e., one part RDX or any other booster substance. Then, add to it approximately 1 g of lead azide, mercury fulminate, or any other igniting substance. Now, fill the rest of the tube with the potassium chlorate and sugar mixture at a ratio of 1:1. Then, position the small bulb, breaking its glass while being careful not to break the tungsten wire. Attach the bulb well. Connect the two electrical wires to the positive and negative poles of the bulb.

Now, the blasting cap is ready. It should be kept away from shocks, heat, flame, static electricity, and batteries.



Aluminum tube

III. Preparation of a Slow Match:

A slow match is prepared using potassium chlorate and sugar mixed together.

Materials Required:

1. Potassium chlorate
2. Sugar
3. Water
4. Mixing container
5. Heat source
6. Cotton or flax string

AFGP-2002-000031-0729

Quantities Required:

1. One part potassium chlorate.
2. One part sugar (i.e., one part potassium chlorate to one part sugar).
3. Two parts water.

Preparation Method:

1. Place these materials—i.e., the potassium chlorate, sugar, and water—in a container and mix them together.
2. Heat the solution until all of the substances dissolve in the water.
3. Place a flaxen or cotton string into the solution in order for it to absorb the solution.
4. Remove the strings from the solution and allow them to dry. They are ready for use. They are used by lighting them.

Another method for fabricating a fuse is to stitch together cloth tubes and pack them with potassium chlorate and sugar.

IV. Timing Pens:

Military timing pens set off a regular blasting cap at a specific time which you determine based on the type of timing pen used, temperature, and location where the timing pen is placed. The timing pen sets off the blasting cap without the need for the person who wishes to set off the explosion to be present. Or, the enemy can set off the explosion by breaking of the glass tube containing a substance that reacts with the wire holding a spring-compressed pin. This substance is sulfuric acid. After the tube is broken by the person who has set up the pen, it reacts with the wire, causing the wire to break after a period. This period differs from one timing pen to another, depending on the type of pen and temperature. When the wire is broken, the pin is released to hit the primer mounted in the pen, which sets off the blasting cap. These timing pens may not be obtainable.

There is however a method for making a simple timing pen.

Procedure:

1. Fetch plastic medicine capsules. Empty them of the medicine and replace the medicine with sulfuric acid. Then, conduct tests to determine how long it takes for the sulfuric acid to react with the plastic, i.e., to dissolve the plastic. Let us assume 10 minutes.
2. Now, place a quantity of potassium chlorate and sugar in a ratio of 1:1 into a regular blasting cap, until it is filled.

AFGP-2002-000031-0730

3. Now, fetch a new medicine capsule. Empty it of the medicine. Fill it with sulfuric acid. Cover it well. Then, attach it to the opening of the blasting cap in contact with the chlorate-sugar mixture.

4. After 10 minutes, the acid will dissolve the capsule and immediately react with the chlorate and sugar producing heat that sets off the blasting cap and the charge.

Note: If you wish to increase the time, select a several types of primers or small plastic tubes and conduct experiments with them to ascertain the amount of time needed for the acid to dissolve the plastic and to escape from the capsule.

Section 4 – Smoke Bombs

Smoke bombs are made of Hexachloroethane and paranitroaniline.

Smoke bombs have a number of important uses. They are employed to cover a withdrawal. In this case, they deny the enemy the ability to see the withdrawing personnel due to the presence of thick smoke. Smoke bombs are also used in offensive operations to camouflage and cover the attack. They may be employed as specific signals for the start of an attack or withdrawal. These bombs create smoke in a number of different colors. Following is a treatment of the fabrication of several smoke bombs:

1. Black smoke: 60 g of Hexachloroethane + 19 g of magnesium powder + 21 g of naphthalene + 10 g of potassium nitrate + 15 g of coal + 20 g of matter + 10 g of paraffin oil. These materials are mixed together and then packed into a container with a number of holes on different sides to permit the smoke to exit. The mixture is ignited by a slow match.

2. White smoke: 44 g of potassium chlorate + 40 g of zinc + 15 g of sulfur + 33 g of Hexachloroethane + 3 g of sodium bicarbonate. These substances are mixed and then packed into a container with a number of holes drilled into it. Ignition is by means of a slow match or a simple primer, such as a pistol primer, using the black powder that is inside the bullet.

3. Yellow smoke: 50 g of paranitroaniline + 25 g of potassium chlorate + 25 g of lactose. These materials are mixed and ignited with a slow match.

AFGP-2002-000031-0731

4. Brown smoke: 50 g of potassium chlorate + 30 g of vegetal coal + 20 g of ferric oxide. These materials are mixed together and ignited with a slow match.

5. Simple smoke bomb: 60 g of potassium chlorate + 40 [g] of vegetal coal. These two substances are mixed. The mixture is placed in a container that has a number of holes drilled into it for the exit of the smoke after ignition by means of a slow match.

Note:

- a. Generally, if a container containing a smoke bomb is made of metal and is tightly sealed without holes except for the small hole for the insertion of the slow match, the metal container will fragment as a result of the explosion caused by the containment of the gas inside the closed space of the metal container.
- b. Any material that produces copious smoke and gas when set on fire can be used to create a fragmentation bomb by placing it in a metal container that is tightly sealed so that the gas or smoke cannot exit, resulting in high pressure inside the container and an explosion.

AFGP-2002-000031-0732

Pistol Course

Introduction: The pistol is a lightweight, small arm. It is employed in close combat in an attack or defense. It is very effective, easy to acquire, and can be kept anywhere whether at home, office, or car... etc.).

Pistols were first manufactured for regular armies. Officers, security personnel, and the police used them. Then, civilians began using them to defend themselves when necessary.

Advantages of the Pistol:

1. It is small and lightweight, which makes it easy to carry and easy to conceal. It is thus the best weapon for assassinations and attacks.
2. Its components are small and not complicated in their structure (they are easy to disassemble and assemble).
3. It is easy to repair a pistol if a jam occurs. It is also easy to clean and maintain a pistol.
4. Despite its small size, it can kill, wound, or stop a person from moving – God willing.

Types of Pistols

There are two types of pistols in general:

I. Single (revolver).

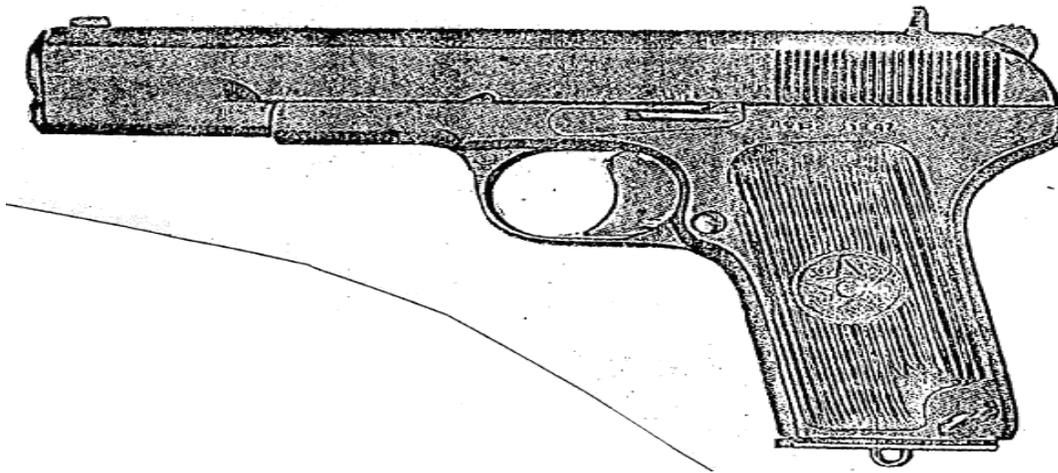
II. Automatic (with a magazine or clip).

The employment of the pistol is essential in both peace and war. We decided to write this memorandum to explain the features, advantages, and correct method of employing this weapon.

AFGP-2002-000031-0733

Russian Officer's Pistol
Tulatokareve Pistol

Caliber: 25 x 7.62 mm.
Weight: .82 kg.
Length: 196 mm.
Barrel length: 117 mm.
Muzzle velocity: 411 m/sec.
Magazine capacity: 8 shots.
Rifling: 4 grooves from the left.
Mechanical action: Recoil (recoil of the barrel)

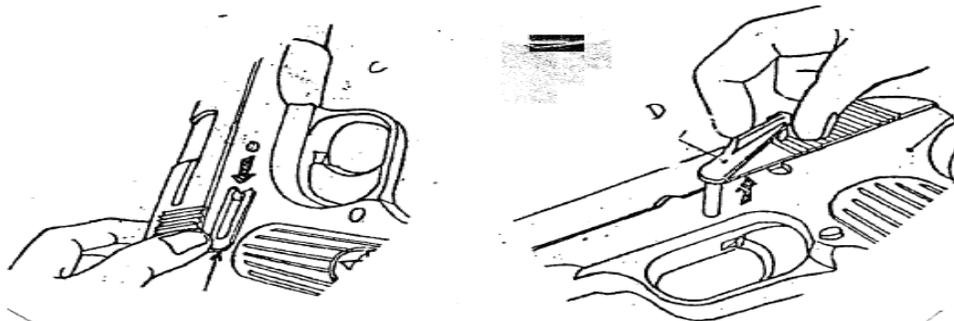
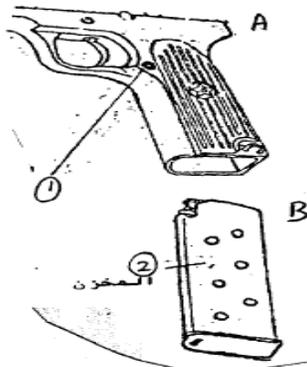


712

AFGP-2002-000031-0734

Disassembly and Assembly

1. Press on the drop button (1) to push the ammunition magazine (2) downward.
2. Pull the catch to the rear.



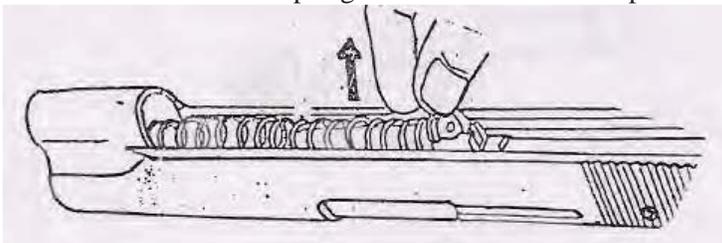
3. Move the disassembly and assembly lever of the weapon from the right to the left to separate it from the pistol casing. For easy removal, place the hand on the barrel muzzle and the middle fingers over the trigger guard. Then, push the barrel to the rear slightly with the middle finger. Then, move the disassembly lever [See D Below].

AFGP-2002-000031-0735

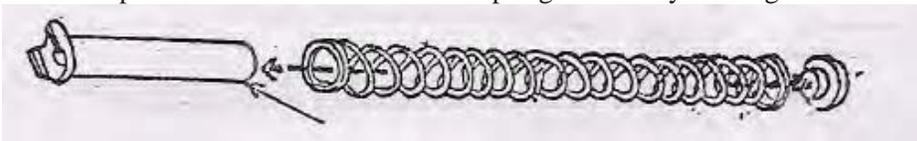
4. Push the slide forward.



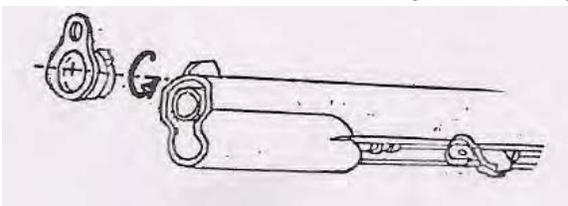
5. Move the recoil spring and remove it from its position.



6. Separate the front and rear recoil spring holders by moving them to the right and left.



7. Turn the front lock at an angle of 180 degrees. Then, push it forward.

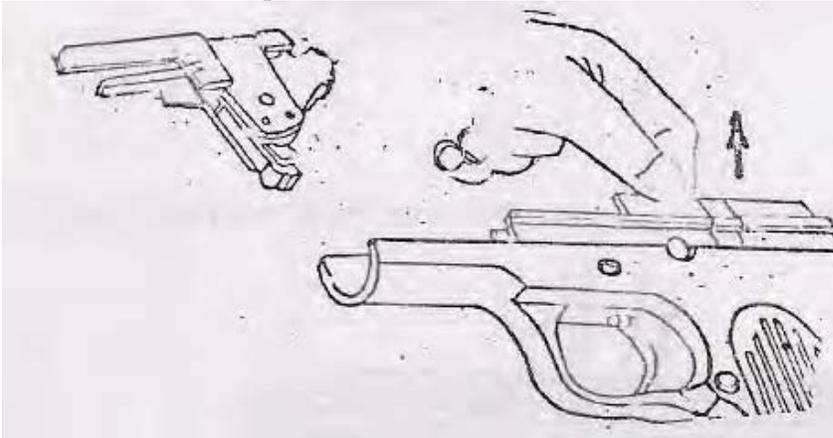


AFGP-2002-000031-0736

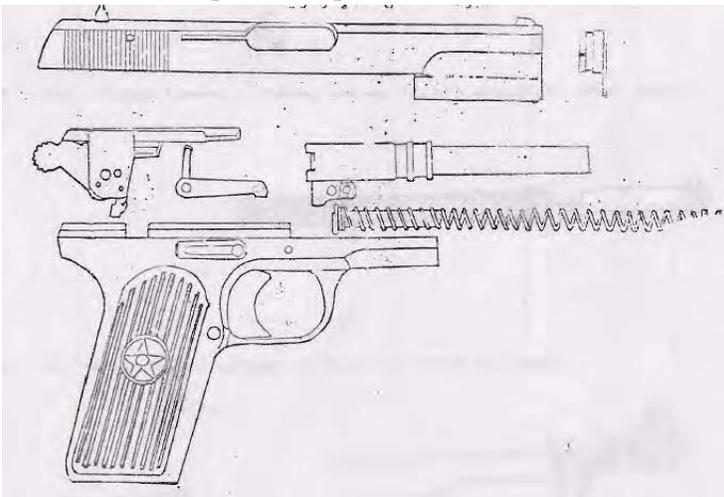
8. Push the barrel forward and separate from the rest of the slide.



9. Raise over the pin hammer.



10. Tula Tokarev pistol components.



AFGP-2002-000031-0737

Makarov Pistol

Caliber: 9 x 18 mm.

Weight: 0.71 kg.

Length: 161 mm.

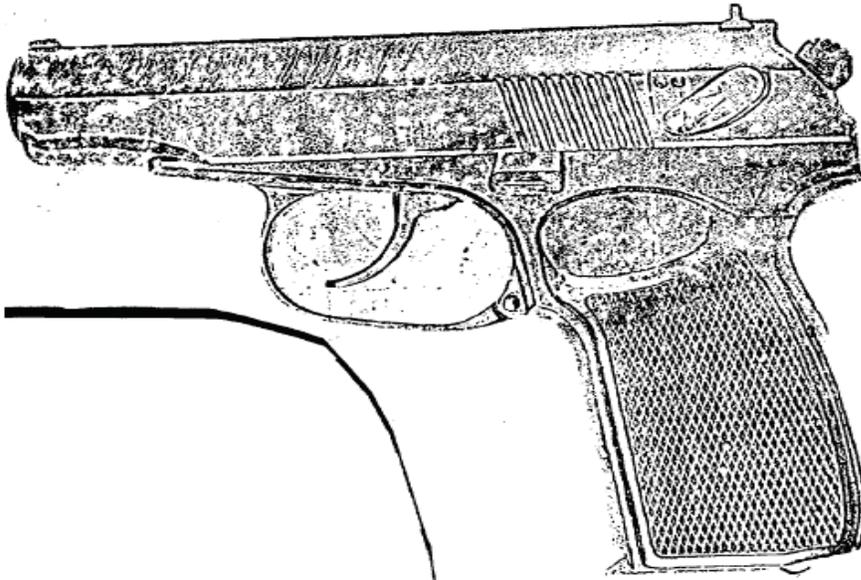
Barrel length: 97 mm.

Muzzle velocity: 328 m/sec.

Magazine capacity: 8 shots.

Rifling: 4 grooves from the right.

Mechanical action: Blow back (gas propulsion).

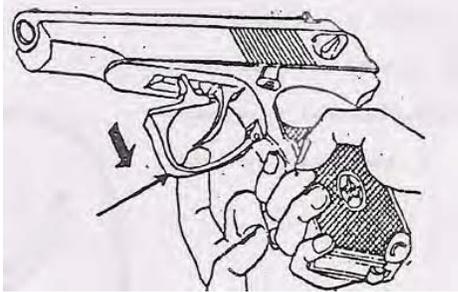
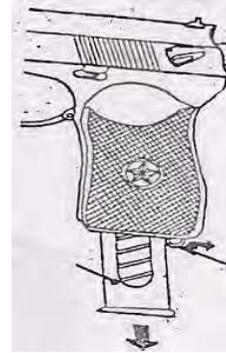


716

AFGP-2002-000031-0738

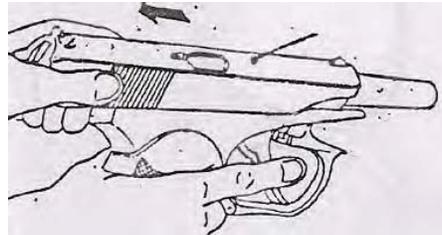
Assembly and Disassembly

1-Push the magazine catch to the rear with the thumb and bring down directly under the ammunition magazine.

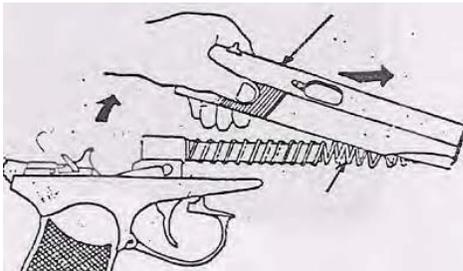


2. Pull the trigger guard down, moving it slightly to the right or left to secure it.

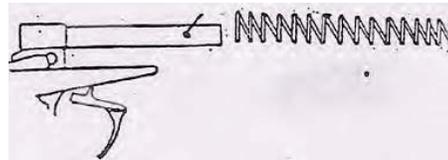
3. Pull the slide to the rear.



4. Lift the slide directly upward after pulling so that it moves forward under the force of the recoil spring.

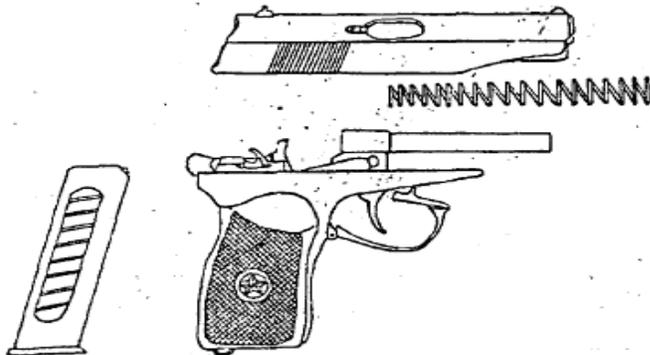


5. Separate the recoil spring from the barrel.



AFGP-2002-000031-0739

Components of the Makarov Pistol



Mechanical Action

There are two types of mechanical automatic pistol action: blow back (gas propulsion) or recoil (barrel recoil). Any other mechanical action is based on either of these two types.

1. Blow back (gas propulsion): The principle of blow-back action, designed by Hugo Borchardt in 1793, is that for every action there is a reaction (in this case, the barrel is stationary). At the moment of, or just before, firing, the slide is not attached to the barrel. There is a space between the slide and the barrel, because more than 1/3 of the round is inside the barrel. Because the pistol barrel is stationary, when the round is fired, it pushes the slide to the rear in a reaction. Because the slide is not attached (locked) to the barrel, there is a space, as mentioned above, and the process continues in this manner.

We must not forget that there is a problem regarding the weight of the slide relative to the spring strength. If the weight of the slide, for example, is great, and the spring is weak, the spring cannot recoil, and the converse can lead to the barrel's exit from its guide slot.

Examples of this type are the Makarov, Walther BB, and FZ 23.

2. Recoil (recoil of the barrel): The principle, which is that of the recoiling barrel (the barrel is not fixed)

AFGP-2002-000031-0740

was proposed by Maxim in 1883. However, the person who employed this principle in pistols is Browning in 1899.

The slide returns due to the strong reaction issuing from the barrel. When the slide moves quickly to the rear, it locks with the barrel for a moment, which suffices to propel the round outside the barrel. The cartridge falls from the firing chamber. Then, the barrel stops. However, the recoil action pushes the slide to the rear to obtain another bullet, pushing the bullet to the barrel. Then, the barrel locks again.

Question: Why do the slide and barrel move together?

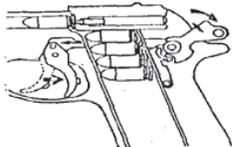
Answer: If the design were like the blowback, with the barrel fixed, the strong pressure generated by the gunpowder would break the slide or cause it to move upward. Therefore, it is necessary to reduce this pressure before the slide returns completely. The recoil design used makes the slide return with the barrel simultaneously for a period that suffices for the exit of the round. When the strong gas pressure abates and the barrel lock loosens, the slide then returns solely by the force of the residual pressure. This demonstrates the power of the gas: After the barrels stops, the components continue to recoil by force of the remaining amount of gas.

Examples of this type include the Tula Tokarev, the Colt M1911, and the Browning.

Note: The following two designs provide the basis for the manufacturer of all pistols Worldwide:

- Blowback: For pistols with weak powder (slow speed).
- Recoil: For pistols with strong powder (high speed).

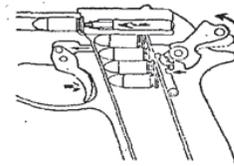
We will present here the mechanics of gas propulsion (blowback) and the mechanics of barrel recoil (recoil) in the Tokarev pistol.



1. The first round is loaded manually by pulling the slide to the rear as far as possible.

Then, the way is open for the spring to return it forward. This process raises the hammer and places the bullet in the chamber.

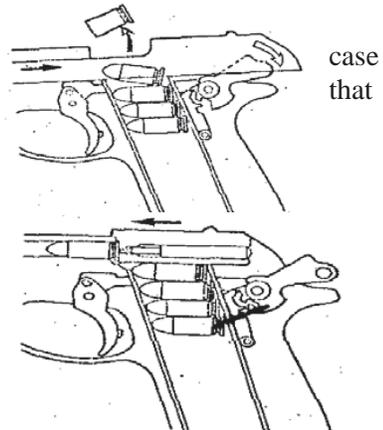
2. Pressing on the trigger loosens the hammer, which jumps forward to strike the firing pin, which pushes in the direction of the cartridge in the chamber and advances.



AFGP-2002-000031-0741

3. The gases propel the round forward and return the cartridge to the rear. The pressure suffices to activate the slide again, so it moves in the aforementioned direction, which results in the ejection of the casing [see figure 3 below].

4. At this point, the process can be repeated. The second round in the magazine, which should have been pushed upward by the magazine spring, is loaded into the chamber. The pistol becomes ready for firing again.



The mechanical movement

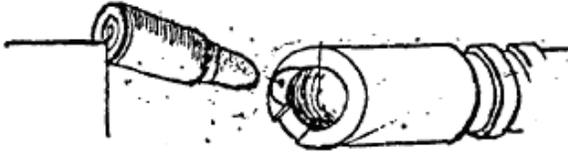


The hammer restrained by the receiver after the movable slide has been pulled to the rear.

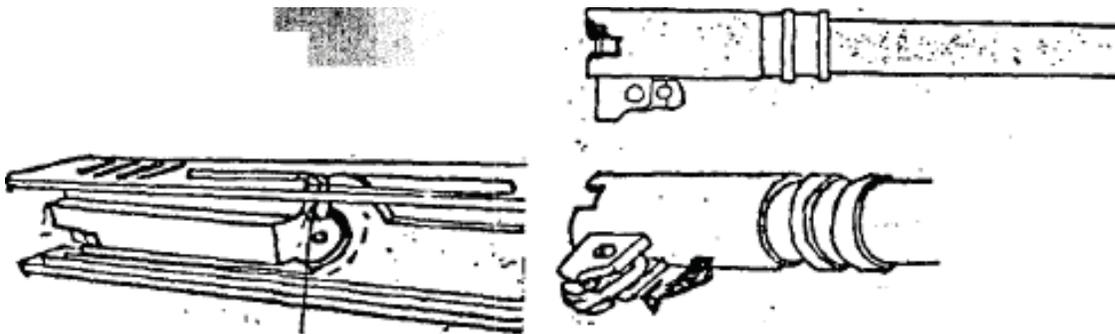


Forward movement of the slide by the force of the recoil spring

AFGP-2002-000031-0742

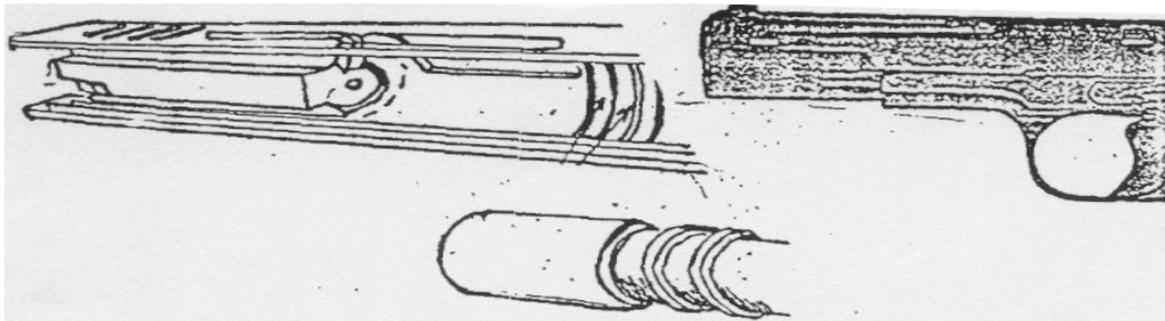


The pin assembly pushes the round forward during the advance of the slide. The round slides on the slot, (which is designed on the body of the barrel of itself) and then enters the firing chamber.



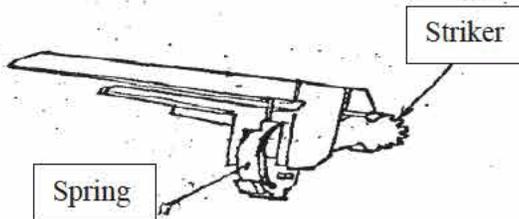
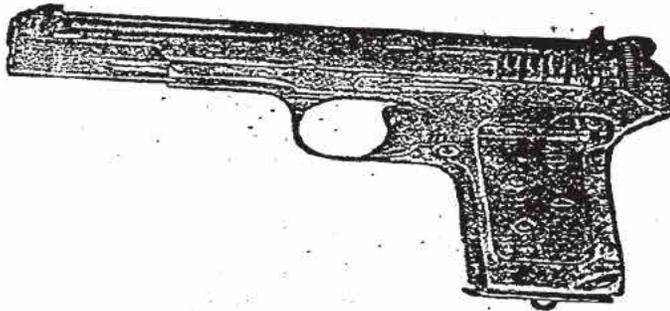
The round is secured in the front part of the pin assembly by its catch sear after it enters the firing chamber.

The pin assembly strikes the barrel, causing the rotation of the joint to the rear at a 90 degree angle.



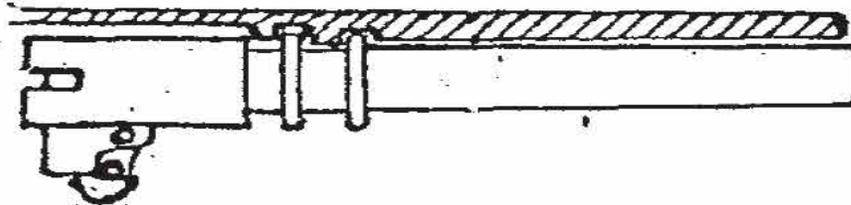
The barrel moves upward approximately 3mm, and the barrel necks settle behind the protruding components on the surface of the slide, which affects the closure process.

AFGP-2002-000031-0743

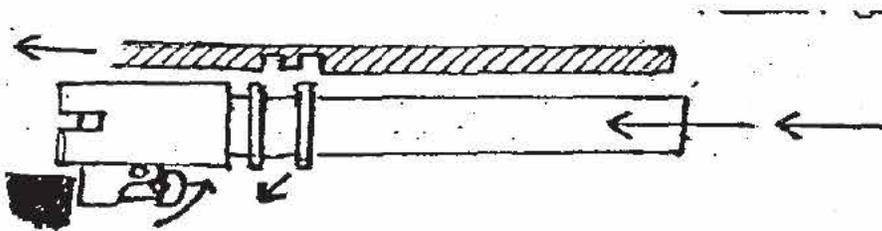


The hammer is released from its receiver by the force of its spring after the trigger is pulled, causing detonation and then discharge of the round outside the barrel.

The recoil of the barrel depends on the recoil principle (see recoil movement).



The barrel returns to the rear after it descends downward by the turning of the joint and the separation of the barrel necks from the protruding components, which releases the slide from the closure process, so that it returns to the rear.



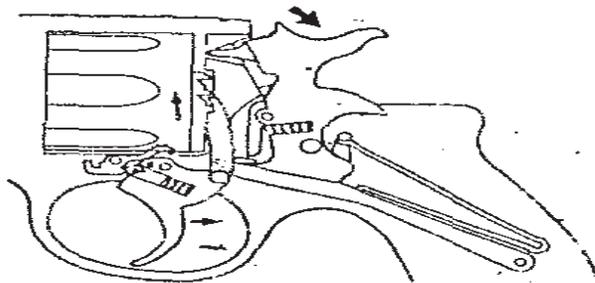
AFGP-2002-000031-0744

The pin assembly passes over the ejector tooth. It releases the empty cartridge case from the cartridge holder during the slide's return to the rear. The empty cartridge case is ejected out of the weapon through the right opening. Then, the slide advances again forward by force of the recoil spring to recommence the abovementioned

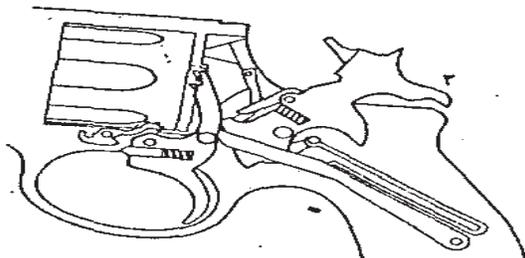


Mechanical Movement of the Revolver

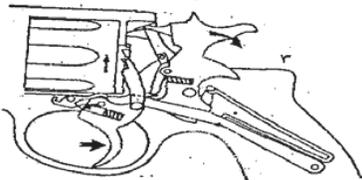
a. Pulling the trigger lowers the cylinder holder and permits the cylinder to rotate, so that the next chamber is aligned with the muzzle.



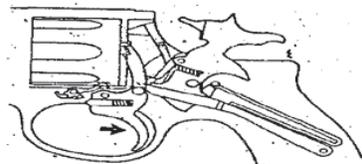
b. Firm pressure on the trigger makes the hammer fall, so that its head hits the cartridge casing. At this point, the cylinder holder stops the cylinder from turning.



AFGP-2002-000031-0745



c. The hammer can be returned to a cocked position manually. This eases the amount of pressure required. It also facilitates precise aiming.



d. This pattern can be repeated with single or dual action until all of the rounds have been fired, at which point the empty cartridge casings can be ejected.

Correct Method for Holding a Pistol

Question:

Why must we learn to correctly hold and use the pistol?

Answer:

When you go to a given camp, you might learn how to fire a pistol. However, this does not mean that you have become skillful in using the pistol.

Example: You may learn how to achieve good, precise hits. The firing process may take a number of seconds (5, 6, 7, or 8 seconds). However, this is not really practical, because, as you know, this weapon is used from up close. This means that your adversary is near you. If you are attacking, the firing process must not take more than two seconds. If you are defending, i.e., you are attacked, the firing process must not take more than one second. In both cases, it is either you or your adversary.

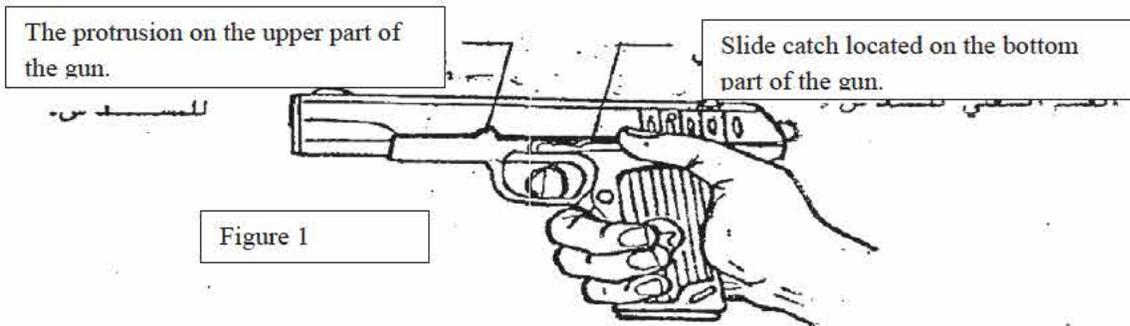
Therefore, you must learn the best possible techniques and methods and the correct method for using the pistol to allow yourself to fire quickly and precisely.

This means that the brain, the eyes, the ears, and the feet and hands must act simultaneously. Therefore, I want you to place aside everything you know about pistols and to learn what we dictate to you. After completion, if you like it, take it and add it to what you have or leave it.

AFGP-2002-000031-0746

Note:

The secret of speed in firing is to accustom you to drawing the pistol from its holster or place using the correct grip to hold the pistol. In this way, you do not need to change your grip after drawing the pistol, which saves you time. One second may determine the success or failure of the action. Therefore, you must train frequently in this aspect, until it becomes easy and normal. The most important requirement in this action is speed and avoidance of wasting time.



The figure shows the hand holding the pistol, illustrating where the thumb is and why it is there. We see in the figure that the thumb is in the center above the slide catch. It is not tight, so as to permit the upper part of the pistol to move freely and fully during the mechanical action of the pistol. Otherwise, if the thumb is not in close contact with the bottom of the slide catch, because of insensitive force, the thumb pushes the slide catch located on the lower part of the pistol into the protrusion located on the upper part, which stops the mechanical movement during the firing process, as shown in the following figure.



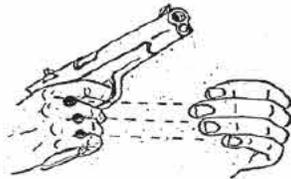
Figure 2

AFGP-2002-000031-0747

Method for Holding the Pistol

The thumb of your right hand, which holds the pistol, is centered on the slide catch, not under it, on the left side of the pistol.

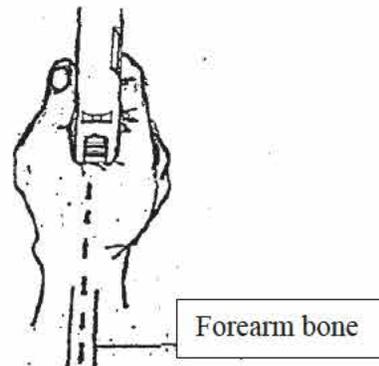
The following is a front and side image from the right side of the correct way to hold the pistol.



See where the fingers of the left hand are positioned when the pistol is held correctly. The other fingers of the left hand are on the grip, over the fingers of the right hand, intermeshed with them for a tight grip on the pistol.



The following figure shows the correct grip from the left side.



The following figure shows how the hand holding a pistol should be positioned so that the pistol is aligned with the forearm bone.

AFGP-2002-000031-0748

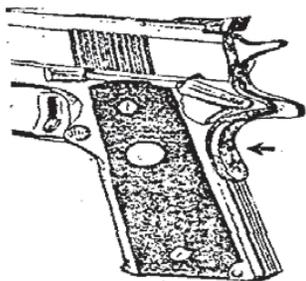
The fingers of the right hand are as follows: The index finger is on the trigger, and the other fingers are on the butt. The left thumb rests on the right thumb, and both are centered on the slide catch, loosely, not forcefully.

The piece of flesh between the thumb and the index finger of the hand holding the pistol is to the rear and under the slide, so that the slide does damage the hand when it moves. The pistol is in the middle of index finger and thumb in a straight line with the forearm.

Question: Why must the gun be held with both hands instead of one hand, except when necessary?

Answer:

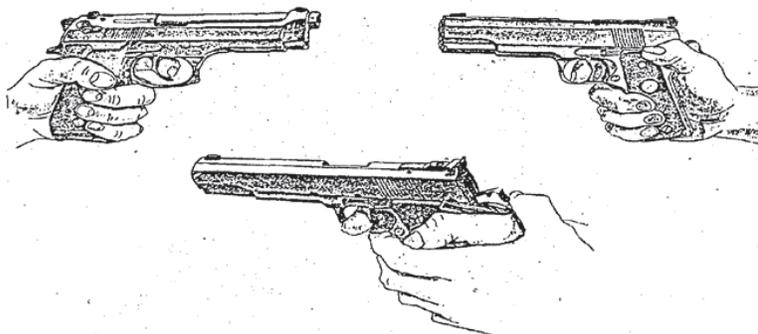
1. Holding the gun with both hands reduces the movement of the pistol when it recoils.
2. When the gun is held with both hands; the strong hand or the hand holding the gun, push forward while the other hand pushes to the rear (inward) with the same force. This allows you to hold the gun securely.
3. Using both hands prevents the hands prevents the gun from shaking or trembling.
4. Holding the pistol in one hand may result in a weak grip, which affects the mechanical movement or process in several types of guns, such as the Colt 1911A1.



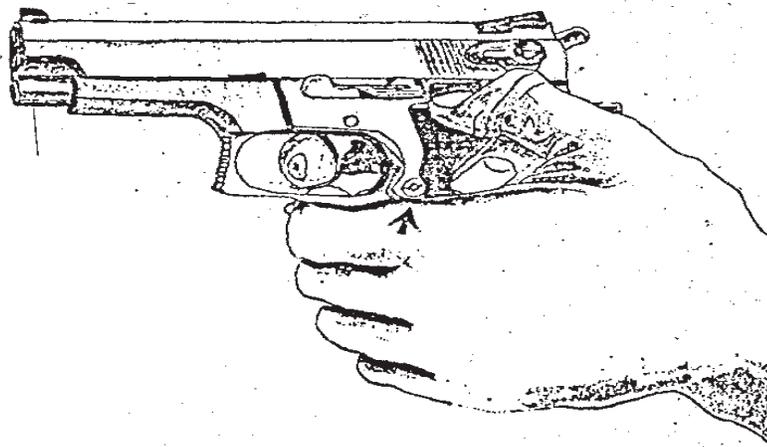
5. Holding the pistol with both hands provides for stability and firmness. You should remember that when you draw the pistol, it might be your only opportunity for close combat. If you draw the pistol with an incorrect grip, you will have to then change your grip, which slows you down and endangers you.

6. Do not hold the pistol in one hand unless doing so is necessary, because any strike against your hand could cause you to drop the pistol, which means failure and God only knows what. However, if you hold the gun in both hands, and your hand is hit, you can transfer the pistol to the other hand and continue firing at the adversary.
7. If you are compelled to hold the pistol in one hand, in the case of a pistol with dual action, the grip of the butt is slightly lower, because the trigger is long and heavy. However, this grip makes it difficult to control the recoil. In order to enable yourself to control the recoil, you must raise your grip slightly higher.

AFGP-2002-000031-0749

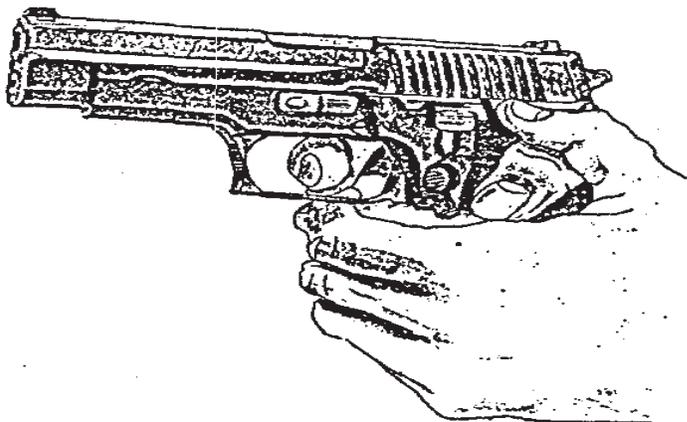


Some people place the thumb of the left hand on top of the right hand in order to use it to pull the hammer to the rear. This method is used only on the revolver, because there is no moving slide. It is impossible to use this method on an automatic pistol, because the moving slide could damage or sever the thumb.

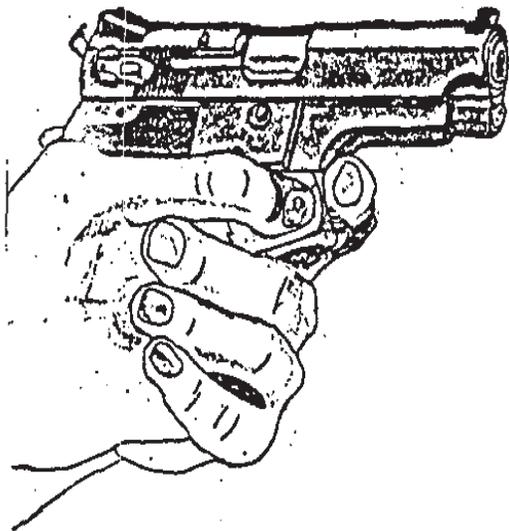


If it is not possible to place the thumb on top of the slide catch located on the bottom part of the pistol, place the thumb on top of the other thumb as shown in the figure. Be careful not press on the magazine catch.

AFGP-2002-000031-0750



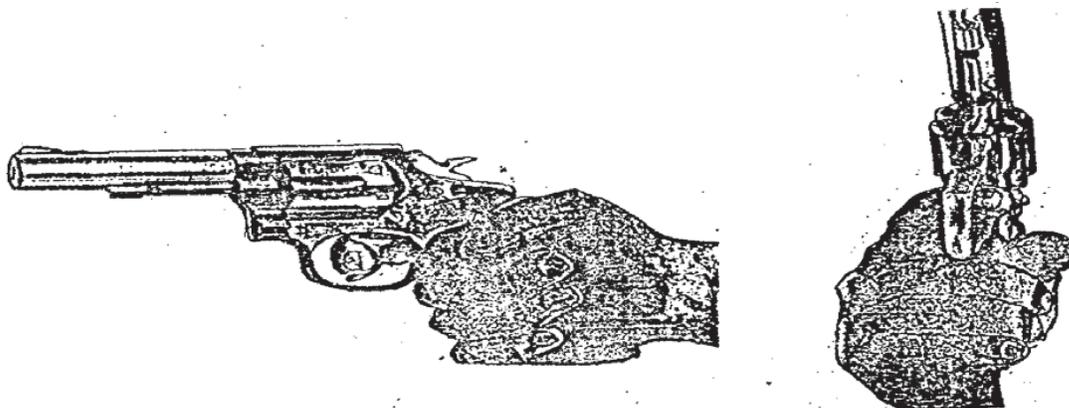
Note that the left hand in the figure above tightly embraces the weapon in the regular method, as described above.



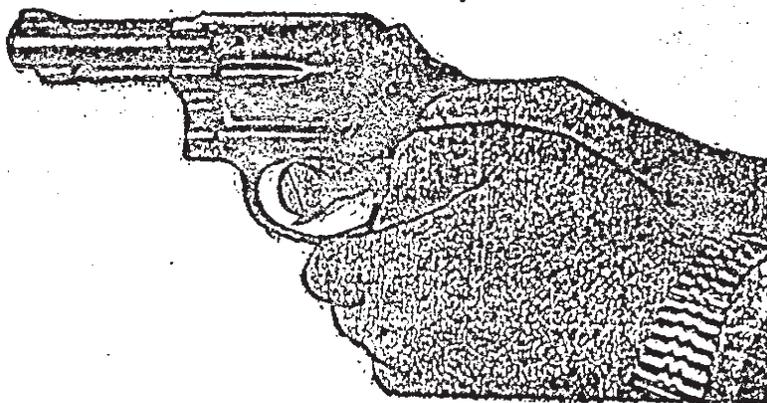
Note in the above figure that the index finger of the left hand is placed on the trigger guard to reduce the upward reaction of the barrel by tightly grasping the trigger guard when firing. The problem in this method is that many people press down before firing the round, which causes the round to descend below the level of the target.

AFGP-2002-000031-0751

Methods of holding a Revolver



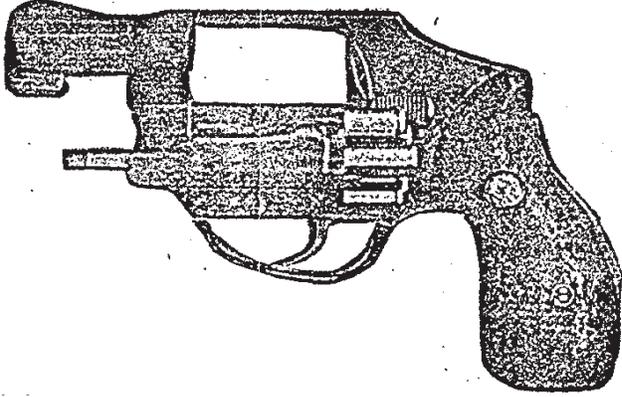
The thumb and three other fingers, except for the index finger, must tightly grip the butt in a firm, balanced manner (without shaking) to ensure that the gun does not move when it is fired continuously at a target, lest the shooter endanger oneself. Regarding the index finger, the area from the tip of the finger (first joint).



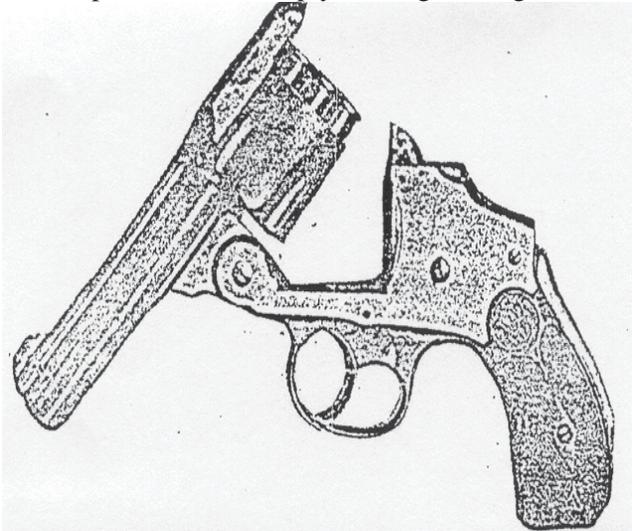
Note the placement of the two thumbs, one on top of the other. This is intended to ensure a tight grip on the pistol. To hold a revolver, use the same method used to grip an automatic pistol; the only minor difference is that the two thumbs are folded, one on top of the other, as shown in the figure above (in the form of an angle).

AFGP-2002-000031-0752

Disassembly of a Revolver



1-This first type of revolver is disassembled on the side, as shown in the figure, in order to load the weapon or unload empty cartridge casings.



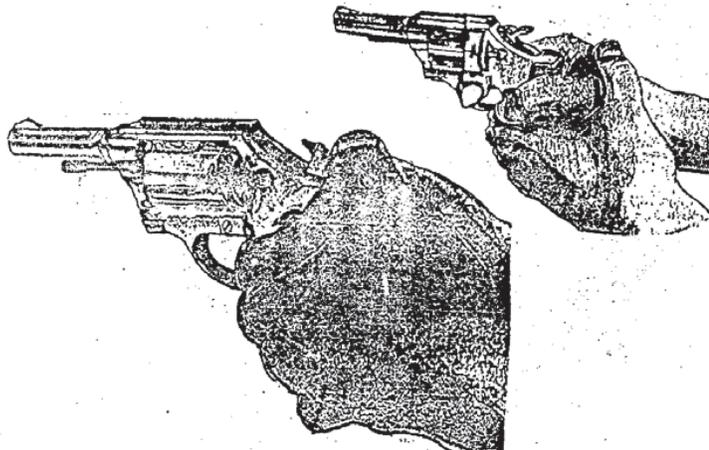
2- This second type of revolver is disassembled from the top, as shown in the figure, for the same purpose mentioned above in 1 above.

AFGP-2002-000031-0753



In the figure below, note how the pistol is held. The fingers of the left hand are placed on the right hand. The same applies to holding an automatic pistol.

Some people place the thumb of the left hand on top of the right in order to push the hammer to the rear, as shown in the figure.



This method is employed only with respect to a revolver, because it does not have a slide assembly. It is not possible to use this method with the automatic pistol, because doing so would endanger the thumb, as the slide moves and this movement would take anything in its way, damaging or severing the thumb.

AFGP-2002-000031-0754

Aiming Method

Firstly: When you look at a number of objects in front of your eyes at the same time, you find that the mind can only focus on one of them. You see that one object clearly in front of your eyes, but the other objects in front of you are not clear.

Therefore, when you aim the weapon at a target, you must look at the front site, the rear site, and the target. However, focus your mind only on one of them.

Focus on the rear sight. Doing so is better than focusing on the front sight or the target. This will make the hit more accurate.

If you focus on the front sight or the target, the rear sight may deviate slightly to the right or left or below or above the target imperceptibly unless your focus is on the rear sight.

When you focus on the rear sight, the target and the front sight remain visible to you like a specter, as shown in the figure below.



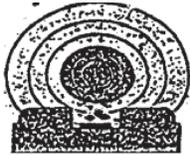
AFGP-2002-000031-0755

The rear sight and the front sight are on the same level. The front sight is completely in the middle of the rear sight. The target is on top of the front sight.



Correct Aim

When the front sight is lower than the rear sight, the rounds will go under the target.



Incorrect Aim

When the front sight is higher than the rear sight, the rounds will go above the target.



Incorrect Aim

When the front sight is to the right of the target, if only slightly, the round will go to the right of the target.



Incorrect Aim

When the front sight deviates to the left of the rear sight, if only slightly, the rounds will go to the left of the target.



Incorrect Aim

AFGP-2002-000031-0756

Method for Pressing on the Trigger

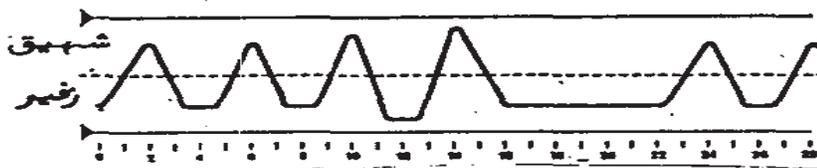
Most aiming errors and failures to strike the target are caused by tenseness in the body and nerves, which cause your hand to shake and tremble. They can also be caused by excessive pressure on the trigger, which causes the muzzle of the weapon to deviate from the target. Therefore, you must observe the following:

1. Pull the trigger in one, smooth motion, without force, because force will cause the muzzle of the pistol to drop downward.
2. Pull the trigger in one quick pull, not in stages.
3. Do not pay attention to, or focus on, or anticipate the sound of the report explosion, as doing so causes your hand to shake imperceptibly. You must therefore pay no attention to the report. Let yourself be surprised by it.
4. You must absolutely not look at the trigger. You must observe the target and not take your view from it. If anything diverts your attention from the target, the target may flee, move toward you, or conceal himself behind a cover without your knowledge.
5. Your body should be normal, without nervous tension. Your muscles should be relaxed and in a normal state, but not excessively relaxed.

Breathing during Firing

If time permits you to aim, breathing plays a very important part in the aiming process, because inhalation and exhalation may shake the aiming process. Note that when you breathe forcefully, your body moves. The correct way to breathe when aiming well is as follows:

1. Before firing, inhale normally with the pistol down.
2. When you raise the pistol in front of you, take a strong breath.
3. When the pistol is under your nose and the aim is good, relax slightly by exhaling the air in your lungs bit by bit (exhale calmly).
4. During the exhalation process, when the aim is good, pull the trigger.
5. Do not use more time than is necessary. If you complete exhalation when you are still aiming, do not fire. Rather, repeat the breathing process again. During the exhalation, aim and fire. The following graph shows the exhalation process and the time of firing.



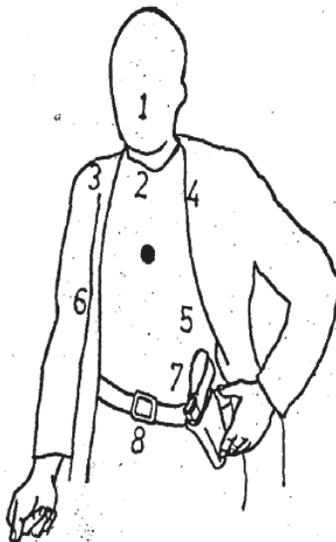
735

AFGP-2002-000031-0757

Question: Why do you not hit the target?

Look at the figure.

For example, if you want to hit the black circle in the middle of the target, you must hold the pistol with both hands. Assuming you are right handed and you have aimed at the black point and if the bullet missed the target:



If you hit number one, your grip was very tight on the pistol butt.

- If you hit number two, you looked at the front sight and ignored the rear sight or looked above it.
- If you hit number three, the reason is generally that you gripped the pistol tightly, causing it to pull back in the direction of the left hand, because you were pressing the butt with the other hand with force and strain.
- If the round hit no. 4, the reason is the opposite of the previous reason: The pressure exerted by your right hand was greater, which caused the muzzle to pull to the right.
- If the round hit no. 5, the reason is you pulled on the trigger, so that the round went to the right. The solution is to pull the trigger in a straight, calm manner.
- If the round hit no. 6, the reason is that the trigger was pulled by the index finger such that the pistol inclined toward the left.
- If no. 7 was hit, it means that the grip was not tight enough.

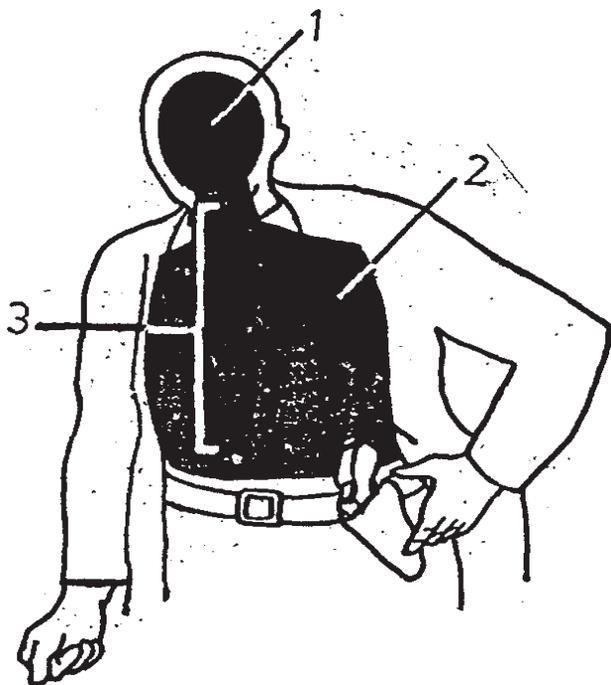
AFGP-2002-000031-0758

If no. 8 is hit, it means that the grip on the pistol was convulsed backwards when you fired due to straining when you attempted to fire and aimed to fire again, i.e., as you waited for one round to fire, you shook, causing rearward movements that produced this result.

Important observation: 90% percent of failures to hit the target are caused by the shooter; he anticipates the moment of discharge to avoid the reaction. Here, he is concerned with looking at and controlling the trigger instead of paying attention to the target and front sight.

- It is important when firing to know when shooting that the shot will surprise you. Do not force the pistol at all. Rather, let it fire easily. The bulk of your attention should be on aiming and looking at the front sight, rear sight, and target, after which the shot is discharged with light, calm pressure on the trigger to pull it back straight. You should not be concerned about when the round exits, shaking of the pistol, etc., which will only confuse you and cause you to miss an opportunity to score a hit.

Good Areas at Which to Aim and Strike



1. The best area is the head. When firing at the head, the best place to hit is the circle between the two eyes, the nose, and the mouth. If you can hit an adversary in this area, the hit will be excellent. The reason for the importance of aiming at this circle located between the two eyes, the nose, and the mouth is that aiming outside of it will not result in a good hit, because the bullet will only graze the head, as the head is circular. The other reason for the importance of aiming at the head is that some adversaries wear protective armor. Therefore, placement of a round anywhere other than the head will not be effective.

737

AFGP-2002-000031-0759

2. The heart is a lethal area.

3. The area from above the stomach to the neck. This area contains many sensitive organs, such as the liver, lungs, stomach, chest, and pharynx. This area is also sensitive and fatal. You should not forget to aim at the center of the body in this region and avoid the edges by about 6 cm, because the enemy might be wearing thick clothing.

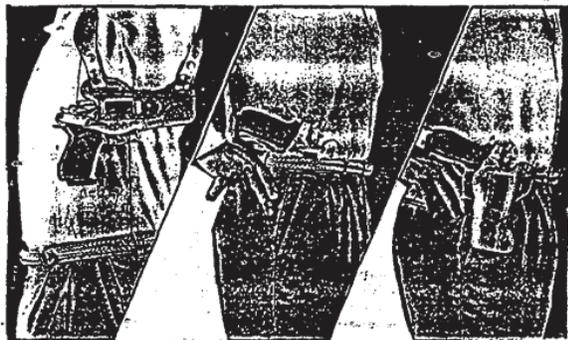
Consequently, the hit will not be effective.

In the event of a surprise attack, you should attempt to hit the adversary in the area that is darkened [on the previous figure]. Any hit in this area will be good and effective. However, the focus should be the head. The head is the best target, and hitting it is difficult when defending, because any delay could mean death for you.

5. In a defense, it is best to hit the aforementioned darkened area. However, any hit on the body is good, as it will deny the enemy an opportunity to aim at you. If he has aimed at you initially, but has sustained a hit, he may lose his balance and control.

The Best Places for a Weapon in Practical Deployment

The preferred place for the weapon will differ from one person to another and according to the type of clothing worn.

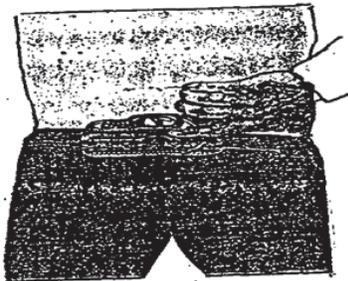


Note in the first and second figure, that a vest is worn to cover the weapon. In the third figure, a jacket is needed to cover the weapon. Note the position in the second and third figure is not suitable when sitting, because it impedes you. The position in the first figure is the best one.

AFGP-2002-000031-0760

The position in the fourth figure is best when the vest or jacket buttons are open in a way that does not reveal the position of the weapon when the weather is hot or it is windy and the buttons are open.

These positions are generic but you can improvise new positions as long as you take safety precautions.



Firing Methods

1-The Weaver Method:

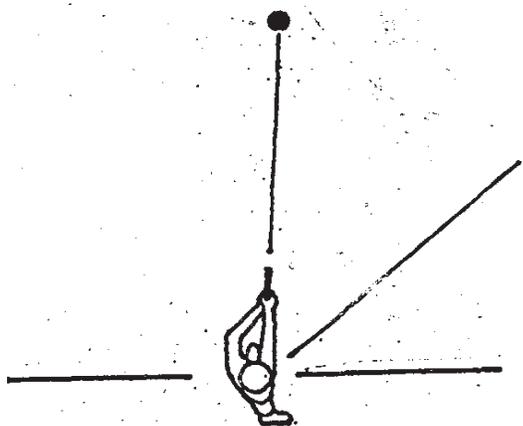
This method was named for the person who originated it. It is generally an offensive method involving aiming using the front sight and rear sight.

Posture

- a. The two feet are in the shape of the letter "L" or at an angle of approximately 90 degrees relative to each other. The right foot is to the rear, and the left foot is forward.
- b. The objective is to place the front of your body (your chest) at an angle of 45 degrees, so that your chest can be seen only slightly and you will thus be a small target for the enemy if he attempts to challenge you.
- c. Your right, strong hand holds the pistol. It is thrust out on a straight line in line with the pistol. The left hand tightly grips the right hand on the pistol and pulls inward with the same force as the outward (forward) pushing force of the right hand. The left hand is not straight, but rather at an angle of 45 degrees.
- d. The preceding applies if you are right-handed. If you are left-handed, the converse applies.
- e. The pistol is raised to nose level and no higher or lower. Otherwise your head would rise if the pistol is higher than nose level or would lower if it is lower than nose level, all of which takes extra time and effort and reduces precision, which is undesirable.

AFGP-2002-000031-0761

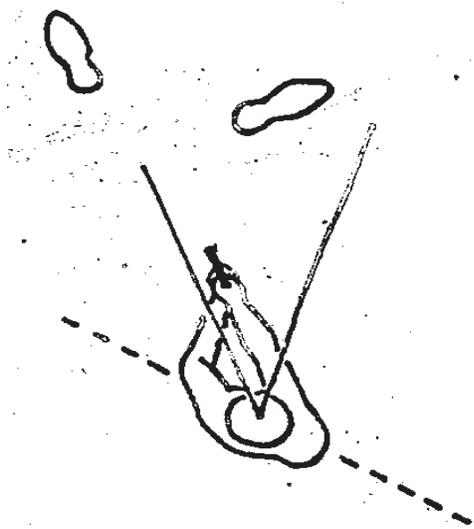
Weaver Method



In the above figure, the target is at a 45-degree angle relative to the front of your body, i.e., relative to the direction of your chest.

Direction of the front of the body (your chest)

The following figure shows the placement of the two feet on the ground in the shape of the letter "L."



In this position, place the right hand so that it is straight and the left hand so that it is at an angle of 45 degrees.

AFGP-2002-000031-0762

1. After drawing the pistol, bring both hands so they meet in the front and middle of the body to control the pistol butt correctly.



2. The following figure shows the proper stance when using the Weaver method. The two feet are in an "L" shape. The figure also shows the manner in which the two hands are positioned, so that the right hand holds the pistol level, and the left hand is at an angle of 45 degrees.

3. The following figure shows the view from the left side. Notice how the two hands are held.



AFGP-2002-000031-0763

2. Isosceles Shooting Method:

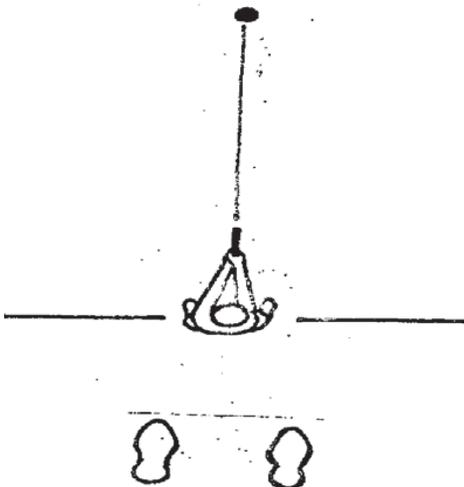
This method is named after the person who invented it. It is generally an offensive method that involves aiming with the (front and rear sights).

Posture

- a. The two feet are spread, with the toes pointed straight at the target. The legs are relaxed and not tense, as if you are riding a horse or donkey, with the knees bent slightly.
- b. The front of your body faces the target. The target relative to your chest is at an angle of 90 degrees.
- c. Hold the pistol in the same way that you hold it in the Weaver method, except that you need to extend both hands out in a straight line with the pistol toward the target, unlike the Weaver method, in which the right hand is extended out straight while the left hand is extended at an angle of 45 degrees.
- d. Regarding the width dimension (right and left), the pistol and your hands are at the center of your body, i.e., parallel to the center of your rib cage. In terms of height, your hands and the pistol are at nose level.
- e. Note that you will find the Weaver stance better than the isosceles stance with respect to the target's position relative to your chest or the front of your body. In the Weaver stance, the target is at an angle of 45 degrees relative to you. In the Isosceles stance, it is at an angle of 90 degrees. This makes you a larger target for the enemy when you stand in the isosceles stance if the enemy attempts to respond to or challenge you, as he has a better opportunity to hit you, especially in sensitive areas such as the heart, lungs, and the respiratory system.

AFGP-2002-000031-0764

Isosceles Method:



The target is at an angle of 90 degrees relative to the front of your chest.

Your two feet are parallel on the ground with the toes pointed straight at the target.



In the following figure, note how the two hands are placed in a straight line with the target.

AFGP-2002-000031-0765

How does one shift the gun from a safe (pocket) position to a firing and readiness position?

For a right-handed person, the ideal position of the pistol is on the right side, above the right hip. This position places the pistol in the position closest to readiness.

Important note: Do not point the barrel toward your body when you transition from pulling the pistol from its holster to firing readiness position.

1. If the shooter is wearing a jacket (suit) which covers the suit, when he draws the pistol, he must push the jacket very far to the rear of the pistol, so that there is no impediment when the weapon is drawn. The butt of the pistol must be visible in its holster attached to the side of the shooter.
2. When drawing the pistol from its holster, the thumb must be pointed toward the stomach when gripping the pistol grip in order to push inner garments toward the body to prevent them from snagging the hand when the weapon is drawn.
3. The grip on the pistol must be tight from the moment the hand is placed on the pistol when it is inside the holster, because any change in the grip wastes time. Any attempt to tighten the grip on the pistol after drawing it is dangerous and complicated for the shooter.
4. When drawing the weapon, draw it from its holster vertically at first, pulling it upward until the barrel is slightly outside the holster to facilitate its movement. When drawing the pistol, the hand is of course straight, so that the shooter thrusts the pistol forward while aiming it directly at the target after drawing it from the holster in a vertical manner. The shooter makes sure that the pistol is in a straight line with his forearm when he thrusts the pistol toward the target.
5. In every possible case, fire using both hands for better control and to avoid recoil and fire better. One hand alone is used only in exceptional cases. As soon as the pistol passes the level of the shooter's stomach when it is drawn, before the arm is extended in a straight line toward the target, the left hand must be placed in its position on the pistol butt with the right hand. The left hand must be brought quickly over the right hand from the side of the chest, so that it does not intersect with the pistol muzzle, but rather comes from under the right hand, which is holding the pistol butt. This is done to avoid the danger posed by the firing of a round as this movement is executed.
6. When carrying out these movements, do not move any part of the torso, such as the shoulders or stomach. Only the hands and arm move.

AFGP-2002-000031-0766

Any extra or superfluous movement requiring time causes the shooter to miss the opportunity.

7. The thumb must not be placed on the trigger when grasping the pistol butt with the two hands after the pistol has been thrust forward toward the target to avoid the firing of any bullet. If the pistol becomes snagged on the shooter's clothing and the finger is on the trigger, the pistol may discharge immediately.
8. When thrusting the pistol toward the target, the pistol must be below eye level, so that it can be controlled. Remember to place the pistol at eye level. Do not divert your eyes or orient them according to the position and level of the pistol.
9. Do not attempt to hold the pistol butt strongly, because doing so causes shaky nerves and trembling during aiming. You must fire in a calm state, without shaking, but with a tight grip.
10. When aiming toward the front, focus your gaze on the front sight, not the target or the back sight. The most important point is the front sight. The back sight and target are seen but not strongly focused upon, because it is too difficult to focus on these three points simultaneously.

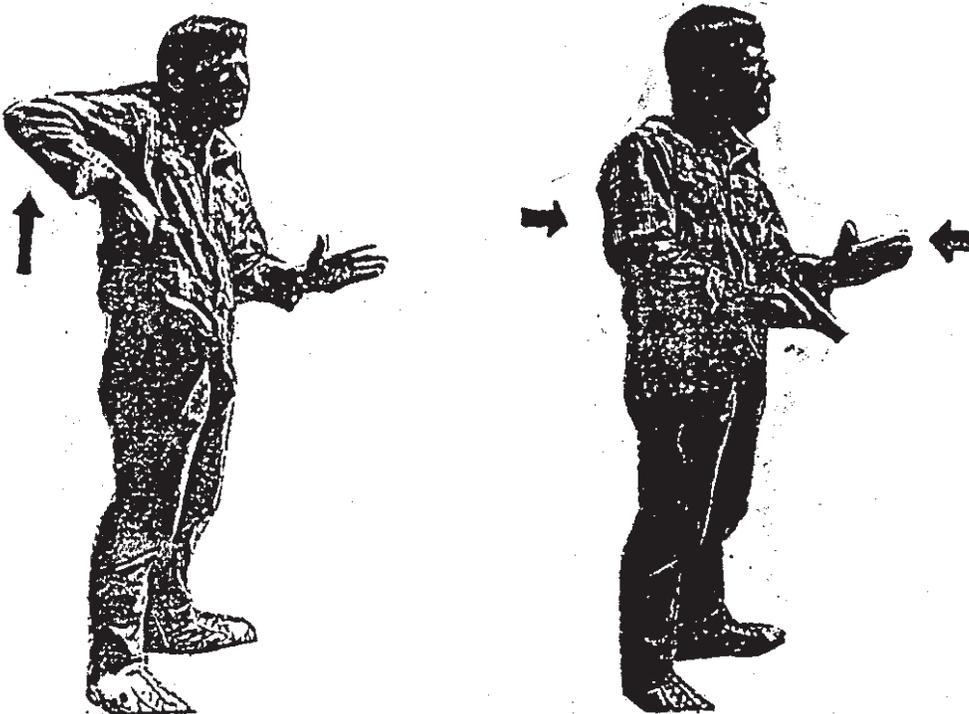
In the following figure, note the position of the thumb, which is pushing the clothing toward the inside, and the index finger, which is not on the trigger. Note also the process of removing the pistol perpendicularly.



745

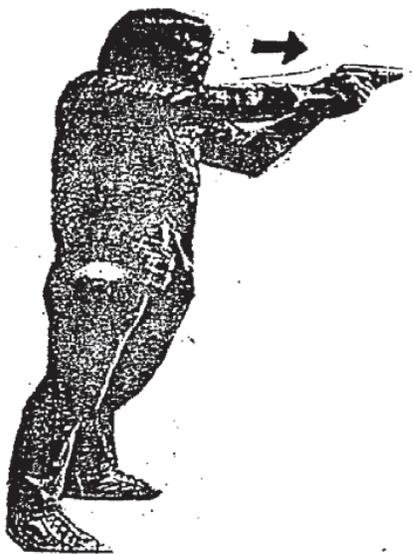
AFGP-2002-000031-0767

Note that immediately after drawing the pistol, as soon as the muzzle is beyond the holster, the pistol is aimed in a straight line toward the target. The shooter makes sure that the pistol is in line with his forearm when he pushes the pistol forward.



746

AFGP-2002-000031-0768



Note that the index finger is not on the trigger, although it is placed on the trigger after tightening the grip on the pistol with both hands.



Note that the pistol is held under the two eyes with a tight grip when aiming at the target

AFGP-2002-000031-0769



1. Note how the gunner is pushing his jacket to the rear in Figure 1 below.

2. Note in the next figure how the jacket is away from the pistol, so that it does not cause any impediment when the gun is drawn. Note how the thumb is pointed toward the stomach to push the inner garments to the side of the body.



3. Note in the next figure the tight grip on the pistol once it is drawn from its holster. Note how the index finger is always away from the trigger to avoid the occurrence of any error. Also note the left hand moving quickly toward the right hand from the bottom, without intersecting with the pistol muzzle.

4. Note in the following figure that as soon as the gun passes the level of the shooter's stomach, before the hand is extended out straight toward the target, the left hand has assumed its position over the right hand.

